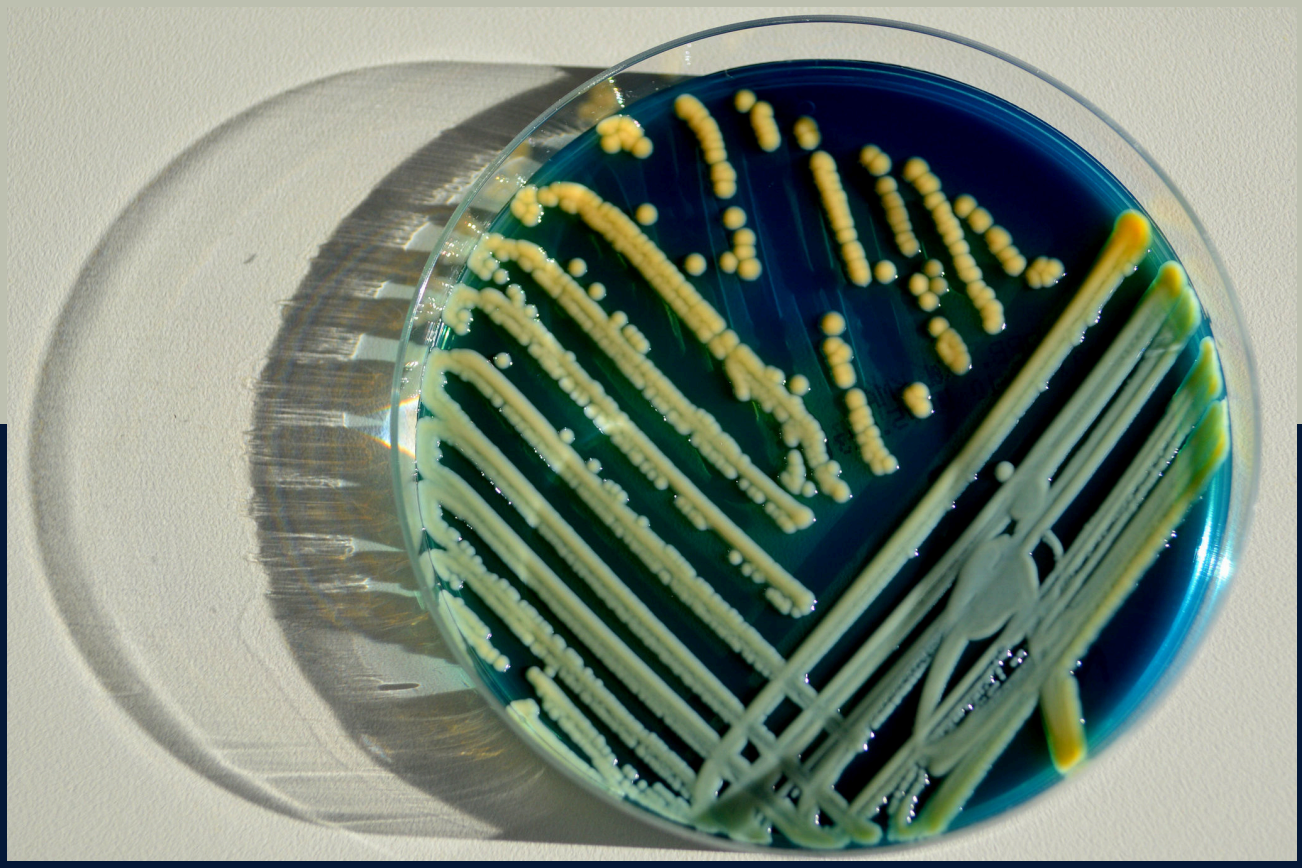
A COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW OF MICROBIOLOGY



Asim Shamim
Malik Amonov
Syed Muhammad Ali Shah
Fiza Tariq

A Comprehensive Review of Microbiology

EMPYREAL
PUBLISHING HOUSE

India | UAE | Nigeria | Uzbekistan | Montenegro | Iraq | Egypt | Thailand | Uganda | Philippines | Indonesia

www.empyrealpublishinghouse.com

A Comprehensive Review of Microbiology

Edited by:

Asim Shamim
Department of Pathobiology,
Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences,
University of Poonch Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan

Malik Amonov
Faculty of Medicine,
Sultan Zain Al Abideen University, Malaysia

Syed Muhammad Ali Shah
Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences,
University of Poonch Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan

Fiza Tariq
Department of Veterinary Medicine,
University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Lahore, Punjab,
Pakistan

First Impression: May 2025

A Comprehensive Review of Microbiology

ISBN: 978-93-49359-40-6

Rs. 1000/- ($80)

DISCLAIMER

Information contained in this book has been published by Empyreal Publishing House and has been obtained by the editors from sources believed to be reliable and correct to the best of their knowledge. The authors are solely responsible for the contents of the articles compiled in this book. Responsibility of authenticity of the work or the concepts/views presented by the author through this book shall lie with the author and the publisher has no role or claim or any responsibility in this regard. Errors, if any, are purely unintentional and readers are requested to communicate such error to the author to avoid discrepancies in future.

Published by:
Empyreal Publishing House

Preface

This book is designed to provide a comprehensive and accessible introduction to the core concepts and applications of microbiology. Whether you are a student embarking on your academic journey or a professional seeking to expand your knowledge, the goal of this text is to offer clarity, depth, and a thorough understanding of both classical microbiological principles and the latest advancements in the field.

We begin with the basics of microbial structure and function, delving into the unique properties that distinguish bacteria, viruses, fungi, and other microorganisms from larger, more complex organisms. From there, we explore the diverse methods used to study these tiny life forms, including laboratory techniques and advanced technologies such as genomics and bioinformatics. The chapters that follow cover essential topics in microbiological taxonomy, metabolism, genetics, and ecology, while also addressing key areas in medical microbiology, immunology, infectious diseases, and antimicrobial resistance.

Microbiology is not just about the microorganisms themselves, but also about how they interact with their hosts and environments. As we look to the future, it is essential to recognize the profound implications that microbiology has on global challenges, including emerging infectious diseases, antibiotic resistance, climate change, and food security.

Throughout this book, we strive to maintain a balance between theoretical understanding and practical application. By providing real-world examples, case studies, and a strong emphasis on critical

thinking, our aim is to foster a deeper appreciation of microbiology and inspire curiosity about the microbial world.

I hope this book serves as both a valuable resource and a source of inspiration for those seeking to explore the fascinating and vital realm of microbiology.

Acknowledgement

I, the editor in chief, grateful to my team for the efforts and work. Our book is a success as a result of teamwork and collaborations. I am thankful to the guest editor Malik Amonov for accepting my invitation for editing the book. I am thankful to him for his time and efforts. I also put my regards to the editors for handling the manuscripts. Their contributions in evaluating and checking the chapters are remarkable.

I am thankful to the authors and publishers for the materials, text citations, and references in the book. I put my thanks to the authors for their time and efforts they devoted to writing chapters in our book. They provided us with their quality and well-written manuscripts.

I also put my thanks to my teachers, family members, colleagues, and friends for motivation, comments, and valuable suggestions for further improvement in the book.

I am obliged to the Empyreal Publishers for giving me the opportunity to publish my first book. I am thankful to the publishers for their collaborations, interest, and cooperation.

About the Authors

Dr. Asim Shamim achieved his secondary education from Neelum Public School, Shoukat Line Muzaffarad, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan, and higher secondary education from Pine Hills Public School and College, Abbottabad, KPK, Pakistan. He has completed his Doctor of Veterinary Medicine degree from Sindh Agriculture University Tandojam, Sindh, Pakistan, in 2003. Dr. Shamim completed his MSc. (Hons) and doctorate degrees in the subject of veterinary parasitology from the Department of Veterinary Parasitology, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan, in 2005 and 2016. He started his professional career as a veterinary officer in the Department of Livestock and Dairy Development of the Government of Azad Kashmir in 2007. Later in 2008, Dr. Shamim started his career as a lecturer in the Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences under the umbrella of the University of Azad Kashmir Muzaffarabad, and then in 2012 he continued his services in the Department of Pathobiology (Parasitology Section) in the Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, University of Poonch, Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan. Presently Dr. Shamim is working as an associate professor of parasitology in the Department of Pathobiology (Parasitology Section), Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, University of Poonch, Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan. So far, he has published more than 45 research papers as a principal and co-author on various aspects of parasites in well-reputed journals and presented at national and international-level

conferences. He has successfully completed three research projects as PI/Co-PI. Additionally, he has mentored ten M.Phil. and two PhD. scholars. Moreover, Dr. Shamim is a reviewer and member of the editorial board of national and international impact factor journals and has published three book chapters and many extension articles. His thematic research area is molecular epidemiology of parasites in general and tick and tick-borne diseases of humans and animals in specific.

Malik Amonov, MD, PhD, is a dedicated medical doctor and research scientist with a strong interdisciplinary background in microbiology, immunology, and public health. With over 15 years of experience in medical research, Dr. Amonov has focused extensively on microbial pathogenesis and innovative vaccine development, particularly within the realm of bacterial infections. Holding a PhD in Microbiology and Immunology from Sultan Zainal Abidin University and an advanced degree in public health from Tashkent Pediatric Medical Institute, he combines deep expertise in infectious disease dynamics with a commitment to advancing global health outcomes through scientific research, clinical insights, and education.

Throughout his career, Dr. Amonov has specialized in the design, development, and assessment of live attenuated vaccines, making significant contributions to Streptococcus pneumoniae research. His work spans genetic mechanisms of bacterial attenuation, immunogenicity evaluations, and gene-knockout studies, aimed at enhancing vaccine safety and efficacy. As a Senior Lecturer at the Faculty of Medicine, Sultan Zainal Abidin University, he

oversees research projects, mentors Master's and PhD students, and leads initiatives in experimental design and advanced data analysis.

In addition to his vaccine research, Dr. Amonov has contributed to comparative genomic studies of pathogens such as Acinetobacter baumannii, collaborating internationally to address antimicrobial resistance and infectious disease control. With a robust portfolio of peer-reviewed publications and presentations at international conferences, he actively contributes to the academic and medical research community. By integrating clinical insights with scientific expertise, Dr. Amonov's work not only drives advancements in microbiology but also supports critical public health needs in preventing and controlling infectious diseases, particularly in underserved populations.

Dr. Syed Muhammad Ali Shah from Lahore, a Doctor of Veterinary Medicine from the University of Poonch Rawalakot, is also a researcher and global health advocate. Passionate about cultural diversity and collaboration, he has written over 20 book chapters and articles and served as a guest speaker in various webinars, conferences and workshops. His research spans topics such as zoonosis, animal welfare, microbiology, parasitology, and epidemiology, with a focus on parasite transmission prevention.

Dr. Shah is the first Pakistani selected for the "Virtual Global Health Elective" at Child Family Health International, contributing to global health initiatives and zoonotic disease prevention. He is committed to the United Nations SDGs, particularly SDG 2, and has trained individuals for the Zambian Open Private

School Association.

In addition to volunteering for student organizations like SYNCH Pakistan and the International Veterinary Students Association, Dr. Shah is dedicated to improving veterinary medicine, public health, and global well-being through research and collaboration. His mission is to bridge healthcare gaps in wildlife and underdeveloped regions, promoting harmony between humans, animals, and the environment.

Dr. Fiza Tariq was born in Shakargarh, Punjab, Pakistan. She completed her DVM degree from the University of Poonch Rawalakot with gold medal in 2022 and is currently pursuing a post-graduate degree in Veterinary Medicine at the University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore. Supported by her family, Dr. Tariq has always been passionate about research.

During her DVM studies, she gained hands-on experience through internships at various government and public institutes, treating both infectious and non-infectious diseases. After working briefly as a veterinarian in a private hospital, she left to focus on her post-graduate studies and research in areas such as Bovine Mastitis, tick-borne diseases, and plant and chemical poisonings in livestock.

Dr. Tariq is also an emerging author, contributing chapters to national and international books and case studies. She is currently co-authoring her first book aimed at helping researchers, farmers, and farm owners reduce economic losses caused by parasites.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER- 1

INTRODUCTION AND SPECTRUM OF MICROBIOLOGY

Abrar Hussain[*1], Nighat Rabbani[2], Affaf Shaheen[3] Warisha Alvi[1] and Syed Abid Ali[1]

[1]Third World Center for Science and Technology, HEJ Research Institute of Chemistry, International Center for Chemical and Biological Sciences (ICCBS), University of Karachi, Karachi Pakistan

[2]Department of Microbiology, The University of Haripur, Haripur Khyber Pakhtunkhwa, Pakistan

[3]Department of Microbiology, Federal Urdu University of Arts, Science, and Technology Karachi, Karachi, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15525788

ABSTRACT

Microorganisms are the smallest creatures, ubiquitous, and perform different roles. Due to their high number, prevalence, and properties, it is important to dedicate a specific field for better and easier understanding. Microbiology is the discipline of natural science that deals with the different aspects of microorganisms like their structure, functions, nature, classification, distribution, and applications. The field of microbiology is important in many regards, like that it specifically covers the most diverse creatures, has versatile applications, and affects all life forms. It is worth mentioning that not all microorganisms are harmful, and many types of them are used as beneficial microbes for animals and humans. Microorganisms include bacteria, archaea, fungi, protozoa, algae, and viruses that serve as essential agents in global ecosystems, human health, and industrial processes. Microbiology plays an integral part in our lives; therefore, gaining knowledge about it is a foremost thing. Despite the huge literature available covering the different aspects of microorganisms and thus microbiology, there is a need for short, comprehensive, and updated documents that decipher the different spectrums. Hence, this chapter aims to provide an in-depth introduction to microbiology, discusses how microorganisms are categorized and studied, and digs into the broad spectrums of microbiology, covering its applications in medicine, biotechnology, agriculture, and environmental sustainability. Outlining its key aspects and delving into its important historical discoveries aid in the basics of the field. The importance of microbiology is also discussed while highlighting its essential contributions to scientific research, disease prevention, industrial innovation, and ecological balance. This chapter also emphasizes microbiology as a critical field that shapes our planet, supports and enhances our understanding of the natural world, and advances in health and technology.

Keywords*: Microbiology, Microorganism, Bacteria, Life Sciences, Biochemical Ananlysis*

INTRODUCTION

The world around us is beautiful and holds many secrets. To uncover these hidden mysteries, one has to deep dwell in them. A fascinating world of microbes lies hidden, silently shaping our world and holding the key to our survival, health, and even the planet's future. From the oxygen we breathe to the things we touch to the yogurt we eat, they are present everywhere. They maintain the balance of life on earth, its ecosystem, the driving force behind many industrial processes, and silent heroes in the fight against diseases. These tiny powerhouses are involved in many mechanisms of life and are the invisible engines behind many processes. It is fascinating to know that trillions of microorganisms are living in and on our body as normal commensals and not causing any disease (Hussain, 2024). They help to digest and break down food, protect us from other diseases, and help to maintain our overall health and maintain the balance of microbes in our body (Hussain et al., 2024a; Weissbrodt et al., 2020; Solbach, 2021). Complex communities of bacteria are present specific to parts of our bodies in our skin, nose, gut, etc. that ensure our physical as well as mental health. Microbes even outnumber our cells by 10 to 1 (Solbach, 2021; Mandal & Kundu, 2021; Hou et al., 2022). These tiny creatures are very large in number and are highly important for the ecosystem that a particular branch of science, Microbiology, is dedicated to them. This branch wholly shows the overall spectrum of these creatures.

The word microbiology has its roots in the Greek dictionary "Micro" which means small, "Bios" which means life, and "Logia" which means study (Chaudhry et al., 2018). Microbiology is the branch of science that studies tiny, often unicellular organisms that cannot be seen with the naked eye. These include viruses, bacteria, algae, protozoa, and fungi (Singh & Satyanarayana, 2017; Hussain et al., 2024a). These organisms are involved in many activities and can be found in a variety of environments like soil, water, rocks, deserts, deep seas, or fossils. Some live on plants, animals, and humans. Microorganisms usually have a diameter of 1 mm or less therefore, they can only be seen with the help of a microscope. Despite their small size, their impact on us and our planet is huge (Trivedi et al., 2010). It is estimated that less than 1% of the microorganisms are known so far on the earth. An average gram of soil contains about one billion microbes, representing probably several thousand species. Microbiology deals with studying their unique physiology, genetics, ecology, and their respective role in life, health, environment, and disease (Singh & Satyanarayana, 2017; Weissbrodt et al., 2020; Novak Babič et al., 2020).

There is huge literature available that covers the different aspects of microbiology, from basics to advanced techniques. Due to the high variable spectrum, literatures is dedicated to the history, development, prevalence, distribution, role, impacts, pathogenesis, biotechnological role, food applications, and all other aspects. Recently, more literature is available on their applied aspects, pointing out their role in different industries, probiotics, supplements, and other industrial applications, but less literature is dedicated that covers all spectrums of the subject, from history to modern-day applications. Hence, this chapter delves into the hidden world of

microbiology to know what exactly these microscopic organisms are, why they matter so much, how they work, and whether the world would work and exist without these tiny, invisible organisms that shape almost every aspect of our existence.

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

The history of microbiology contains a narrative on how our understanding and knowledge of the microbial world and its impact have gradually transformed over time. Thousands of years ago, people used to believe that illness was caused by supernatural forces or imbalances in the body, like Hippocrates' "four humors" theory (Javier, 2014). There have been three significant ages in the history of microbiology (**Figure 1**).

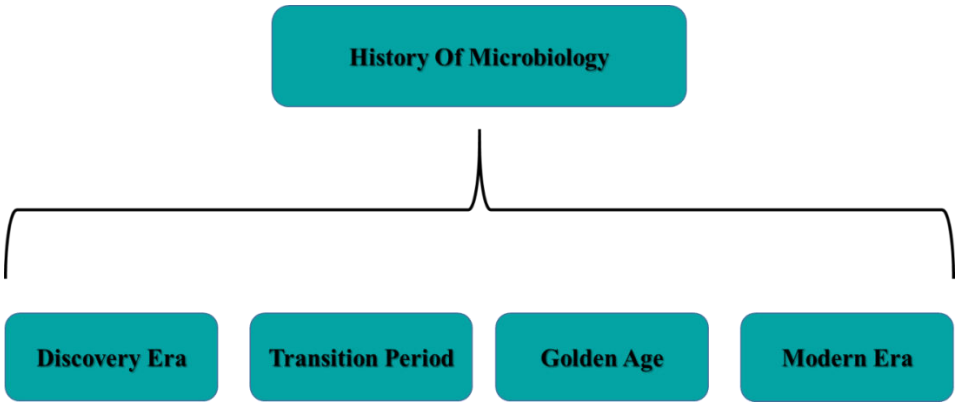


Figure 1. Historical development in microbiology representing the three ages

The First Golden Age: The late 1800s is marked by the efforts of Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch, who, for the first time in the history of science, established the linkage of microbes to disease and revolutionized the science of bacteriology. Vaccines against diseases such as smallpox also emerged during this time. In reality, Aristotle proposed the theory of spontaneous generation, whereby life could spontaneously originate from non-living matter (Zwier, 2018). Yet, this theory was challenged by Francesco Redi and later disproved by Louis Pasteur in the 19th century by proving that the microorganisms were derived from the air; they proved that if one controls the air, then the microorganisms do not appear. Zacharias and Hans Jansen invented the microscope that helped Robert Hooke and Antonie van Leeuwenhoek to view the microorganisms respectively. It is indeed through Hooke's work on cell theory and van Leeuwenhoek's discovery of "animalcules" or microbes, that we learned about life as unseen (Wollman et al., 2015; Opal, 2010).

The second Golden Age: This age lies between the 1940s to 1960s and is characterized by some major milestones. These include the discovery of antibiotics such as penicillin, the establishment of DNA as the material for heredity, and the invention of the electron microscope to examine viruses. This approach was later developed in the 19th century by some scientists like Pasteur and Robert Koch into the

germ theory to describe specific disease-causing situations. Since then, different kinds of vaccines, antiseptics, and antibiotics started being developed, and with them, medical science became advanced (Trivedi et al., 2010).

The third Golden Age: In this age, the field of microbiology is rapidly growing with new discoveries in a single day. Biotechnology and genetic engineering use microbes in the direct generation of therapeutic proteins and even for gene editing. Technologies used in genetic engineering, genome manipulation, positive use of microbes, etc. have been developed recently (Vitorino & Bessa, 2017).

THE DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE OF MICROBIOLOGY

Many scientists worked hard for the development and growth of microbiology. The list of contributors is too brief to be summarized here. In this chapter, we will only highlight some of the most recognized and best-known successes of microbiology. George W. Beadle and Edward Tatum laid the foundation of microbial genetics. In 1941, they conducted experiments on *Neurospora crassa* mutants of the bread mold fungus to establish the relationship between genes and enzymes. This gave birth to the one gene, one enzyme hypothesis. Lederberg, Beadle, and Tatum won the Nobel Prize in 1958 for discovering the hypothesis of one gene one enzyme. Max Delbruck and Salvadore Luria described the genetic nature of viruses in 1943. They also demonstrated that gene mutations occur spontaneously and are not conditioned by environmental factors (Opal, 2010). During transformation in bacteria, DNA is the genetic material carrying information that was established by Oswald Avery, Colin MacLeod, and Maclyn McCarty in 1944. In 1952 Joshua came up with the term 'Plasmid' for the first time to describe non-chromosomal genetic material in bacteria. Lederberg and his colleague discovered that genetic information could be transferred from one bacterium to another via a bacteriophage, and it was called transduction. Lederberg and his wife Esther introduced a special technique for the study of bacterial mutants, which is now called 'replica plating' which is used to shift bacterial colonies from one agar plate to another in such a manner that the latter should be a replica of the former (Opal, 2010).

Lederberg's discoveries in bacterial genetics, transduction, and conjugation have made significant advancements in science which led to the development of modern molecular and genetics techniques. He has himself revolutionized the world of bacterial genetics and biochemistry. As might have been expected, the structure of the DNA molecule was not described until 1953, when Watson and Crick described the enzyme replication of DNA, an astonishing discovery that brought significant enlightenment in understanding the molecular basis of inheritance and gene expression. In 1959, the Nobel Prize was given to Ochoa and Kornberg for isolating and synthesizing the enzyme, this important molecule that plays a central role in the biosynthesis of RNA and DNA. In 1968, the Nobel Prize for Physiology and Medicine was awarded to Robert William Holley, Har Gobind Khorana and Marshall Warren Nirenberg for cracking the genetic code and how it functions in the synthesis of proteins. Max Delbrück, Alfred Hershey, and Salvador Luria shared the Nobel

Prize in Medicine and Physiology for their findings on the mechanism and genetic structure of the bacteriophage in 1969 (Opal, 2010; Hussain et al., 2024b; Vitorino & Bessa, 2017). Albert Claude, George Emil Palade, and Christian de Duve were also awarded the prestigious prize in 1974 for introducing the ability to isolate cell parts to study the structure and chemistry of cells individually. This kind of research greatly helped in discovering ribosomes and lysosomes.

Temin and David Baltimore were given the Nobel Prize in 1975 for studying the relationship between tumor viruses and the genetic material. In 1976, Blumberg and Gajdusek worked on a test to be developed showing the hepatitis virus in donated blood, as well as an experimental vaccine against the disease that won them a Nobel Prize. Two years later, the prize was given to Arber, Smith, and Nathans for the discovery of restriction enzymes and their applications (Trivedi et al., 2010). Microbiology has a very rich history that traces back to ancient times. Further advancements in the world of microbial life were made through the invention of more sophisticated and advanced techniques (Trivedi et al., 2010). **Table 1** summarizes the history and discoveries of the major microbial processes, agents, mechanisms, etc. These discoveries not only revolutionized the basic idea but also gives new agricultural concepts, industrial involvement, and scientific knowledge, thus forming the core foundation of modern microbiology.

Table 1. The major discoveries, processes, and developments in the domain of Microbiology

Year	Discovery, process, mechanisms, concepts
460-370 BC	Hippocrates proposed the "four humors" theory for illness: yellow bile, black bile, phlegm, and blood.
384-322 BC	Aristotle introduced the Theory of Spontaneous Generation (life from non-living matter).
129-200 AD	Galen of Pergamon developed the Miasmatic Theory (disease caused by "bad air" or miasmatic odors).
1220-52	Rogen Bacon introduced that disease is caused by living creatures that are invisible.
1546	G. Fracastoro introduced that disease is caused by 'seed' or 'germ' that spreads from person to person.
1658	A. Kircher recognized the importance of bacteria and microbes in causing disease.
1665	R. Hooke coined the term 'cells'.
1676	Leeuwenhoek discovered animalcules.
1688	Francesco Redi disproved spontaneous generation with his experiment on maggots and demonstrated mistaken beliefs.
1729	Lazzaro Spallanzani contradicted Needham by showing that sealed, boiled broth remained microbe-free.
1745	John Needham supported spontaneous generation with flawed broth experiments.
1786	Otto Friedrich Muller first classified bacteria.
1798	E. Jenner introduced the first successful small pox vaccine.

1799	The theory of spontaneous generation was attacked by Spallanzani.
1839	T. Schwann and M. Schleiden formulated the cell theory.
1857	Pasteur showed that fermentation of lactic acid is caused by microorganisms.
1858	Rudolf Virchow discovered that all cells originate from preexisting cells.
1861	Pasteur showed that microorganisms do not emerge from spontaneous generation.
1867	J. Lister published his findings on antiseptic surgery.
1869	Nucleic acids were discovered by Johann Meischer.
1876-77	Koch discovered that *Bacillus anthracis* causes anthrax.
1881	Bacteria were cultured on gelatin by Koch.
1882-84	Koch discovered Tubercle bacilli. Koch's postulates were published. Metchnikoff described phagocytosis. Autoclave was developed. Gram stain was developed.
1885	Rabies vaccine was developed by Pasteur.
1887	Petri dishes were made by R. Petri.
1892	Dimitri Ivanovski provided evidence of TMV virus.
1897	Ross showed that a mosquito carries a malarial parasite.
1899	Beijerinck proved that tobacco mosaic virus is caused by a virus.
1906	The serologic test for syphilis for the first time was developed by A. Wasserman.
1907	The concept of longevity via beneficial microbes was developed.
1908	Paul Ehrlich use chemotherapy research for syphilis treatment.
1910-11	F. Rous discovered cancer-inducing viruses.
1915-17	Felix d'Herelle and Frederick William Twort independently discovered bacterial viruses.
1923	Bergey's manual first edition, was introduced.
1928	Bacterial transformation was discovered by Griffith.
1929	Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin.
1935	Wendell Stanley crystallized the tobacco mosaic virus.
1944	Avery showed that, in the transformation process, DNA carries the information.
1946	Lederberg and Tatum described bacterial conjugation.
1952	Hershey and Chase demonstrated that bacteriophage inject DNA into host cells. Zinder and Lederberg described generalized transduction.
1953	A double helix structure for DNA by Watson & Crick was proposed.
1954	The first vaccine for polio was developed by Jonas Salk.
1957	Isaacs and Lindenmann discovered Interferon.
1958	Lederberg studied the genetic material of bacteria, genetic recombination, and organization of the hereditary material.
1966	Rous discovered tumor-inducing viruses.
1971	Theodor Otto Diener identified viroid.

1975	Kohler & Milstein developed monoclonal antibodies production technique.
1977	Archaeobacteria was recognized as a distinct group.
1982	A recombinant hepatitis B vaccine was developed.
1983-84	Kary Mullis developed polymerase chain reaction (PCR).
1990	Human gene therapy testing started for the first time.
1995	Edward B. Lewis, Christiane Nusslein-Volhard, and Eric F. Wieschaus the physiology of genetics of microorganisms.
1997	Stanley B. Prusiner discovered prions.
1988	T.C. Onstott, D.L. Balkwill, and others discovered deep in Earth's crust microbial life under extreme conditions.
2002	WHO/FAO defined probiotics as live microorganisms that, when administered in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit on the host.
2003	Giant viruses like Mimivirus in 2003 and Pandoravirus in 2013 were discovered by Jean-Michel Claverie and Didier Raoult.
2005	*Helicobacter pylori* and peptic ulcer disease caused by bacteria, not by eating spicy food, by Barry Marshall and Robin Warren.
2005-2012	CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing was initially discovered by Francisco Mojica; later on in 2012, Jennifer Doudna and Emmanuelle Charpentier co-invented the CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing system.
2007	The NIH Human Microbiome Project Consortium discovered the Human Microbiome Project with contributions from other scientists.
2008	Françoise Barré-Sinoussi and Luc Montagnier discovered HIV as the cause of AIDS
2015	Teixobactin was discovered by Kim Lewis and Slava Epstein with the potential to treat resistant bacterial infections.
2015	The *mcr*-1 gene having resistance to colistin, a last resort antibiotic was discovered by Yi-Yun Liu and colleagues.
2015	The link between the Zika virus and birth defects like microcephaly was studied by researchers in Brazil, including Dr. Vanessa van der Linden.
2016-2020	CRISPR-Cas13, an RNA-targeting gene editing tool was developed by scientists like Feng Zhang and his team.
2017	Discovery of ultra-small, unculturable bacteria forming the Candidate Phyla Radiation superphylum by Jill Banfield and team at UC Berkeley.
2019	Discovery of prophages (dormant viruses) in the human gut by researchers at EMBL-EBI and Wellcome Sanger Institute.
2019-2020	Identification and sequencing of SARS-CoV-2 was done by Dr. Zhang Yongzhen and various global teams.
2020	The first CRISPR-based diagnostic test for SARS-CoV-2 detection was discovered, which was also approved by the FDA by Mammoth Biosciences, co-founded by Jennifer Doudna.
2021	A comprehensive catalog of over 140,000 viral species in the

	human gut called Gut Virome Catalog was developed by EMBL's European Bioinformatics Institute and Wellcome Sanger Institute.
2021	SARS-CoV-2rapid evolution, variants, and their identification by global researchers at GISAID, WHO, and public health laboratories.
2021	Creation of synthetic bacterial cells capable of dividing and growing by the J. Craig Venter Institute.
2022	Discovery of *Thiomargarita magnifica*, a bacterium visible to the naked eye, was done by Olivier Gros and colleagues at CNRS in France.
2022	The gut bacteria effect on immune system regulation was discovered by Eran Elinav and team at the Weizmann Institute of Science.
2023	Discovery of previously unknown ancient viruses in Siberian permafrost as it melted due to global warming by Jean-Michel Claverie and his team.
2023	Breakthrough in CRISPR Gene Therapy for Immune Disorder is ongoing research by Jennifer Doudna and Feng Zhang.
2024	Novel antimicrobial compounds are identified from extremophilic microbes by Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution and Harvard Medical School researchers.
2024	New applications of bacteriophage therapy are successfully used to treat resistant infections by researchers from University College London and Stanford University.

Data is retrieved from scribd.com; rivedi et al., 2010; Zwier, 2018; Medini et al., 2008; Vitorino & Bessa, 2017; Wollman et al., 2015; Javier, 2014; Weissbrodt et al., 2020; Hussain & Ali, 2024b; Solbach, 2021; Opal, 2010; Singh & Satyanarayana, 2017; Siddiquee, 2017; Microbe Notes.

DIVERSITY OF MICROORGANISMS

Microorganisms are diverse and versatile, inhabiting every nook and corner of the earth (Hussain et al., 2024a). There are five biological groups into which microorganisms are classified. These include bacteria, algae, protozoa, fungi, and viruses differing in cell type, morphology, genetic makeup, metabolism, reproduction, cell wall composition, habitat, etc. (Opal, 2010; Chand et al., 2021). Microorganisms cover the three domains of life: Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya (Matulich et al., 2013). Within bacteria and archaea, microbes present are all prokaryotes as they lack a nucleus in their cell, while domain eukarya contains microbes that are eukaryotic as their cell contains a nucleus. Viruses do not fall into any domains as they are considered non-living and are acellular, which means they do not have cells (Pitt & Barer, 2012). Bacteria and archaea have been informally grouped and called prokaryotes. Although the term was first used in the early part of the twentieth century, the definition of a prokaryote was not established until 1962, when R. Stanier and C. B. van Niel defined prokaryotes in terms of what they lacked compared with eukaryotic cells. For example, Stanier and van Niel recognized that prokaryotes do

not have membrane-bound nuclei cytoskeleton, membrane-bound organelles, as well as internal membranous structures such as the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi apparatus. Biochemical, genetic, and genomic research conducted since the 1960s has indicated that bacteria and archaea are distinct taxa. Because of new research and discoveries, Norman Pace proposed to eliminate the prokaryote term in 2006 itself and most of microbiologists are in agreement. This indicates that microbiology is an exciting and dynamic, as well as constantly evolving field of study. Microorganisms are a very diverse category of life, and the key to the survival of many biological and ecological processes (Vellai & Vida, 1999; Gerlitz et al., 2018; Willey et al., 2020; Sapp, 2005; Kumar, 2021). The sample classification of microorganisms is shown in **Figure 2**.

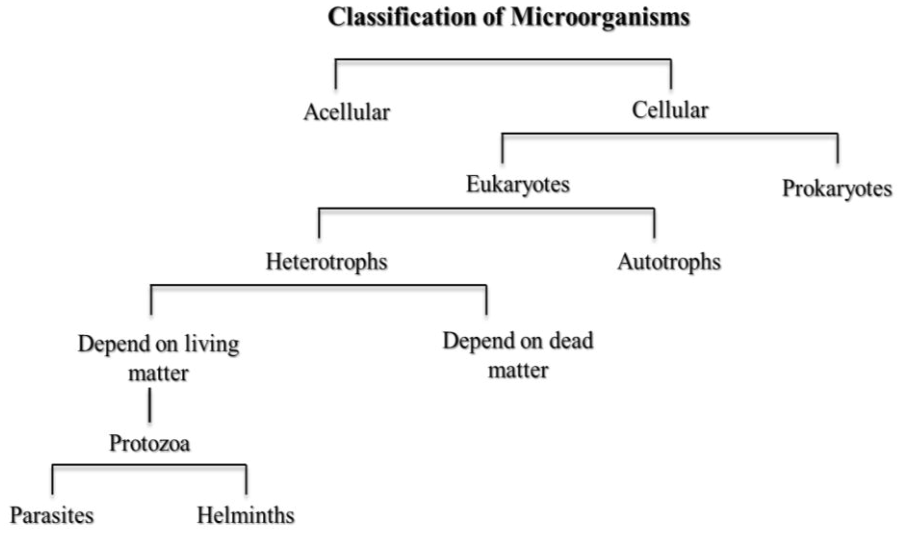


Figure 2. Simple classification of microorganisms

1. CLASSIFICATION OF MICROORGANISMS

With advancements in technologies, the classification system of microorganisms is changing. In the most common and widely used classification system, the microorganisms are divided into five kingdoms. Microorganism classification systems are split into domain, kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, and species. The science that classifies microorganisms is called taxonomy, which consists of three components: classification, nomenclature, and identification. The classification hierarchy is made up of groups which are called taxa. Taxonomy classifies both new as well as preexisting organisms. Binomial nomenclature is used for scientifically naming microorganisms using two words that refer to the genus and the species. The names are in Latin, and the first letter of the genera name is always capitalized. Microorganisms are usually classified based on their morphological characteristics, differential staining, mode of nutrition, reproduction biochemical testing, genetic makeup, DNA fingerprinting or DNA base composition, polymerase

chain reaction, and DNA chips (Sarethy et al., 2014; Gajdács, 2020; Zhou, 2023; Bisen, 2020; Moore et al., 2010).

In this section, there will be an introduction to the main types of microorganisms: bacteria, archaea, fungi, protozoa, algae, and viruses, each distinguished by unique structural and functional features. With their varied functions, they are essential to both the world's natural ecosystems and to human health.

Bacteria

Bacteria, a unicellular organism, are one of the oldest living things on earth about 3 billion years old fossils of cyanobacteria have been found by scientists. All of them lack a nucleus, so they are prokaryotes. They are found in a variety of shapes despite being small and simply complex, like cocci, bacillus, spirillum, spirochete, or vibrio. Cocci can occur singly or in pairs (diplococci), e.g., *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, in chains e.g., *Streptococcus*, in groups of four called tetrads, e.g., *Micrococcus luteus*, in clusters, e.g., *Staphylococcus*, and in groups of eight called cubical packets, e.g., *Sarcina ventriculi*. Rod-shaped bacteria are also flexible and vary in size and shape. Vibrio is comma-shaped, e.g., *Vibrio cholerae*; spirochetes are spherical, which are flexible with internal flagella, e.g., *Treponema pallidum*; *spirilla* is rigid spirals, e.g., *Spirillum minus*. Some lack particular fixed shapes and are termed pleomorphic, e.g., *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, while others form filaments that are similar to fungi and are termed actinobacteria, e.g., *Streptomyces* specie (Chaudhry et al., 2018; Sapp, 2005; Pitt & Barer, 2012; Opal, 2010; Hussain & Ali, 2024a; Forero et al., 2004; Ploux et al., 2011). The different form of bacteria is illustrated in **Figure 3.**

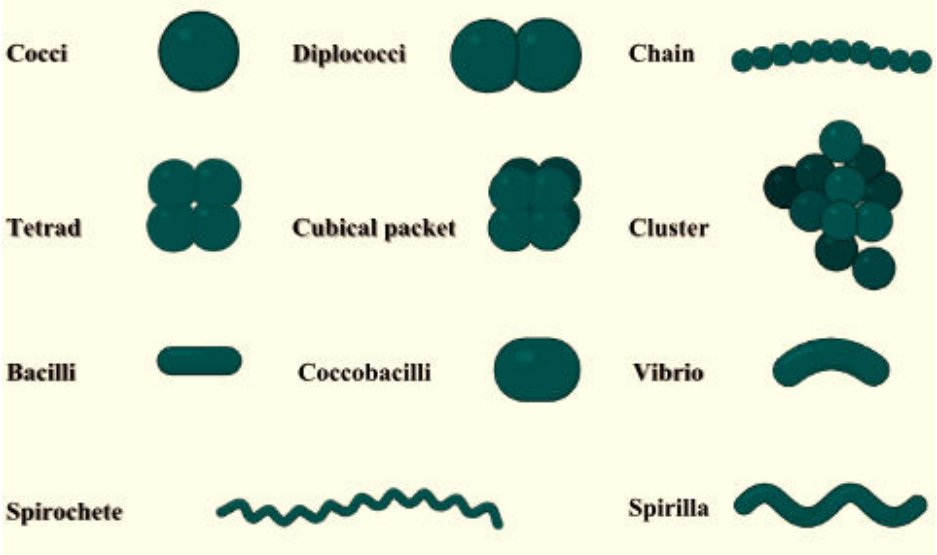


Figure 3. Different forms of bacteria

Bacterial cells are surrounded by a cell envelope consisting of many layers, which include the plasma membrane, which is a lipid bilayer, the innermost layer that

surrounds the cytoplasm, controlling the movement of substances in and out of the cell, and the cell wall which is chemically complex containing peptidoglycan and covers the plasma membrane, which provides shape and protection, with Gram-positive bacteria having a thick layer of peptidoglycan and Gram-negative bacteria having a thin layer and an outer membrane. The slime layer or capsule is not always present which surrounds or covers the cell wall and provides protection and aids in adherence. Cytoplasm is a jelly-like substance inside the cells that contains other cellular structures, enzymes, nutrients, etc. Most bacteria do not have membrane-bound organelles, so the internal structure appears quite simple. Morphologically the genetic materials are present in a discrete region called the nucleoid as bacteria lack a true nucleus. Bacteria may also contain plasmids, a small circular DNA molecules separated from chromosomal DNA often carrying genes for antibiotic resistance. Ribosomes needed for protein synthesis are scattered about the cytoplasm. Many bacteria use flagella for their locomotion as well. Bacteria also have fimbriae, or pili which are short, thin, hair-like structures that help in attachment and adhesion for important processes like colonization, biofilm formation, and infection. Pili are also involved in the conjugation process. Some bacteria may also form endospores under extreme conditions for their survival, e.g., *Clostridium* (Amend & Shock, 2001; Daramola et al., 2011; Maqueda et al., 2008; Forero et al., 2004).

Algae

Algae is derived from a Latin word meaning "seaweed," first used by Linnaeus in 1753. Algae consists of a large heterogeneous assemblage of diverse plants in habitat, size, organization, physiology, biochemistry, and reproduction. Algae are chlorophyll-containing primitive plants comprising both prokaryotes and eukaryotes. These are capable of photosynthesis and reproduction. Most algae are not plants, and most of them belong to the Kingdom Protista. Algae produce oxygen like plants and contribute about 70% of all oxygen produced on earth (Chapman, 2013; Guiry, 2012). Algae are either single-celled e.g., *Chlorella,* or multi-celled such as *kelp*. Most of the algae are aquatic but may also be found in oceans, terrestrial areas, saline water, tree bark, etc. as algae are very versatile and can survive in extreme conditions as well. They may be classified based on their pigments and cellular structures into green, blue, red, and brown algae as well as cyanobacteria and diatoms. Multicellular algae have more defined parts such as thallus, stipe, blades, and anchor. Algal species lack true roots, stems, and leaves (Baweja & Sahoo, 2015; Sremac et al., 2024; Ścieszka & Klewicka, 2019; Mukul M. Barwant, Vanita C. Karande et al., 2024)

Algae are surviving by optimizing the absorption of light and anchorage. They contain a nucleus for storing genetic material and a chloroplast for pigments like chlorophyll that help in photosynthesis. Diatoms have silica cell walls and additional pigments. The algae cell wall is made up of cellulose. Algae also have mitochondria for energy production, vacuoles responsible for maintaining cell pressure and storage, and a plasma membrane that surrounds the cell. Additionally, some algae have flagella for movement. Algae are primary producers serving as the base of aquatic food chain. They are being used for the production of biofuels, pharmaceutical

products, food supplements, and bioactive compounds. They are also involved in wastewater treatment and mitigating climate change (El Gamal, 2010; Abdel-Raouf N, 2012; A.Raja, 2013; Shalaby, 2011; Mukul M. Barwant, Vanita C. Karande et al, 2024). The various forms of microorganism that exist are shown in **Figure 4.**

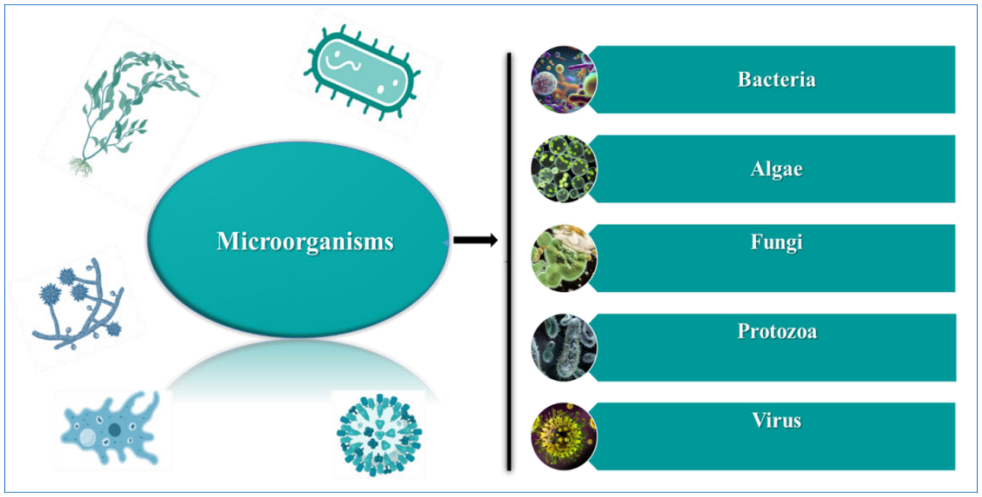


Figure 4: Different forms of microorganisms

Fungi

The word fungus is derived from the Latin word fungour, which means "to flourish". Fungi are a highly diverse group of organisms that include yeasts, molds, and mushrooms, which are eukaryotes and greatly vary in shape, size, mechanism, and complexity. Fungi are decomposers that get their nutrients from the decomposition of organic matter, as they cannot make their own food because they lack pigments; hence, they are known as heterotrophs. Most fungi are multicellular, while yeasts are single-celled and lack hyphae and mycelium (Reid & Webster, 2012; Aliyu & Gambo, 2014; Naranjo-Ortiz & Gabaldón, 2019). Fungi are made up of thread-like structures called hyphae, which are long and form a network called mycelium. Hyphae are tubular and can be divided into septa, except coenocyte hyphae which are without septa. These hyphae help in absorbing nutrients as they grow and branch out. Fungi reproduce through spores sexually and asexually. For asexual reproduction, these spores are present in specialized structures called sporangia, while in mushrooms, they are found in fruiting bodies (Porras-Alfaro & Bayman, 2011).

The cell wall of fungi is mainly composed of chitin, which provides rigidity, support, and protection. Cell membranes are also present, which facilitate the movement of substances. They have a nucleus, which contains genetic material. The cytoplasm is the place where cellular processes occur and contain mitochondria for energy production, ribosomes and endoplasmic reticulum for protein and lipid synthesis, Golgi apparatus for packaging proteins, and vacuole to store nutrients and wastes. All these structural components help fungi to grow, reproduce, and carry out essential functions (Pagani et al., 2023). Fungi are also involved in medicine and vaccine

production. They are essential decomposers and recycle nutrients in the ecosystem. Fungi have a substantial contribution in different industries. For instance, yeast is involved in baking, brewing, and cheese making. Despite their positive role, they are also considered silent killers as they cause deadly diseases in humans, animals, and plants (Lange, 2014; Thambugala et al., 2024; Sudha et al., 2016).

Protozoa

The term protozoa are derived from the Greek words "protos," meaning "first", and "zoia," meaning "animal." Protozoa are unicellular eukaryotic organisms that differ in size, shape, function, and complexity and are placed in the kingdom Protista. These are heterotrophic and feed on bacteria, algae, and organic matter; therefore, they are also referred to as "animal-like." Protozoa are present in diverse environments, including fresh water, marine water, and soil (Esteban & Fenchel, 2020). Protozoa are eukaryotes, having a complex cellular structures that are capable of carrying out all functions of life (Sattley & Madigan, 2015). Surrounded by a plasma membrane, the cytoplasm has two layers: the ectoplasm as the upper layer and the endoplasm as the inner layer. It has a nucleus that governs all the activities of the cell, and mitochondria generate energy. Further, movement is also observed in the specialized structures, namely flagella, cilia, or pseudopodia (Newbold et al., 2015).

They maintain a balance of water using a contractile vacuole and digest food within food vacuoles. The Golgi apparatus and endoplasmic reticulum carry out the processes of metabolizing and transportation within the cell, thus enabling them to survive in various settings. They reproduce both sexually through conjugation and gamete fusion as well as asexually through binary or multiple fission (Pitt & Barer, 2012). Protozoa play very important roles in ecosystems, medicine, and industries. They are very fundamental to the food chain because of their control of bacterial populations while they recycle nutrients by breaking down organic matter. Protozoa can be predators and prey, among many, which maintains the balance in both aquatic and soil environments. Some protozoa are involved in the purification process of wastewater treatment in some industries, while others are pathogenic causing diseases like amoebiasis, malaria, and giardiasis (Pauli et al., 2005; Dumètre et al., 2012).

Viruses

The word virus comes from the Latin word "vīrus" meaning poison or noxious liquid, and a Greek word called "ios" which also means poison. Viruses can be defined as microscopic infectious agents ranging from 20 to 300 nm in size. There is still debate on whether they are organisms or not, as it is still uncertain whether they are living or non-living. Viruses do not have true cells, and they cannot reproduce on their own, so they rely on host cells to replicate and propagate. Viruses exist in many shapes and sizes and vary based on their genetic material, host, and replication process. They contain genetic material, either DNA or RNA, which is encased in a protein coat called a capsid, which is also enveloped by a layer of lipid in some cases (Taylor, 2015; Koonin et al., 2006; Koonin et al., 2021). Viruses are involved in causing diseases in humans, plants, and animals. They can cause diseases ranging from

common flu to deadly conditions like HIV, AIDS, and recently COVID-19 (Gizaw, 2020). Viruses also play an important role beyond disease-causing. For instance, these are essential in medical research for vaccine and gene therapy development. Viruses are also being employed in biotechnology as vectors for gene delivery (Hoşbul & Şahiner, 2021; Gizaw, 2020).

Viroid and prion

Viroids are infectious agents that are protein-free fragments of circular single-stranded RNA that mainly cause diseases in plants, such as potato spindle tuber disease. They do not have a protein coating. Prions are a protein type that causes abnormal folding of normal proteins in the brain. They are the cause of deadly neurodegenerative diseases in humans and animals, Creutzfeldt-Jackob disease (CJD) is caused by Prions (Solbach, 2021).

DISCIPLINES OF MICROBIOLOGY

The discipline of microbiology is vast and covers a wide range of topics that range from basic understanding to advanced applications. The field of microbiology is divided into the following sub-discipline (**Figure 5**) (Bisen, 2020; Solbach, 2021; Siddiquee, 2017; Opal, 2010).

Bacteriology: The study of bacteria, their morphology, ecology, classification, and physiology are studied in bacteriology. The bacteriologists are interested in bacteria's role in disease, health, and other applications.

Parasitology: The study of parasites that live in or on hosts and usually causes disease are defined and studied in parasitology. It focuses on biology, ecology, and interactions of parasitic organisms, including helminths, protozoa, and arthropods.

Phycology: The study of algae is termed algology or more commonly phycology. Phycologists study the taxonomy, ecology, and biochemistry of algae, which possess significant functions in an ecosystem, biofuel, or food.

Virology: The study of viruses, their structure, functions, interaction, mechanism, and genetics is called virology. Virologists study viruses to understand their nature and mechanism to develop vaccines and antiviral therapies.

Protozoology: The study of protozoa, unicellular eukaryotic organisms, is called protozoology. Protozoologists research types, habitats, life cycles, reproduction types, and roles of these microorganisms.

Mycology: The scientific study of fungi is called mycology. In this field, the fungal taxonomy, genetics, biochemical properties, and applications are studied.

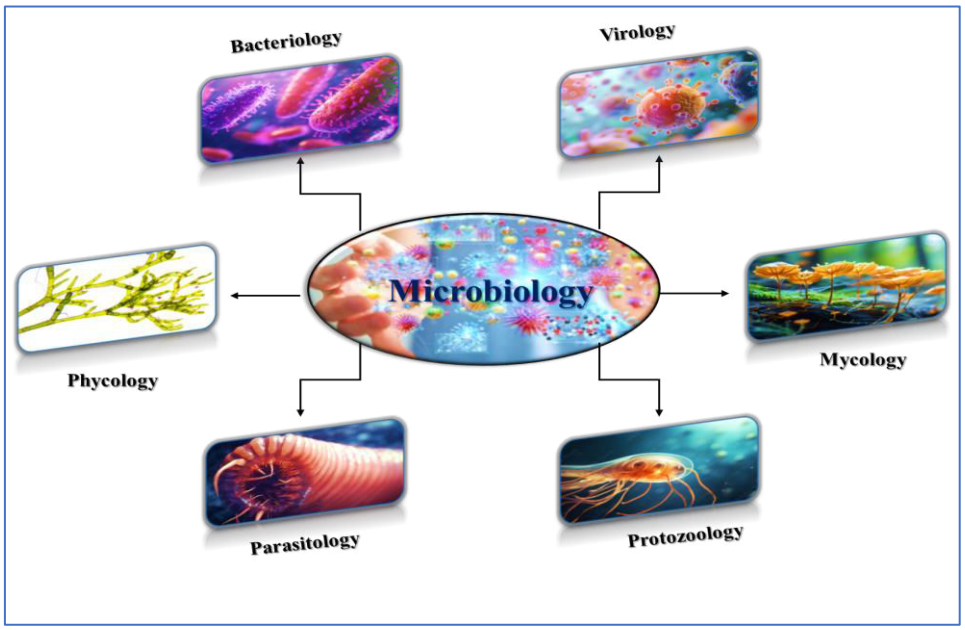


Figure 5. The basic branches of microbiology

SCOPE OF MICROBIOLOGY

The scope of microbiology is broad and encompasses a wide range of spectrums of disciplines, which dwell in the vast world of microorganisms to explore their involvement with humans, other living things, and the environment. Each of these broad disciplines is critical to understanding and making use of microbial life to solve global problems of health, food security, and environmental sustainability, thus underscoring the importance of microbiology in modern science, industry, and research (Maloy & Schaechter, 2006; Vallina et al., 2019). Microbiology is the study of the growth, characteristics, functions, applications and prevalence of microorganisms. A person specializing in the area of microbiology is termed as a microbiologist. A microbiologist deals with the fascinating world of microorganisms. With advancement in science and technology, the area of research in the domain of microbiology has remained open. Various institutes in Pakistan and abroad provide undergraduate as well as postgraduate degrees in the domain of microbiology. A Ph.D. or M.Phil. is necessary for a career in teaching as well as for research and development positions. Bachelor's degree holders can work as lab technicians, lab technologists, and biological scientists. Jobs of microbiologists are found in the research and development laboratories of government or private hospitals and organizations related to research, pharmaceutical, food, beverage, and chemical industries. Universities, institutes for research, and industrial companies hire microbiologists to perform basic, environmental, healthcare, and agricultural research. Microbiologists may also become faculty members in universities and colleges. For this, a master's degree is acceptable, but a doctorate provides greater opportunities (Panikov, 2010; Sattley & Madigan, 2015; Hussain, Jamal, et al., 2024).

The understanding of basic idea and concepts in every field plays an important role, as they help to develop knowledge and understanding and build interest (Hussain & Ali, 2023). Usually studying forward, a learner forgets the basic principles, and there is no specific time to relearn or revise them. Hence, this section will give an overview of the subject and the potential careers that a microbiologist can pursue. There are two main branches in which fields of microbiology can be divided (Trivedi et al., 2010):

1. **Pure**
2. **Applied**

Pure microbiology

Pure microbiology is the field of study that specializes in microorganisms to acquire fundamental knowledge about their biology, structure, metabolism, genetics, and relations with other organisms and with the environments. It focuses on the basic mechanisms underlying microbial life without direct relevance to practical applications. Some fields of pure microbiology are shown in **Figure 6**.

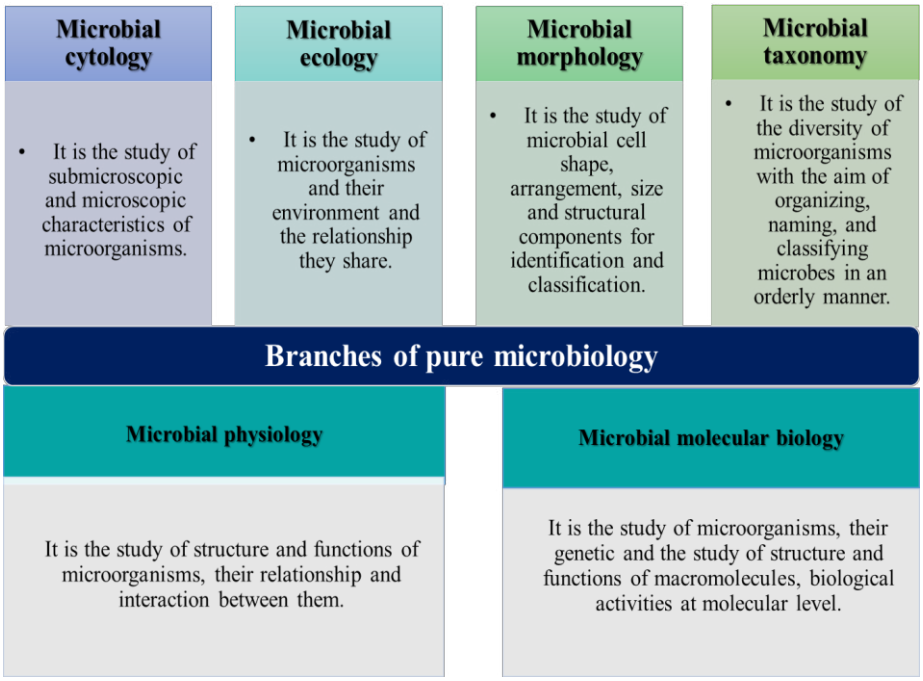


Figure 6. Fields of pure microbiology

Applied microbiology

Applied microbiology is the practical use of the knowledge acquired from pure microbiology in solving real-life problems in the medical, agricultural, industrial, and environmental sectors. Its areas include using microorganisms for human advantages in health, food, conservation of the environment, and biotechnology. Some fields of applied microbiology are illustrated in **Figure 7**.

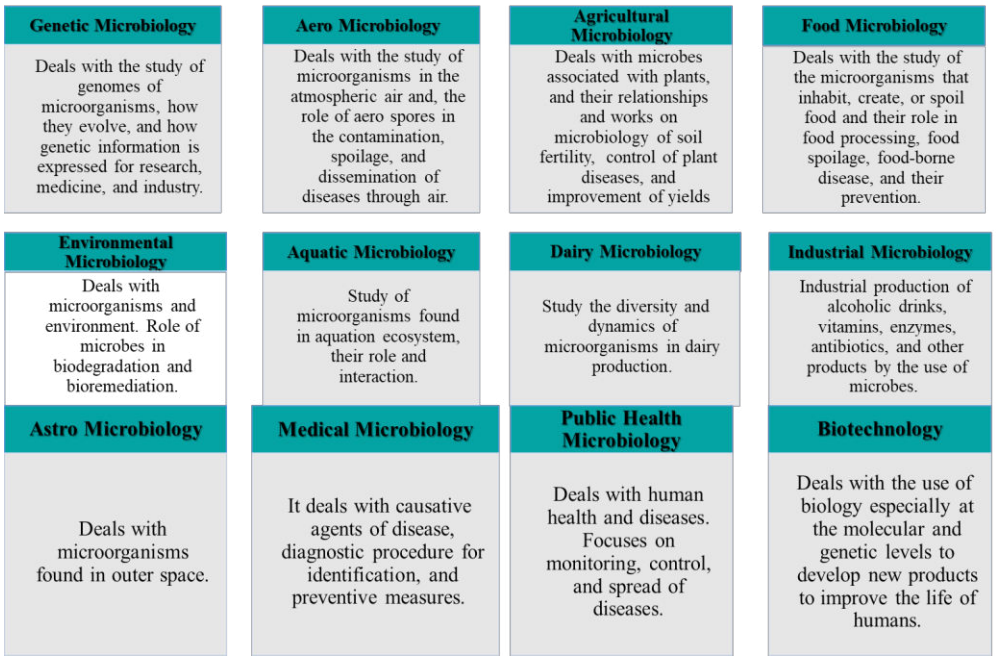


Figure 7. Fields of applied microbiology.

CAREER OPPORTUNITIES

A microbiologist is not just a scientist, but rather an explorer, protector, creator, solver, and a helper who shapes the future of our world. Microbiology offers diverse career paths across various sectors due to its wide applications in healthcare, research, industry, and the environment. Microbiologists are much in demand in pharmaceuticals, agricultural, and environmental sectors. It offers many career choices, like hospitals and labs as a clinical microbiologist to analyze samples and monitor diseases and pathogens. Microbiologists can work in different industries to use microbes for the industrial production of drugs to ensure that pharmaceutical drugs are safe and effective. Checking for contamination, developing antibiotics, and developing vaccines are also included in microbiologists' profile. **Figure 8** summarizes versatile career opportunities in the field of microbiology.

In the food industry, microbiologists are involved in the processing, production, and preservation of food products. Microbiologists play an important role in studying microbe's role in the ecosystem and provide solutions for pollution and waste management. Microbiologists are involved in bioremediation and environmental conservation. As a research scientist, they can carry out basic or applied research in academic institutions, government agencies, and in private companies. They also assist the public health agencies in disease investigation and surveillance. Microbiologist also work as quality control analysts and quality assurance analysts to ensure the quality and safety of products. In agricultural sectors, microbiologists help to improve crop production, soil health, and pest control. Microbiologist can work as

a virologist, immunologist, regulatory affairs specialist, bioinformatics specialist, and forensic microbiologist as well. Of course, all these fields are highly rewarding and allow many opportunities for personal growth, achievement, and novel and significant contributions to society.

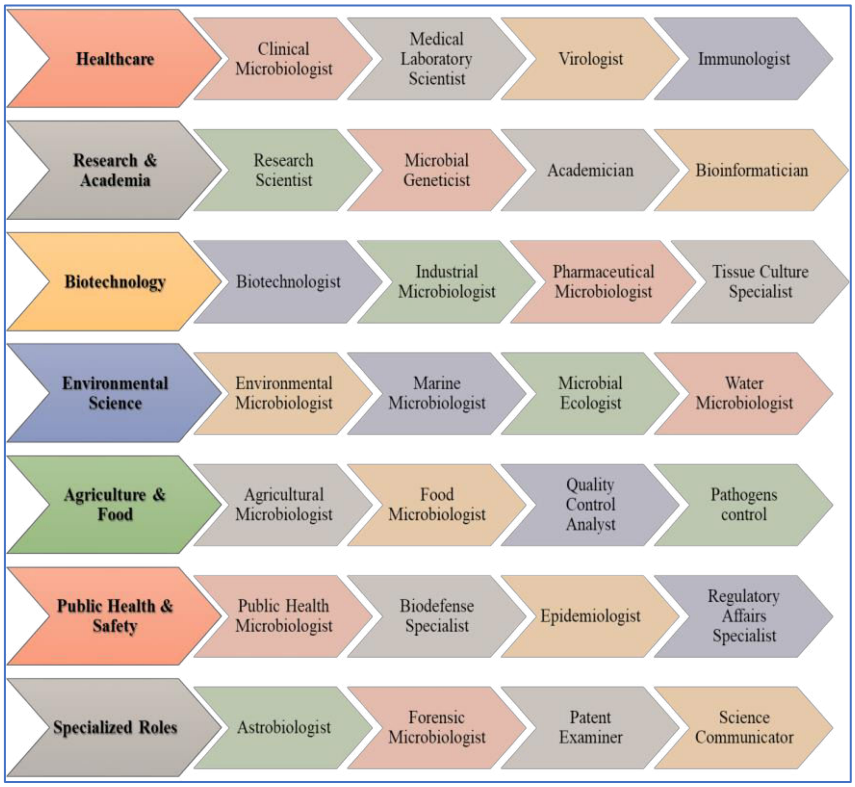


Figure 8. Career opportunities in microbiology.

IMPORTANCE OF MICROBIOLOGY

Microorganisms are the key that serve as soldiers in saving the world. These are versatile and diverse creatures with capabilities of continuously evolving, growing, thriving, surviving, and adapting in favorable as well as extreme conditions. Unfortunately, some of these microorganisms also pose a threat as pathogens, but a large number plays an essential part in sustaining life. They also play an essential role in ecological balance, food production, drug development, and soil fertility. The human body microbiota contributes to human health by maintaining the GIT microflora as well as enhancing the immune system functions. Different industries use microorganisms to produce biofuels, enzymes, and antibiotics. Microorganisms aid in environmental remediation by degrading different pollutants. Viruses, especially retroviruses, are being used for gene therapy. Vaccines are being developed through microorganisms as well. Bacteria like *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* are used to promote gut health as probiotics (Hussain, Qureshi, et al., 2024; Hussain, 2024).

Fungi and bacteria are used in the fermentation industry for cheese, bread, yogurt, and wine production. *Lactobacillus* are used for food preservation in pickling and curing. Microorganisms are also used for the production of different vitamins. They are also used to increase the shelf life of food as bio-preservatives (Hussain et al., 2024). Microorganisms are involved in bioremediation, nitrogen fixation, biodegradation, and wastewater treatment. Microorganisms are also employed in bioleaching and biomining processes for the extraction of metals. In the agricultural sector, they are being used as biofertilizers and pesticides, as well as to decompose organic matter into compost that is rich in nutrients. They play a vital role in carbon cycling, greenhouse gas production and consumption affecting the climate (Hussain, 2024). In genetic engineering, microbes are used for gene cloning and protein expression. They also serve as model organisms for further research for biochemical and genetic studies (Hussain A, 2023). The major importance of microbiology is shown in **Figure 9**.

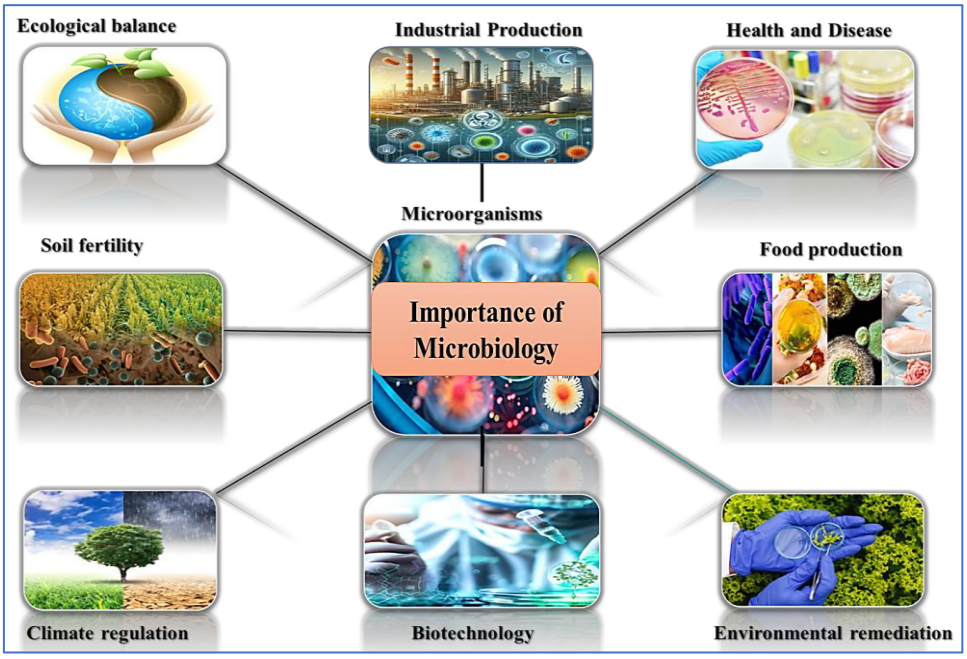


Figure 9. Importance of microbiology.

FUTURE PROSPECTS

The microbiology domain is an everlasting area of research that has the potential to be explored in many areas. Ranging from microorganism's beneficial role to identify them as lethal agents attracts researchers to explore them in details. Current trending areas in microbiology include the search for efficient and improved technologies and methods that help us to take action before any negative circumstances. Future areas include, but are not limited to, metagenomics, microbiome, agriculture, genetic engineering, biotechnological applications, and identification of new areas like using microbes as a drug. Synthetic biology is also much in demand, as it engineers' microorganisms for specific applications is another promising development in this

area. Nanotechnology and genomics studies have a promising future for microbiological research. Nanoparticles can be used as powerful antimicrobials and drug delivery systems, while nanobiosensors enable fast pathogen detection, etc., all aiding the new dimensions of microbiology (Barwant et al., 2024). The use of artificial intelligence and machine learning for data analysis is a current trend that may be integrated with microbiological research. Probiogenomics is an exciting discipline that explores the probiotic world from its genetic viewpoint for its health benefits. With the surfacing of infectious diseases, AMR, and sociological needs to have safe and better alternatives for health care. Microbiology labs will certainly shift in volume and nature of research and outcomes. One can undoubtedly state that in the coming years, microbes will play a significant role in treatment and designing novel diagnostic techniques. These sectors enhance future thinking in microbiology and foster innovation regarding human health, biotechnological, and environmental sustainability pursuits (Kumar et al., 2022; Sao & Verma, 2023; Yogananth Nagarajan, 2021; Bravo & Procop, 2009; Wolk & Dunne, 2011).

REFERENCES

- A.Raja, C. V. and A. A. (2013). Biological importance of Marine Algae- An overview. Int.J.Curr.Microbiol.App.Sci, 2(5), 222–227.
- Abdel-Raouf N. (2012). Agricultural importance of algae. African Journal of Biotechnology, 11(54), 11648–11658. https://doi.org/10.5897/ajb11.3983
- Aliyu, S., & Gambo, A. (2014). Isolation and Identification of Air Borne Fungal Spores and Fragments in Buildings within Usmanu Danfodiyo University Sokoto, Nigeria. Aceh International Journal of Science and Technology, 3(2), 66–72. https://doi.org/10.13170/AIJST.0302.03
- Amend, J. P., & Shock, E. L. (2001). Energetics of overall metabolic reactions of thermophilic and hyperthermophilic Archaea and Bacteria. FEMS Microbiology Reviews, 25(2), 175–243. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-6445(00)00062-0
- Barwant, M. M., Rasool, A., Mannam, V. K., Hussain, A., Abdullah, M., Memon, Z. nisa, Ahamad, M. I., Shirani, M., Maqbool, K. Z., Majeed, M., Asif, M., & Khan, U. A. (2024). Nanotechnology Applications in Livestock Farming and Animal Health. In Harnessing NanoOmics and Nanozymes for Sustainable Agriculture (pp. 413–442). https://doi.org/10.4018/979-8-3693-1890-4.ch020
- Baweja, P., & Sahoo, D. (2015). Classification of Algae (D. Sahoo & J. Seckbach (eds.); Vol. 26, Issue January, pp. 31–55). Springer Netherlands. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-94-017-7321-8_2
- Bisen, P. S. (2020). Microbial Taxonomy. Definitions, September 2014. https://doi.org/10.32388/q0fzp1
- Bravo, L. T. C., & Procop, G. W. (2009). Recent Advances in Diagnostic Microbiology. Seminars in Hematology, 46(3), 248–258. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.seminhematol.2009.03.009

- Chand, G., Kholia, D., Kumar, K., Kumar, R., Upadhyay, S. K., & Joshi, P. (2021). The role of microorganisms in bioremediation. Waste Management: Strategies, Challenges and Future Directions, 2, 187–214.
- Chapman, R. L. (2013). Algae: The world's most important "plants"-an introduction. Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change, 18(1), 5–12. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11027-010-9255-9
- Chaudhry, H. R., Muhammah, M., & Sattar, K. (2018). Virology Notes View project poetry and philosophy View project (Issue November 2016). https://www.researchgate.net/publication/313107648
- Daramola, M. O., Aransiola, E. F., & Adeogun, A. G. (2011). Comparative study of thermophilic and mesophilic anaerobic treatment of purified terephthalic acid (PTA) wastewater. Natural Science, 03(05), 371–378. https://doi.org/10.4236/ns.2011.35050
- Dumètre, A., Aubert, D., Puech, P. H., Hohweyer, J., Azas, N., & Villena, I. (2012). Interaction forces drive the environmental transmission of pathogenic protozoa. Applied and Environmental Microbiology, 78(4), 905–912. https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.06488-11
- El Gamal, A. A. (2010). Biological importance of marine algae. Saudi Pharmaceutical Journal, 18(1), 1–25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsps.2009.12.001
- Esteban, G. F., & Fenchel, T. M. (2020). Ecology of Protozoa. In Ecology of Protozoa. Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-59979-9
- Forero, M. G., Sroubek, F., & Cristóbal, G. (2004). Identification of tuberculosis bacteria based on shape and color. Real-Time Imaging, 10(4), 251–262. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rti.2004.05.007
- Gajdács, M. (2020). Taxonomy and nomenclature of bacteria with clinical and scientific importance: current concepts for pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists. Acta Pharmaceutica Hungarica, 89(4), 99–108. https://doi.org/10.33892/aph.2019.89.99-108
- Gerlitz, M., Knopp, M., Kapust, N., Xavier, J. C., & Martin, W. F. (2018). Elusive data underlying debate at the prokaryote-eukaryote divide. Biology Direct, 13(1), 1–12. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13062-018-0221-x
- Gizaw, B. (2020). Corona and Other Virus: Their Useful and Harmful Aspects. Journal of Virology Research & Reports, September, 1–11. https://doi.org/10.47363/jvrr/2020(1)105
- Guiry, M. D. (2012). How many species of algae are there? Journal of Phycology, 48(5), 1057–1063. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1529-8817.2012.01222.x

- Hoşbul, T., & Şahiner, F. (2021). Viruses and the importance of virus detection. Biosensors for Virus Detection. https://doi.org/10.1088/978-0-7503-3867-7ch1
- Hou, K., Wu, Z. X., Chen, X. Y., Wang, J. Q., Zhang, D., Xiao, C., Zhu, D., Koya, J. B., Wei, L., Li, J., & Chen, Z. S. (2022). Microbiota in health and diseases. Signal Transduction and Targeted Therapy, 7(1). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41392-022-00974-4
- Hussain A & Ali S.A (2024a). Deciphering the spectrum of genus Enterococcus. Science Synergy: Exploring Interdisciplinary Frontiers, 1, 135–150. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/382564704_deciphering_the_spectrum_of_genus_enterococcus
- Hussain, A., Rahman, M., Bibi, T., Fatima, R., Arif, I., Barwant, M. M., & Ali, S. A. (2024a). Prevalence of Microorganisms in Indoor Household Environ- ments and their Pathogenesis. Journal of Antimicrobial Agents, 10(1), 1–5. https://doi.org/10.37421/2472-1212.2024.10.328
- Hussain A & Ali S. A (2023). Introduction to Bioorganic Chemistry. Advances in chemical and biological sciences, 1, 1–12.
- Hussain A, Um-E-Habiba-U-Nisa, Muhammad Ali Raza, M. A. and S. A. A. (2024b). The Overview and Chemistry of Biomolecules. Emerging Trends in Biochemistry, 2 (ISBN 978-93-95847-05-6), 22–33.
- Hussain, A. (2024). Microorganisms and Climate Change : The Smallest Doing the Bigger. Blog Article, August. https://www.theearthneedslove.com/2024/08/microorganisms-and-climate-change.html
- Hussain A, and Ali SA (2024b). "Probiotics and Immunity: Exploring the Development of Probiotics Concept". EC Pharmacology and Toxicology 12.10: 01-06
- Hussain, A., Jamal, H. S., & Abid, M. (2024). The Basic Concepts and Scope of Biochemistry. Recent Trends in Multidisciplinary Research and Development, 1, 26–44. https://doi.org/10.25215/9189764560
- Hussain, A., Parveen, S., Riaz, M., Zia, A., & Abid Ali, S. (2024). Probiotics and Vegetable Oil Association: A Review. IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science, 1379(1), 012001. https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/1379/1/012001
- Hussain, A., Qureshi, S. R., & Parveen, S. (2024). The Potential use of Probiotics as Medicine. Gut Heath, Microbiota and Animal Diseases, 30–43. https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.47278/book.CAM/2024.058

- Hussain A, & Ali S.A. (2023). Probiotics Development and CRISPR-Cas System. Conference Presentation, Science Innovation Showcase, December, 1–18. https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.23339.00808
- Javier, H. (2014). The Four Humours Theory. Essai, 12(21), 72–74. http://dc.cod.edu/essai/vol12/iss1/21
- Koonin, E. V., Dolja, V. V., Krupovic, M., & Kuhn, J. H. (2021). Viruses Defined by the Position of the Virosphere within the Replicator Space. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews, 85(4), 1–26. https://doi.org/10.1128/mmbr.00193-20
- Koonin, E. V., Senkevich, T. G., & Dolja, V. V. (2006). The ancient virus world and evolution of cells. Biology Direct, 1, 1–27. https://doi.org/10.1186/1745-6150-1-29
- Kumar, R. (2021). Evaluation of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cell. Asian Journal of Pharmaceutical Research, January, 202–205. https://doi.org/10.52711/2231-5691.2021.00036
- Kumar, R., Sood, U., Kaur, J., Anand, S., Gupta, V., Patil, K. S., & Lal, R. (2022). The rising dominance of microbiology: what to expect in the next 15 years? Microbial Biotechnology, 15(1), 110–128. https://doi.org/10.1111/1751-7915.13953
- Lange, L. (2014). The importance of fungi and mycology for addressing major global challenges. IMA Fungus, 5(2), 463–471. https://doi.org/10.5598/imafungus.2014.05.02.10
- Maloy, S., & Schaechter, M. (2006). The era of microbiology: A Golden Phoenix. International Microbiology, 9(1), 1–7.
- Mandal, S. P., & Kundu, M. (2021). An Overview on Impact of Electromagnetic Radiations on Environment and Human Health. GSC Biological and Pharmaceutical Sciences, 6(6), 3079–3083. https://doi.org/10.31305/rrijm.2019.v04.i03.695
- Maqueda, M., Sánchez-Hidalgo, M., Fernández, M., Montalbán-López, M., Valdivia, E., & Martínez-Bueno, M. (2008). Genetic features of circular bacteriocins produced by Gram-positive bacteria. FEMS Microbiology Reviews, 32(1), 2–22. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6976.2007.00087.x
- Matulich, K. L., Mohamed, D. J., & Martiny, J. B. H. (2013). Microbial Biodiversity. In Encyclopedia of Biodiversity (pp. 252–258). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-384719-5.00236-7
- Medini, D., Serruto, D., Parkhill, J., Relman, D. A., Donati, C., Moxon, R., Falkow, S., & Rappuoli, R. (2008). Microbiology in the post-genomic era. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 6(6), 419–430. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro1901

- Moore, E. R. B., Mihaylova, S. A., Vandamme, P., Krichevsky, M. I., & Dijkshoorn, L. (2010). Microbial systematics and taxonomy: Relevance for a microbial commons. Research in Microbiology, 161(6), 430–438. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.resmic.2010.05.007
- Mukul M. Barwant1, Vanita C. Karande, A. H. (2024). Cytogenetics and cytomorphological advances in seaweeds. Cytogenetics of Plants & Its Recent Approaches, 1(April), 24–30. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/379607017_CYTOGENETICS_AND_CYTOMORPHOLOGICALADVANCES_IN_SEAWEEDS
- Naranjo-Ortiz, M. A., & Gabaldón, T. (2019). Fungal evolution: major ecological adaptations and evolutionary transitions. Biological Reviews, 94(4), 1443–1476. https://doi.org/10.1111/brv.12510
- Newbold, C. J., De la Fuente, G., Belanche, A., Ramos-Morales, E., & McEwan, N. R. (2015). The role of ciliate protozoa in the rumen. Frontiers in Microbiology, 6(NOV), 1–14. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2015.01313
- Novak Babič, M., Gostinčar, C., & Gunde-Cimerman, N. (2020). Microorganisms populating the water-related indoor biome. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 104(15), 6443–6462. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-020-10719-4
- Opal, S. M. (2010). A Brief History of Microbiology and Immunology. In A. W. Artenstein (Ed.), Vaccines: A Biography. Springer New York. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4419-1108-7
- Pagani, D. M., Ventura, S. P. R., Vu, D., Mendes-Pereira, T., Ribeiro Tomé, L. M., Carvalho, D. S. de, Costa-Rezende, D. H., Kato, R. B., García, G. J. Y., Geml, J., Robert, V., They, N. H., Brenig, B., Azevedo, V., Scroferneker, M. L., Valente, P., & Góes-Neto, A. (2023). Unveiling Fungal Community Structure along Different Levels of Anthropic Disturbance in a South American Subtropical Lagoon. Journal of Fungi, 9(9). https://doi.org/10.3390/jof9090890
- Panikov, N. S. (2010). Microbial Ecology. In Environmental Biotechnology (Issue March, pp. 121–191). Humana Press. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-60327-140-0_4
- Pauli, W., Jax, K., & Berger, S. (2005). Protozoa in Wastewater Treatment: Function and Importance. In Biodegradation and Persistance (Vol. 2, pp. 203–252). Springer-Verlag. https://doi.org/10.1007/10508767_3
- Pitt, T. L., & Barer, M. R. (2012). Classification, identification and typing of micro-organisms. In Medical Microbiology (Vol. 8, Issue 75, pp. 24–38). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-7020-4089-4.00018-4

- Ploux, L., Ponche, A., & Anselme, K. (2011). Bacteria/material interfaces: Role of the material and cell wall properties. Surface and Interfacial Aspects of Cell Adhesion, March 2013, 65–101. https://doi.org/10.1201/b12179-8
- Porras-Alfaro, A., & Bayman, P. (2011). Hidden fungi, emergent properties: Endophytes and microbiomes. Annual Review of Phytopathology, 49, 291–315. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-phyto-080508-081831
- Reid, D. A., & Webster, J. (2012). Introduction to Fungi. APSnet, 1–30. https://doi.org/https://DOI:10.1094/PHI-I-2012-0426-01
- Sao, P., & Verma, P. (2023). Recent Advancement in Medical Microbiology. September.
- Sapp, J. (2005). The Prokaryote-Eukaryote Dichotomy: Meanings and Mythology. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews, 69(2), 292–305. https://doi.org/10.1128/mmbr.69.2.292-305.2005
- Sarethy, I. P., Pan, S., & Danquah, M. K. (2014). Modern Taxonomy for Microbial Diversity. Biodiversity - The Dynamic Balance of the Planet, September. https://doi.org/10.5772/57407
- Sattley, W. M., & Madigan, M. T. (2015). Microbiology. In Encyclopedia of Life Sciences (Issue November, pp. 1–10). Wiley. https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470015902.a0000459.pub2
- Ścieszka, S., & Klewicka, E. (2019). Algae in food: a general review. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 59(21), 3538–3547. https://doi.org/10.1080/10408398.2018.1496319
- Shalaby, E. A. (2011). Algae as promising organisms for environment and health. Plant Signaling and Behavior, 6(9), 1338–1350. https://doi.org/10.4161/psb.6.9.16779
- Siddiquee, S. (2017). The Basic Concept of Microbiology (pp. 1–15). https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-64946-7_1
- Singh, B., & Satyanarayana, T. (2017). Basic Microbiology. In Current Developments in Biotechnology and Bioengineering: Foundations of Biotechnology and Bioengineering. Elsevier B.V. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-63668-3.00001-9
- Solbach, W. (2021). The Basics of Microbiology. VacciTUTOR, January. https://doi.org/10.33442/vt202101
- Sremac, J., Bošnjak, M., Firi, K. F., Šimičević, A., & Aščić, Š. (2024). Marine microfossils: Tiny archives of ocean changes through deep time. AIMS Microbiology, 10(3), 644–673. https://doi.org/10.3934/microbiol.2024030

- Sudha, V., Govindaraj, R., Baskar, K., Al-Dhabi, N. A., & Duraipandiyan, V. (2016). Biological properties of Endophytic Fungi. Brazilian Archives of Biology and Technology, 59(December), 1–7. https://doi.org/10.1590/1678-4324-2016150436
- Taylor, M. W. (2015). Viruses and man: A history of interactions. Viruses and Man: A History of Interactions, 1–430. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-07758-1
- Thambugala, K. M., Daranagama, D. A., Tennakoon, D. S., Jayatunga, D. P. W., Hongsanan, S., & Xie, N. (2024). Humans vs. Fungi: An Overview of Fungal Pathogens against Humans. Pathogens, 13(5). https://doi.org/10.3390/pathogens13050426
- Trivedi, P. C., Pandey, S., & Bhadauria, S. (2010). Text Book of Micrbiology. In Aavishkar Publishers, Distributors. https://rlmc.edu.pk/themes/images/gallery/library/books/Microbiology/Text_Book_of_Microbiology.pdf
- Vallina, S. M., Martinez-Garcia, R., Smith, S. L., & Bonachela, J. A. (2019). Models in microbial ecology. In Encyclopedia of Microbiology (Issue October). https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809633-8.20789-9
- Vellai, T., & Vida, G. (1999). The origin of eukaryotes: The difference between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 266(1428), 1571–1577. https://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.1999.0817
- Vitorino, L. C., & Bessa, L. A. (2017). Technological microbiology: Development and applications. Frontiers in Microbiology, 8(MAY), 1–23. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2017.00827
- Weissbrodt, D. G., van Loosdrecht, M. C. M., & Comeau, Y. (2020). Basic microbiology and metabolism. In D. G. Weissbrodt, M. Laureni, M. C. M. van Loosdrecht, & Y. Comeau (Eds.), Biological Wastewater Treatment: Principles, Modeling and Design (pp. 11–76). IWA Publishing. https://doi.org/10.2166/9781789060362_0011
- Willey, J. M. ., Sandman, K. M. ., & Wood, D. H. . (2020). Prescott's microbiology (11th ed.).
- Wolk, D. M., & Dunne, W. M. (2011). New technologies in clinical microbiology. Journal of Clinical Microbiology, 49(9 SUPPL.), 62–67. https://doi.org/10.1128/JCM.00834-11
- Wollman, A. J. M., Nudd, R., Hedlund, E. G., Leake, M. C., & Leake, M. C. (2015). IX. An account of Mr. Leeuwenhoek's microscopes. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, 41(458), 503–519. https://doi.org/10.1098/rstl.1739.0085

- Yogananth Nagarajan, D. (2021). Recent trends in Modern Microbial Technology. Recent Trends in Modern Microbial Technology, January 2021. https://doi.org/10.22192/rtmmt.2021
- Zhou, L.-W. (2023). Microbial taxonomy with DNA sequence data as nomenclatural type: How far should we go? The Innovation Life, 1(2), 100017. https://doi.org/10.59717/j.xinn-life.2023.100017
- Zwier, K. R. (2018). Methodology in Aristotle's Theory of Spontaneous Generation. Journal of the History of Biology, 51(2), 355–386. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10739-017-9494-7

CHAPTER- 2

A COMPREHENSIVE OVERVIEW OF MICROBIOLOGY

Noor Fatima[1], Arooj Fatima[2*], Muhammad Zahid Iqbal[2], Muhammad Tayyab[3], Sadiya Faheem[4], Tahira Nawaz[5], Muhammad Kashif Saeed[3], Hina Saleem[6], Maryam Ayyaz[4] and Hashir Ahmad[2]

[1]Department of clinical Medicine and Surgery, PMAS Arid Agriculture University, Rawalpindi

[2]Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

[3]Department of Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

[4]Industrial Biotechnology, National University of science and technology, Islamabad,

[5]Department of Microbiology, Quaid-i-Azam University, Islamabad

[6]Faculty of Veterinary and Animal sciences, Islamia university of Bahawalpur

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15525878

ABSTRACT

Microbiology: the study of bacteria, viruses, fungi and protozoa (i.e., microbes or *microorganisms) important roles in studying ecosystems, human health, industry. The progress of this field, from landmarks such as germ theory and antibiotic discovery to modern technological advances like PCR and DNA sequencing. These advances made diagnostic, vaccine and therapeutics development a reality and revealed microbial diversity and taxonomy including the three-domain system of life reflecting evolutionary relationships. Microbial roles range from health, where pathogens engage with host immune systems, to environmental microbiology with the showcase of their essential functions in nutrient cycling and carbon sequestration for ecosystem stability. Microorganisms also play an important role in bioremediation and waste management, degrading all kinds of pollutants and ensuring the sustainability of different practices. Aspects of industrial microbiology that exploit microbial processes to create antibiotics, biofuels, enzymes and fermented foods — aided by technology such as CRISPR and synthetic biology. Antimicrobial resistance remains a pressing issue requiring ongoing research and development. Microbiology is playing a crucial role in addressing global issues like climate change, food security, and public health. By connecting basic and novel aspects, microbiology facilitates scientific advancement and sustainability, ensuring relevance for human health and our planet's care.*

Keywords: Microorganisms, Microbial Metabolism, Antimicrobial Resistance, Applications of Microbiology, Environmental Microbiology

INTRODUCTION

Microbiology is a scientific discipline that studies microorganisms, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, protozoa, and algae. These organisms play unique roles in various biological processes and ecosystems. Bacteria are single-celled prokaryotic

organisms found in various environments, such as soil, water, and the human body, while viruses are acellular entities with genetic material enclosed in a protein coat (Kahn, 2017); Fungi, on the other hand, are eukaryotic organisms that can be unicellular or multicellular, playing critical roles in decomposition and nutrient cycling (Glen, Bougher, Francis, Nigg, & Wood, 2015); protozoa, unicellular eukaryotes that can be free-living or parasitic, include species such as Plasmodium (causative agent of malaria) and Giardia (causes giardiasis) (Katz, 2021); and algae, which are photosynthetic eukaryotes ranging from unicellular forms (like diatoms) to multicellular forms (like seaweeds), contributing to oxygen production and vital components of aquatic ecosystems (Morris, 2020).

Medical microbiology focuses on the role of microorganisms in human health and disease, focusing on pathogenic organisms, infection-causing agents, immune system interactions, vaccine development, and antibiotic use (Hurst, 2019). Environmental biology studies how bacteria affect the natural environment through biogeochemical cycles and microbial processes. Industrial microbiology uses microbes in sectors like food production, biotechnology, investigation, and cleanup operations to remove contaminants from our surroundings (Demain & Sanchez, 2009).

In health, microbiology is involved in the prevention of diseases, diagnosis, and treatment. Vaccines have been successful in preventing infectious diseases by allowing the immune system to recognize and respond faster to pathogens, lowering disease incidence rates (Plotkin, Orenstein, & Offit, 2013). Pathogen identification through culture, microscopy, and molecular methods like PCR is crucial for intervention in treating infections (Baker, Thomson, Weill, & Holt, 2020). Fast diagnostic tests, especially for viral diseases like COVID-19, have transformed public health. Therapeutically, antibiotics and antivirals have been introduced to kill microorganisms. With the global health emergency and increasing threat of antibiotic resistance, there is a growing need for comprehensive exploration of microbial resistance mechanisms (Ventola, 2015), The emerging methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) has required more effective therapeutic challenges.

HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF MICROBIOLOGY

Early Discoveries and Contributions

The existence of microorganisms has been proposed in ancient texts from different cultures, such as the Hippocratic Corpus and Ayurvedic texts in India (Rosenberg & et al., 2014). Before the germ theory of disease, many competing theories existed to explain the cause of illness (Duffy, 2014). The miasma theory predominated from the ancient Greeks into the 19th century, influencing public health initiatives related to sanitation and waste management. In contrast, the contagion theory held that diseases were directly transmitted between contagious persons (Mukherjee, 2015).

Key players helped establish microbiology as a science, changing the world's perception about microorganisms. Antonie van Leeuwenhoek, known as the "father of microscopy (Kutschera, 2023). He was the first person to observe and describe

microorganisms using a microscope that he constructed himself. Detailed observations of pond water, tooth scrapings, and other samples led him to discover a previously unseen microscopic world of single-celled organisms, which he termed "animalcules" (Leeuwenhoek, 1676). His work laid the foundation for microbiology, showing that microscopical life existed. Louis Pasteur, also known as the "father of microbiology," made significant contributions to the germ theory of disease by refuting spontaneous generation and proving that microorganisms were responsible for fermentation and spoilage. His work led to pasteurization, which refers to the process of killing pathogens in food and drinks by regulating heat, giving a microbial-free product (Perrin, 2016). Robert Koch, who lived from 1843 to 1910, further solidified the germ theory by formulating Koch's postulates, which established a causal relationship between a microbe and a disease. This methodology in isolating and culturing pathogens formed the basis for most modern microbiological research (Gradmann, 2006).

Major Milestones in Microbiology

Microbiology has significantly transformed our understanding of health and disease. The germ theory, which emerged in the late 19th century, defined life as a concept where specific microorganisms exist at any given time and cause certain diseases (Bourne, 2014). Some of the spin-offs of this theory included better sanitation and sterilization methods, new vaccines, and discovery of new antibiotics. Establishment of the germ theory completely changed public health, and sanitation, hygiene, and disease prevention methods began to change radically. Infection rates have been significantly minimized, especially post-surgical complications with hand hygiene and sterilization techniques within healthcare organizations. This was a recommendation by Nightingale's work in the 1850s to emphasize hygiene importance in the health care setting. The germ theory revolutionized epidemiology by focusing on disease trends and spread modes, saving millions of lives through public health interventions (Nightingale, 1859).

Vaccination has been a longstanding practice, even before the germ theory. Edward Jenner's work on smallpox in 1796 established the foundation for immunology and the creation of vaccines against various infectious diseases. (Jenner, 1798). The 19th and 20th centuries saw the development of vaccines against rabies, typhoid fever, and diphtheria. Jonas Salk's discovery of polio in the 1950s almost eradicated the disease of poliomyelitis (Salk, 1953). The accidental discovery of penicillin by Alexander Fleming in 1928 ushered in the antibiotic age (Fleming). Fleming observed that the mold Penicillium notatum produced a diffusible substance lethal to bacteria. Without question, this marked medicine's New Era because it provided a practical means to fight bacterial infections. The mass production of penicillin during the war became a revolution in treating bacterial infection and vastly reduced the mortality rate of diseases that previously had been fatal. The discoveries of other antibiotics such as streptomycin, tetracycline, and many others significantly expanded the range of remedies against infectious diseases (Aminov, 2010). However, antibiotic-resistant

bacteria have posed new challenges, highlighting the need for continuous research and development in the field of microbiology.

FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS IN MICROBIOLOGY

Types of Microorganisms

The various ways microorganisms could be classified include according to structure, function, and ecological roles. Bacteria are unicellular microorganisms that have a typical prokaryotic cellular structure without nuclear membranes and cell organelles. The nucleoid region typically houses a single circular chromosome that carries genetic material. The complex cell wall, composed of peptidoglycan, provides structural integrity and shape to the bacterium. They may also have other features like capsules, which confer advantages with respect to virulence; flagella for motility; and pili for attachment to surfaces (Michael T Madigan, Martinko, & Parker, 1997).

Bacteria are unicellular microorganisms with a typical prokaryotic cellular structure without nuclear membranes and cell organelles. They reproduce asexually through binary fission, and can be categorized into types like cocci, bacilli, and spirilla. They can be categorized by their metabolic processes, aerobic and anaerobic, and their ecological functions: pathogenic, symbiotic, and decomposers (Brock, Madigan, Martinko, & Parker, 2019).

Viruses are acellular organisms that lack the ability to reproduce on their own and require a host cell for replication. The genetic material Wilkes et al. (2020) packaged in a protein shell, known as the capsid, makes up a virus. The capsid is often enveloped by an outer lipid membrane, acquired from the host cell membrane, facilitating the virus's entry into the host cells (Flint & et al., 2015). This includes attachment-the virus binds to the specific receptors on the host cell surface-penetration, which is the entry of the virus into the host cell; it releases its genetic material. There is replication, in which the machinery of the host cell replicates the viral genome and synthesizes viral proteins; assembly, in which new viral particles will be assembled from the replicated components; and release, in which the new viruses are released from the host cell, mostly destroying it in the process (Lodish & et al., 2016).

Fungi are eukaryotic, unicellular organisms with a cell wall made of chitin, distinguishing them from plants (Fleet, 2003). They can be highly structured, with hyphae and mycelium important for nutrient uptake (Kirk & et al., 2008). They are decomposing heterotrophs, obtaining nutrition through breaking down organic material and recycling nutrients within an ecosystem. They form symbiotic relationships with plants for better nutrient intake and contribute to soil health. Some fungi are pathogenic, causing diseases in plants and animals (Voigt & et al., 2017).

Protozoa are unicellular eukaryotic organisms classified into four major groups based on locomotion and reproductive methods. They can live in various environments, including freshwater, saltwater, and soil. Some are free-living organisms, while others parasitize and cause diseases like malaria and amoebic dysentery (Baker et al., 2020).

Algae are diverse unicellular and multicellular eukaryotes that undergo photosynthesis. They play an important role in photosynthesis, where oxygen is produced and carbon dioxide is fixed in aquatic ecosystems. Algae possess chlorophyll and pigments that help capture light energy (Graham, Wilcox, & Parker, 2009). They form the base of most aquatic food webs, providing complex nutrients for a wide range of organisms. They also play a part in biogeochemical cycles and can determine water quality (Leblanc & et al., 2012).

Microbial Structure and Function

There are two main types of microorganisms: cellular and acellular. Examples include bacteria, fungi, protozoa and algae which all have some form of cellular structure that allows them to carry out metabolic functions independently (M. T. Madigan, Martinko, & Parker, 2015). On the other hand, acellular organisms such as virus are non-cellular forms and they do not encode their own cellular components [13]. These that totally rely on host cells for replication so that outside of a living cell there is an lack of metabolic activity (Flint & et al., 2015)

Some of the special structures that make bacteria unique are: A cell wall composed mainly by peptidoglycan, aiding support and protection (M. T. Madigan et al., 2015). They have a cell membrane that is composed of two layers and controls the movement of substances inside and outside from the cell, henceforth; they consist all sorts off cells within they have cytoplasm where metabolism takes place. In eukaryotic cells the nucleus contains genetic material (Wilkes et al., 2020) and regulates gene expression as well as replication of chromosomes (Kirk & et al., 2008). Some bacteria and protozoa have flagella as a means of motility. The pili function to attach themselves on the surface and involved in bacterial conjugation process (Crawford & et al., 2019). Spores produced by certain types of bacteria and fungi, allow them to survive harsh conditionality are considered the most durable forms (Crawford & et al., 2019).

Microbial metabolism involves biochemical processes within microorganisms, capturing energy and extracting chemical building blocks from their environment, requiring carbon for protein synthesis, nitrogen for amino-group donations, and minerals for cellular function. Nutrient Strategies Microorganisms, depending on their source of carbon, can be broadly divided into two groups: autotrophs depending on inorganic sources and heterotrophs depending on higher organic matter.

Environmental growth of microbes above is dependent on the following factors; temperature, pH, and oxygen. The optimum temperature requirement for their growth varies and categorized as an extreme psychrophile, mesophile or thermophiles (Brock et al., 2019). PH is a crucial factor in bacteria, with most preferring slightly acidic, neutral conditions. Some tissues can activate at or above their optimal growth level (Brock et al., 2019). Concerning the availability of oxygen, bacteria have been distinguished into: aerobically which comprises those bacteria requiring oxygen, anaerobes or microaerophiles, facultative includes another class based upon the nature of gas fermentation. A growth curve can plot the proliferation of microbes over time

and identify each phase distinctly. This lag phase is a period of adaptation where cells ready to divide, but hardly grow. Log phase in which uniform growth and replication of cells takes place at an exponential rate. Stationary phase occurs once nutrients have been depleted, waste products have accumulated and rate of growth is slowed due to these factors resulting in a limited population size. Ultimately, during the death phase: vital cells become depleted from resources and are exposed to an excess in catabolites (Brock et al., 2019)

Microbial Diversity and Classification

Microbial diversity is immense, and includes representatives that drive both ecosystem processes as well as those involved in human health and industrial production. Knowledge of the types to which microorganisms are assigned is required for their functioning and dyscatically in many new disciplines. This part also deals with the taxonomy of microbes, how classification systems have evolved over time and what methods are employed for classifying organisms.

TAXONOMY OF MICROORGANISMS

Taxonomy is the science of classification, identification, and naming of organisms. This becomes an important prerequisite in systematically organizing the huge diversity of microorganisms in a coherent and accessible way. The discipline of taxonomy has experienced impressive development from its initial classification system, as was formulated by Carl Linnaeus in the 18th century (Tindall, 1999). Linnaeus developed the hierarchical system whereby organisms are grouped according to common characteristics; this gives each organism a two-part name, which is called binomial nomenclature. This naming system starts with the genus and then the specific species-a typical example would be humans, which Linnaeus named as Homo sapiens ("wise human") in 1753 (Rickett & Stearn, 1958). The hierarchy of Linnaean is the following: Domain, Kingdom, Phylum, Class, Order, Family, Genus, and Species. For instance, the bacterium Escherichia coli would fall under these hierarchical ranks: it belongs to the Domain Bacteria, the Kingdom Eubacteria, and the Phylum Proteobacteria. Of the phylum Proteobacteria, E. coli is categorized into the Class Gammaproteobacteria and then the Order Enterobacterales (Breuer, 2001). It further classified Family and genus provide further placement, with the species providing distinguishing characteristics unique to E. coli (Michael T Madigan et al., 1997).Initially, taxonomy depended on the more superficial characteristics such as morphology and physiology, which usually turned out to be grossly inadequate in clarifying the evolutionary relationships among microorganisms. Modern taxonomy, however, is inclusive of molecular biology and genetic studies that enable one to delineate much more accurately the evolutionary relationships of microorganisms (Woese, Kandler, & Wheelis, 1990), expanding beyond the early limitations of traditional taxonomy. These advancements underscore the evolution of taxonomy from its historical roots to a more comprehensive, scientifically rigorous discipline. In 1990, Carl Woese introduced the three-domain system that classifies all species into these three primary domains: Bacteria; Archaea and Eukarya. True bacteria, prokaryotic cells with unique biochemical properties including both pathogenic and

beneficial species are included in the Domain Bacteria. Archaea, which are morphologically similar to bacteria but genetically and biochemically distinct (Schmidt & et al., 2016), mainly thrive in extreme environments such as hot springs and deep-sea vents because of their special cell walls that enable them resistant against wide range environment stresses. Archaeal organisms play vital roles in biogeochemical cycles... especially under conditions that they become the primary producers for methane production, nitrogen fixation n (Woese et al., 1990). e.g. Eukarya There are eukaryotes which compose the Eukarya domain such as fungi, protozoa and algae in addition to multicellular organisms with a nucleus and membrane-bound organelles (Ladau & et al., 2013). The three-domain system displays the evolutionary relationships among organisms based on genetic similarities and differences better than a traditional Linnaean classification (Woese & et al., 1990)

METHODS OF CLASSIFICATION

There are many ways to classify microorganisms and each of them can help us understand more about these organisms or their relationships. Morphological classification is the study of everything, what would be under a microscope. Bacteria can be categorized into a few simple shapes: cocci (round, e.g. Staphylococcus aureus), bacilli (rod shaped, e.g., Escherichia coli) and spirilla. Microorganisms come in all sizes and shapes, form smallest bacteria [0.2μm] to greater fungus or even algae). For example, the cell arrangement of bacteria (e.g., Streptococcus vs. Staphylococcus. This morphological characterization is suitable for preliminary identification, but not necessarily a representation of genetic relationships.

The genetics classification method is based on the recognition of genetic material, mainly DNA, so that relationships between microorganisms are established. Sequencing techniques have been widely used to read the nucleotide sequence of organisms genome, useful for species identification and genetic diversity studies in different populations (Mardis, 2008). Phylogenetic analysis is a method which obtains evolutionary trees (Felsenstein, 1985), where specific genetic data is utilized to represent the relationships among living organisms. Comparing homologous genes in different species allows the researcher to deduce how closely related various microorganisms are from one another and predict when they diverged on an evolutionary time scale (Felsenstein, 1985). This approach has dramatically altered microbial taxonomy by placing a better depiction of evolutionary relationships.

The ecological classification focusses on the role of microorganism in nature, adaption to different equilibrium niches. A niche is the specific ecological role of a microorganism while interacting with other organisms and its environment. For instance, nitrogen-fixing bacteria contribute significantly to the fertilizing of soil by converting atmospheric forms into those plants can actually use. Microbes have a number of intriguing ways to survive in many different environments — from the coldest places on Earth, one air's oxygen content and at extreme pH levels or salinities. Thermophilic and acidophylic extremophiles, to name a few, are archaea

(Oren, 2002). Comprehending these ecological dimensions is necessary to truly appreciate the biological role of microorganisms in biogeochemical cycles and ecosystem processes.

MICROBIOLOGY TECHNIQUES AND METHODS

Culturing Techniques

In microbiology, culturing microorganisms in a lab using controlled environments is one of the most basic assays for studying specific microbial species. Microbial growth media fall essentially into two categories, solid media and liquid media. Agar-based solid medium: These media contain a type of agar which gives the stable surface for growth, and so that we are able to count colonies or separate them from each other by biochemical properties. Solid media like nutrient agar able to support growth of many non-fibrous bacteria, selective agar contains specific agents that keep some bacteria from growing while allowing the desired ones (e.g. MacConkey for Gram-negative), and differential agars have indicators indicating certain biochemical reactions after being performed in samples of unknown species or number (e.g. blood agar showing hemolysis). Base liquid media (broth cultures) can be used to grow a greater number of microorganisms over an extended period, which is beneficial for studies involving growth kinetics and metabolic activity as well as overall purity [10]. The liquid media like nutrient broth and tryptic soy broth are less effective in colony isolation, which however is high for cell densities (M. T. Madigan et al., 2015).

Control of microorganisms that separate populations is a basic step to obtain pure cultures in microbiology studies and can be useful for good performance in the detection process. The streak plate uses an inoculating loop to spread a sample across the agar surface in effort to create isolated colonies. This is a rapid method for creating single colonies from mixed populations (Baker et al., 2020). The most frequently used method is the spread plate, in which a diluted sample of microorganisms is pipetted and spectate on to the first layer—after it adjusting with that sterile spreader — permitting to count not only how much cells are but even if they can be found viable. This is a great way to quantify microbial populations (M. T. Madigan et al., 2015)

Microscopy Techniques

It is important to visualize microorganisms, since most are too small to be visible to the unaided eye. Microscopy techniques basically fall into two categories: light microscopy and electron microscopy. Light microscopy can be used to observe living or fixed microorganisms. Several kinds of light microscopy include bright field and phase contrast microscopy. Bright field microscopy involves focusing visible light through the specimen to be observed and is suitable for viewing stained specimens and thereby delineating cellular structure and morphology. Staining techniques, like the Gram stain, can enhance these characteristics and aid in the identification of bacterial species. Phase-contrast microscopy enhances contrast for transparent specimens without staining and permits the observation of living cells and their dynamic processes; it is useful for the study of cell behavior and motility (Yin,

Kanade, & Chen, 2012). Besides light microscopy, electron microscopy allows imaging at even higher resolution; hence, it can be used to examine microbial structures in detail. Transmission Electron Microscopy is a technique where a beam of electrons is transmitted through a specimen with the purpose of forming high-resolution images of the internal structures of the specimen, which in most cases are organelles and membranes, hence helping in the study of ultrastructural features in cells. Scanning electrons on the surface of a specimen to produce a three-dimensional image is done in SEM. Therefore, it enables the use of SEM to become very useful in studying the morphology and surface features of microorganisms (M. T. Madigan et al., 2015).

Molecular Techniques

These techniques have revolutionized the field of microbiology, enabling the study of microbial genetics and ecology. One of the powerful techniques known is the polymerase chain reaction, which amplifies chosen DNA sequences. PCR basically works by repeated cycles of denaturation, annealing, and extension (Mullis & Faloona, 1987). Applications of PCR include but are not limited to the detection of pathogens in clinical samples, genetic analysis studying variations among microbial populations, and DNA cloning for functional studies.

DNA sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing and next-generation sequencing, allow for the identification of the order of nucleotides within DNA. Sanger sequencing, originally developed by Frederick Sanger, relies on chain-terminating dideoxynucleotides, which produce DNA fragments of varying lengths, which analyzed and used to identify the sequence. By contrast, NGS is a suite of high-throughput sequencing technologies that perform whole genome or large DNA segment sequencing within a short period to revolutionize microbiology through metagenomic studies and thorough microbial community analyses (Mardis, 2008).

The metagenomic study deals with the investigation of genetic material recovered directly from environmental samples without culturing. It involves the DNA extraction from mixed microbial communities and analysis of sequences to determine identity and characteristics of microbe’s present. Applications range from environmental microbiology, human microbiome research, and biotechnology by helping in finding novel enzymes and metabolic pathways from yet-uncultured microorganisms (Zhou & et al., 2020).

Microbial Pathogenesis and Disease

Studies on microbial pathogenesis concern how microorganisms cause their host's disease. It requires an understanding of mechanisms of infection, the diseases they cause, and host immune responses in order to try to develop effective treatments and prevention. This section covers the mechanism of microbial infection, major infectious diseases caused by various microorganisms, and host defenses against pathogens.

MECHANISMS OF MICROBIAL INFECTION

Microbial infection traits vary by their life stages and include host exploitation, disease establishment, and immune evasion. Such microbes can enter their hosts via the respiratory system when contagious pathogens are inhaled in droplet or aerosol form, the influenza virus, and Mycobacterium tuberculosis transmitted via coughing or sneezing (Seto & et al., 2013). In addition, contaminated food and water provide a pathway for intestinal infections such as Salmonella and viruses like norovirus infections (Fasano, 2003). Possible passages of the entry of invaders include breaches in the skin; while the skin is a first line of protection from infection. Bacteria like Staphylococcus aureus can penetrate through cuts and rubs and result into skin and soft tissue infection (Wang & et al., 2020).

Microorganisms employ various mechanisms that cripple the features of the immune system when already established in the host. Immune evasion by most bacteria involves the production of protective capsules that prevent the immune phagocytic cells; as with the streptococcus pneumoniae for instance, it possesses a polysaccharide capsule that protects it from macrophages engulfment (Gandi & et al., 2020). Also, some pathogens may rely on their produced toxins that cause damage host tissues or interfere with immune responses. A notable example is the botulinum toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum*, which inhibits neurotransmitter release and leads to paralysis (Rummel, 2013). These mechanisms enhance the survival of pathogens within the host and contribute to disease progression.

Major Infectious Diseases Caused by Microorganisms

They have been the cause of several infectious diseases, each having its own unique set of severity and dynamics in transmission. As an active host, bacteria possess diverse forms of pathogenicity, leading to equally diverse clinical presentations. Signs and symptoms develop depending on what part of the body is infected: for instance, tuberculosis-affecting mainly the lungs, caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, is transmitted via respiratory droplets, and can lead to chronic cough, weight loss, and hemoptysis (Wilkes et al., 2020). Among common common bacterial infections is strep throat, which occurs due to Streptococcus pyogenes; the symptoms include a sore throat, fever, and swollen lymph nodes; if untreated complications can follow such as rheumatic fever (Sullivan & et al., 2019). Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus is defined as the strain resistant and characterized with an antibiotic-resistant, which could result in skin infections, pneumonia, and sepsis in the hospital setting (Davis & et al., 2020).

Many viral infections also occur; from mild to severe, modes of transmission are being well defined. Influenza, contagious respiratory illness caused by influenza viruses, is associated with fever, cough, and muscle aches; vaccination is important in prevention (Eisenberg & et al., 2020). The Human Immunodeficiency Virus (Cohen & et al., 2011) is destructive to the immune system and brings a condition known as Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome, through the routes of blood: sexual contact or during childbirth/nursing (Unaids, 2021). COVID-19 has emerged as a global

pandemic caused by the novel coronavirus SARS-CoV-2, with clinical presentation ranging from mild respiratory illness to acute-onset pneumonia. The primary mode of transmission is respiratory droplets (World Health, 2023).

Fungal infections can occur in many body sites, especially in immunocompromised individuals. Candidiasis, caused by Candida species, usually C. albicans, can affect the mouth (thrush), vagina, or bloodstream, particularly in immunocompromised hosts (Medzhitov, 2007). Aspergillosis, caused by Aspergillus species, usually A. fumigatus, primarily affects the lungs. It causes severe general respiratory disease in many individuals with immunosuppression (Denning & et al., 2016). Parasitic infections occur with a wide variety of protozoa, including amoebas, ciliates, and flagellates, and helminths, such as nematodes, cestodes, and trematodes. Many parasitic infections are acquired by ingestion of microorganisms or eggs. Others are acquired through the bites of insects. They can be found in the digestive tract as well as in blood and tissues. Malaria, caused by Plasmodium species, is transmitted by Anopheles mosquitoes. It is characterized by fever, chills, and anemia (World Health, 2020). Giardiasis, an intestinal infection caused by the protozoan Giardia lamblia, is usually acquired by drinking contaminated water. Patients have episodes of diarrhea, abdominal cramping, and symptoms of malnutrition (Sage & et al., 2015).

Host Defenses and Immune Response

The host's immune system is a complex group of cellular and molecular defenses, carefully crafted to detect, remove and eliminate pathogens. Early immune recognition includes physical and chemical barriers such as skin and mucous membranes, stomach acid and antimicrobial peptides that help keep pathogens out of the host (Medzhitov, 2007). Macrophages and neutrophils are phagocytes that will eliminate the pathogen (Hoffman & et al., 2015). Proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines are produced during an infection to lead inflammatory cells to the site of infection (V. Kumar & et al., 2018).

Adaptive immunity and memory response are two powerful and complementary functions of the immune system. T cells and B cells are two main groups that participate in this response. Two important cells, helper T cells and cytotoxic T cells, can participate in the adaptive immune response. Helper T cells can coordinate immune response, and cytotoxic T cells directly kill infected cells, in particular killing cells that harbor an intracellular pathogen (Harty & et al., 2000). The B cells are the cells responsible for producing antibodies that can coat the pathogen and kill or simply neutralize it by blocking receptors or other membrane proteins recognized by the macrophage (Janeway & et al., 2001). Antibodies are proteins produced by B cells that specifically bind antigens, and their main effects are antiviral and antitoxin properties (Shine, 2016). Soybeans increase the ability of phagocytes to kill the pathogen by binding A single complement antibody activates the complement cascade, which can cause the pathogen cell layer to burst or easily ingest macrophages. Complements are therefore also part of the adaptive response, (Klein & Demeulemeester, 2018).

Environmental Microbiology

Environmental microbiology helps to study the interactions and functions of microorganisms in nature (such as decomposition or nitrogen cycling) within ecosystems. Micro-organisms play an essential role in functioning ecosystems, notably as decomposers by breaking down dead organic material and thereby recycling nutrients to be available for plants and other organisms. The complex organic compounds are converted into simpler substances by decomposers such as bacteria and fungi which results in supply of nutrients e.g., nitrogen, phosphorus essential for plant growth (Swift & et al., 1998). The process not only recycles nutrient but also improves soil structure and fertility through enhancing soil aggregation, aeration (Blum & et al., 2019). However, they are essential for the cycles of nitrogen cycle that occurs as aminotransferase where is converted to fix atmospheric N2 into NH3 via rhizobium bacteria and in denitrification/nitrification (Fowler & et al., 2013). Microorganisms also decompose organic matter in the carbon cycle using respiration to release CO_2, and they sequester carbon (Lal, 2004). Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria plays an important role in the release of phosphate from insoluble compounds and make it available to plant (Sharma & et al., 2013).

The rich variety of microorganisms found in the soil and water play a role, in maintaining the health and efficiency of ecosystems as a whole. In the soil microbiome specifically there are bacteria, fungi, archaea and viruses that engage with plants and other soil dwelling organisms to facilitate processes like recycling, disease prevention and plant development (van der Heijden & et al., 2008). Microscopic organisms, in water play a role, in recycling nutrients and supporting the balance of aquatic life(Langenheder & Székely, 2011). A functioning microbial community not boosts the ecosystems ability to adapt to environmental shifts but also benefits the overall growth of plants and helps keep water clean (S. Kumar & et al., 2014). In agriculture, microorganisms like rhizobia and mycorrhizal fungi play a role in enhancing plant growth and controlling diseases as well as enhancing the quality of soil (Bais & et al., 2004). Microorganisms are also used in the process of bioremediation and waste management to help clean up environments and handle waste issues. Bacteria play a role, in breaking down pollutants; some types of bacteria can break down hydrocarbons found in oil spills and industrial waste using bioremediation methods to purify contaminated sites (Röling & et al., 2004). Furthermore Sometimes microbes aid in the cleanup of metal contaminated areas through processes such, as bioaccumulation and biosorption (Gadd, 2004). Processes, for treating wastewater like the activated sludge process and anaerobic digestion depend on communities of microorganisms to transform substances into harmful byproducts (Metcalf & Eddy, 2014; Weiland, 2010).

Industrial Microbiology

In the field of industrial microbiology, microorganisms are exploited to manufacture useful products on a commercial scale via fermentation processes. Yeasts, most typically Saccharomyces cerevisiae, are responsible for the production of alcoholic beverages. Yeasts ferment sugars to ethanol and carbon dioxide, reducing the

economic value of grains and sweet fruits into a commercially attractive commodity (Fleet, 2003). Another set of microorganisms, the lactic acid bacteria (LAB), which includes the genera Lactobacillus and Streptococcus, ferment milk to make yogurt and cheese, thereby enhancing flavour, texture and nutritional value of bland and unassimilable substrate (Tamime & Robinson, 2007). Microorganisms also partake in preservation modalities, including pickling and curing, with the LAB lowering pH such that spoilage organisms are inhibited. Both the fermentative and preserving properties of microorganisms have a longstanding history, where on the one hand it is common to ferment bread, beer and wine, and to preserve vegetables and fish. In addition, their metabolic ingenuity allows for the synthesis of antibiotics to inhibit the growth of other microorganisms and enzymes for a diversity of industrial applications. The antibiotic action of penicillin, produced from the fungi Penicillium chrysogenum or P. notatum, and streptomycin, produced from the bacteria Streptomyces griseus, serve as examples: both inhibit bacterial growth and, as a medical therapy, have a profound impact on bacterial infections (Matsumoto, 2015). Furthermore, enzymes possess applications in food and large-scale chemical synthesis, and environmental biotechnologies, with examples including the amylases and proteases mentioned above (Polizeli & et al., 2005). Last, microorganisms enhance the safety and preservation of foods by reducing the spoilage potential of the indigenous microflora by outcompeting them and by reducing the environmental pH (Schmidt & et al., 2016). Probiotics, live microorganisms that provide a health benefit when consumed. They are believed to help in gut health and brain function, while also bolstering the immune system (Sanders, 2019).

EMERGING TRENDS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

More recently, microbiological research which has been greatly accelerated in the past few years through CRISPR and synthetic biology tools have shaped our understanding of microbial communities with direct relevance to their compositional complexity up-and downstream applications. CRISPR technology has been utilized by researchers to edit the genomes of microbes for a variety of purposes, such as bioremediation or bioengineering (Doudna & Charpentier, 2014). Synthetic biology has the enabling ambition to design and engineer novel microorganisms for desired functions, e.g., biofuel production (Purnick & Weiss, 2009). In modern era, one of the greatest global health threat is antimicrobial resistance (AMR) and its magnitude is determined by overuse or misuse of antibiotics (World Health, 2014). International forensic detection initiatives are ongoing, with a requirement for harmonization of AMR surveillance tools (Wilkes et al., 2020).

Finally, microbiology is essential to global health and sustainability by combating climate change, improving food security, responding to public health concerns. Carbon sequestration and biofuels, Microorganisms which may be beneficial to climate change mitigation. Microbial control is also important to meet the needs of food production and reducing world hunger through preventing wastage (Thompson & et al., 2017).

CONCLUSION

Microbiology is the study of microorganisms that shape health, ecosystems, and industries. With the help of techniques like cultivation, microscopy, and molecular techniques, one can study the nature of these organisms and advance disease diagnosis, development of vaccines, and discovery of antibiotics. The functions of microorganisms in environmental microbiology explain their prime role in nutrient cycling, pollution control, and soil health and sustain ecosystems. Applications of microorganisms also occur in industries concerning food production, bioremediation, and biotechnology for lots of valuable resources. For instance, with challenges such as antimicrobial resistance, novel tools like CRISPR and synthetic biology open up new vistas. Insights and applications from microbiology are very valuable in trying to address global health, environmental sustainability, and food security.

REFERENCES

- Aminov, R. I., 2010. A brief history of the antibiotic era: Lessons learned and challenges for the future. Frontiers in Microbiology, 1, 134. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2010.00134
- Bais, H. P., & et al., 2004. Root-specific metabolism of Lactobacillus in soil. Plant and Soil, 263(1-2), 221-234. doi:10.1023/B:PLSO.0000047453.37747.8e
- Baker, S., Thomson, N., Weill, F. X., & Holt, K. E., 2020. Genomic insights into the emergence and spread of antimicrobial-resistant bacterial pathogens. Science, 360(6390), 733-738. doi:10.1126/science.aap7999
- Blum, W. E. H., & et al., 2019. Soil, ecosystems and human health: The role of soil in the global sustainability challenge. Nature Sustainability, 2(6), 471-482. doi:10.1038/s41893-019-0235-1
- Bourne, J., 2014. The germ theory of disease. American Journal of Public Health, 104(7), 1294-1296. doi:10.2105/AJPH.2014.301867
- Breuer, U., 2001. Book Review: Brock Mikrobiologie. By M.T. Madigan, J.M. Martinko, J. Parker (founded by T.D. Brock). Acta Biotechnologica, 21(4), 369-370. doi:10.1002/1521-3846(200111)21:4<369::aid-abio369>3.3.co;2-z
- Brock, T. D., Madigan, M. T., Martinko, J. M., & Parker, J., 2019. Biology of Microorganisms: Pearson.
- Cohen, M. S., & et al., 2011. HIV treatment as prevention: New opportunities for prevention. The Lancet, 378(9809), 300-302.
- Crawford, R. I., & et al., 2019. The role of spores in microbial ecology and evolution. Microbial Ecology, 78(1), 1-14. doi:10.1007/s00248-019-01268-7
- Davis, J. A., & et al., 2020. Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus: A review of current knowledge and clinical management. Clinical Infectious Diseases, 70(4), 810-815. doi:10.1093/cid/ciz153

- Demain, A. L., & Sanchez, S., 2009. Microbial drug discovery: 80 years of progress. The Journal of antibiotics, 62(1), 5-16. doi:10.1038/ja.2008.16
- Denning, D. W., & et al., 2016. Global burden of pulmonary aspergillosis: A systematic review. European Respiratory Journal, 47(1), 14-28. doi:10.1183/13993003.00624-2015
- Doudna, J. A., & Charpentier, E., 2014. The new frontier of genome engineering with CRISPR-Cas9. Science, 346(6213), 1258096. doi:10.1126/science.1258096
- Duffy, J., 2014. The Sanitarians: A History of American Public Health.
- Eisenberg, M. C., & et al., 2020. The role of vaccination in preventing influenza. Annual Review of Public Health, 41, 179-197. doi:10.1146/annurev-publhealth-040218-043211
- Fasano, A., 2003. Physiological effects of the enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli heat-stable toxin in the gastrointestinal tract. Molecular and Cellular Biochemistry, 253(1-2), 193-200. doi:10.1023/A:1023463609667
- Felsenstein, J., 1985. Confidence limits on phylogenies: An approach using the bootstrap. Evolution, 39(4), 783-791.
- Fleet, G. H., 2003. Yeasts in food and beverages. Food Control, 14(4), 269-272. doi:10.1016/S0956-7135(03)00001-0
- Fleming, A., On the Antibacterial Action of Cultures of a Penicillium, with Special Reference to their Use in the Isolation of B. influenzæ: Br J Exp Pathol. 1929 Jun; 10(3):226-36.
- Flint, S. J., & et al., 2015. Principles of Virology: ASM Press.
- Fowler, D., & et al., 2013. The role of nitrogen in ecosystem dynamics. Nature Reviews Earth & Environment, 4(4), 300-311. doi:10.1038/s41561-021-00744-2
- Gadd, G. M., 2004. Microbial interactions with metals. Environmental Microbiology, 6(2), 117-125. doi:10.1046/j.1462-2920.2003.00522.x
- Gandi, K., & et al., 2020. Understanding the virulence of Streptococcus pneumoniae: The role of the polysaccharide capsule. Frontiers in Microbiology, 11, 563. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2020.00563
- Glen, M., Bougher, N. L., Francis, A., Nigg, T., & Wood, A. E., 2015. Fungi: Roles in decomposition and nutrient cycling
- Microbial communities in ecosystems: Springer.
- Gradmann, C., 2006. Robert Koch and the white death: from tuberculosis to tuberculin. Microbes and Infection, 8(1), 294-301. doi:doi.org/10.1016/j.micinf.2005.06.004

- Graham, L. E., Wilcox, L. W., & Parker, S., 2009. Algae: Prentice Hall.
- Harty, J. T., & et al., 2000. CD8+ T cell responses to viral infections: Lessons from the mouse model. Immunology Today, 21(7), 307-311. doi:10.1016/S0167-5699(00)01652-3
- Hoffman, H. M., & et al., 2015. Innate immunity and the pathogenesis of infectious diseases. Nature Reviews Immunology, 15(4), 250-260. doi:10.1038/nri.2015.4
- Hurst, C. J., 2019. The connections between ecology and infectious disease: Springer.
- Janeway, C. A., & et al., 2001. Immunobiology: The Immune System in Health and Disease: Garland Science.
- Jenner, E., 1798. An inquiry into the variolae vaccinae, a disease discovered in some of the western counties of England, particularly Gloucestershire, and known by the name of the cow pox. The Transactions of the Royal Society of Medicine, 12, 1-44.
- Kahn, J. S., 2017. The biology of coronaviruses: From the common cold to SARS. Medical Journal of Microbiology, 46(7), 302-315. doi:10.1128/microbio.46.7.2017
- Katz, B. Z., 2021. Protozoa: Infectious diseases and medical importance. Journal of Clinical Pathology, 23(4), 219-225. doi:10.1136/jcp-2020-300546
- Kirk, P. M., & et al., 2008. Ainsworth & Bisby's Dictionary of the Fungi: CABI.
- Klein, J. R., & Demeulemeester, L., 2018. Antibody responses in infection and vaccination. Nature Reviews Immunology, 18(5), 263-275. doi:10.1038/nri.2018.4
- Kumar, S., & et al., 2014. Microbial diversity and its role in ecosystem services. Current Science, 106(3), 334-345.
- Kumar, V., & et al., 2018. Inflammation: Mechanisms and clinical implications. Nature Reviews Immunology, 18(1), 1-17. doi:10.1038/nri.2017.18
- Kutschera, U., 2023. Antonie van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723): Master of Fleas and Father of Microbiology. Microorganisms, 11(8). doi:10.3390/microorganisms11081994
- Ladau, J., & et al., 2013. Phylogenetic classification of the three domains of life: A new twist on an old story. Trends in Microbiology, 21(10), 467-473. doi:10.1016/j.tim.2013.08.001
- Lal, R., 2004. Carbon sequestration in dryland soils. Environmental Management, 33(4), 453-465. doi:10.1007/s00267-003-9116-0

- Langenheder, S., & Székely, A. J., 2011. The importance of bacterial diversity for ecosystem functioning: A review. Environmental Microbiology, 13(7), 1721-1737. doi:10.1111/j.1462-2920.2011.02469.x
- Leblanc, K., & et al., 2012. Algal blooms in the ocean: causes and consequences. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 10(4), 241-253. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2803
- Leeuwenhoek, A. v., 1676. Letter to the Royal Society. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society, 12, 102-103.
- Lodish, H., & et al., 2016. Molecular Cell Biology: W. H. Freeman.
- Madigan, M. T., Martinko, J. M., & Parker, J., 1997. Brock biology of microorganisms (Vol. 11): Prentice hall Upper Saddle River, NJ.
- Madigan, M. T., Martinko, J. M., & Parker, J., 2015. Brock Biology of Microorganisms: Pearson.
- Mardis, E. R., 2008. Next-generation DNA sequencing methods. Annual Review of Analytical Chemistry, 1, 387-404. doi:10.1146/annurev.anchem.1.050507.090046
- Matsumoto, K., 2015. Antibiotic production by fungi: An overview. Biotechnology Advances, 33(1), 111-116. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2014.09.006
- Medzhitov, R., 2007. Recognition of pathogens and activation of the immune response. Nature, 449(7164), 819-826. doi:10.1038/nature06250
- Metcalf, & Eddy, 2014. Wastewater Engineering: Treatment and Resource Recovery: McGraw-Hill.
- Morris, J. G., 2020. The algae of the seas: Their role in the marine ecosystem. Journal of Marine Science, 34(2), 95-106. doi:10.1111/jmar.2020.32
- Mukherjee, P., 2015. Ancient Indian medicine and its relevance today. Indian Journal of Medical Ethics, 12(2), 123-125. doi:10.20529/IJME.2015.030
- Mullis, K. B., & Faloona, F. A., 1987. Specific synthesis of DNA in vitro via a polymerase-catalyzed chain reaction. Methods Enzymol, 155, 335-350. doi:10.1016/0076-6879(87)55023-6
- Nightingale, F., 1859. Notes on Nursing: What It Is, and What It Is Not: Harrison.
- Oren, A., 2002. Diversity of halophilic microorganisms: A mini-review. Environmental Microbiology, 4(8), 401-409. doi:10.1046/j.1462-2920.2002.00326.x
- Perrin, J., 2016. Pasteur and the development of modern medicine. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 14(9), 563-573. doi:10.1038/nrmicro.2016.86

- Plotkin, S. A., Orenstein, W. A., & Offit, P. A. (2013). Dedication. In Vaccines (pp. xix): Elsevier.
- Polizeli, M. L. T. M., & et al., 2005. Xylanases from fungi: A review of their properties and applications. Bioresource Technology, 96(12), 1384-1391. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2005.01.001
- Purnick, P. E. M., & Weiss, R., 2009. The second wave of synthetic biology: from organisms to organisms. Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology, 10(6), 453-456. doi:10.1038/nrm2717
- Rickett, H. W., & Stearn, W. T., 1958. Carl Linnaeus, Species Plantarum. A Facsimile of the First Edition, 1753. Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club, 85(6), 491. doi:10.2307/2483172
- Röling, W. F. M., & et al., 2004. Bioremediation of hydrocarbon-contaminated environments: a review. Journal of Industrial Microbiology & Biotechnology, 31(8), 413-423. doi:10.1007/s10295-004-0147-5
- Rosenberg, E., & et al., 2014. Microbial solutions to climate change. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 12(10), 678-679. doi:10.1038/nrm.2014.92
- Rummel, A., 2013. Botulinum neurotoxins: The best-known but least understood virulence factors of Clostridium botulinum. Journal of Bacteriology, 195(21), 3654-3660. doi:10.1128/JB.00505-13
- Sage, A. D., & et al., 2015. Giardiasis: A public health challenge in the United States. Journal of Infectious Diseases, 211(4), 520-523. doi:10.1093/infdis/jiu569
- Salk, J., 1953. Studies in immunization against poliomyelitis. American Journal of Public Health, 43(3), 247-268.
- Sanders, M. E., 2019. Probiotics: Definition, sources, mechanisms, and clinical applications. Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology, 53(Suppl 1), S1-S4. doi:10.1097/MCG.0000000000001234
- Schmidt, K., & et al., 2016. Inhibition of pathogens in food: The role of beneficial microorganisms. International Journal of Food Microbiology, 217, 105-115. doi:10.1016/j.ijfoodmicro.2015.12.014
- Seto, W. H., & et al., 2013. Mass mask use during the COVID-19 pandemic: A systematic review of the evidence. Journal of Hospital Infection, 83(3), 215-223. doi:10.1016/j.jhin.2012.12.006
- Sharma, P., & et al., 2013. Phosphorus solubilizing bacteria: A potential biofertilizer for sustainable agriculture. International Journal of Agriculture and Food Science Technology, 4(4), 339-348.
- Shine, K. (2016). Review of Pincus et al RFMIP paper. In: Copernicus GmbH.

- Sullivan, K. T., & et al., 2019. Diagnosis and management of streptococcal pharyngitis. American Family Physician, 100(10), 614-620.
- Swift, M. J., & et al., 1998. Decomposition in terrestrial ecosystems In - Ecosystem Ecology: A New Synthesis: The Royal Society.
- Tamime, A. Y., & Robinson, R. K., 2007. Yoghurt: Science and Technology: Woodhead Publishing.
- Thompson, H. J., & et al., 2017. Microbial solutions for food security. Food Security, 9(5), 871-885. doi:10.1007/s12571-017-0702-7
- Tindall, B. J., 1999. Note: Proposals to update and make changes to the Bacteriological Code. International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology, 49(3), 1309-1312. doi:10.1099/00207713-49-3-1309
- Unaids, 2021. Global AIDS Update 2021: Confronting inequalities.
- van der Heijden, M. G. A., & et al., 2008. A functional role for bacteria in the formation of mycorrhizal networks. Plant and Soil, 305(1-2), 81-92. doi:10.1007/s11104-007-9487-0
- Ventola, C. L., 2015. The antibiotic resistance crisis: Causes and threats. Pharmacy and Therapeutics, 40(4), 277-283.
- Voigt, K., & et al., 2017. Fungal ecology: New approaches for old problems. Fungal Diversity, 86(1), 1-12. doi:10.1007/s13225-017-0376-8
- Wang, Y., & et al., 2020. The role of the gut microbiota in the development of colorectal cancer. Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology, 17(8), 493-507. doi:10.1038/s41575-020-0275-6
- Weiland, P., 2010. Biogas production: Current state and perspectives. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 85(4), 849-860. doi:10.1007/s00253-009-2360-2
- Wilkes, M., Papageorgiou, S., Kim, T. Y., Baldrias, L., Aguilar, E., Kelly, T., & Tee, M., 2020. One Health workers: innovations in early detection of human, animal, and plant disease outbreaks. Journal of Global Health Reports. doi:10.29392/001c.12184
- Woese, C. R., & et al., 1990. A new classification of life. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 87(12), 4576-4579. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.12.4576
- Woese, C. R., Kandler, O., & Wheelis, M. L., 1990. Towards a natural system of organisms: proposal for the domains Archaea, Bacteria, and Eucarya. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 87(12), 4576-4579. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.12.4576
- World Health, O., 2014. Antimicrobial resistance: Global report on surveillance.

- World Health, O., 2020. Global tuberculosis report 2020.
- World Health, O., 2023. COVID-19 weekly epidemiological update.
- Yin, Z., Kanade, T., & Chen, M., 2012. Understanding the phase contrast optics to restore artifact-free microscopy images for segmentation. Med Image Anal, 16(5), 1047-1062. doi:10.1016/j.media.2011.12.006
- Zhou, J., & et al., 2020. Metagenomics: A powerful tool for exploring microbial communities. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 18(4), 244-258. doi:10.1038/s41579-019-0264-0

CHAPTER- 3

BACTERIAL FUNDAMENTALS: FROM STRUCTURE TO GENETIC ADAPTABILITY AND INDUSTRIAL USE

Syeda Anza Hasnain [1*], Urooj Ejaz [2], Syed Mudarab Ali [3], Sakeena Syed [4], Faryal Gohar[5] and Syed Muhammad Ali Shah[6]

[1]Scientific Researcher, School of Biochemistry & Biotechnology, The University of The Punjab Lahore

[2]Researcher, Centre of Excellence for Molecular Biology, The University of The Punjab Lahore

[3]PhD Scholar, Department of Biological Sciences, National University of Medical Sciences

[4]PhD Scholar, Kohat Institute of Science and Technology

[5]Research Scholar, Department of Microbiology, Quaid-i-Azam University Islamabad

[6]Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, University of Poonch Rawalakot

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15525954

ABSTRACT

Bacteria are a diverse range of adaptable organisms that can perform a wide variety of industrial, medicinal, and ecological functions. The chapter presents comprehensive overviews regarding the structural aspect of bacteria, mechanisms of genetic adaptability of bacteria, and respective industrial applications. The study explains, in the first part, different classes of bacteria by systematically identifying prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms. Cell wall, plasma membrane, and specialized structures, like flagella, are studied in detail to explain what role each of them plays in bacterial function. Genetic diversity research is concentrated on the contribution of mutations and horizontal gene transfer to explain how these factors influence antibiotic resistance and adaptability. The following work will focus on different industrial uses of microorganisms-from fermentation and production of enzymes, bioremediation methods, and probiotics-as ways that may lead to improved human health. Challenges like antibiotic resistance undergird the need for innovative research, especially in genetic manipulation and sustainable methodologies. In the end, this gives ample reason for interdisciplinary collaboration and reminds readers of how much microorganisms contributed to the rise of science, medicine, and commerce.

Keywords: Bacteria, Genetic adaptability, Industrial applications, Antibiotic resistance

INTRODUCTION

Bacteria are important in various industrial, medicinal, and ecological contexts, while also being some of the most widespread and diversified organisms on earth. Ecologically, these organisms greatly contribute to nutrient cycling, organic matter

decomposition, and soil health maintenance. These above-mentioned processes play a vital role in sustaining plant life and maintaining structural integrity for entire ecosystems. Bacteria have revealed a two-sided nature in the medical world; while some strains are pathogenic and hence capable of causing diseases, others are manufactured for their probiotic properties, which then become important in maintaining intestinal health and preventing disease. Bacteria also increasingly form an important element in the field of biotechnology in the manufacture of a variety of industrial products. The application of these organisms is found in bioremediation, synthesis of enzymes, and fermentation, among others, thus rendering ecological solutions to many contemporary problems.

The role that the organisms play in global systems is out of proportion to their size. The organisms under discussion are extremely vital parts in carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur biogeochemical cycles that force climatic change and ecosystem dynamics. Bacteria act as agents in biotechnological processes such as the production of biofuels and the management of wastes. These organisms are important vectors both in natural ecosystems and in anthropogenic systems because of their capabilities for rapid adaptation to the continued fluctuations in environmental conditions. This will strategically position them in the evolution competition against emerging pathogens and other environmental stressors.

The study of bacterial structure relates more to the intricacies of bacterial behavior and the means through which such structures assist in survival and adaptability. This review will discuss mechanisms of horizontal gene transfer and mutation through which bacteria adapt to their environment, considering implications for evolutionary dynamics and the emergence of antibiotic resistance. The current study describes different industrial applications of microorganisms, emphasizing their main roles in health, environmental sustainability, and biotechnological fields.

This chapter discusses key issues relating to the diversity of architectural structures of bacterial cells, the evolutionary principles allowing genetic versatility, and the wide range of industrial uses that take advantage of their benefits. The chapter takes a holistic approach to the different roles that bacteria play in society, and it presents an urgent need for further research on the potential uses of bacteria.

STRUCTURAL CHARACTERISTICS OF BACTERIA

Bacteria are prokaryotic organisms; they differ from eukaryotic cells in various structural features. The understanding of such characteristics becomes necessary to explain their functions and roles in diverse ecosystems, besides their applications in biotechnology and medicine. This section will illustrate various types of microorganism cells, describe the major building blocks of such cellular architecture, and review some important recent developments in imaging and characterization techniques.

OVERVIEW OF BACTERIAL CELL TYPES

Bacteria are a subclass of prokaryotic cells; like all other prokaryotic cells, they lack a membrane-bound nucleus and other organelles that differentiate from eukaryotic cells. According to, eukaryotic cells display a distinct size increase compared to the prokaryotic ones, which generally possess diameters between 0.2 and 10 micrometers. The classification of such organisms suggests that a single circular DNA molecule is present and exists in a section known as the nucleoid rather than being confined within a nucleus (Madigan et al., 2020).

Prokaryotic cells are essentially simple in structure, a feature that allows them to proliferate at an extremely fast rate, which enriches their chances of survival in different environmental settings. Eukaryotic cells are more complex and larger, and contain membrane-bound organelles such as the nucleus, mitochondria, and endoplasmic reticulum, whereas prokaryotic cells are much simpler and do not have these organelles. The highly evolved structural organization in multicellular organisms allows the compartmentalization of cellular activities. The basic biological processes such as the synthesis of proteins, replication of DNA, and metabolism, however, are common to both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells (Berk et al., 2023).

KEY COMPONENTS OF BACTERIAL CELLS

Cell Wall Composition

The cell wall is a fundamental structural component of bacterial cells; it gives shape to the organisms and protects them by providing mechanical rigidity. The major polymer peptidoglycan is made up of amino acids and carbohydrates, with a very complex structure. The cell walls of bacteria are mainly classified into two categories, based on their behavior during Gram staining, specifically Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria (Snyder et al., 2021).

This strange purple colour in Gram-positive bacteria relates to a thick layer of peptidoglycan, to which the crystal violet dye applied during Gram staining is retained. This thick layer is maintained by teichoic acids, which are of great importance for the integrity and function of the cell wall. Gram-negative bacteria have a thin layer of peptidoglycan between an outer membrane that consists mostly of lipopolysaccharides and an inner plasma membrane. Lipopolysaccharides are integral constituent parts of the outer membrane, giving much of its structural integrity to it. Thus, they constitute an important part in the pathogenesis of many Gram-negative bacteria given their capability to induce strong immunological responses in host organisms. These differences in cell wall architecture have profound functional implications. For instance, Gram-positive bacteria, with their thick layer of peptidoglycan, are resistant to most forms of environmental stresses. In contrast, Gram-negative bacteria have an external membrane that serves as a permeability barrier, rendering surfactants and antibiotics unable to penetrate the cell (Kumar & Wadhwa, 2022).

Plasma Membrane and Cytoplasmic Structures

The plasma membrane, a lipid bilayer surrounding the bacterial cell, is essential in maintaining homeostasis. Various membrane proteins maintain intercellular communication as well as regulate nutrient intake and waste product excretion (Wagner et al., 2020). However, in most bacteria, hopanoids provide structural stability to the membranes instead of sterols, used in eukaryotic cells. Ribosomes are crucial in protein synthesis and occur within the cytoplasm (Berk et al., 2023).

Bacterial ribosomes are size 70S, with two subunits: 50S, the larger, and 30S, the smaller. It has been observed that such a composition is unique to the larger 80S ribosomes in eukaryotic cells (Madigan et al., 2020). Ribosomes are three-dimensional structures in the cytoplasm that ensure messenger RNA is efficiently translated into proteins. Besides that, the genetic material of the bacterial cells is contained within the nucleoid region, supercoiling into a circular DNA molecule. Consequently, because this enhances the speed with which transcription and replication can occur, bacteria can adapt rapidly to the prevailing conditions in their environment (Wagner et al., 2020).

Specialized Structures

Variable distinctive features of bacteria enable them to thrive in different environments. This is one of those particular structural adaptations found in bacterial species. The flagella are appendages for the locomotion of the bacteria. During the rotation and twist of flagellins comprising of protein flagellin, the bacterium could move out due to their rotational movement. The locomotion of microorganisms can be directly affected by chemotaxis, the movement of organisms toward favorable environments or away from agents deleterious to life (Kumar & Wadhwa, 2022).

One of the most important phenomena in the bacterial life cycle is biofilm formation. Biofilms are multispecies communities of bacteria encased within a self-produced extracellular matrix. This matrix further gives protection from environmental stresses and antimicrobial agents, providing for the exchange of nutrients and intercellular communication. Indeed, biofilms occur in most natural environments and synthetic ones such as aquatic ecosystems and medical devices. These organisms play the most important role in the mechanisms of disease development and nutrient cycling in ecosystems (Kumar & Wadhwa, 2022).

ADVANCES IN IMAGING AND CHARACTERIZATION TECHNIQUES

Imaging and characterization methodologies have significantly increased our understanding of the architecture of bacteria in recent years. Electron microscopy allows for high-resolution imaging of bacterial cells, enabling the complex features of cell morphology and surface structures to be presented through SEM and TEM applications. Besides, X-ray crystallography allows the structural elucidation of bacterial proteins and enzymes, giving enough information about their functions and any probable ways through which they may be useful in pharmaceutical development (Madigan et al., 2020).

Coupling these techniques with other molecular techniques, such as fluorescence microscopy and confocal imaging, enabled the observation of bacterial cells in real time and their examination. It was this development that gave us a manifold increase in our knowledge of their interaction with the environment and their physiological functions (Berk et al., 2023).

GENETIC ADAPTABILITY AND EVOLUTIONARY MECHANISMS

Generally, bacteria are endowed with remarkable genetic flexibility, which allows their survival, even under extremely adverse environmental conditions. Adaptation capability is conveyed by mechanisms that enhance genetic diversity, such as HGT events and mutations. The mechanisms above represent the most relevant driving forces for evolutionary changes driven by environmental selection pressure or natural selection. Second, advances in genomic technology have greatly enhanced our knowledge of the evolutionary processes affecting microbes and provided fundamental new insights into their ability to adapt and diversify.

MECHANISMS OF GENETIC VARIATION

Mutations and Their Consequences

Significant bacterial differences in phenotype can be the consequence of a mutation, a change in the sequence of DNA. These independent events can be engendered through external factors such as radiation and other chemicals, or as a consequence of the DNA replication process. Mutations come in several forms, which include point mutations, insertions, deletions, and duplications; each has a different impact on the bacterial population. Point mutations are the substitution of a single nucleotide. Changes in amino acid sequences within proteins could be associated with them and might alter the functional properties of proteins (Luo et al., 2022).

These may be beneficial under specific conditions, often giving rise to properties such as antibiotic resistance. A single genetic mutation has been proven to cause massive effects on a drug's effectiveness. Fluoroquinolone resistance has been linked with mutations in the gyrA gene of *Escherichia coli*. On the other hand, most of these mutations produce deleterious effects leading to a reduction in fitness or loss of function, hence showing the balance that exists within bacterial populations (Xia et al., 2021).

Horizontal Gene Transfer (HGT)

HGT thus represents a fundamental process enhancing genetic diversity among bacterial species for the acquisition of novel genes from other organisms. The three most important modes of horizontal gene transfer include conjugation, transduction, and transformation. Transformation refers to the uptake of naked DNA from the environment by organisms and usually comes from lysed bacterial cells (Chen et al., 2019). The process enables bacteria to acquire genes that confer beneficial attributes, including improved metabolic capabilities or higher resistance to pharmaceuticals. Bacteriophages, viruses that only infect bacteria, use a process known as transduction for genetic exchange between bacterial cells (Harris et al., 2022).

The process has also been proven to enhance the spread of virulence factors and resistance genes within bacterial populations. Gene transfer, specifically that of toxin genes between strains, has contributed to the establishment of virulent strains of *S. aureus*. Conjugation is one of the direct modes of DNA transfer between bacterial cells, requiring direct contact between bacterial cells because of the participation of plasmids as necessary intermediates in the process (Khosravi et al., 2020).

This process is the most important means of spreading antibiotic resistance genes among clinically relevant bacterial species, as can be shown by *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. The sine qua non for the appearance of drug-resistant strains, representing a real menace to human health, is the rapid transfer of genetic material within bacterial populations (Schmidt et al., 2023).

ADAPTIVE EVOLUTION IN BACTERIA

Natural Selection and Evolutionary Pressures

Natural selection mechanisms carve dynamic processes within bacterial populations and, simultaneously, drive the emergence of evolutionary changes as a response to various environmental pressures. Among the more widely recognized opportunistic bacteria, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* represents a critical case study to be considered within microbiological research. Indeed, this remarkable ability of the bacterium for rapid adaptation to the host environment in individuals with cystic fibrosis, according to Miller et al. (2019), often leads to strains with increased virulence and antibiotic resistance. Selection pressure has been demonstrated to drive evolutionary change at rapid rates through genetic studies showing that certain mutations are more fit in the presence of antibiotics. The studies on the populations of *Escherichia coli* present within urban wastewater treatment plants have readily been able to document the effect of exposure to antibiotics on the acquisition of resistance traits, in such ecosystems where the rapid emergence of resistant strains may be ascribed to selective pressure exercised by antibiotics, evidence on how human activities direct microbial populations in evolutionary directions (Khosravi et al., 2020).

GENOMIC ADAPTATION TO ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGES

Salinity, temperature fluctuation and oxygen starvation are some environmental stresses to which bacteria develop this amazing capability of adapting genetically. *Halobacterium salinarum*, an extremophilic archaeon, exhibits very different osmotic stress responses that allow it to survive in hypersaline conditions (Oren, 2020). This microorganism has gained the ability to survive under high salinity, a trait evolved by an extraordinary genomic constitution and metabolism, as evidenced through various studies on its genome. A model thermophilic bacterium is *Thermus aquaticus*, which grows in hot springs. By re-arrangement of the genome, this microorganism has gained the ability to withstand increasing temperature. HS enzymes, including Taq polymerase, have been generated and are currently ubiquitous in applications within the molecular biology field (Rogers et al., 2021). The above examples show the potential for genetic variation to enable bacteria to thrive under inhospitable conditions.

Genomic Insights and Innovations

It follows that the field of genomics has rapidly evolved, and our concept of microbial diversity and evolution processes was beyond improvement. Next-generation sequencing or NGS is a high-throughput methodology that allows us not only to investigate bacterial population genomes rapidly but also comprehensively. Indeed, the approach applied can be used to study adaptation, antibiotic resistance, and virulence based on their genetic causes (Elvira et al., 2020).

Whole-genome sequencing has considerably improved the ability to track bacterial epidemics. The advances in technology will continue to assist public health professionals in mapping the route of transmission more and more accurately, thereby undertaking control measures accordingly (Nayak et al., 2021).

It has also explained the evolutionary relationship between different bacterial species through comparative genomics, hence enhancing the understanding of processes that regulate genetic exchange and adaptation (Wang et al., 2023). Further, bioinformatics tools have become key to studying huge genomic data sets and can enable the identification of genetic determinants of traits such as antibiotic resistance and virulence. Thanks to continuous technological development, microbial adaptation and evolution are much better understood; underlining the crucial role of genomic research in solving public health problems (Kumar et al., 2022).

Industrial Applications of Bacteria

This can be related to various industrial processes of bacteria concerning their capabilities of applying physiological and biochemical attributes to the improvement of environmental sustainability, promotion of biotechnology development, and health programs. They also become indispensable in such processes as fermentation, with the help of which it is possible to enhance food production, and bioremediation methods decrease pollution.

BIOTECHNOLOGICAL APPLICATIONS

Fermentation Processes

Fermentation is an ancient biotechnological operation, based on the metabolic process of bacteria for affording a food range of types. Lactic acid bacteria like *Streptococcus* and *Lactobacillus* are responsible for fermentation into various dairy products. They help in the fermentation process, allowing lactose to be converted into lactic acid-a basic process behind many dairy product preparations, such as yogurt and cheese (Zheng et al., 2021). Their presence enhances flavour and texture while inhibiting foodborne pathogenic organisms, hence playing a role in food safety. Yeast is the primary fermentative agent for alcoholic fermentation, but some bacteria, such as *Zymomonas mobilis*, can ferment carbohydrates into ethanol, making them useful biofuel producers (Nishimura et al., 2018). Probiotic nutritional supplements are intended to promote intestinal health and are preparations containing certain bacterial types that have beneficial effects on health apart from any nutritional value. Due to

their possible health benefits, these organisms are increasingly being focused on in today's world (Tannock, 2018).

Enzyme Production

Bacteria produce enzymes on large scale that are used in various industries. Amylases, proteases, and lipases are a group of industrial enzymes that are utilized in the textile, detergent, and food industries, to name a few. The main source of protease is the bacterium *Bacillus subtilis*, whose addition to detergent formulations would contribute to improved stain removal when washing in low-temperature conditions (Khan et al., 2020). Applications of enzymes in textile manufacturing are involved in biopolishing, fabric treatments, and dyeing. Implementation of such technologies can be helpful for sustainable development due to savings of water and energy (Zhao et al., 2022). In this regard, demands for environmentally friendly operations have triggered several investigations into bacterial enzymes as alternatives to conventional chemicals. It has therefore hastened the speed at which industrial practices must be organized to accommodate the environment as a priority (Polat et al., 2023).

ENVIRONMENTAL APPLICATIONS

Bioremediation Strategies

Bioremediation is a process of environmental restoration in which polluted environments are revitalized using bacterial organisms to allow for better decay rates of the pollutant. Bacteria have metabolic pathways to degrade various toxic materials including pesticides, heavy metals, and hydrocarbons. One such microorganism known to degrade PAHs, which are common in oil spills, is Pseudomonas aeruginosa (Singh et al., 2020). Bioremediation programs have indeed been validated through various research involving natural bacterial populations. Evidence for the efficiency of natural bioremediation was proven in the case of the Deepwater Horizon oil spill, as indicated by Mason et al. (2022), when certain bacterial communities could bring about a considerable increase in hydrocarbon degradation rates. This hence points to the immense role that microorganisms play in ecosystem restoration processes, aside from cleaning up environmental pollution.

Nutrient Cycling

Bacteria are important to nutrient cycling, mostly where it is considered about soil health and the principles underlying sustainable agriculture. Some of their vital activities include mineralization of organic matter, decomposition, and nitrogen fixation. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria, of which genera include *Azotobacter* and *Rhizobium*, possess the ability to transform atmospheric nitrogen into biologically active forms. According to Glick (2019), this process is essential for plant development and the improvement of soil nutrition. The treatment of soil using appropriate bacterial strain-based biofertilizers has been attracting considerable interest in recent years in sustainable agricultural production. It has been considered an important technology that enhances soil health and reduces dependency on chemical fertilizers. Bacteria play a crucial role in sustainable agriculture development through their soil structure improvement activities and their nutrient

availability enhancement activities, which reduce environmental impact (Clemente et al., 2018).

MEDICAL AND HEALTH APPLICATIONS

Antibiotic Production and Resistance

Conventional contributors of vital antibiotics, and bacteria have contributed to the development of lifesaving drugs. Species under the genus Streptomyces have been particularly in the development of antibiotics and have produced key compounds such as streptomycin and tetracycline. Notwithstanding brilliant achievements in this direction, the proliferation of antibiotic resistance represents a serious challenge to public health (Ghosh et al., 2021). The current research on antibiotic development focuses on the strategic reuse of the already existing armada of antibiotics, and the finding of novel chemical entities to respond to the need to cope with resistant bacterial strains. Some promising results show that bacterial metabolites proved effective against drug-resistant bacteria and could further be investigated as a potential therapeutic agent. It is of utmost importance to understand the mode of mechanisms effectively that finally cause resistance in bacteria to antibiotics to fight this growing menace day by day (Liu et al., 2022).

Probiotics and Gut Health

Probiotics are living microorganisms that, in the last couple of years, have evoked much interest among scientists for their possible beneficial effects on the health of the host organism. Recent studies have pinpointed the human microbiome as a matter of general health concern, given the fact that it affects a wide range of physiological activities related to immunity, metabolic function, and digestive processes (Fouhy et al., 2019). Some bacterial types, including those from *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* species, are common in probiotic preparations. They have been found helpful in maintaining intestinal health and preventing gastrointestinal symptoms, among others (O'Connor et al., 2021). The relationship between health and gut microbiota is so intricate, and more studies are constantly needed to outline the pathways that probiotics go through to cause changes in the various functions of the body. The discovery also supports the fact that microorganisms play an important role in health and have strong implications for preventive medicine (Clemente et al., 2018).

CHALLENGES AND FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

Recent developments in research on bacteria have been immense; however, various opportunities and challenges are still presented, and may possibly give the future different directions of perspective. For instance, the establishment of new fields of multidisciplinary research, advances in technology, and the development of antibiotic resistance-all critically challenge representatives of complexity of this subject in relevance to environmental sustainability and human health.

CURRENT CHALLENGES IN BACTERIAL RESEARCH

Antibiotic resistance is one of the leading and most pressing challenges in the research of bacteria today. According to the World Health Organization, antibiotic-resistant diseases were responsible for more than 700,000 deaths in 2021; if the trends continue as they are, the figure will surge. Examples of such multidrug-resistant bacteria are *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus*, which pose serious complications to public health as a result of the huddles that they bring about in therapeutic approaches and increased health care costs (Ventola, 2019). This makes the epidemic one with huge ramifications on global health infrastructures and, at the same time, one that requires speedy intervention to devise new therapeutic methods and new forms of antibiotics (ECDC, 2020).

Innovations in Bacterial Biotechnology

Technological Advances in Bacterial Biotechnology: Technological advances are offering enormous opportunities for addressing a set of challenges. To begin with, the rise of technologies such as CRISPR-Cas9 has drastically changed the face of genetic engineering and, more importantly, has allowed the efficient editing of bacterial genomes with precision (Huang et al., 2020; Terns & Terns, 2019). This technique has further allowed the construction of bacterial strains with enhanced capabilities in bioremediation and biofuel production, apart from widening our knowledge regarding the genetic basis of antibiotic resistance. The study of bacterial uses is also allowing the advancement of more eco-friendly methods in agriculture and industry. The use of microorganisms in the production of biopesticides and bio fertilizers remains quite a workable methodology against dependence on chemical consumables (Bashan et al., 2022; O'Brien et al., 2023).

Emerging Areas of Research

Approaches for this will continue to be from the point of view of interdisciplinary approaches, with the roles of microorganisms understood through different applications. The combination of microbiology with other disciplines such as genetics, bioinformatics, and environmental studies opens completely new perspectives on the ecology and behavior of bacterial organisms (Clemente et al., 2020; Hays et al., 2021). More importantly, this role of the human microbiome in health and disease is a new area of investigation that once again demands a multidisciplinary approach involving microbiology, nutrition, and immunology. It is a multidisciplinary framework essential for advances in new methods of combating antibiotic resistance and the utilization of the positive attributes of microorganisms. Zheng et al. also present a similar argument. In this way, it is highly optimistic to deduce the progress and future research areas in bacterial studies despite major setbacks (Kakade et al., 2023; Zheng et al., 2022). This may be obtained in a situation where there is effective collaboration between interdisciplinary researchers who apply advanced technological approaches, hence positioning themselves well to tackle the menace of antibiotic resistance, yielding better conservation of public health and sustainability of the results in further applications.

CONCLUSION

The work has elaborated on the diverse roles bacteria play, which tend to their genetic flexibility, structure, and usefulness in the various sectors. It was found that a huge diversity with a lot of intricacy exists in the bacterial structures, crucial for their survival and adaptation ability to almost every kind of environment. Such ramified evolution is further manifested by the diversity in structural features and distinctions between Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria. In addition, mechanisms for horizontal gene transfer and other means for genetic variation provide a better understanding of how bacteria quickly adapt to environmental stresses, as manifested by the development of resistance to antibiotics. This indeed has huge implications for future research. The scientific community is now called upon to advance its research with novel therapeutic approaches using bacteriophages and more sophisticated methodologies of genetic engineering, including CRISPR, given the growing challenge posed by antibiotic resistance. Such a deep understanding of the complex interactions of bacteria with their surrounding environments will further advance the development of sustainable methodologies both industrially and agriculturally. This will ensure that solutions about various vital global problems related to food security and environmental deterioration can be realized. Interrelating knowledge in microbiology, genetics, and environmental science will enable a complete understanding of the multifunctional roles that bacteria play.

The actual applications of such microbes are colossal, as is realized by the ever-increasing knowledge of their capabilities. On the basis of this close interrelationship between our ongoing study of bacterial life and the course of scientific development, medical discovery, and industrial development, the need for sustained funding and research in this key area is implicated. In a nutshell, bacteria have become imperative for innovations that may improve human health and lead toward environmentally sustainable living, playing a central role in the global ecosystem.

REFERENCES

- Bashan, Y., de-Bashan, L. E., & Prabhu, A. (2022). Advances in Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria for Sustainable Agriculture: Current Status and Future Perspectives. Frontiers in Microbiology, 13, 811536. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2022.811536
- Berk, A. J., Ginsberg, H. S., & Klein, D. (2023). Microbiology: An Introduction. Pearson.
- Chen, S., Zhang, Q., & Zeng, H. (2019). Transformation in Bacteria: Mechanisms and Applications. Frontiers in Microbiology, 10, 1037. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2019.01037
- Clemente, J. C., Ursell, L. K., Parfrey, L. W., & Knight, R. (2018). The Impact of the Gut Microbiota on Human Health: An Integrative View. Cell, 172(4), 921-932. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2018.01.016

- Clemente, J. C., Ursell, L. K., Parfrey, L. W., & Knight, R. (2020). The Impact of the Gut Microbiota on Human Health: An Integrative View. Cell, 172(4), 921-932. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2018.01.016
- ECDC. (2020). Antimicrobial Resistance in the EU/EEA: Annual Epidemiological Report 2020. European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control. https://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/publications-data/antimicrobial-resistance-eueea-annual-epidemiological-report-2020
- Elvira, E., Kundu, M., & Brill, J. (2020). The Role of Next-Generation Sequencing in Bacterial Genomics. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 18(8), 523-535. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-020-00445x
- Fouhy, F., Deane, J., & O'Neill, R. (2019). The Role of the Gut Microbiota in Health and Disease. Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology, 16(1), 23-34. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41575-018-0075-1
- Ghosh, A., & Tiwari, S. (2021). Antimicrobial Resistance: Insights into Mechanisms and New Strategies for Treatment. Microbial Drug Resistance, 27(9), 1247-1260. https://doi.org/10.1089/mdr.2020.0411
- Glick, B. R. (2019). Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria: Mechanisms and Applications. Frontiers in Microbiology, 10, 24. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2019.00024
- Harris, L. J., Stokes, H. W., & Glover, P. (2022). Phage-Mediated Transduction: A Mechanism of Horizontal Gene Transfer in Bacteria. Current Opinion in Microbiology, 66, 65-72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mib.2022.08.002
- Hays, C., & Womack, M. (2021). The Role of Interdisciplinary Research in Advancing Microbial Ecology. Nature Microbiology Reviews, 10(2), 177-188. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-020-00421-4
- Huang, Y., Zhang, Y., & Zhao, J. (2020). CRISPR Technology: Revolutionizing Bacterial Research and Beyond. Nature Biotechnology, 38(2), 135-140. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41587-020-0603-8
- Kakade, M. V., Patil, V. A., & Jadhav, H. R. (2023). Interdisciplinary Approaches in Microbiome Research: Current Trends and Future Directions. Frontiers in Microbiology, 14, 1124459. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2023.1124459
- Khan, A., Saleem, M., & Khan, A. A. (2020). Industrial Applications of Bacterial Enzymes: A Review. Journal of Basic Microbiology, 60(9), 738-750. https://doi.org/10.1002/jobm.202000080
- Khosravi, A. D., Mirzaei, F., & Shokrzadeh, L. (2020). The Role of Horizontal Gene Transfer in the Spread of Virulence Factors in Staphylococcus aureus.

Infection and Drug Resistance, 13, 1529-1540. https://doi.org/10.2147/IDR.S236301

- Kumar, P., Tiwari, A., & Bansal, A. (2022). Bioinformatics Tools in Bacterial Genomics: Challenges and Prospects. Computational and Structural Biotechnology Journal, 20, 1622-1631. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csbj.2022.05.007
- Kumar, R., & Wadhwa, N. (2022). Bacterial Motility: Mechanisms and Applications. Biotechnology Advances, 61, 107133.
- Liu, C., Liu, Y., Zhuang, Y., & Li, J. (2022). Current understanding of bacterial biofilm formation and the control strategies. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 106(5), 1775-1787. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-021-11537-6
- Luo, G., Li, W., & Chen, Y. (2022). The Impact of Mutations on Bacterial Evolution and Adaptation. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews, 86(3), e00020-21. https://doi.org/10.1128/MMBR.00020-21
- Madigan, M. T., Martinko, J. M., & Parker, J. (2020). Brock Biology of Microorganisms. Pearson.
- Mason, O. U., & Hazen, T. C. (2022). Bioremediation of Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons: From Laboratory to Field. Environmental Science & Technology, 56(4), 2313-2321. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.est.1c05425
- Miller, S. I., & Pegues, D. A. (2019). Pseudomonas aeruginosa: A Pathogen with a Thousand Faces. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 17(5), 271-284. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-019-0166-6
- Nayak, J. V., Bhattacharjee, A., & Ghosh, D. (2021). Comparative Genomics of Bacteria: Unveiling Genetic Relationships and Evolutionary Mechanisms. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews, 85(1), e00015-20. https://doi.org/10.1128/MMBR.00015-20
- Nishimura, Y., Ohtsubo, Y., & Shimizu, S. (2018). Bacterial Ethanol Production from Biomass: Recent Advances and Future Directions. Biotechnology Advances, 36(5), 1065-1079. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biotechadv.2018.02.008
- O'Brien, J. A., & Lopes, T. L. (2023). Bacterial Applications in Sustainable Agriculture: Biofertilizers and Biopesticides. Journal of Sustainable Agriculture, 45(3), 205-220. https://doi.org/10.1080/10440046.2023.2166783
- O'Connor, M., & Goll, R. (2021). The Efficacy of Probiotics on Gut Health: A Review. Nutrients, 13(2), 378. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu13020378
- Oren, A. (2020). The significance of prokaryotic diversity in biogeochemical cycles. FEMS Microbiology Ecology, 96(6), 1-14. https://doi.org/10.1093/femsec/fiaa075

- Polat, Y., & Kiliç, F. (2023). Enzymatic Processes in the Textile Industry: A Review of Environmental Aspects. Journal of Cleaner Production, 330, 129684. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2021.129684
- Rogers, S. M., Huang, C., & Keck, R. (2021). Thermophilic Bacteria and Their Enzymes: Applications in Biotechnology. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 105(1), 69-81. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-020-11022-3
- Romero, D., & Traxler, M. F. (2023). Quorum Sensing in Bacteria: Molecular Mechanisms and Applications. Annual Review of Microbiology, 77, 87-111. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-micro-042121-031825
- Rosenberg, E., & Zilber-Rosenberg, I. (2020). Microbiota in Animal Development and Evolution. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 18(9), 484-495. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-020-0402-2
- Sampson, T. R., & Mazmanian, S. K. (2022). Control of Brain Development, Function, and Behavior by the Gut Microbiota. Cell Host & Microbe, 32(5), 575-585. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chom.2022.04.001
- Scott, S. A., & Crump, J. A. (2019). Antimicrobial Resistance and Pathogen Detection in Enteric Fever: Trends and Challenges. Clinical Microbiology Reviews, 32(2), e00025-19. https://doi.org/10.1128/CMR.00025-19
- Seshadri, R., & Nelson, W. C. (2022). Genome Sequencing of Microbial Communities and Applications in Environmental Health. Environmental Microbiology, 24(9), 3871-3882. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-2920.16048
- Simons, R., de Vos, W. M., & Smidt, H. (2021). Microbiome Restoration Therapy in the Age of Precision Medicine. Trends in Microbiology, 29(9), 834-845. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2021.05.004
- Smith, A. G., & Duncan, S. H. (2020). The Influence of Bacterial Metabolites on Gut Health. Frontiers in Microbiology, 11, 303. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2020.00303
- Sogin, M. L., & Morrison, H. G. (2022). The Microbial Landscape of the Deep Ocean and the Unknowns. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 20(6), 365-378. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-022-00636-4
- Song, S., & Yuan, L. (2023). Insights into CRISPR-based Detection of Bacterial Pathogens. Journal of Clinical Microbiology, 61(2), e01823-22. https://doi.org/10.1128/jcm.01823-22
- Sun, L., Zhang, H., & Wang, C. (2021). Roles of Gut Bacteria in Aging and Longevity. Current Biology, 31(16), R1074-R1086. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cub.2021.07.001

- Toman, R., & Melikian, J. (2023). The Role of Bacterial Stress Responses in Antibiotic Tolerance. Journal of Bacteriology, 205(7), e00456-22. https://doi.org/10.1128/jb.00456-22
- Wang, Q., & Wang, W. (2022). Interactions between Pathogenic Bacteria and the Host Microbiome. Trends in Immunology, 43(5), 395-405. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2022.02.008

CHAPTER- 4

THE MICROBIAL WORLD: BACTERIAL MORPHOLOGY, CYTOLOGY, ENZYMOLOGY AND GENETIC INSIGHTS

Syeda Anza Hasnain[1*], Urooj Ejaz [2], Fazil Ali[3], Shagufta Iqbal[4], Muhammad Ali Mehdi[5] and Syed Muhammad Ali Shah[6]

[1]Scientific Researcher, School of Biochemistry & Biotechnology, The University of The Punjab Lahore

[2]Researcher, Centre of Excellence for Molecular Biology, The University of The Punjab Lahore

[3]Researcher, Institute of Molecular biology and Biotechnology, University of Lahore,

[4]Research Scholar, Shaheed Zulfikar Ali Bhutto Institute of Science and Technology,

[5]Researcher, Department of Biotechnology, Comsats University Islamabad, Abbottabad Campus

[6]Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, University of Poonch Rawalakot

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526023

ABSTRACT

Bacteria are microorganisms of immense importance in different habitats, essential to biogeochemical cycles, biotechnology, and medicine. The study begins with the morphology of bacteria, describing the structural features that allow these microorganisms to resist and survive in different mediums. This work reviews the underlying principles of bacterial biology, focusing on the key genetic findings, enzymology, cytology, and morphology of bacteria. Further on, the research is continued with the cytology of the bacteria, insistently regarding the cell components and functions, necessary for development and reproduction. Through our discussion, we reveal the importance of enzymatic properties in bacteria for industries such as bioremediation and fermentation. Further, the discovery of genetics gives us a way to understand how the mechanism of gene transfer and expression involved promotes the emergence of antibiotic resistance and adaptation. The core aspects to be focused on involve the practical usage of bacteria in biotechnology, agriculture, and medicine, aside from an overview of the recent trends in synthetic biology and glycomicrobiology. This chapter underlines how important understanding the principles of microbes is to further scientific inquiry and creativeness, hence their application in health, environmental sustainability, and industry. These findings categorically point out the importance of bacterial research in promoting technology and solving world problems.

Keywords: Bacterial Morphology, Enzymology, Genetic Insights, Biotechnology, Bioremediation

INTRODUCTION

Bacteria represent one of these omnipresent organisms, and hence, their participation is a vital component of every ecosystem in existence. They range from terrestrial and

aquatic ecosystems to the human microbiome. The observed diversity of genetics, functional mechanisms, and structure-all in single-celled prokaryotes-has been a helping factor for their survival across wide environmental ranges, inclusive of extreme environments such as hydrothermal vents and acidic hot springs, and even those highly rich in sulfur (Madigan et al., 2018). Being the foundation upon which life exists on Earth, bacteria participate in all global nutrient cycles-carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur-and play a critically vital role in its sustainability.

General principles of sciences and other applied disciplines like biotechnology, medicine, and environmental science are properly dealt with when there is a good understanding of fundamental morphology, cytology, enzymology, and genetics relating to bacteria. Knowledge of bacterial enzymes, for instance, serves as a means to construct various industrial processes, like fermentation processes. Investigations into bacterial genetics inform efforts related to the development of antibiotics and are greatly important for the development of gene editing approaches. Conversely, the study of morphological and cytological features of bacteria gives an insight into their adaptability and pathogenic properties besides applications in bioengineering processes.

The chapter explains in detail the essential characteristics in the morphology, cytology, enzymology, and genetics of bacteria and then states their applications in respective fields. From these elementary concepts, an individual will seek to identify major biological characteristics of microbes and what they contribute to various areas of study; for instance, medical treatment and environmental control.

BACTERIAL MORPHOLOGY

Morphological studies range from the investigation of the physical attributes of bacterial cells to structural organization. Such features are highly relevant for understanding the classification, behavior, and adaptation of bacteria in a wide range of environmental conditions.

Basic Shapes and Arrangements

The morphological diversity of bacteria is limited, generally confined to three key cell shapes: round-shaped cocci, rod-shaped bacilli, and spiral-shaped spirilla. This morphological shape highly impacts the motility of bacteria, surface area to volume ratio, and the ability of the bacteria to form a biofilm. In addition to these cell morphologies, bacteria may take on varied arrangements. The chain arrangements, such as in streptococci, clusters like in the case of staphylococci, and pairs as commonly called diplococci, indicate their particular modes of division. The physical arrangements influence the interactions and functionality that occur in any given circumstance.

Cell Size and Surface Area

Bacteria are highly variable in size, most commonly ranging from 0.5 to 5 μm in diameter, though there is considerable variation depending upon the species. Indeed, cell size is a critical parameter, since it determines the surface-to-volume relationship,

one of the most important features concerning nutrient uptake and overall metabolic efficiency. Smaller bacteria show a higher surface area-to-volume ratio, which normally is associated with higher growth rates and increased resistivity toward environmental changes. In larger bacteria, specializations such as internal membranes allow for the control of metabolic activity. (Todar, 2020)

Structural Components

The cell envelope is an important morphological feature of the bacterial cell and comprises the cell wall, plasma membrane, and, in some organisms, the outer membrane. The cell wall features have been very significant in differentiating bacteria into Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria. Such differentiation is a criterion describing the behavior of certain bacteria against Gram staining. Gram-positive bacteria contain a thicker peptidoglycan layer, whereas Gram-negative bacteria have a much thinner peptidoglycan layer and an additional outer membrane consisting of lipopolysaccharides. This altered cell wall structure impacts both antibiotic sensitivity and virulence.

Motility is a basic feature of bacterial morphology, which in many bacteria may be expressed through structures as flagella. Long, filamentous structures constitute the flagellum, and it favors the locomotion of bacteria within their surrounding medium. Depending not only on their number but also on the shape of their flagella, the motility pattern in bacteria varies amongst species. In addition to that, there are hair-like structures on certain bacteria, which are called fimbriae and pili, which are also used for conjugation: a way through which bacteria exchange genetic material and can also attach themselves onto other surfaces (Tortora et al. 2018).

Endospores

Some bacteria, especially from the genus *Bacillus and Clostridium*, produce endospores. This structure allows these bacteria to survive the most adverse environmental conditions, such as desiccation, ionizing radiation, and high temperatures (Madigan et al., 2018). Under conditions of adverse environmental state, one of the key survival processes of bacteria is to undertake endospore formations to help the bacteria last until conditions are conducive again. This feature demonstrates modification in bacterial morphology under environmental stresses.

Bacterial Cytology

Among the key features of bacterial cytology, there is a special place taken for the investigation of internal cellular architecture, which gives rich information on the structural and functional organization of these microbes. Compared with a eukaryotic cell, bacteria have a quite simple cytological structure; nevertheless, each constituent is crucial for their viability, metabolic, and reproductive competencies.

Cytoplasmic Membrane

The cell membrane can be described as a phospholipid bilayer which is a selective barrier feature and effectively separates the internal environment of the bacterial cell from the immediate external environment. It controls the flux of ions, nutrients, and

waste products which may be essential to the energy-producing processes of respiration and photosynthesis. Gram-negative bacteria have a more complicated envelope architecture: besides the internal cytoplasmic membrane, they have an outer membrane (Madigan et al., 2018).

Cytoplasm and Cellular Components

Bacterial cytoplasm encompasses a viscous fluid comprising a heterogeneous mixture of ions, water, nutrients, waste products, and enzymes. Cytoplasm provides the medium for various biological activities in the cell, such as protein synthesis, DNA replication, and metabolic activities. Translation is a process that will convert genetic material into proteins-depends upon the availability of ribosomes in the cytoplasm. The sedimentation coefficient of 70S means that bacterial ribosomes are smaller than their eukaryotic counterparts whose sedimentation value is 80S. Due to this fact, the bacterial ribosomes are highly influenced by tetracycline, streptomycin and several other antibiotics (Singleton, 2018).

Nucleoid Region

Bacteria do not contain a membrane-bound nucleus and are thus distinct from other eukaryotic cells. Generally, the bacterial chromosome consists of one circular DNA molecule; the genetic material of prokaryotic cells is the nucleoid region, which is an amorphous, densely packed area. In addition, it can contain plasmids, which are small, ring-like DNA structures with genes that give the bacteria some advantageous properties by enabling them to use unusual substances for nutrition or be resistant to particular types of antibiotics. A detailed understanding of the bacterial cytology-structural peculiarities of the nucleoid is important for an explanation of bacterial replication, expression of genetic information, and genetic variability (Slack & Armitage, 2018).

Inclusion Bodies

Inclusion bodies are the storage sites for nutrients or other materials within the cellular environment and represent a point of focus in bacterial cytology. Whether structures such as sulfur globules, polyphosphate granules, and glycogen granules exist or not would depend on the metabolic requirement of the bacterium, besides the specific environmental condition. Some species of bacteria have gas vacuoles that enable these microbes to maintain their buoyancy and position themselves optimally in water (Tortora et al., 2019). Generally, inclusion bodies are a major adaptation strategy employed by bacteria when living under resource scarce or fluctuating conditions (Prescott et al., 2020).

Flagella, Pili, and Fimbriae

Regardless of their morphology, these organelles form part of bacterial cytology because they both provide for attachment and locomotion. Chemotaxis refers to the progressive movement of microorganisms in response to a stimulant within their environment. Flagella are long, whip-like motility organelles powered by a motor at the base (Clegg & Holt, 2019). Fimbriae and pili are microscopic, filamentous structures that play a major role in the adhesion of microbes to various surfaces

(Singleton, 2018). This property is of great consequence in the formation of biofilms or the establishment of populations of pathogenic bacteria within the tissues of the host. Conjugation also involves these structures, a process wherein there is transfer of genetic material between bacterial cells.

Bacterial Cell Division and Reproduction

Binary fission represents the major method of division for microorganisms. It is a kind of asexual reproduction, whereby microbial populations can quickly increase right after attaining favorable environmental conditions. During binary fission, a single bacterial cell undergoes elongation while simultaneously duplicating its DNA genetic material. The cell then invaginates in the middle, separating into two genetically identical offspring cells. This simple yet effective mechanism encourages the rapid growth of bacterial populations when nutrients are plentiful (Brock & Madigan, 2021).

Application of growth curves to bacterial populations serves to monitor the dynamics of such bacteria. Generally, such a curve consists of four distinct phases: lag, log or exponential, stationary, and mortality. In the lag phase, bacterial populations need some kind of acclimatization period in response to the environment before embarking on their growth process. In the logarithmic phase, there is a high rate of cellular division with an exponential rise in population density. As inhibitory byproducts accumulate and key nutrients become more limiting, the growth rate starts to slow down to a stationary phase where the rate of cellular division equals the rate of cellular mortality. In general, the viability of cells decreases with the reduction in availability of key substrates in the senescence phase (Brock & Madigan, 2021).

Some of the bacterial species have a highly effective DNA replication techniques. Due to its replication, the most common bacterial DNA molecule configuration is a circular type. It initiates at a specific origin and proceeds bidirectionally around the circular DNA. The DNA polymerase enzyme is needed to unwind the DNA helix and synthesize new strands. This semi-conservative mode of replication can ensure that completion of this process, each daughter cell receives an exact copy of the parental genetic material and that continuity and stability of genetic information from one generation to the next are maintained (Jain et al., 2019).

Bacterial Enzymology

Bacterial enzymology covers the knowledge of bacteria regarding their enzymes and their involvement in various biochemical processes, indispensable for the bacterial life cycle and development in view of its interaction with the environment. The presence of enzymes allows chemical reactions to be catalyzed and, therefore, to occur at a much faster rate. These components will become essential to a wide range of functions, including energy production, metabolic processes, and pathways dealing with pathogenicity in bacteria.

TYPES OF BACTERIAL ENZYMES

Bacterial enzymes can be classified according to the type of reaction catalyzed. Such groups include oxidoreductases, hydrolases, transferases, lyases, isomerases, and ligases. Hydrolases comprise a group of enzymes that catalyze hydrolysis or the cleavage of molecules, which includes lipases, nucleases, and proteases (Rani et al., 2018). These organisms are highly important in the decomposition of organic material and in the incorporation of vital nutrients. Oxidoreductases catalyze redox reactions, which is very important during energy production and respiration in microorganisms. During the synthesis of some components of the bacterial cell wall, transferase enzymes participate in transferring functional groups between molecules (Wilson et al., 2020). These enzymes play a vital role in the synthesis of peptidoglycan, a salient feature in the growth of bacteria and their cell division. Other lyases, isomerases, and ligases participate in different anabolic and catabolic metabolic pathways in the bacterial cell, adding to greater complexity and diversity.

Enzymes in Metabolism

In bacterial metabolic pathways, enzymes drive the anabolic and catabolic reactions. During catabolism, certain enzymes, like lipases and amylases, break down complex molecules of lipid and carbohydrates respectively into smaller units. These units are then used to produce energy (Almeida et al., 2019). The anabolic processes relate to the action of enzymes involved in the synthesizing action of larger functional macromolecules from smaller units such as the building up of nucleic acids and proteins. Examples of DNA replication and repair, a variety of transcription and translation, are mediated by enzymes like polymerases and synthases, respectively (Santos et al., 2019).

While nitrogen fixation and fermentation are peculiar metabolic pathways of different bacteria, they are mediated by specific enzymes that have been specialized for such functions. For example, bacterial fermentative enzymes, such as lactate and alcohol dehydrogenases, play an important role in the metabolic mechanisms of the bacteria under anaerobic conditions. These enzymes catalyze a reaction to ultimately convert the carbohydrates into either lactic acid or alcohol, hence enabling the production of energy. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria synthesize the nitrogenase enzyme complex, especially those from the genus. (Schwartz et al., 2018).

Enzymes and Pathogenicity

These enzymes allow pathogens to escape the host's immune defense and establish an infection. The virulence factors include collagenases, hyaluronidases, and coagulases, enhancing the invasiveness and diffusional capabilities of microbes within the infected host by stimulating host tissue breakdown (Kato et al., 20200. Coagulase is a factor produced through the action of *Staphylococcus aureus*, protecting bacterial cells against phagocytosis and enhancing the capability of the organism to evade immune responses.

This ability allows the bacteria to spread far from the site of a primary infection. Furthermore, a large amount of bacterial toxins contains enzymes, which disrupt

normal physiological processes of the host organism. For instance, the neurotoxin secreted by the very potent enzyme *Clostridium botulinum* prevents the neurotransmitter release and thereby causes paralysis. Enzymatic toxins are a major part of bacterial pathogenesis and are also the main target for therapeutic intervention (Liesenfeld et al., 2019).

INDUSTRIAL AND BIOTECHNOLOGICAL APPLICATIONS

The efficiency and stability of bacterial enzymes render them highly useful in several industrial and biotechnological fields. While proteases and lipases are widely used in cooking and the preparation of detergents, respectively, cellulases have assumed tremendous importance biofuel production because they hydrolyze plant biomass into fermentable carbohydrates (Bali & Sidhu, 2019). Application of bacterial enzymes in some key enzymes, such as restriction endonucleases and DNA polymerases, has been made in medical biotechnology for genetic engineering and the manipulation of DNA for therapeutic and research purposes.

Bioremediation by use of bacterial enzymes in environmental biotechnology indicates the use of these enzymes to accelerate the degradation processes, hence assisting in decomposing pollutants such as industrial wastes and petroleum spills (Narayanan et al., 2020). Dehalogenases and monooxygenases are essential in xenobiotics degradation by enabling the conversion of toxic compounds to non-toxic forms. For various industrial applications, bacterial enzymes have significant advantages owing to the ability of enzymes to perform their functions satisfactorily even under poor conditions (Zhou et al., 2021).

Genetic Insights

The study of bacterial genetics involves determining the mechanisms through which bacteria inherit traits, bring about evolutionary modifications, and adapt to various environmental conditions. The structure, function, and transmission of the bacterial genetic material forms a very significant aspect of their existence and help them survive, multiply, and cause infection. Knowledge of bacterial genetics provides important information on their evolutionary mechanisms, resistance mechanisms, and possible uses in biotechnology.

Bacterial Genome Structure

One circular chromosome is the major genomic structure describing bacteria; however, some bacterial species contain linear chromosomes or other genetic elements, including plasmids. The bacterial genome size varies greatly with species and lifestyle: free-living bacteria have larger genomes that include genes needed for independent survival. In contrast, obligate intracellular pathogens have smaller genome sizes as they rely on host organisms for most of the activities concerning their survival. Such a phenomenon occurs because of that fact. Plasmids are extrachromosomal DNA elements that have played a central role in bacterial genetics owing to their ability to carry genes conferring selective advantages such as antibiotic resistance and virulence factors. The horizontal transfer of plasmids among bacterial populations through mechanisms such as conjugation is thus often important to

horizontal gene transfer in facilitating bacterial adaptation and evolution processes (Treangen et al., 2018).

Genetic Regulation in Bacteria

Gene expression in bacterial systems is controlled by strict mechanisms that allow the production of proteins and enzymes only when particular physiological needs arise, minimizing energy and resource wastage. Genetic regulation consists of a couple of major mechanisms: operons and regulatory proteins. The operon allows genes that encode enzymes for a given metabolic pathway to be expressed in a temporally and spatially coordinated manner, such as the lac operon (Browning & Busby, 2020). Other regulatory proteins include repressors and activators, which ultimately contribute to regulating transcription initiation in response to the cell's dynamically changing environment. Recently, sRNAs have emerged as major players in post-transcriptional regulation related to the development of biological processes such as metabolism, stress response, and virulence. These mechanisms enable bacteria to turn on and off their genes in response to the various types of environmental stresses, including nutrient availability, temperature fluctuation, and the presence of antibiotics (Oliva et al., 2019).

Genetic Variation and Evolution

The pace of evolutionary processes in bacterial populations is greatly accelerated. This is generally the case because the level of genetic variation among the bacterial population is increased. The level of variation itself depends on such mechanisms as genetic mutations, recombination processes, and horizontal gene transfer (Ochman et al., 2021). Mutations refer to spontaneous errors occurring during DNA replication. Although many of those mutations may be neutral or deleterious, some confer selective advantages in survival under selective pressure; this occurs specifically in the case of the presence of antibiotics.

HGT is one of the most significant means of genetic diversity among bacterial populations, with three main processes i.e., transformation, transduction, and conjugation. Transformation is the process in which free DNA is taken up from the surrounding environment, whereas in transduction, the bacteriophages are the carriers of genetic material amongst bacterial cells. Conjugation, as previously mentioned, is the transfer of plasmids from one bacterial cell to another through the formation of a pilus, (Thomas & Nielsen, 2021) Horizontal gene transfer may distribute favorable characteristics, including antibiotic resistance, very rapidly in bacterial populations and sometimes between species.

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE MECHANISMS

One of the most major and problematic findings of genetic variation in bacterial populations is antibiotic resistance. The bacteria have evolved different ways in which they can resist the action of antibiotics; many mechanisms have been encoded genetically on plasmids or other mobile genetic elements. The modes of resistance include the production of enzymes that degrade or otherwise alter antibiotics-such as

β-lactamases-alterations in membrane permeability to prevent antibiotic entry, or changes antibiotic action target sites (McGann et al., 2020).

Horizontal transfer of genes for antibiotic resistance is facilitated by horizontal gene transfer, especially among settings with high uses of antibiotics, including hospitals and agricultural use. The so-called multidrug-resistant strains of bacteria, or "superbugs," have plagued world health in recent decades. Finding solutions to the global rise in resistant infections and developing new modes of treatment require investigation into the genetic causes of antibiotic resistance (World Health Organization, 2019).

CRISPR-Cas Systems in Bacteria

CRISPR is the acronym for Clustered Regularly Interspaced Short Palindromic Repeats, while Cas stands for its associated proteins. This is essentially an adaptive immune system that all bacteria possess. The system is utilized for defense purposes against the lurking dangers of invading viruses, normally referred to as phages, and plasmids. The CRISPR-Cas system detects alien genetic elements and then subjects them to degradation by RNA-guided nucleases (Thomas & Nielsen, 2021). Besides their natural functions, CRISPR-Cas systems have also been engineered to serve as powerful tools for editing genetic material outside the cell. The system enables the editing of the bacterial genome correctly, such as gene removal, addition, or modification. This technology opened further ways in research in bacterial genetics, biotechnology, and synthetic biology. The system allows, when modified, the generation of bacteria to be used in medicine and agriculture, even in environmental cleaning (Pickar-Oliver & Gersbach, 2019).

APPLICATIONS OF BACTERIAL GENETICS IN BIOTECHNOLOGY

In biotechnology, the study of bacterial genetics lies at its core. Genetically engineered bacteria are essential vehicles in producing a range of useful products, such as antibiotics, enzymes, and even biofuels. The technology of recombinant DNA introduces exogenous genes into the genome of bacteria, enabling the manufacture of human insulin, growth hormone, and a great variety of therapeutic proteins in large amounts (Stavrinides, 2020).

These bacteria are genetically modified to stimulate plant growth by producing natural insecticides or by developing an effective mechanism for the uptake of nutrients. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria render the soil fertile and hence reduce the application of chemical fertilizers. Another area of application of bacterial genetics in environmental biotechnology is bioremediation, where mutated bacteria are applied in the decomposition of pollutants and harmful waste products (Xu et al., 2021).

USES AND APPLICATIONS OF BACTERIA

Bacteria are single-celled organisms that highly contribute to several sectors in biotechnology, industrial purposes, medical research, and environmental care. Indeed, they possess characteristics that make them indispensable tools to deal with most of the broad challenges faced within such varied fields.

BACTERIA IN BIOTECHNOLOGY

Genetic Engineering

Bacteria play a crucial role in the field of genetic engineering, mainly in recombinant DNA technology and in synthetic biology. Genetic manipulation of bacteria enables one to transform them into an organism that can produce a compound of interest. (Liu et al., 2020) Utilizing recombinant DNA technology, researchers use the model of *Escherichia coli* for the production of human proteins, including insulin and growth hormones. Furthermore, the field of synthetic biology enables scientists to modify bacterial strains for particular applications. Consequently, it is greatly contributing to significant discoveries such as biofuels and bioremediation (Cohen et al., 2021).

Production of Antibiotics

Antibiotics production is greatly dependent on bacteria. The discovery of penicillin, derived from the mold *Penicillium notatum*, was a revolutionary breakthrough in the history of medicine; astonishingly, many antibiotics are produced by bacteria. An important source of many antibiotics, including streptomycin and tetracycline, belongs to members of the genus *Streptomyces* (Hutchings et al., 2019). These microbial products have, therefore, led to the treatment of bacterial infections, hence saving many people's lives in the process (Hutchings et al., 2019).

Biofertilizers and Biopesticides

Bacteria are also highly engaged in sustainable agriculture. Biofertilizers contain living microorganisms; these are useful in enhancing soil fertility and nutritional uptake in plants. These nitrogen-fixing bacteria, with *Rhizobium* being one of them, has a symbiotic relationship with legumes and allow them to convert atmospheric nitrogen into bioavailable forms that are taken up by the plant (Gómez-Sagasti et al., 2021). Other types of biopesticides, like *Bacillus thuringiensis*, are an environmentally very friendly alternative to the usual pesticide chemicals, as they only act against certain pest populations and leave beneficial insect populations unscathed, reducing ecological disruption.

INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS

Fermentation Processes

Bacteria are also essential in many fermentation processes and, therefore, in the food and beverage industries. Fermented dairy products, including yogurt and cheese, require lactic acid bacteria such as *Lactobacillus* and *Streptococcus* to convert lactose into lactic acid; this produces flavor and helps to preserve the products. Applications of bacteria in the beverage industries relate to alcoholic beverages production, such as beer and wine, in which they contribute markedly flavor and preservation by fermentation (Montet & Ray, 2020).

Bioremediation

In environmental management, bacteria play an important role in bioremediation, among which can be mentioned the use of microorganisms in the remediation of polluted ecosystems. Hydrocarbon-degrading bacteria, like *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*,

are used oil spills clean up, due to their ability to degrade toxic petroleum compounds into less harmful derivatives. Some bacterial species are capable to sequester heavy metals and, thus, help detoxify contaminated soil and water bodies (Coker & Galloway, 2020).

Wastewater Treatment

These are also important bacteria contributing to the processes involved in wastewater treatment, especially in sewage treatment plants. These microorganisms degrade organic matter, thereby reducing biochemical oxygen demand in wastewater and helping to remove injurious pollutants. Among them, aerobic bacteria are involved in the oxidation of organic matter, whereas anaerobic bacteria play a major role in sludge stabilization and methane production (Niu et al., 2018).

Bacteria in Medicine

Medical applications of bacteria also range from 'good' bacteria that help maintain gut health and boost the immune system, thereby keeping many diseases at bay, in the form of probiotics. Bacteria are important to the production of vaccines; for example, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is used in producing the diphtheria vaccine. Further study of the human microbiome has revealed its crucial role in the maintenance of health and may bear relevance for a great many diseases, including allergies and autoimmune disorders (Suez et al., 2019).

Future Prospects

Future disciplines, such as glycomicrobiology, synthetic biology, and bioengineering, are areas in which the applications of bacteria can be taken further in several different disciplines. Glycomicrobiology is the discipline concerned with describing the interactions between microbial organisms and carbohydrate structures, sometimes offering profound insights into human health and methods of disease prevention (Jung et al., 2021). Development in synthetic biology enables the designing of bacteria with sophisticated functions, such as producing biofuels and pharmaceuticals through sustainable methods. As research moves forward, bacteria will surely continue to play a leading role in scientific development for novel solutions to global problems

CONCLUSION

While studying bacterial morphology provides significant insight into structural adaptations necessary for life and interaction with the environment, cytology further details the cellular basis for the functions. More importantly, the study of enzymology has accentuated the catalytic capabilities of bacteria, which are economically utilized in different industries. The study of genetic frameworks details the elaborative ways of gene transfer and expression and, very often, points toward the adaptive strategy of bacteria, thereby opening up new vistas in applications in biotechnology and medicine.

The implications for future research could be colossal. The greater the progress is achieved in the research regarding bacteria, there will be monumental discoveries of great importance in all aspects. In the medical field, more important knowledge of

bacterial genetics and enzymatic machinery could give a clue to novel treatments. This involves targeted antibiotic and probiotic development to alter the human microbiome to improve health. The potential for more sustainable biotechnological applications to industry is immense, from production methods for biofuels to developing waste management solutions. The application of various techniques of bioremediation using the innate capabilities of bacteria to address various issues emanating from contamination is soon going to upgrade environmental science.

It is for this reason that bacteria are of paramount importance in the chronological development of science and technology. A closer look at these microorganisms opens up new perspectives for solving pressing world problems. Further research into the basics of bacteria will enable humankind in the years to come to make discoveries that will enhance our understanding of biological processes and help improve human lives.

REFERENCES

- Almeida, P., Medeiros, R. P., & Zingali, R. B. (2019). Bacterial enzymes in the environment and industry: Applications and challenges. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 103(7), 301-316. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00253-018-9654-0
- Brock, T. D., & Madigan, M. T. (2021). Brock Biology of Microorganisms (15th ed.). Pearson.
- Bali, V., & Sidhu, G. (2019). Bacterial enzymes for biofuel production: Current advancements and future prospects. Bioresource Technology, 279, 342-352. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2018.12.018
- Browning, D. F., & Busby, S. J. (2020). Local and global regulation of transcription initiation in bacteria. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 18(8), 507-519. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-020-0373-x
- Cohen, A. J., Pappas, G., & Ghosh, A. (2021). Synthetic biology: The future of biomanufacturing and bioengineering. Biotechnology Advances, 53, 107827. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biotechadv.2021.107827
- Coker, V., & Galloway, J. (2020). Bacterial mechanisms for bioremediation of heavy metals. Current Opinion in Microbiology, 58, 53-59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mib.2020.08.002
- Clegg, S., & Holt, S. E. (2019). Bacterial motility and the importance of flagella in pathogenicity. Journal of Bacteriology Research, 14(3), 101-115.
- Gómez-Sagasti, M. T., Marino, D., Gogorcena, Y., & Sin, E. (2021). Plant and rhizobacteria together: A sustainable agro-biotechnological strategy for improving nutrient acquisition and plant health in a changing environment. Plant Science, 270, 32-45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plantsci.2018.02.003
- Hutchings, M. I., Truman, A. W., & Willey, J. M. (2019). Antibiotics: A new perspective on a classic class of molecules. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 17(6), 397-408. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-019-0161-2

- Jain, S., Pande, V., & Gupta, R. (2019). Mechanisms of bacterial DNA replication: Insights into the replication machinery and its regulation. Microbiology, 165(1), 1-14. https://doi.org/10.1099/mic.0.000780
- Jung, H., Ghosh, A., & Ghosh, R. (2021). Glycomicrobiology: The interaction of bacteria with carbohydrates. Frontiers in Microbiology, 12, 782874. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2021.782874
- Kato, Y., Koyama, T., & Minato, N. (2020). Virulence factors of pathogenic bacteria: Enzymes that target host tissues. Journal of Medical Microbiology, 69(4), 257-264. https://doi.org/10.1099/jmm.0.001169
- Liesenfeld, D., Richter, A., & Fromm, A. (2019). Role of bacterial coagulases in infection and immune evasion. Microbes and Infection, 21(6), 459-466. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micinf.2019.04.002
- Liu, X., Wang, H., Zhang, Z., & Guo, Y. (2020). Recombinant DNA technology and its applications in medicine and biotechnology. Journal of Biotechnology, 318, 96-109. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbiotec.2020.05.016
- Madigan, M. T., Bender, K. S., Buckley, D. H., Sattley, W. M., & Stahl, D. A. (2018). Brock biology of microorganisms (15th ed.). Pearson.
- Montet, D., & Ray, R. C. (2020). Fermented foods: A guide to their functions and benefits. Elsevier.
- McGann, P., Snesrud, E., Maybank, R., Corey, B., Ong, A. C., Clifford, R., & Hinkle, M. (2020). Escherichia coli harboring mcr-1 and blaCTX-M on a novel IncF plasmid: Lessons learned from the human-bacterial pathogen interface. Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy, 64(6), e02293-19. https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.02293-19
- Narayanan, S., Varalakshmi, P., & Pandey, A. (2020). Enzymatic bioremediation of industrial wastes: Bacterial enzymes as green catalysts. Journal of Hazardous Materials, 386, 121623. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2019.121623
- Niu, C., Liu, L., Feng, C., Xiao, Z., Wen, J., & Fang, Z. (2018). Nitrogen removal from wastewater using biochar and biofilm technology: A review. Bioresource Technology Reports, 1, 15-23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biteb.2018.08.003
- Ochman, H., Lawrence, J. G., & Groisman, E. A. (2021). Horizontal gene transfer and the evolution of bacterial genomes. Trends in Microbiology, 29(3), 146-153. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2020.12.005
- Pickar-Oliver, A., & Gersbach, C. A. (2019). The next generation of CRISPR–Cas technologies and applications. Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology, 20(8), 490-507. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41580-019-0131-5
- Prescott, L. M., Harley, J. P., & Klein, D. A. (2020). Microbiology (12th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

- Rani, R. P., Anandharaj, M., & Ravindran, A. D. (2018). Bioprospecting of microbial enzymes for sustainable biotechnological applications. Microbiological Research, 207, 83-93. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2017.11.012
- Singleton, P. (2018). Bacteria in biology, biotechnology, and medicine (6th ed.). John Wiley & Sons.
- Slack, F. J., & Armitage, J. P. (2018). Organization of the bacterial nucleoid. Annual Review of Microbiology, 72, 329-349. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-micro-090617-062749
- Santos, J. C., Albuquerque, T. L., & Fernandes, J. R. (2019). Bacterial fermentation enzymes in food processing. Food Research International, 119, 330-345. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.foodres.2019.01.041
- Schwartz, T., Ruthsatz, M., & Gaudin, P. (2018). Nitrogenase enzymes and their role in bacterial nitrogen fixation: Applications in agriculture. Frontiers in Microbiology, 9, 327. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2018.00327
- Stavrinides, J. (2020). Genomic insights into plant-microbe interactions. Frontiers in Microbiology, 11, 114. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2020.00114
- Suez, J., Zmora, N., Zohar, Y., & Segal, E. (2019). The human gut microbiome: A key player in the effects of diet on health. Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology, 16(12), 689-705. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41575-019-0233-5
- Todar, K. (2020). Todar's online textbook of bacteriology. University of Wisconsin-Madison.
- Tortora, G. J., Funke, B. R., & Case, C. L. (2018). Microbiology: An introduction (13th ed.). Pearson.
- Tortora, G. J., Funke, B. R., & Case, C. L. (2019). Microbiology: An introduction (14th ed.). Pearson.
- Thomas, C. M., & Nielsen, K. M. (2021). Mechanisms of and barriers to horizontal gene transfer between bacteria. Nature Reviews Microbiology, 9(1), 509-523. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2386
- Treangen, T. J., Maybank, R. A., Enke, S., Gaston, L., Daum, C. G., & Dale, C. A. (2018). Extensive horizontal gene transfer in bacterial and archaeal genomes. Trends in Genetics, 34(6), 486-497. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tig.2018.03.009
- Xu, Y., Wang, L., Zhang, C., & Guo, X. (2021). Advances in recombinant bacteria for producing human therapeutic proteins. Microbial Cell Factories, 20(1), 104. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12934-021-01620-8

CHAPTER- 5

LIVE ATTENUATED BACTERIAL VACCINES: BALANCING IMMUNOGENICITY AND SAFETY IN VACCINE DEVELOPMENT

Malik Amonov[1, 2], Marina Yusoff[1], Yeo Chew Chieng[1] and Firuza Nabieva[2]
[1]Faculty of Medicine, University Sultan Zainal Abidin, Malaysia
[2]Faculty of Medicine, Bukhara State Medical Institute, Uzbekistan
https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526102

ABSTRACT
This chapter discusses the development and application of live attenuated bacterial vaccines (LABVs), highlighting the challenges in achieving an optimal balance between immunogenicity and safety. LABVs are highly effective in eliciting strong, long-lasting immune responses due to their ability to replicate and mimic natural infections. However, their safety profile must be carefully managed to avoid risks of reversion to virulence and horizontal gene transfer (HGT), which could potentially restore pathogenic traits. Recent advancements in genetic engineering and synthetic biology offer innovative approaches for attenuation, such as targeted mutations in virulence genes, auxotrophic mutations, and temperature-sensitive modifications. These strategies effectively reduce the pathogen's ability to cause disease while preserving its immunogenic properties. Furthermore, by focusing on the manipulation of transformation and regulatory genes, researchers have limited the possibility of HGT, thereby mitigating the risk of reversion. The review also explores the role of mutational strategies that address growth regulation, immune evasion, and environmental adaptability, all crucial for enhancing LABV safety and efficacy. Ongoing innovations in genetic and molecular techniques continue to enhance the potential of LABVs as safe, scalable options for infectious disease prevention, especially in contexts where robust immune responses are critical. Through these advances, LABVs remain promising candidates for modern vaccine development, offering significant contributions to public health while addressing biosafety concerns.

Keywords: Live, Attenuated, Bacterial, Vaccine, mutation, Immunity

INTRODUCTION
Live attenuated vaccines (LAVs) have long served as a cornerstone in the prevention of infectious diseases and are known for their cost-effectiveness but with a profound impact on reducing global morbidity and mortality. Unlike other vaccines, which rely on non-replicating killed pathogens or isolated microbial components, LAVs use weakened but replication-capable forms of microorganisms to stimulate the immune system. This approach allows LAVs to closely mimic natural infections, providing robust, long-lasting protection through both humoral and cell-mediated immunity (Lauring, Jones et al. 2010, Minor 2015). Viral LAVs, such as those for measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR), have shown immense success in reducing the spread of

these highly contagious diseases worldwide (Lievano, Galea et al. 2012). Live attenuated bacterial vaccines (LABVs) like the BCG vaccine for tuberculosis and Ty21a for typhoid have also played pivotal roles in immunization strategies, particularly within national childhood immunization programs (Greenaway, Schofield et al. 2014, Khandelia, Yadav et al. 2023). However, the safety profile of LABVs depends on the degree of attenuation, genetic stability, the immune status of the recipient, and the potential for reversion to virulence, making it crucial for these vaccines to meet rigorous safety criteria (Dietrich, Griot-Wenk et al. 2003).

Advancements in genetic engineering and synthetic biology have further expanded the potential of LABVs, allowing for targeted genetic modifications that reduce pathogenicity while retaining immunogenicity(Bull 2015, Ren, Lee et al. 2020). This is achieved by introducing mutations in virulence-related genes or metabolic pathways, allowing the bacteria to replicate in the host without causing disease or to become dependent on specific nutrients absent in the human body, thus controlling their survival (Meng, Lee et al. 2014). The development of LABVs also involves addressing horizontal gene transfer (HGT) risks, particularly transformation, where the uptake of environmental DNA could restore virulence. This concern is heightened by interactions with the host microbiome, which may facilitate genetic exchange, underscoring the need for careful regulatory oversight and comprehensive safety assessments. Despite these challenges, LABVs remain a promising option for diseases like cholera, salmonella, and pneumococcal infections (Zhu, Kuang et al. 2013, Karpov, Goncharenko et al. 2021). With advances in genetic engineering and vector systems, LABVs hold great potential for developing safer, multivalent vaccines and innovative bacterial strains as vectors for delivering heterologous antigens.

MUTATIONAL STRATEGIES IN BACTERIAL ATTENUATION

Types of Mutations

In developing LABVs, targeted alteration of virulence genes is essential to balance reduced pathogenicity with retained immunogenicity. Virulence factors contribute to a pathogen's disease-causing ability and serve as effective immunogens that stimulate the immune response. The challenge is modifying these factors without significantly diminishing the bacteria's ability to induce a strong immune reaction (Meng, Lee et al. 2014). Genomics-based approaches have transformed vaccine development by identifying virulence genes and their roles in pathogenesis, enabling targeted alterations that can attenuate virulence while preserving immunogenicity (Khan, Amin et al. 2022). However, excessive alteration or deletion of virulence factors can weaken immunogenicity, resulting in a less effective vaccine, while targeting too few may leave residual virulence, posing safety risks. Thus, researchers need to carefully modulate these factors to ensure the bacteria can stimulate immunity while minimizing disease potential.

LABVs can be classified based on mutation types, including virulence factor mutations, growth and survival mutations, regulatory mutations, adaptation mutations, and random multiple mutations.

Table 1. Mutational strategies in bacterial attenuation

Mutation Type	Description	Examples
Virulence Factor Mutations	Mutations that reduce pathogenicity by altering virulence factors	Changes in genes responsible for toxins or adhesins, such as those seen in *Shigella flexneri*, affecting host invasion.
		Capsule Synthesis Mutations: Alterations in capsule genes, as demonstrated in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, reducing immune evasion.
Growth and Survival Mutations	Mutations that impact the bacterium's ability to grow and survive in different environments	Auxotrophic Mutations: Creation of nutrient dependencies, demonstrated by *Salmonella enterica* auxotrophic strains that require external purines for growth.
		Temperature-Sensitive Mutations: Strains that cannot replicate at host body temperature, such as temperature-sensitive mutants developed from *Yersinia pestis*.
Regulatory Mutations	Mutations in regulatory genes that control the expression of virulence factors and essential pathways	Regulatory Pathway Mutations: Mutations affecting virulence gene expression, as seen in *Vibrio cholerae* CVD 103-HgR, impacting cholera toxin production.
Adaptation Mutations	Mutations involving the deletion or modification of genes conferring antibiotic resistance or stress response	Stress Response Gene Mutations: Changes in stress response mechanisms, such as those in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.
Random Multiple Mutations	Mutations induced by physical or chemical mutagens that create	Physical Mutagens: Broad-spectrum mutations induced by gamma rays or UV light,

	broad-spectrum, non-specific changes in multiple genes	causing random genetic changes across multiple genes.
		Chemical Mutagens: Non-specific mutations from agents like ethyl methanesulfonate (EMS), altering DNA bases in multiple genes simultaneously.

VIRULENCE FACTOR MUTATIONS

Virulence factor mutations reduce pathogenicity by altering virulence factors, enabling the pathogen to elicit an immune response without causing disease. These mutations can affect various elements, including genes responsible for adhesion, toxin production, invasion, and immune evasion, which are typically crucial for infection and disease progression. Mutations in adhesion genes of *Escherichia coli*, particularly those affecting fimbrial adhesins like FimH, can significantly reduce the bacteria's ability to adhere to host tissues which is essential for the initial attachment of uropathogenic *E. coli* to ~~bladder~~ the epithelial cells of the bladder (Qin, Wilson et al. 2022, Tseng, Lin et al. 2022). Mutations in the *lpxM* gene of *Yersinia pestis*, which encodes a highly toxic hexa-acylated lipid A, produce a less toxic, penta-acylated lipid A, resulting in reduced toxicity while enhancing the safety and immunogenicity of vaccine strains. (Anisimov, Shaikhutdinova et al. 2007, Feodorova, Pan'kina et al. 2010). Mutations in the invasion genes of *Listeria monocytogenes*, particularly those affecting the internalin A protein, InlA, significantly reduce the bacteria's ability to invade host cells. Since the InlA protein is essential for crossing the intestinal barrier and establishing infection, mutations that create premature stop codons in the *inlA* gene are linked to attenuated virulence and decreased the invasion efficiency of epithelial cells (Broton 2007, Su, Cao et al. 2019). In *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, mutations in the capsule formation gene or its regulatory elements significantly impair the bacteria's ability to adapt to different host environments, thereby reducing its virulence and demonstrating protection in animal models (Amonov, Simbak et al. 2020, Brown 2021, Rojas, Marcoleta et al. 2023).

GROWTH AND SURVIVAL MUTATIONS

Mutations that affect bacterial growth and survival are diverse and can significantly impact a bacterium's ability to thrive in various environmental conditions. These mutations are essential in developing LAVs that balance safety and immunogenicity. Auxotrophic and temperature-sensitive mutations have been particularly explored for human vaccines, ensuring safety while eliciting robust immune responses. This strategy exploits the pathogens' inability to synthesize essential compounds, preventing their replication *in vivo* while maintaining immunogenicity. For instance, *Salmonella* Typhi strains modified through auxotrophic mutations have led to vaccines like the Ty21a oral vaccine for typhoid fever. This vaccine uses a strain deficient in isoleucine, valine, and LPS synthesis, effectively inducing specific CD4+

T cell responses in the intestinal mucosa, crucial for long-term immunity against *Salmonella*. (Galen, Buskirk et al. 2016, Booth, Goldberg et al. 2019, Booth, Goldberg et al. 2020). In addition to *Salmonella*, other pathogens, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, have also been targeted with auxotrophic mutations. Research on novel tuberculosis vaccines has focused on triple auxotrophic strains like mc27902, which cannot synthesize leucine, pantothenate, and arginine. These strains have shown robust protection in immunocompetent mice when administered intravenously, demonstrating significantly higher efficacy than conventional BCG vaccination. This approach enhances safety by reducing the risk of complications like disseminated BCGosis in immunocompromised individuals while also improving immunogenicity and overall vaccine efficacy (Vilcheze, Rajagopalan et al. 2024).

Temperature-sensitive mutations, which prevent pathogens from replicating at normal human body temperatures, are crucial in vaccine development. These mutant strains can replicate in cooler body areas while avoiding replication at core temperatures, thereby reducing pathogenicity and enhancing safety. A notable example is the use of temperature-sensitive mutations in *Bordetella pertussis* for whooping cough vaccines. Traditional inactivated vaccines have been supplemented by these innovative approaches that balance immunogenicity with safety. For instance, the BPZE1 vaccine, developed through the genetic inactivation or removal of three toxins, has shown strong protection in animal models and completed a phase I clinical trial demonstrating safety and immunogenicity in humans. (Cauchi and Locht 2018). The temperature-sensitive strain *Mycobacterium paragordonae* elicits enhanced immune responses against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, outperforming the BCG vaccine by promoting Th1 responses and cytotoxic T cell activity in mice (Pinto 2015, Kim, Kim et al. 2017). These developments highlight the potential of temperature-sensitive LAVs for safe and effective bacterial infection protection, with ongoing research optimizing their application across various pathogens.

Adaptation mutations

Adaptation mutations are essential for bacterial survival under environmental stressors, enabling pathogens to thrive amid nutrient deprivation, immune system attacks, and antibiotic exposure. Unlike mutations that affect growth in specific conditions, adaptation mutations support long-term endurance by enhancing colonization, nutrient acquisition, and immune evasion, critical for pathogenesis and infection persistence (Barber and Fitzgerald 2024). This ability to reprogram virulence allows bacteria to switch infection states, maintaining a competitive edge (Zhou, Ma et al. 2023). For instance, stress adaptation mechanisms in *Listeria monocytogenes* link stress tolerance to virulence, allowing transitions between avirulent and virulent states (Sibanda and Buys 2022). Stress responses can also trigger antibiotic resistance, threatening efficacy (Dawan and Ahn 2022). The *htrA* gene is crucial for managing oxidative stress and protein misfolding, which are vital for survival against host immune responses (Song, Ke et al. 2022). The general stress response helps bacteria adapt by modulating metabolic pathways (Baral, Ho et al. 2024), while mutations in stress response genes like *htrA* can decrease virulence,

enhancing the safety of LAVs (Song, Ke et al. 2022, Yan, Li et al. 2024). Similarly, mutations in the *rpoS* gene, which encodes an alternative sigma factor that regulates the general stress response, aid bacterial survival during nutrient limitations (Bouillet, Bauer et al. 2024). In strains like Ty21a, *rpoS* mutations impair environmental stress response, reducing pathogenicity while stimulating the immune system (Burda, Brenneman et al. 2018).

The toxin-antitoxin (TA) system is critical for adaptation. TA systems regulate bacterial growth and dormancy, with mutations leading to persistent, less virulent populations that can still elicit immune responses, making them potential vaccine candidates (Santi, Dias Teixeira et al. 2023, Nielsen and Brodersen 2024). For example, in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, the NatT toxin promotes drug-tolerance (Santi, Dias Teixeira et al. 2023), while in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, various TA systems are linked to stress adaptation and pathogenesis (Ahmad, Ansari et al. 2023). Manipulating TA pathways could attenuate bacterial virulence, providing a strategy for LAVs that exploit bacterial stress responses to induce immunity without causing disease. By targeting genes related to stress responses, quorum sensing, and TA systems, researchers can design strains that balance safety and robust immune responses, making them promising candidates for effective live attenuated vaccines.

Regulatory pathway mutations

Regulatory pathway mutations refer to genetic alterations that impact the regulation of gene expression, particularly concerning virulence factors in pathogenic bacteria. These mutations can lead to the downregulation or loss of genes responsible for toxin production, adherence to host tissues, and immune evasion. By targeting these pathways, researchers can develop LAVs that provoke an immune response while significantly reducing pathogenicity.

In vaccine development, such mutations create safer strains that are capable of eliciting strong immunogenic responses without causing disease. For instance, the development of *Listeria monocytogenes* vaccines often involve mutations in the *prfA* gene, a key regulator of virulence factors, resulting in attenuated strains suitable for immunotherapy(Maury, Chenal-Francisque et al. 2017). Similarly, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains with mutations in the *phoP* gene exhibit reduced virulence while still inducing immune responses, making them promising candidates for tuberculosis vaccines. The Type III secretion system (T3SS) is crucial for *Salmonella* pathogenesis, enabling invasion of host cells by injecting effector proteins, facilitating bacterial invasion and replication (De Nisco, Rivera-Cancel et al. 2018, Lou, Zhang et al. 2019). Studies have shown that T3SS-defective mutants of *Salmonella*, such as the ΔinvC mutant, elicit an attenuated inflammatory response while enhancing type I interferon responses, which are crucial for host defense against infections (Tang, Gu et al. 2024). In *Vibrio cholerae*, mutations in the *luxO* gene disrupt quorum-sensing pathways, leading to less virulent strains that still elicit robust immune responses (Zhu, Miller et al. 2002, Walker, Haycocks et al. 2023). Likewise, *Bacillus anthracis* strains with mutations in the *atxA* regulatory gene show reduced toxin production,

enhancing safety and efficacy for anthrax vaccination (Dale, Raynor et al. 2012, Furuta, Cheng et al. 2021).

Quorum sensing (QS) is vital for controlling bacterial behavior in response to population density, modulating gene expression related to virulence and biofilm formation (Moreno-Gámez, Hochberg et al. 2023). Mutations in QS genes can impair these communication pathways, resulting in reduced virulence while maintaining immunogenic properties. This attenuation offers a promising approach for vaccine development, enabling the design of vaccines that stimulate immune responses without causing disease (Rattray, Thomas et al. 2022, Petrova, Parfirova et al. 2023). Overall, mutations in regulatory pathways across various pathogens underscore their potential in developing effective live attenuated bacterial vaccines, enhancing safety and immunogenicity by strategically targeting virulence regulators.

SAFETY CONCERNS: THE RISKS OF HORIZONTAL GENE TRANSFER

Bacterial Transformation as a Safety Concern

LABVs provide strong immune responses and long-lasting immunity by closely mimicking natural infections. However, they raise significant safety concerns, particularly related to horizontal gene transfer (HGT), which can lead to reversion to virulence [43]. During attenuation, genes critical to pathogenicity are often deleted or modified to prevent disease-causing potential [44]. Yet, LABVs exposed to other bacterial populations—especially within complex microbiomes—may acquire functional genes through HGT, risking a return to pathogenicity. This risk is particularly concerning for large-scale immunization programs, where even minimal reversion could lead to disease outbreaks [45].

HGT occurs through three primary mechanisms: transformation, transduction, and conjugation. Transformation, involving the uptake of naked DNA from the environment, is the most significant safety concern for LABVs. This mechanism enables LABVs to acquire DNA from nearby bacteria, potentially incorporating virulence genes that restore pathogenic traits. Transformation is particularly concerning as LABVs, especially those administered via mucosal routes like oral or nasal vaccines, as they interact closely with the host microbiome, where genetic exchange is likely. In environments with high bacterial diversity, LABVs can exchange genetic material with surrounding microbes, amplifying the risk of reversion to wild-type forms (Ramvikas, Arumugam et al. 2017). The ability of LABVs to undergo transformation underscores the need for careful monitoring and risk management in vaccine deployment to maintain safety in immunocompromised individuals and broader populations.

Immune Stress and Increased HGT

The stress responses in bacteria are crucial for survival under adverse conditions and involve complex networks of signal sensing and regulation, which are essential for maintaining competitive fitness in polymicrobial communities (Tang, Dyrma et al. 2024). ~~For instance,~~ In the live attenuated Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine,

which is used against tuberculosis, relies on the mycobacterial DNA-binding protein 1 (MDP1) for survival in stressful environments. MDP1 regulates genes involved in stress response, DNA protection, iron storage, and oxidative stress, making it essential for mycobacterial growth regulation, adaptation, and pathogenicity (Enany, Yoshida et al. 2017, Shaban, Gebretsadik et al. 2023), The suppression of MDP1 results in reduced growth and increased susceptibility to oxidative stress and antibiotics, highlighting the stress these vaccine~~s~~ strains endure compared to wild-type strains (Shaban, Gebretsadik et al. 2023) . Similarly, the live oral typhoid vaccine Ty21a, which contains a mutation in the *rpoS* gene, shows increased susceptibility to environmental stresses such as starvation and thermal instability, which are not as pronounced in wild-type strains (Burda, Brenneman et al. 2018). The gene is essential for as it regulates stress responses and facilitates biofilm formation, allowing the bacterium to survive and adapt to challenging conditions during infection (Desai, Zhou et al. 2024). In another similar example, the live-attenuated enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* (ETEC) vaccine candidate lacks certain flagellar antigens and adhesins, which are present in wild-type strains, and this leads to diminished immune responses and increased stress susceptibility (Chakraborty, Randall et al. 2019). These factors collectively suggest that LABVs endure more stress compared to wild-type strains, as they must maintain sufficient immunogenicity to elicit protective immune responses while surviving within the host.

HGT is a significant adaptive mechanism in bacteria, particularly in response to environmental stressors. Various studies highlight the role of HGT in enabling bacteria to acquire new traits that enhance their resilience to stress. For instance, the acquisition of antibiotic resistance genes through HGT is often driven by selective pressures in environments contaminated with antibiotics and other toxic substances, which force bacteria to adapt by integrating foreign DNA that confers resistance (Das and Pal 2022). Additionally, stress-induced conditions, such as oxidative and reductive stress, have been shown to enhance the horizontal transfer of plasmid-borne antibiotic resistance genes, as these stresses can upregulate genes involved in the transfer apparatus, thereby facilitating the spread of resistance traits (Zhu, Yang et al. 2024). The interplay between stress and HGT is also evident in the evolutionary context as well, where stress-induced mutagenesis and HGT can act as complementary strategies, enhancing bacterial adaptability and survival under adverse conditions (Ram and Hadany 2019). These findings collectively underscore the critical role of HGT as a bacterial response to stress, especially for LABVs ~~to~~ which could increase their HGT as a survival mechanism, facilitating the acquisition of advantageous traits that enhance survival and adaptation in challenging environments. Reversion, which involves the return of an attenuated strain to a virulent form, ~~which~~ can occur through various mechanisms. For instance, in *Coxiella burnetii*, a reversion involving a 3-bp mutation in the gene *cbu0533* has been shown to lead to LPS elongation and increased virulence. The reversion resulted in the recovery of elongated LPS, which is associated with increased virulence when the strain was recovered from the spleens of infected guinea pigs (Long, Beare et al. 2024). In the

case of *Francisella tularensis*, the reintroduction of deleted virulence loci can indeed restore full virulence to a live vaccine strain, as demonstrated by various studies on genetic modifications and their effects on virulence. The deletion of specific genes, such as the *recD* gene in the *F. tularensis* candidate vaccine strain, significantly reduces virulence, as observed in BALB/c mice, indicating the potential for genetic modifications to attenuate virulence (Pavlov, Vakhrameeva et al. 2022).

THE CONSTRUCTION OF LABVS THROUGH THE KNOCKOUT OF TRANSFORMATION GENES

The construction of LABVs through the knockout of transformation genes is a strategic approach to enhance vaccine safety by reducing the potential for horizontal gene transfer (HGT), which is a significant concern in the development of bacterial vaccines. This method is particularly effective because it targets the natural transformation pathway, which is a primary mechanism for HGT in many bacteria, including pathogens like *S. pneumoniae, V. cholerae* and *Campylobacter* species (Zhu, Kuang et al. 2013, Karpov, Goncharenko et al. 2021). Transformation involves the uptake of naked DNA by naturally competent bacterial cells, which can then integrate this DNA into their genomes through homologous recombination(Blakely 2024). Mutations in transformation genes, not only attenuate the bacteria's virulence but also reduce the likelihood of reversion to a virulent state (Hu, Zheng et al. 2022).

Competence Induction

The transformation process in bacteria relies on a state called "competence," regulated by specific genes responsive to environmental signals such as cell density or stress (62) (Blokesch 2016). In *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, competence begins with the competence-stimulating peptide (CSP) encoded by the *comC* gene, which interacts with the sensor kinase ComD, activating the ComD-ComE two-component system (TCS). This system then promotes transcription of genes necessary for DNA uptake and processing (Martin, Granadel et al. 2010). However, mutations in *comD* or *comE* that limit CSP sensitivity or interfere with phosphorylation have been shown to decrease DNA uptake, thereby reducing horizontal gene transfer (HGT) and minimizing risks of reversion in attenuated strains (Sanchez, Boudes et al. 2015, Alamnie and Andualem 2020, Roberts, Burgess et al. 2021). In *Acinetobacter* species, mutations in *comC* specifically impair DNA uptake without affecting pilus assembly, which means that the ability to bind or process external DNA is reduced, decreasing HGT without disrupting other bacterial functions, such as piliation. This type of targeted mutation effectively lowers the chance of reversion by reducing HGT (Link, Eickernjäger et al. 1998) .

The *comX* gene, which encodes SigX, an alternative sigma factor, regulates late-stage competence genes crucial for DNA processing in species like *Streptococcus mutans* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (Shields, O'Brien et al. 2018, Underhill, Shields et al. 2018, Weyder, Prudhomme et al. 2018). While certain *comX* mutations increase transformation efficiency, disabling or modifying specific regulatory elements within *comX*—such as the *xrpA* open reading frame in *S. mutans*—has been shown to reduce

transformation by weakening the response to quorum sensing signals. This mutation reduces transformation frequency and HGT, making the strains more stable and less prone to reversion (Kaspar, Ahn et al. 2015). Further, in *S. pneumoniae*, *comX* activity is regulated by the co-factor encoded by *comW*, which stabilizes the RNA polymerase-σ^X holoenzyme complex. Mutations that disrupt the interaction between ComW and ComX decrease the efficiency of transformation, thereby reducing the frequency of HGT and offering a strategy for attenuating reversion risks in vaccine development (Tovpeko and Morrison 2014, Inniss, Prehna et al. 2019).

In summary, mutations in transformation-related genes like *comC*, *comD*, and *comX* can be harnessed to effectively reduce bacterial transformation rates, decreasing HGT and the risk of reversion in attenuated bacterial strains by minimizing their DNA uptake capabilities. Conversely, activating or fine-tuning these genes increases transformation efficiency and HGT, presenting a reversion risk that needs to be carefully managed in the context of LAVs.

DNA Binding and Uptake

Upon competence induction, bacteria express specific proteins necessary for binding and transporting extracellular DNA. ComEA, anchored on the bacterial surface, acts as the primary DNA receptor, capturing extracellular DNA for uptake (Dubnau and Blokesch 2019). Following DNA binding, ComEC, a transmembrane protein, forms a channel through which single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) passes. The ATPase ComFA powers this translocation, using ATP to drive DNA through the ComEC channel (Burghard-Schrod, Kilb et al. 2022, Foster, Lin et al. 2022). As DNA enters the cell, one strand is degraded by nucleases like EndA in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, while the remaining strand is translocated into the cytoplasm, where it serves as a substrate for genetic transformation (Bergé, Kamgoué et al. 2013). Mutations in *comEA*, such as those studied in *Bacillus subtilis*, significantly impair DNA binding and internalization, reducing the ability of bacteria to undergo genetic transformation (Hahn, DeSantis et al. 2021). Since ComEA is essential for DNA binding and transport, mutations in this gene could lead to marked decreases in cell surface DNA binding, directly inhibiting HGT by reducing DNA uptake. Studies show that ComEA's oligomerization domain is essential in *Bacillus subtilis* and other Gram-positive bacteria, generating a pulling force that aids DNA translocation across the thick cell wall. A lack of this domain could further hinder DNA uptake, limiting transformation and HGT(Ahmed, Hahn et al. 2022).

~~The~~ ComEC mutations have shown potential for reducing bacterial adaptability and HGT. This gene encodes a channel protein essential for DNA import, containing transmembrane segments and an extracellular C-terminal domain with nuclease activity to degrade non-transforming DNA strands (Silale, Lea et al. 2021). Mutations that affect the ComEC structure-such as in its disulfide-bonded N-terminal loop-compromise DNA uptake by disrupting channel stability and function. This reduction in transformation efficiency significantly lowers HGT, making such mutations

beneficial in contexts where bacterial adaptability and evolution via HGT are risks (Silale, Lea et al. 2021, Burghard-Schrod, Kilb et al. 2022).

Similarly, the *comFA* gene, which encode a DEAD-box helicase, is essential for the genetic competence of *Bacillus subtilis*, particularly for efficient transformation. Mutations in *comFA*, particularly those targeting the ATP-binding site, drastically reduce transformability, comparable to *comFA* null mutants. These mutations disrupt ATP-dependent helicase activity necessary for DNA translocation, effectively impairing HGT (González-Gutiérrez, Díaz-Jiménez et al. 2018, Foster, Lin et al. 2022). This specific impairment in the DNA uptake process by *comFA* mutations, while maintaining distinct functions like metal binding, limits bacterial transformation without impacting other cellular processes, contributing to reduced HGT and reversion risks (Chilton, Falbel et al. 2017). In summary, mutations in transformation-related genes like *comEA*, *comEC*, and *comFA* demonstrate a significant potential for decreasing HGT, thereby limiting bacterial adaptation through horizontal gene transfer. While certain mutations in these genes increase HGT, these instances highlight the risks associated with transformation and potential reversion, making targeted gene knockouts or mutations a strategic approach for live attenuated vaccine stability.

DNA Processing and Protection

Once DNA enters the bacterial cell, it must be protected and processed for integration into the genome, preventing degradation of foreign DNA and preparing it for recombination. DprA plays a critical role here; it binds single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) upon entry and assists in loading RecA onto the DNA, a crucial step for homologous recombination. Additionally, DprA prevents the degradation of foreign DNA (Sharma, Misra et al. 2023, Bakhlanova, Alekseev et al. 2024). Another key player, EndA in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, is a nuclease that processes incoming double-stranded DNA by degrading one strand, allowing the remaining single strand to be transported across the membrane (Bergé, Kamgoué et al. 2013).

Mutations in genes like *dprA* and *endA* directly impact HGT, which can reduce bacterial adaptability by limiting natural transformation. The *dprA* gene is essential in bacterial DNA processing and natural transformation, enabling bacteria to take up and integrate external DNA into their genomes (Hovland, Beyene et al. 2017, Johnston, Hope et al. 2023, Sharma, Misra et al. 2023). In both *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *dprA* is equally essential for natural transformation, with its absence leading to a complete loss of competence (Duffin and Barber 2016, Hovland, Beyene et al. 2017). Similarly, mutation of the *dprA* gene in *Helicobacter pylori* significantly impairs natural transformation, underscoring its critical role in this process and raising important considerations for vaccine safety (Sharma, Misra et al. 2023).

In *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *endA* gene mutations have been studied extensively due to their influence on both genetic transformation and virulence. EndA is a membrane-attached nuclease that facilitates genetic transformation and helps degrade

extracellular chromatin within neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs), which aids bacterial immune evasion (Zhu, Kuang et al. 2013, Amonov, Simbak et al. 2020). Structural studies show that the ~~EndA's~~ DRGH motif of EndA is crucial for nuclease activity. Specific mutations such as H154A, Q186A, and Q192A notably decrease nuclease activity while maintaining substrate binding, highlighting these residues' importance in catalysis (Moon et al., 2010). His160 and Asn191, in particular, are essential for catalysis, with His160 acting as a putative general base, as chemical rescue experiments suggest (Midon et al., 2011). The investigation of EndA mutations not only enhances understanding of bacterial virulence but also provides avenues for drug design targeting this enzyme, potentially reducing the pathogenicity of *S. pneumoniae* by impairing its ability to evade immune responses through NET degradation (Midon et al., 2011; Moon et al., 2010).

Homologous Recombination and Integration

Once inside the cell, single-stranded DNA must integrate into the host chromosome through homologous recombination, a process mediated by the Rec system. Central to this process is RecA, which binds to the single-stranded DNA, aligning it with homologous regions on the bacterial chromosome. This alignment enables the foreign DNA to recombine and integrate into the host genome. In some bacteria, the RecBCD complex assists by processing incoming DNA ends to facilitate RecA binding and recombination, while other proteins such as RadC and CoiA help stabilize the incoming DNA during and after integration (Payne-Dwyer, Syeda et al. 2022, Johnston, Hope et al. 2023).

The *recA* gene is essential for bacterial DNA repair and recombination, with its mutations significantly affecting various bacterial species. In *Escherichia coli*, mutations like *recAo20* lead to heightened RecA synthesis, enhancing radiation resistance but requiring other *lexA*-dependent genes for full SOS system induction (Podlesek and Bertok 2021). In *Salmonella enterica*, RecA is crucial for swarming motility and chemotaxis, while in the introduction of the *E. coli recA* gene into *Mycoplasma hyorhinis* significantly enhances homologous recombination (Ishag, Xiong et al. 2017, Frutos-Grilo, Marsal et al. 2020). Deleting RecA in *Mycobacterium bovis* BCG increases genetic stability without impacting vaccine efficacy, indicating that the SOS response is not essential for protection(Schwarz, Corrêa et al. 2020). Additional studies show that in *Borrelia burgdorferi*, RecA supports genetic recombination rather than repair (Huang, Hart et al. 2017). The RecBCD enzyme, a helicase/nuclease, processes DNA ends for RecA loading, essential for homologous recombination. Mutations in recC and recD disrupt Chi site recognition, affecting DNA repair functionality (Amundsen and Smith 2024). These mechanisms underscore the importance of RecA and associated genes in bacterial adaptability and the development of stable, safe live attenuated vaccines.

Additional Genes Involved in Transformation in Specific Bacteria

Gene mutations in bacterial transformation, particularly in Type IV pilus genes, significantly influence DNA uptake and horizontal gene transfer, affecting bacterial

adaptability and the development of safe live attenuated vaccines. The *pilQ* gene is crucial for DNA transport in bacteria like *Vibrio cholerae*, with mutations impairing pilus formation and transformation, making it a target to combat the spread of antibiotic resistance (Weaver, Sazinsky et al. 2020, Yaman and Averhoff 2021). In *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, mutations in *pilQ* and *pilE* disrupt transformation competence and alter antibiotic susceptibility, highlighting their roles in virulence and immune evasion (Trees, Pettus et al. 2013, Prister, Yin et al. 2020).

CONCLUSION

LABVs remain a valuable tool for infectious disease prevention, owing to their strong immune-stimulating capabilities. However, ensuring the safety of these vaccines is essential, particularly regarding the risks associated with horizontal gene transfer (HGT) and the potential for reversion to virulence. Advances in targeted genetic mutations, including virulence factor alterations, growth control through auxotrophy, and temperature sensitivity, have significantly improved the attenuation and safety profile of LABVs by restricting their ability to cause disease. Furthermore, by focusing on specific transformation genes like *comEA*, *comEC*, and *recA*, researchers can limit HGT, thereby reducing the risks of LABVs reverting and acquiring virulent traits from environmental bacteria.

Ongoing developments in genetic engineering, such as synthetic biology and radiation-induced mutation technologies, are pivotal in further minimizing reversion risks, allowing LABVs to retain efficacy while meeting rigorous safety standards. Through these advancements, LABVs can continue to provide long-lasting immunity in large-scale immunization programs, contributing to global health without compromising safety.

REFERENCES

- Ahmad, F., M. I. Ansari, M. Ashfaque, M. H. Islam and M. Khubaib (2023). "Toxin-Antitoxin system of Mycobacterium tuberculosis: Roles beyond stress sensor and growth regulator." Tuberculosis: 102395.
- Ahmed, I., J. Hahn, A. Henrickson, F. T. Khaja, B. Demeler, D. Dubnau and M. B. Neiditch (2022). "Structure-function studies reveal ComEA contains an oligomerization domain essential for transformation in gram-positive bacteria." Nature communications 13(1): 7724.
- Alamnie, G. and B. Andualem (2020). Biosafety Issues of Unintended Horizontal Transfer of Recombinant DNA. Genetic Transformation in Crops, IntechOpen.
- Amonov, M., N. Simbak, W. M. R. Wan Hassan, S. Ismail, N. I. A. Rahman, S. C. Clarke and C. C. Yeo (2020). "Disruption of the cpse and enda genes attenuates streptococcus pneumoniae virulence: towards the development of a live attenuated vaccine candidate." Vaccines 8(2): 187.

- Amundsen, S. K. and G. R. Smith (2024). "Chi hotspot Control of RecBCD Helicase-nuclease: Enzymatic Tests Support the Intramolecular Signal-transduction Model." Journal of Molecular Biology 436(6): 168482.
- Anisimov, A. P., R. Z. Shaikhutdinova, L. N. Pan'kina, V. A. Feodorova, E. P. Savostina, O. g. V. Bystrova, B. Lindner, A. N. Mokrievich, I. V. Bakhteeva and G. M. Titareva (2007). "Effect of deletion of the lpxM gene on virulence and vaccine potential of Yersinia pestis in mice." Journal of medical microbiology 56(4): 443-453.
- Bakhlanova, I., A. Alekseev, M. Yakunina, N. Morozova, M. Khodorkovskii, M. Petukhov and D. Baitin (2024). "Mechanisms of RecA filament nucleation on ssDNA by the DprA protein." bioRxiv: 2024.2005. 2007.592916.
- Baral, R., K. Ho, R. P. Kumar, J. B. Hopkins, M. B. Watkins, S. LaRussa, S. Caban-Penix, L. A. Calderone and N. Bradshaw (2024). "A General Mechanism for the General Stress Response in Bacteria." bioRxiv: 2024.2002. 2016.580724.
- Barber, M. F. and J. R. Fitzgerald (2024). "Mechanisms of host adaptation by bacterial pathogens." FEMS microbiology reviews 48(4): fuae019.
- Bergé, M. J., A. Kamgoué, B. Martin, P. Polard, N. Campo and J.-P. Claverys (2013). "Midcell recruitment of the DNA uptake and virulence nuclease, EndA, for pneumococcal transformation." PLoS pathogens 9(9): e1003596.
- Blakely, G. W. (2024). Mechanisms of horizontal gene transfer and DNA recombination. Molecular medical microbiology, Elsevier: 309-324.
- Blokesch, M. (2016). "Natural competence for transformation." Current Biology 26(21): R1126-R1130.
- Booth, J. S., E. Goldberg, R. S. Barnes, B. D. Greenwald and M. B. Sztein (2020). "Oral typhoid vaccine Ty21a elicits antigen-specific resident memory CD4+ T cells in the human terminal ileum lamina propria and epithelial compartments." Journal of translational medicine 18: 1-17.
- Booth, J. S., E. Goldberg, S. A. Patil, R. S. Barnes, B. D. Greenwald and M. B. Sztein (2019). "Effect of the live oral attenuated typhoid vaccine, Ty21a, on systemic and terminal ileum mucosal CD4+ T memory responses in humans." International Immunology 31(2): 101-116.
- Bouillet, S., T. S. Bauer and S. Gottesman (2024). "RpoS and the bacterial general stress response." Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews 88(1): e00151-00122.
- Broton, C. (2007). "Genetic and Phenotypic Characterization of Listeria monocytogenes Strains with Attenuated Virulence."

- Brown, J. S. (2021). "Single-Nucleotide Polymorphisms within the cps Loci: Another Potential Source of Clinically Important Genetic Variation for Streptococcus pneumoniae?" Infection and Immunity 89(11).
- Bull, J. (2015). "Evolutionary reversion of live viral vaccines: Can genetic engineering subdue it?" Virus evolution 1(1): vev005.
- Burda, W. N., K. E. Brenneman, A. Gonzales and R. Curtiss, 3rd (2018). "Conversion of RpoS(-) Attenuated Salmonella enterica Serovar Typhi Vaccine Strains to RpoS(+) Improves Their Resistance to Host Defense Barriers." mSphere 3(1).
- Burghard-Schrod, M., A. Kilb, K. Krämer and P. L. Graumann (2022). "Single-molecule dynamics of DNA receptor ComEA, membrane permease ComEC, and taken-up DNA in competent Bacillus subtilis cells." Journal of Bacteriology 204(3): e00572-00521.
- Cauchi, S. and C. Locht (2018). Non-specific Effects of Live Attenuated Pertussis Vaccine Against Heterologous Infectious and Inflammatory Diseases. Front Immunol [Internet]. 2018 [cited 2023 Oct 30]; 9: 2872.
- Chakraborty, S., A. Randall, T. J. Vickers, D. Molina, C. D. Harro, B. DeNearing, J. Brubaker, D. A. Sack, A. L. Bourgeois, P. L. Felgner, X. Liang, S. Mani, H. Wenzel, R. R. Townsend, P. E. Gilmore, M. J. Darsley, D. A. Rasko and J. M. Fleckenstein (2019). "Interrogation of a live-attenuated enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli vaccine highlights features unique to wild-type infection." NPJ Vaccines 4: 37.
- Chilton, S. S., T. G. Falbel, S. Hromada and B. M. Burton (2017). "A conserved metal binding motif in the Bacillus subtilis competence protein ComFA enhances transformation." Journal of Bacteriology 199(15): 10.1128/jb. 00272-00217.
- Dale, J. L., M. J. Raynor, P. Dwivedi and T. M. Koehler (2012). "cis-Acting elements that control expression of the master virulence regulatory gene atxA in Bacillus anthracis." J Bacteriol 194(15): 4069-4079.
- Das, S. and S. Pal (2022). New Insights into Horizontal Gene Transfer among Bacterial Pathogens to Acquire Antibiotic Resistance and Culture-Independent Techniques to Study ARG Dissemination. Omics for Environmental Engineering and Microbiology Systems, CRC Press: 433-451.
- Dawan, J. and J. Ahn (2022). "Bacterial stress responses as potential targets in overcoming antibiotic resistance." Microorganisms 10(7): 1385.
- De Nisco, N., G. Rivera-Cancel and K. Orth (2018). The biochemistry of sensing: enteric pathogens regulate type III secretion in response to environmental and host cues. mBio 9: e02122-17.

- Desai, S. K., Y. Zhou, R. Dilawari, A. L. Routh, V. Popov and L. J. Kenney (2024). "RpoS activates formation of Salmonella Typhi biofilms and drives persistence in the gall bladder." bioRxiv.
- Dietrich, G., M. Griot-Wenk, I. C. Metcalfe, A. B. Lang and J.-F. Viret (2003). "Experience with registered mucosal vaccines." Vaccine 21(7-8): 678-683.
- Dubnau, D. and M. Blokesch (2019). "Mechanisms of DNA uptake by naturally competent bacteria." Annual review of genetics 53(1): 217-237.
- Duffin, P. M. and D. A. Barber (2016). "DprA is required for natural transformation and affects pilin variation in Neisseria gonorrhoeae." Microbiology 162(9): 1620-1628.
- Enany, S., Y. Yoshida, Y. Tateishi, Y. Ozeki, A. Nishiyama, A. Savitskaya, T. Yamaguchi, Y. Ohara, T. Yamamoto, M. Ato and S. Matsumoto (2017). "Mycobacterial DNA-binding protein 1 is critical for long term survival of Mycobacterium smegmatis and simultaneously coordinates cellular functions." Sci Rep 7(1): 6810.
- Feodorova, V., L. Pan'kina, E. Savostina, O. Kuznetsov, N. Konnov, L. Sayapina, S. Dentovskaya, R. Shaikhutdinova, S. Ageev and B. Lindner (2010). A Live Plaque Vaccine Candidate with Improved Safety and Immunogenecity. The Challenge of Highly Pathogenic Microorganisms: Mechanisms of Virulence and Novel Medical Countermeasures, Springer.
- Foster, H. R., X. Lin, S. Srikant, R. R. Cueny, T. G. Falbel, J. L. Keck, R. Gaudet and B. M. Burton (2022). "Natural transformation protein ComFA exhibits single-stranded DNA translocase activity." Journal of Bacteriology 204(3): e00518-00521.
- Frutos-Grilo, E., M. Marsal, O. Irazoki, J. Barbé and S. Campoy (2020). "The interaction of RecA with both CheA and CheW is required for chemotaxis." Frontiers in microbiology 11: 583.
- Furuta, Y., C. Cheng, T. Zorigt, A. Paudel, S. Izumi, M. Tsujinouchi, T. Shimizu, W. G. Meijer and H. Higashi (2021). "Direct regulons of AtxA, the master virulence regulator of Bacillus anthracis." Msystems 6(4): 10.1128/msystems. 00291-00221.
- Galen, J. E., A. D. Buskirk, S. M. Tennant and M. F. Pasetti (2016). "Live attenuated human Salmonella vaccine candidates: tracking the pathogen in natural infection and stimulation of host immunity." EcoSal Plus 7(1): 10.1128/ecosalplus. ESP-0010-2016.
- González-Gutiérrez, J. A., D. F. Díaz-Jiménez, I. Vargas-Pérez, G. Guillén-Solís, J. Stülke and G. Olmedo-Álvarez (2018). "The DEAD-box RNA helicases of

Bacillus subtilis as a model to evaluate genetic compensation among duplicate genes." Frontiers in Microbiology 9: 2261.

- Greenaway, C., S. Schofield, A. Henteleff, P. Plourde, J. Geduld, M. Abdel-Motagally and M. Bryson (2014). "Typhoid: summary of the statement on international travellers and typhoid by the committee to advise on tropical medicine and travel (CATMAT)." Canada Communicable Disease Report 40(4): 60.
- Hahn, J., M. DeSantis and D. Dubnau (2021). "Mechanisms of transforming DNA uptake to the periplasm of Bacillus subtilis." MBio 12(3): 10.1128/mbio. 01061-01021.
- Hovland, E., G. T. Beyene, S. A. Frye, H. Homberset, S. V. Balasingham, M. Gómez-Muñoz, J. P. Derrick, T. Tønjum and O. H. Ambur (2017). "DprA from Neisseria meningitidis: properties and role in natural competence for transformation." Microbiology 163(7): 1016-1029.
- Hu, Y., J. Zheng and J. Zhang (2022). "Natural transformation in Acinetobacter baumannii W068: A genetic analysis reveals the involvements of the CRP, XcpV, XcpW, TsaP, and TonB2." Frontiers in microbiology 12: 738034.
- Huang, S. H., M. A. Hart, M. Wade, M. R. Cozart, S. L. McGrath and K. Kobryn (2017). "Biochemical characterization of Borrelia burgdorferi's RecA protein." Plos one 12(10): e0187382.
- Inniss, N. L., G. Prehna and D. A. Morrison (2019). "The pneumococcal σX activator, ComW, is a DNA-binding protein critical for natural transformation." Journal of Biological Chemistry 294(29): 11101-11118.
- Ishag, H. Z., Q. Xiong, M. Liu, Z. Feng and G. Shao (2017). "E. coli recA gene improves gene targeted homologous recombination in Mycoplasma hyorhinis." Journal of microbiological methods 136: 49-56.
- Johnston, C. H., R. Hope, A.-L. Soulet, M. Dewailly, D. De Lemos and P. Polard (2023). "The RecA-directed recombination pathway of natural transformation initiates at chromosomal replication forks in the pneumococcus." Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 120(8): e2213867120.
- Karpov, D. S., A. V. Goncharenko, E. V. Usachev, D. V. Vasina, E. V. Divisenko, Y. M. Chalenko, A. A. Pochtovyi, R. S. Ovchinnikov, V. V. Makarov and S. M. Yudin (2021). "A strategy for the rapid development of a safe Vibrio cholerae candidate vaccine strain." International journal of molecular sciences 22(21): 11657.
- Kaspar, J., S. J. Ahn, S. R. Palmer, S. C. Choi, M. J. Stanhope and R. A. Burne (2015). "A unique open reading frame within the comX gene of S treptococcus mutans regulates genetic competence and oxidative stress tolerance." Molecular microbiology 96(3): 463-482.

- Khan, M. A., A. Amin, A. Farid, A. Ullah, A. Waris, K. Shinwari, Y. Hussain, K. F. Alsharif, K. J. Alzahrani and H. Khan (2022). "Recent advances in genomics-based approaches for the development of intracellular bacterial pathogen vaccines." Pharmaceutics 15(1): 152.
- Khandelia, P., S. Yadav and P. Singh (2023). "An overview of the BCG vaccine and its future scope." Indian Journal of Tuberculosis 70: S14-S23.
- Kim, B.-J., B.-R. Kim, Y.-H. Kook and B.-J. Kim (2017). "A temperature sensitive Mycobacterium paragordonae induces enhanced protective immune responses against mycobacterial infections in the mouse model." Scientific Reports 7(1): 15230.
- Lauring, A. S., J. O. Jones and R. Andino (2010). "Rationalizing the development of live attenuated virus vaccines." Nature biotechnology 28(6): 573-579.
- Lievano, F., S. A. Galea, M. Thornton, R. T. Wiedmann, S. B. Manoff, T. N. Tran, M. A. Amin, M. M. Seminack, K. A. Vagie and A. Dana (2012). "Measles, mumps, and rubella virus vaccine (M–M–R™ II): A review of 32 years of clinical and postmarketing experience." Vaccine 30(48): 6918-6926.
- Link, C., S. Eickernjäger, D. Porstendörfer and B. Averhoff (1998). "Identification and characterization of a novel competence gene, comC, required for DNA binding and uptake in Acinetobacter sp. strain BD413." Journal of bacteriology 180(6): 1592-1595.
- Long, C. M., P. A. Beare, D. Cockrell, P. Binette, M. Tesfamariam, C. Richards, M. Anderson, J. McCormick-Ell, M. Brose and R. Anderson (2024). "Natural reversion promotes LPS elongation in an attenuated Coxiella burnetii strain." nature communications 15(1): 697.
- Lou, L., P. Zhang, R. Piao and Y. Wang (2019). "Salmonella pathogenicity island 1 (SPI-1) and its complex regulatory network." Frontiers in cellular and infection microbiology 9: 270.
- Martin, B., C. Granadel, N. Campo, V. Hénard, M. Prudhomme and J. P. Claverys (2010). "Expression and maintenance of ComD–ComE, the two-component signal-transduction system that controls competence of Streptococcus pneumoniae." Molecular microbiology 75(6): 1513-1528.
- Maury, M. M., V. Chenal-Francisque, H. Bracq-Dieye, L. Han, A. Leclercq, G. Vales, A. Moura, E. Gouin, M. Scortti and O. Disson (2017). "Spontaneous loss of virulence in natural populations of Listeria monocytogenes." Infection and immunity 85(11): 10.1128/iai. 00541-00517.
- Meng, J., S. Lee, A. L. Hotard and M. L. Moore (2014). "Refining the balance of attenuation and immunogenicity of respiratory syncytial virus by targeted codon deoptimization of virulence genes." MBio 5(5): 10.1128/mbio. 01704-01714.

- Minor, P. D. (2015). "Live attenuated vaccines: Historical successes and current challenges." Virology 479: 379-392.
- Moreno-Gámez, S., M. E. Hochberg and G. Van Doorn (2023). "Quorum sensing as a mechanism to harness the wisdom of the crowds." Nature communications 14(1): 3415.
- Nielsen, M. R. and D. E. Brodersen (2024). "Structural Variations and Rearrangements in Bacterial Type II Toxin-Antitoxin Systems." Macromolecular Protein Complexes V: Structure and Function: 245-267.
- Pavlov, V., G. Vakhrameeva, A. Mokrievich, M. E. Platonov, G. Titareva, R. Mironova, T. Kombarova, T. Gapelchenkova and I. Dyatlov (2022). "Development and Properties of Francisella tularensis Subsp. holarctica 15 NIIEG Vaccine Strain without the recD Gene." Vaccines 10(1): 108.
- Payne-Dwyer, A. L., A. H. Syeda, J. W. Shepherd, L. Frame and M. C. Leake (2022). "RecA and RecB: probing complexes of DNA repair proteins with mitomycin C in live Escherichia coli with single-molecule sensitivity." Journal of the Royal Society Interface 19(193): 20220437.
- Petrova, O., O. Parfirova, N. Gogoleva, V. Vorob'ev, Y. Gogolev and V. Gorshkov (2023). "The Role of Intercellular Signaling in the Regulation of Bacterial Adaptive Proliferation." International Journal of Molecular Sciences 24(8): 7266.
- Pinto, C. T. (2015). Temperature sensitive Mycobacterium tuberculosis as a potential vaccine candidate.
- Podlesek, Z. and D. Ž. Bertok (2021). The Escherichia coli SOS response: Much more than DNA damage repair. Escherichia coli-Old and New Insights, IntechOpen.
- Prister, L. L., S. Yin, L. A. Cahoon and H. S. Seifert (2020). "Altering the Neisseria gonorrhoeae pilE guanine quadruplex loop bases affects pilin antigenic variation." Biochemistry 59(10): 1104-1112.
- Qin, J., K. A. Wilson, S. Sarkar, B. Heras, M. L. O'Mara and M. Totsika (2022). "Conserved FimH mutations in the global Escherichia coli ST131 multi-drug resistant lineage weaken interdomain interactions and alter adhesin function." Computational and Structural Biotechnology Journal 20: 4532-4541.
- Ram, Y. and L. Hadany (2019). "Evolution of stress-induced mutagenesis in the presence of horizontal gene transfer." The American Naturalist 194(1): 73-89.
- Ramvikas, M., M. Arumugam, S. Chakrabarti and K. Jaganathan (2017). Nasal vaccine delivery. Micro and nanotechnology in vaccine development, Elsevier: 279-301.

- Rattray, J. B., S. A. Thomas, Y. Wang, E. Molotkova, J. Gurney, J. J. Varga and S. P. Brown (2022). "Bacterial quorum sensing allows graded and bimodal cellular responses to variations in population density." MBio 13(3): e00745-00722.
- Ren, J., J. Lee and D. Na (2020). "Recent advances in genetic engineering tools based on synthetic biology." Journal of Microbiology 58: 1-10.
- Roberts, M., S. Burgess, L. Toombs-Ruane, J. Benschop, J. Marshall and N. French (2021). "Combining mutation and horizontal gene transfer in a within-host model of antibiotic resistance." Mathematical Biosciences 339: 108656.
- Rojas, D., A. E. Marcoleta, M. Gálvez, M. A. Varas, M. Díaz, M. Hernández, C. Vargas, G. Nourdin, E. Koch and P. Saldivia (2023). "Effects of Polyphosphate metabolism Mutations on Biofilm, Capsule Formation and Virulence Traits in Hypervirulent ST23 Klebsiella pneumoniae SGH10." bioRxiv: 2023.2009. 2015.557991.
- Sanchez, D., M. Boudes, H. van Tilbeurgh, D. Durand and S. Quevillon-Cheruel (2015). "Modeling the ComD/ComE/comcde interaction network using small angle X-ray scattering." The FEBS journal 282(8): 1538-1553.
- Santi, I., R. Dias Teixeira, P. Manfredi, D. Spiess, G. Mas, A. Klotz, N. Zamboni, S. Hiller and U. Jenal (2023). "Toxin-mediated depletion of nicotinamide dinucleotides drives persister formation in a human pathogen." bioRxiv: 2023.2009. 2028.559889.
- Schwarz, M. G. A., P. R. Corrêa, W. Malaga, C. Guilhot and L. Mendonça-Lima (2020). "Mycobacterium bovis BCG moreau is naturally deficient in homologous recombination." Tuberculosis 123: 101956.
- Shaban, A. K., G. Gebretsadik, M. Hakamata, H. Takihara, E. Inouchi, A. Nishiyama, Y. Ozeki, Y. Tateishi, Y. Nishiuchi, T. Yamaguchi, N. Ohara, S. Okuda and S. Matsumoto (2023). "Mycobacterial DNA-binding protein 1 is critical for BCG survival in stressful environments and simultaneously regulates gene expression." Sci Rep 13(1): 14157.
- Sharma, D. K., H. S. Misra, S. C. Bihani and Y. S. Rajpurohit (2023). "Biochemical properties and roles of DprA protein in bacterial natural transformation, virulence, and pilin variation." Journal of Bacteriology 205(2): e00465-00422.
- Shields, R. C., G. O'Brien, N. Maricic, A. Kesterson, M. Grace, S. J. Hagen and R. A. Burne (2018). "Genome-wide screens reveal new gene products that influence genetic competence in Streptococcus mutans." Journal of Bacteriology 200(2): 10.1128/jb. 00508-00517.

- Sibanda, T. and E. Buys (2022). Listeria monocytogenes Pathogenesis: The Role of Stress Adaptation. Microorganisms 2022, 10, 1522, s Note: MDPI stays neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published ….
- Silale, A., S. M. Lea and B. C. Berks (2021). "The DNA transporter ComEC has metal-dependent nuclease activity that is important for natural transformation." Molecular Microbiology 116(2): 416-426.
- Song, Y., Y. Ke, M. Kang and R. Bao (2022). "Function, molecular mechanisms, and therapeutic potential of bacterial HtrA proteins: An evolving view." Computational and Structural Biotechnology Journal 20: 40-49.
- Su, X., G. Cao, J. Zhang, H. Pan, D. Zhang, D. Kuang, X. Yang, X. Xu, X. Shi and J. Meng (2019). "Characterization of internalin genes in Listeria monocytogenes from food and humans, and their association with the invasion of Caco-2 cells." Gut Pathogens 11: 1-10.
- Tang, J., Y. Gu, X. Wang, Y. Luo, F. Zhang, J. Zheng, Y. Wang, X. Shen and L. Xu (2024). "Salmonella T3SS-elicited inflammatory innate immune response inhibits type I IFN response in macrophages." Veterinary Microbiology 289: 109970.
- Tang, M.-X., S. Dyrma and T. Dong (2024). Stress responses modulate bacterial competitive fitness in polymicrobial communities. Stress: Immunology and Inflammation, Elsevier: 161-171.
- Tovpeko, Y. and D. A. Morrison (2014). "Competence for genetic transformation in Streptococcus pneumoniae: mutations in σA bypass the comW requirement." Journal of bacteriology 196(21): 3724-3734.
- Trees, D., K. Pettus and S. Johnson (2013). "O21. 2 Effect of Mutations in pilQ on the Susceptibility of Neisseria Gonorrhoeae to Cephalosporins." Sexually Transmitted Infections 89(Suppl 1): A67-A67.
- Tseng, C.-C., W.-H. Lin, A.-B. Wu, M.-C. Wang, C.-H. Teng and J.-J. Wu (2022). "Escherichia coli FimH adhesins act synergistically with PapGII adhesins for enhancing establishment and maintenance of kidney infection." Journal of Microbiology, Immunology and Infection 55(1): 44-50.
- Underhill, S. A., R. C. Shields, J. R. Kaspar, M. Haider, R. A. Burne and S. J. Hagen (2018). "Intracellular signaling by the comRS system in Streptococcus mutans genetic competence." Msphere 3(5): 10.1128/msphere. 00444-00418.
- Vilcheze, C., S. Rajagopalan and W. R. Jacobs Jr (2024). "Intravenous Immunization with Triple Auxotrophs of Mycobacterium tuberculosis: A novel vaccine strategy against tuberculosis." bioRxiv: 2024.2005. 2015.594337.
- Walker, L. M., J. R. Haycocks, J. C. Van Kessel, T. N. Dalia, A. B. Dalia and D. C. Grainger (2023). "A simple mechanism for integration of quorum sensing and cAMP signalling in Vibrio cholerae." Elife 12: RP86699.

- Weaver, S. J., M. H. Sazinsky, T. N. Dalia, A. B. Dalia and G. J. Jensen (2020). "CryoEM structure of the Vibrio cholerae Type IV competence pilus secretin PilQ." bioRxiv: 2020.2003. 2003.975896.
- Weyder, M., M. Prudhomme, M. Bergé, P. Polard and G. Fichant (2018). "Dynamic modeling of Streptococcus pneumoniae competence provides regulatory mechanistic insights." bioRxiv: 300814.
- Yaman, D. and B. Averhoff (2021). "Functional dissection of structural regions of the Thermus thermophilus competence protein PilW: Implication in secretin complex stability, natural transformation and pilus functions." Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA)-Biomembranes 1863(10): 183666.
- Yan, T., M. Li, Q. Wang, M. Wang, L. Liu, C. Ma, X. Xiang, Q. Zhou, Z. Liu and Z. Gong (2024). "Structures, functions, and regulatory networks of universal stress proteins in clinically relevant pathogenic Bacteria." Cellular Signalling 116: 111032.
- Zhou, J., H. Ma and L. Zhang (2023). "Mechanisms of Virulence Reprogramming in Bacterial Pathogens." Annual Review of Microbiology 77(1): 561-581.
- Zhu, J., M. B. Miller, R. E. Vance, M. Dziejman, B. L. Bassler and J. J. Mekalanos (2002). "Quorum-sensing regulators control virulence gene expression in Vibrio cholerae." Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 99(5): 3129-3134.
- Zhu, L., Z. Kuang, B. A. Wilson and G. W. Lau (2013). "Competence-independent activity of pneumococcal EndA [corrected] mediates degradation of extracellular dna and nets and is important for virulence." PLoS One 8(7): e70363.
- Zhu, L., Z. Kuang, B. A. Wilson and G. W. Lau (2013). "Competence-independent activity of pneumococcal EndA mediates degradation of extracellular DNA and NETs and is important for virulence." PLoS One 8(7): e70363.
- Zhu, S., B. Yang, F. Yu, J. Zhang, Z. Wang and Y. Liu (2024). "Investigation of the impact of widely used pesticides on conjugative transfer of multidrug resistance plasmids." Journal of Hazardous Materials 478: 135436.

CHAPTER- 6

IMMUNOLOGY UNVEILED: UNDERSTANDING IMMUNE DEFENSE AND MICROBIAL INTERACTIONS

Naqash Masih[1], Hafsa Butt[2], Muhammad Saqlain[2], Neha Anees[2,] *, Abdul Rehman[2], Shumaila Batool[2], Akash Nadeem[2], Sadia Hafeez, Ayesha Siddiqa[2] and Fatima Amin[2]

[1]Institute of Molecular Biology and Biotechnology, The University of Lahore, Lahore, Pakistan

[2]Department of Zoology, Wildlife and Fisheries, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526339

ABSTRACT

Immune system plays a crucial role in survival of an individual by protecting and fighting body from attack of various pathogens. From detection of entrance of a foreign body to killing and discarding of any invaded pathogens are the responsibilities of immune system. This chapter highlights the organization, components and processes accompanied by the immune system to fight the pathogens. In the beginning we have discussed the introduction of immunity. The second section has provided the insights on immunity and types of immunity i.e., innate immunity and adaptive immunity. The next section has described the initiation, pathways, activation and processes of inflammatory responses. The fourth section has discussed the cellular components of immune system. We have provided the detail of cells of immune system i.e. B-Cells, T cells, and macrophages and their role in immunity and immune responses. The activation and deactivation mechanisms of these cells and their working strategies have been discussed. The next section has provided the details on immune reactions to fight with pathogens. The details on resistive bacterial mechanisms have also been described to help in formulating strategies against pathogenic resistance. The role of natural microbiota has also been highlighted along their possible roles in strengthening the immunity. In the last we have concluded with immunodeficiency in relation to increased prevalence of infectious diseases. It is crucial to understand the immunology as it can help us in driving effective strategies to fight infectious diseases.

Key words: Immunology, Immune System, B-cells, T cells, Antimicrobial Resistance, Innate Immunity, Inflammatory Responses

INTRODUCTION TO IMMUNOLOGY

Immunology is the study of the functioning of immune system. Immune system is a defense system that protects us from invasion by pathogens. Diseases like allergy, autoimmunity and cancer can result if the immune system fails to work properly (Sattler, 2017). The immune system has two components called the innate and adaptive immune system. Adaptive immune system is further divided into Humoral

and Cell Mediated Immune Systems. Together these systems work to protect the body. One of the most important characteristics of immune system is the ability to distinguish between self and foreign (cells and molecules). The cells that bind to self-antigens are selectively eliminated during the early developmental stages (Sompayrac, 2022). The two main functions of the immune system are recognition and response. Ability to isolate single amino acid differences between pathogens and self-versus non-self (molecule cells). When the pathogen is detected, an effector response kills the pathogen.

IMPORTANCE OF IMMUNE DEFENSE

Immune System Protects from infection. The immune system is the body's inbuilt security mechanism. Meanwhile, "invaders" that make us sick are bacteria, viruses, parasites and fungi. They're everywhere – at home, in the office, in nature (McComb et al., 2019). The immune response is as follows:

A strong immune system prevents the entry of a foreign pathogen or antigen into human body. When they can, the immune system continues to make white blood cells, chemicals and proteins to destroy these potentially harmful foreign invaders. It's the immune system that will do whatever it can to locate and destroy antigens before they divide. If it doesn't work, then the immune system does its best not to let microbes in. The immune system can identify millions of antigens and will go to every extent to defeat the biggest aggressors. When you do it right, this fancy piece of protection can save you from the sniffles to terminal cancers. Develop antibodies to re-slew stubborn illness Humans are born with immunity and resistance, but it gets better. Children with recurring colds accumulate a "bank" of antibodies the very first time they are exposed to the disease, and they grow immune to it. 'To bring weak disease-causing organisms to arrive so the immune system can win, generate antibodies and eradicate a disease is how vaccines work, too. But the immune system declines with age. Their immune system is worn down and they are prone to illness arthritis usually, and sometimes cancer (Rankin & Artis, 2018).

MICROBIAL INTERACTIONS AND IMMUNE SYSTEM DYNAMICS

Immunity also communicates with all sorts of virulent and unvirulent microbes, affecting health and illness. Active microbes – gut bacteria, for instance – stimulate immunity, suppress inflammation and regulate response, and also become immune to benign antigens (Yoo et al., 2020). Pathogenic microbes, on the other hand, can get by immune mechanisms, leading to infection or immunopathology. A sufficient microbiome is a pre-requisite for immune homeostasis; dysbiotic or dysfunctional microbiomes are the culprits of autoimmune disease, allergy or chronic infection. Immunity senses the patterning of bacteria through receptors like Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and responds by calling on innate and adaptive defenses. Healthy microbial metabolites such as short-chain fatty acids can also regulate the immune system. Yet too many antibiotics disrupt microbial equilibrium, exhausting immunity and generating antibiotic resistance (Lazar et al., 2018). Overall, a healthy microbial-

immune relationship is at the heart of immunity because it influences defence systems, memory and how the body deals effectively with infection and disease.

INNATE IMMUNITY: THE BODY'S FIRST LINE OF DEFENSE

Innate immunity is the first line of defence against invaders. It responds exactly the same to every germ and foreign object, hence the reason that it is sometimes called the "non-specific" immune system. It does so in a blink of an eye – for instance, it makes sure bacteria infected by a small cut are detected and killed within a few hours. But a built-in immune system is not always immunity (Günther & Seyfert, 2018).

The innate immune system provides;

a. Immunity of the skin and mucous membranes

Layer on the exterior and the interior of the human body belongs to the natural immune system. The closed seal of skin and mucous membranes already forms an organic clatter against germs. So does acid, enzymes and mucus, which prevent bacteria and viruses from forming. There are some bodily motions that prevent germs from forming – for example, of hair-like cells (cilia) in the lungs, or of the bowel's muscles. Others in the body function in the same way – tears, sweat and urine (that is, to flush the bladder) (Ho & Kupper, 2019).

b. Immunity of the cells and proteins

When germs enter the body through the skin or mucous membranes, and invade, the immune system of the body attacks them with immune cells and proteins (Zhou et al., 2016).

KEY COMPONENTS OF INNATE IMMUNITY

Innate immunity's elements are the body's central defence mechanism that provides an instant, non-specific response to a pathogen. Physico-chemical, chemical (skin, mucus membranes, cilia, stomach acid) keep out infection and kill microbes. Then there are cells filled with macrophages and neutrophils that eat and digest pathogens through phagocytosis, and natural killer (NK) cells that apoptically destroy malignant or damaged cells. The antigen-transporting T-cells by dendritic cells connect innate and adaptive immunity, while chemicals in mast cells trigger inflammation (Riera Romo et al., 2016). Insoluble mediators like complement proteins and cytokines direct immune responses through inflammation and bringing immune cells to the infection site. Pattern Recognition Receptors (PRRs) like Toll-like receptors, are used to recognise microbial signals and modulate immune systems and the inflammation system. Inflammation boosts blood flow and prompts immune cells to invade the tissues to fight infection. Fever heats you up so that the disease organism slows its progress and wakes up the immune cells. Then there is the microbiome, which repels the microbes that enter and produces antimicrobial chemicals to aid intrinsic immunity even further. They cooperate to provide a fast, reactive response, repelling infection and activating adaptive immunity in moments of need (Vijay,2018).

Inflammatory Response: Initiation and Resolution

The inflammatory response is the part of immune defense and it's inflamed by infection, injury or damage to tissue. It kills germs, kills dead tissue and heals. The process involves two key phases: **initiation** and **resolution**, ensuring both effective defense and restoration of tissue integrity. Inflammation is the immune system's reaction to pathogens, damaged cells, toxins, or radiation. It works by eliminating damaging stimuli and starting the healing process (Sattler, 2017). Therefore, inflammation is a defence mechanism that is essential to good health.

The initiation phase starts when immune cells use Pattern Recognition Receptors (PRRs) to identify dangerous stimuli like infections or tissue damage. Both damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) and pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) are recognized by these receptors (Muire et al., 2020).

Table 1. Initiation of inflammation:

a	Mast Cells and Basophils Activation	Release histamine, triggering vasodilation (widening of blood vessels) and increased vascular permeability, which allows immune cells and proteins to enter tissues.
b	Cytokine and Chemokine Release	Cells like macrophages and mast cells release cytokines (e.g., IL-1, TNF-α) and chemokines, attracting neutrophils and other immune cells to the site of injury.
c	Recruitment of Neutrophils and Macrophages	Neutrophils are the first responders, performing phagocytosis to engulf and destroy pathogens. Macrophages follow, clearing debris and producing more cytokines to sustain the response.
d	Complement Activation	The complement cascade is activated, enhancing phagocytosis and lysing pathogens directly.

Resolution of Inflammation

The resolution phase prevents inflammation from ever stepping outside of its utility and tissues are shielded from injury and repaired. This act slams the inflammation shut and starts tissue repair (Medzhitov, 2021).

Table 2. Resolution of inflammation:

a	**Switching from Pro-inflammatory to Anti-inflammatory Signals**	Macrophages move from inflammatory (M1) to healing (M2), releasing anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-10 and TGF
b	**Neutrophils and Cell Waste Deconstruction:**	Apoptotic neutrophils are collected by macrophages, the process is called efferocytosis, and inflammation is kept at bay longer.
c	**Production of Lipid Mediators**	Adjusted pro-resolving mediators (SPMs) such as lipoxins, resolvins and protectins let inflammation go down and regeneration can kick in.
d	**Vascular Integrity Restoration:**	The blood vessels get normalized and the immune cells migrate out of the wound.

Inflammation also protects the body against infections and regenerates tissues. It triggers immediate resistance, recruiting immune cells and starting the defences. But you want the problem to be addressed properly or inflammation and tissue repair could return. The healthy inflammatory response allows the body to fight off infection, defend normal tissues and heal.

ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY: TAILORED RESPONSE TO MICROBES

If the germs are not destroyed by the innate (generic) immune system, the adaptive (specialised) immune system takes over. The adaptive immune system tailors its defence with cells and mechanisms targeted to particular antigens of pathogens. The adaptive immune system targets the specific kind of germ that is making the infection. But it must first identify the germ as such. It's slower to respond than the natural immune system, so it's also more reliable when it does. It also has the bonus of being able to "remember" germs. So the adaptive immune system can respond to a previously encountered germ faster the next time around (Evavold & Kagan, 2018).

This is also why you can only contract some diseases once in your lifetime, as soon as you do it; you are "detached" to it. Although the adaptive immune system may need a few days to adapt the first time it touches the germ, the next time it responds immediately. The second infection then tends to go undetected, or at least is less severe. Immunological memory, for example, is a hallmark of adaptive immunity that ensures enhanced responses when the same organism is exposed again. B-cells contribute to this process by making antibodies, proteins that kill intruders and signal for destruction (Natoli & Ostuni, 2019).

The adaptive immune system includes:

- B cells (also in the tissue between the body's cells)
- T cells in the tissue between the body's cells

B-Cells and Antibody Production

B-cells, or B lymphocytes, are an essential part of the adaptive immune system. They arise from hematopoietic stem cells in the bone marrow and develop there, before spreading to peripheral lymphoid organs, including the lymph nodes and spleen. B-cells generate antibodies that attach to antigens (individual molecules on the surface of bacteria) to neutralise them. When activated, B-cells differentiate into plasma cells, releasing high levels of antibodies, and memory B-cells, which offer lifetime immunity (Cyster & Allen, 2019).

Activation of B-Cells

The activation of B cells is accomplished by different mechanisms depending on the molecular class of the antigen. If a protein antigen activates a B cell, it is the B cell's role as an APC to pass the protein epitopes on to assistive T cells through MHC II. Protein antigens are T-dependent antigens, in the sense that they require T cells to activate B cells. Polysaccharides, lipopolysaccharides and other nonprotein antigens, on the other hand, are T-independent antigens because they activate B cells without antigen processing and transmission to T cells (van de Veen et al., 2016).

B-cell activation is triggered in two ways:

• T-Cell Independent Activation

• T-Cell Dependent Activation

T-Cell Independent Activation

B cells that are activated without the input of helper T cells is called T cell-independent activation, and it is caused by BCRs binding to T-independent antigens. T-independent antigens (e.g., lipopolysaccharide capsules) possess repeated epitope units in their structure, and because of the repetition, different BCRs can cross-link and the first signal to activate is sent (1). Since T cells are not present, the second signal must originate elsewhere, including PAMPs-associated toll-like receptors or complement system factors. Once a B cell becomes inflamed, it proliferates clonally, and daughter cells grow into plasma cells. Plasma cells are antibody factories that release huge amounts of antibodies. When a plasma cell differentiates, the surface BCRs are eliminated and pentameric IgM molecules identical to the BCRs are released. The T cell-independent response does not last long and does not induce memory B cells. Thus it will not produce an intermediate reaction when repeated exposure to T-independent antigens (Lauvau & Soudja, 2015).

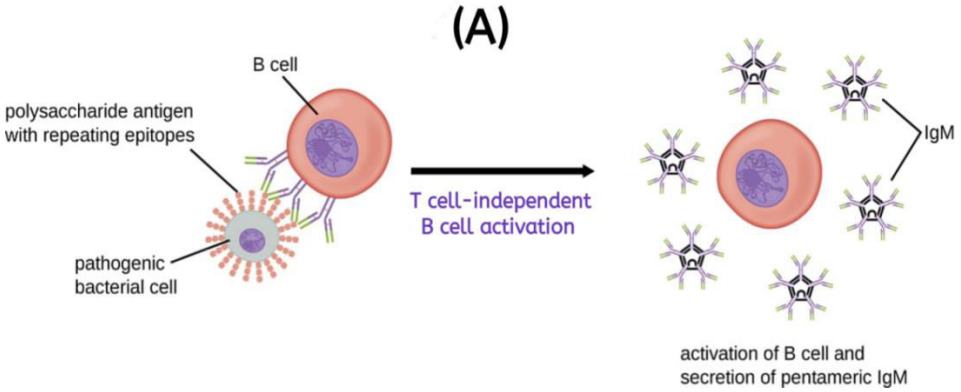


Fig 1. (A) T-Cell Independent Activation

T Cell-Dependent Activation of B cells

B cell-dependent activation by T cells is more complicated than T cell-independent activation, but its immune response is more robust and memory-forming. T cell-mediated activation can occur in the presence of either free protein antigens or protein antigens of an intact pathogen. When BCRs of a novice mature B cell interact with a free protein antigen, they induce internalisation of the antigen, while when they react to the antigens of an intact pathogen, they drive the antigen out of the pathogen and internalize it. After it's taken up within the B cell, the protein antigen is digested and presented with MHC II. The resulting antigen is detected by antigen-specific helper T cells. The helper T cell's TCR recognizes the foreign antigen, and the T cell's CD4 protein crosses the B cell to MHC II. The coordination between B cells and antigen-specific helper T cells is known as linked recognition. When activated by associated

recognition, TH2 cells create and release cytokines that trigger the B cell to respond and proliferate into clonal daughter cells. Later, after a few rounds of proliferating, additional cytokines supplied by the TH2 cells in turn promote the maturation of activated B cell clones into memory B cells (which will readily respond to subsequent stimulation with the same protein epitope), and plasma cells without membrane BCRs that first release pentameric IgM (2). TH2 cells that have begun to secrete IgM then activate the plasma cells, which change from IgM to IgG, IgA or IgE. The result is class switching or isotype switching, whereby plasma cells cloned from the same activated B cell yield multiple classes of antibodies with the same epitope binding properties. Class switching is done by genetically rearranging gene sequences containing the constant region that code for an antibody's class. This variable region is not altered, and so the new type of antibody still has the same epitope affinity (Doherty et al., 2018).

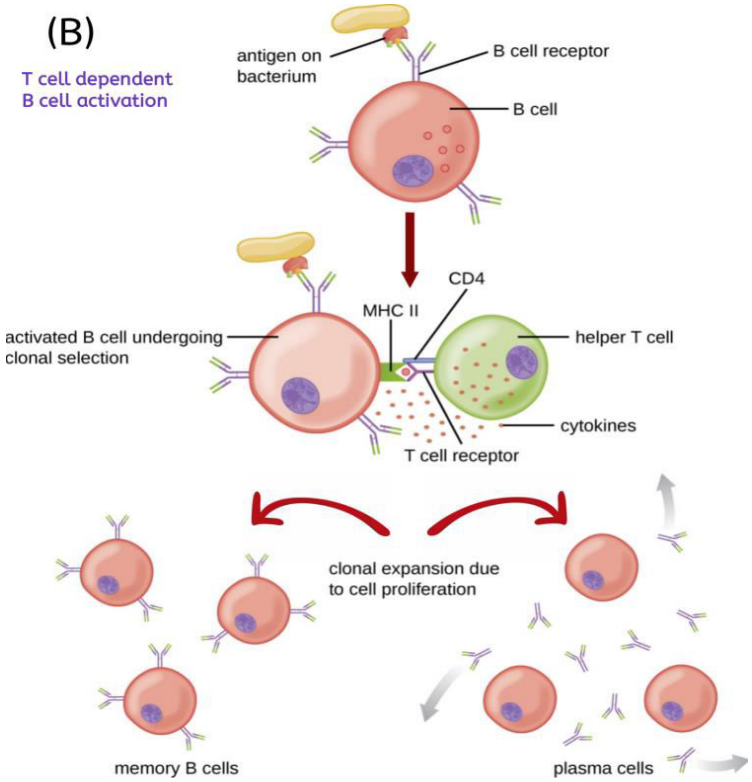


Fig 1. (B) T-Cell dependent Activation of B cells

ROLE OF ANTIBODIES IN MICROBIAL DEFENSE

Antibodies play critical roles in microbial immunity.

1) Antibodies enter the blood and mucous membranes where they attach to and destroy foreign molecules, including pathogens and toxins (neutralization).

2) Antibodies direct the complement system to lyse bacterial cells (pierce the cell wall).

3) Antibodies encourage phagocytic cells to phagocytose foreign objects (opsonization).

T-Cells: Helpers and Killers

T-cells or T-lymphocytes belong to the adaptive immune system that provides cell-mediated immunity (in place of B-cells). They are developed in the thymus and grow up in the bone marrow where they are taught to recognize antigens for self and non-self. T-cells aren't directly antigen producing, like B-cells. Instead, they're essential, either in directing immune response (helper T-cells) or by killing infected or damaged cells (cytotoxic T-cells). It is this division of labour that helps the adaptive immune system manage a large number of microbial problems efficiently. T cells come in all sorts of forms, but two that are perhaps most popular are CD4+ T cells (helper T cells) and CD8+ T cells (cytotoxic T cells or killer T cells) (Crosby & Kronenberg, 2018).

Helpers T-Cells

T helper or CD4+ cells are cytotoxic cells, but much more involved. They're the cell immunity players because most adaptive immune responses require these cells. T helper cells explode when exposed to antigens and can segregate into cell subsets. Helper T cells multiply when activated and secrete cytokines that brings macrophages and cytotoxic T cells to the infection site. Helper T-cells coordinate and amplify immune responses by secreting cytokines, molecules that alter other immune cells' behavior. They don't actually kill the pathogens, but are necessary for activation of B-cells, macrophages and cytotoxic T-cells (Pallmer & Oxenius, 2016).

Activation of Helper T Cells

Foolhardy T cells require at least two triggers. Both come from an antigen-presenting cell, usually a dendritic cell: signal 1 comes from MHC-peptide complexes at T cell receptors; signal 2 comes mostly from B7 costimulatory proteins that attach to CD28 on the T cell surface. Once signal 1 reaches the T cell, it's generally eliminated or switched off. Upon first being released onto a dendritic cell, helper T cells might become TH1 or TH2 effector cells, depending on the surrounding cytokines: TH1 cells promote macrophages, cytotoxic T cells and B cells; TH2 cells primarily stimulate B cells (Ho & Kupper, 2019). The effector helper T cells, in both instances, detect the same combination of foreign peptide and class II MHC protein on the surface of the target cell as they initially did on the dendritic cell that triggered them. They stimulate their host cells using both membrane-bound and released signal proteins. The membrane-bound signal is CD40 ligand. B cells, like T cells, require two concurrent triggers. The signal 1 comes from the binding of antibodies to the B cell antigen receptors and the signal 2 comes from the effector helper T cells in the form of CD40 ligand and other cytokines (Saravia et al., 2019).

Most of the immune system's cell-cell and antigen-recognition proteins, such as antibodies, T cell receptors and MHC proteins, and the various co-receptors described here, are members of the ancient Ig superfamily. This superfamily appears to have arisen from an early gene that encodes a single Ig domain (Zhu, 2018).

Cytotoxic T Cells

Cytotoxic T Cells (Cd8+ cells) serve the purpose of killing toxic/target cells. When identified, their function is to kill virus-infected cells, bacteria and tumour cells (including cancer cells) via an apoptotic process. The apoptotic response kills the cell's interior organs so that it has internalized death. Among them, cytotoxic T cells are a crucial group of T cells that is involved in immune responses to infections in the intracellular environment (viruses and tumour cells). These cells carry CD8 molecules on their cell surfaces, and can control the infection by directly killing infected cells (Wang et al., 2022).

CTL activation requires two signals. For one, the TCR will associate with the peptide-tagged MHC class I molecule on the APC, which is then anchored by CD8 binding to MHC. Then they require a co-stimulatory signal, which is usually expressed by proteins that are present on the APC surface (in particular, CD80 and CD86), which are known to the T cell's co-receptor protein CD28 on its surface. This second signal can be aided (or countered) by cytokines from T helper cells that activate the TC cell. After activation, the CTL grows clonally with interleukin 2 (IL-2) to produce more cells that express the target antigen (Delrue).

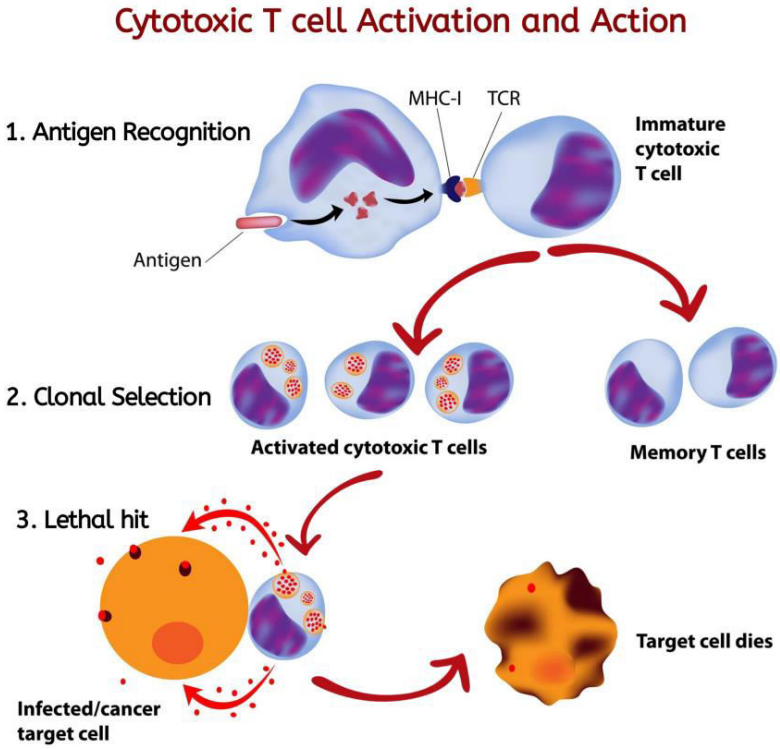


Fig 2. Activation of cytotoxic T cell

Microbial Evasion of the Immune System

Immune evasion is how bacterial pathogens bypass or disable host defences and survive inside a host. Organisms that live in many cells have very sophisticated defenses against the continual microbial damage to the vertebrate host. But the successful microbes have themselves developed elaborate and powerful techniques to defy natural and adaptive immune systems, causing disease or long-term infection. Although viral and bacterial pathogens have many different ways of virulence, there are common ways in which they manage to destabilise and exploit immune systems that these microbial infections also use. All pathogens are based on generating a good anti-immune reaction in the host, which ultimately can lead to acute illness, chronic infection or even pathogen clearance (Heggi et al., 2024).

MECHANISMS USED BY BACTERIA TO AVOID IMMUNITY.

Bacteria are the infectious species and threat to humans which causes death of hundred thousands of human being each year. They have devised extremely efficient techniques to disrupt the human immune system – which is why vaccines and management of these bacteria have been so difficult. Successful pathogens have developed various anti-immune tactics for overriding the innate and acquired immunities that contribute to their capacity to transmit disease (Kobayashi et al., 2018).

Capsule formation

Bacterial surfaces are heterogeneous cellular bodies with an array of different antigenic targets to be hitched on to the host surface. The usual means of masking bacteria surfaces is to send out a carbohydrate capsule. Capsules hide a lot of bacterial surfaces and prevent opsonisation. It is the same mechanism that the vast majority of extracellular bacterial pathogens that spread throughout the body do. Pneumococcus (Streptococcus pneumoniae, for instance) depends on its capsule heavily to avert opsonisation and phagocytosis by a layer of antibodies and complement that gets built up on the surface. The same goes for meningitic bacteria (Haemophilus influenzae, Escherichia coli K1, Neisseria meningitidis) who heavily use capsules to support their extracellular lifestyle in the host, by preventing antibody and complement deposit and introduction. And pathogens expressing surface capsules have often also filamentous adhesins (fimbriae and pili) sticking out from the capsular surface, so that the adhesins can attach to host receptors without revealing the bacterial surface (Cavigliasso et al., 2021).

Avoiding immune surveillance

A slack of being picked up by either the autoimmune or the acquired immune system is the hallmark of bacteria. There is the idea of masking the surface of the microbe so that it is invisible to host surveillance systems; there is also the idea of suppressing immune activity so that there is no full immune reaction. There are main molecules on bacterial surfaces that the host's immune system exploits as signatures. They are usually TLR agonists like LPS lipid A, flagella and peptidoglycan. But the bacteria themselves have discovered ways to change those molecules so they are less easily detected by immune surveillance (Ali et al., 2019). Most Gram-negative pathogens tweak lipid A to alter TLR4 response. Salmonella, for instance, has a two-sensor (PhoP/PhoQ) that reads host conditions, and it regulates many of the virulence genes. A 3-O-deacylase (PagL) and a palmitoyltransferase (PagP) for example, are some of these genes. These altered versions of lipid A are up to 100 times less responsive to TLR4 and NFkB signalling. Even though lipid A is fairly conserved, there are species that make lipid A structures that are inefficient TLR2 and 4 activators. Porphyromonas gingivalis, for instance, is one of the most widely used dental pathogens, with multiple species of lipid A that act as agonists and antagonists of TLR2 and 4, regulating inflammation in an inflammatory manner. A third important signature of bacteria is peptidoglycan. Nod1 and Nod2 are leucine-rich repeat intracellular proteins that work in much the same way as TLRs to look for peptidoglycan in host cells. Nod1 (Human) detects N-acetylglucosamine-N-acetylmuramic acid, a tripeptide sequence that is distinctive of Gram-negative bacteria, while Nod2 detects N-acetylglucosamine-N-acetylmuramic acid dipeptide. NFkB activation and inflammation follow on either Nod. For bacterial organisms, there is a way to bypass processing and recognition of peptidoglycan by Nods. The peptidoglycan synthesis, turnover and recycling genes were identified as virulence factors. Listeria monocytogenes, for instance, lives in the cytosol of macrophages and other host cells. They've found surface-located and –secreted peptidoglycan

hydrolases that are virulence factors as well. This work proposes that peptidoglycan cleavage activates a virulence strategy of Nod^2 exploitation and the innate inflammatory response to instigate Listeria pathogenicity (Voelkner, 2019).

Antigenic variation in bacteria

The other venerable way that viruses, bacteria and parasites try to avoid immunity is to alter immunodominant molecules, called antigenic variation. Gained immunity depends on recall of previous exposure to antigens and so antigenic diversity is, more particularly, fit for bypassing humoral and cellular responses. Antigenic variations as a way to circumvent natural immunity, if any, are absent. While strain-to-strain variation in antigenic molecules is normal, antigenic variation means a single strain mutationally altering a subclass of its antigens, either to maintain a persistent infection or to re-infect hosts after the original infection had been vaccinated (Sompayrac, 2022). The molecular machinery that makes bacterial pathogens cause antigenic variation is diverse but very well-understood. Those processes usually consist of one of three processes: i. ii. Having several but separate copies of a molecule, with their own on/off switch; Having one expression locus and many silent copies of the gene, and constantly switching which gene is expressed; or iii. Having a highly mutable part of a molecule that changes all the time. The bacterial models of antigenic variation best are perhaps the Neisseria organisms, which use all three of these terms, and explain why no vaccine for them has succeeded. Neisseria pilus expressed at pilE locus. But there are also many silence copies of partial pilin genes — encoded in "silent" (pilS) loci. If we mix several pil alleles together genetically, into the expression locus, a pilus emerges that changes all the time. Because these animals are natural experts, they get more pilin gene sequences and put them into pilS loci. N menigitidis changes the lipooligosaccharide architecture in a phase variation mechanism, too. It can encode up to 13 immunotypes by flipping through terminal sugar architectures. That’s done by changing expression of various carbohydrate biosynthesis genes. Glycosyltransferase, for instance, is controlled by slipped-strand mispairing, so that other sugars end up in LOS (Hartnett, 2015).

THE ROLE OF THE MICROBIOME IN IMMUNE REGULATION

The human microbiome – made up of trillions of microbes at many different locations within the body – is central to health and disease. These bacteria, viruses, fungi and archaea are mostly found in the gut, skin, respiratory system and other surface mucous membranes. The microbiome’s form and function are affected by many things: genes, diet, the environment and life. In this world, however, the gut microbiota is unique in that it plays a profound role in host function – in metabolism, digestion and immunity. Losses to this equilibrium – dysbiosis – are the causes of inflammatory disease, metabolic problems and infections, and it is precisely the role of the microbiome in regulating health that we want to focus on (Kim, 2018). Developing and maintaining immune function depends on this connection between the microbiome and the host immune system. And microbial exposure from birth kicks off immune systems to sort out pathogens from beneficial microbes. Those dynamic shapes immune system development, immunocytes training and tolerance.

Specifically, commensal bacteria – bacteria that are in stable attachment with the host – release metabolites that regulate immune function and immune homeostasis. So, the microbiome isn't just an inhibitor of germs; it's also a modulator of immunity (Kogut et al., 2020).

Symbiotic Interactions and Immune Balance

This immune homeostasis theory lies at the heart of the microbiome-immune symbiosis. Immune homeostasis: the state of the immune system, with the inflamation responses properly managed, not provoked too vigorously. The symbiotic bacteria in a healthy microbiome work alongside the host and are important in immune defence. Short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), for instance, butyrate, acetate and propionate are the byproducts of microbial fermentation in the gut. These SCFAs reduce inflammation, induce regulatory T cells (Tregs), and maintain a gut barrier that stops pathogens and toxins from entering the body (Malys et al., 2015).

This balance is maintained by the immune system in turn, allowing these good microbes to flourish and suppressing bad ones, in a reciprocal fashion. Special immune cells in the gut – dendritic cells and macrophages – monitor the microbiota for changes and then react to them. They make immune systems tolerogenic – that is, they can survive benign microbes while watching out for disease-causing ones. An antibody released into the gut lumen, called immunoglobulin A (IgA), contributes to this equilibrium by attaching to commensal microbes, so they don't spread into the tissues and trigger inflammation.

When this relationship breaks down because we take antibiotics too often, or aren't eating enough, or are stressed that symbiosis can trigger immune dysregulation. A dysbiotic microbiome can cause chronic inflammation, autoimmune disease and allergies as the immune system becomes hyperactive. By way of example, when good bacteria die, SCFA levels are decreased, corroding the gut wall and exposing you to pathogens and poisons. This shows that the microbiome and immune system must be in a symbiotic relationship to support immune homeostasis (Scott et al., 2018). Gut microbes and Immune Regulation. So, the gut microbiota dominates infection control and local and national immune systems. It works in a number of different ways, including by activating immune cells, metabolites that regulate immunity, and the body's immune receptors. Other bacteria, such as Bifidobacteria and Lactobacilli, also activate Tregs, such microbial metabolites, such as SCFAs, affect immune cells not only in the gut, but in other organs. Butyrate, for example, stimulated anti-inflammatory Treg differentiation and inhibited pro-inflammatory cytokines (Yoo et al., 2020). Other gut bacteria generate metabolites such as indole and polysaccharide A, which bind to receptors on immune cells, stimulating inflammation and immune tolerance. These interactions position the microbiome as a therapeutic target for disease conditions such as inflammatory bowel disease, rheumatoid arthritis and allergies that result from immune dysfunction.

More recent studies invoke the microbiota-gut-brain axis, where gut microbes influence mind and brain via immune mechanisms (La Fata et al., 2018; Lazar et al.,

2018). This system includes gut microbiota, immune cells and the central nervous system, and scientists have shown that changes in microbiota can influence mood, cognition and stress. Sysbiosis-induced inflammation, for example, can open the blood-brain barrier to allow immune cells to arrive at neurons and influence the brain. The gut is therefore part of the mind as well as the body in a three-dimensional immunity sense. Immune dysregulation and Microbial Consequences hich are crucial to self-antigen tolerance and autoimmune disorders (Clavel et al., 2017).

Immunodeficiency and Infection Prevalence

The immune system is no longer robust enough to fight infection, so immunodeficiency diseases open us up to infections. They are either hereditary (for serious immunodeficiency such as severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)), or acquired (for HIV/AIDS). Immunodeficiency reduces immune systems and cell responses, leaving the body ineffective against infection. The microbiome supports immune defences by letting a robust community of beneficial microbes vie with pathogens to prevent their production or, in turn, enhance immunity (Obeagu & Obeagu, 2023).

Microbial imbalances in immunodeficient patients raise infection risks. The absence of good gut bacteria, for instance, promotes the growth of pathogens such as Clostridioides difficile or Candida albicans. Such bacteria engulf the body and infect it over time, further draining immune power. Moreover, in immunocompromised patients, dysbiosis can cause systemic inflammation exacerbated by immune failure. Because microbiome and immune system work together to maintain host defences, a functioning microbiome will serve as a vital resource for the immune system, particularly in diseased patients (Raje & Dinakar, 2015). By replenishing the microbiota through probiotics, prebiotics and food supplements, we can repair the immune system in immunocompromised patients. previous studies suggest that probiotic strains including Lactobacillus rhamnosus and Bifidobacterium longum improve immunity and decrease infection in immunocompromised individuals (Lehtoranta et al., 2020; Lopez-Santamarina et al., 2021). Moreover, a diet rich in fibre and antioxidants guards the microbiome, immune cells and fights inflammation. In this way, targeted microbial interventions can reverse immune losses and reduce infection risk.

REFERENCES

- Ali, M., Abdallah, M. S., & Jere, S. (2019). Bacterial strategy of invading host immune system: A review. Clinical Research in Immunology, 2(1), 1-7.
- Cavigliasso, F., Gatti, J.-L., Colinet, D., & Poirié, M. (2021). Impact of temperature on the immune interaction between a parasitoid wasp and Drosophila host species. Insects, 12(7), 647.
- Clavel, T., Gomes-Neto, J. C., Lagkouvardos, I., & Ramer-Tait, A. E. (2017). Deciphering interactions between the gut microbiota and the immune system via

microbial cultivation and minimal microbiomes. Immunological reviews, 279(1), 8-22.

- Crosby, C. M., & Kronenberg, M. (2018). Tissue-specific functions of invariant natural killer T cells. Nature Reviews Immunology, 18(9), 559-574.
- Cyster, J. G., & Allen, C. D. (2019). B cell responses: cell interaction dynamics and decisions. Cell, 177(3), 524-540.
- Delrue, N. DRAFT AOP 277: Impaired Interleukin-1 Receptor Type I (IL-1R1) signaling leading to Impaired T-Cell Dependent Antibody Response.
- Doherty, D. G., Melo, A. M., Moreno-Olivera, A., & Solomos, A. C. (2018). Activation and regulation of B cell responses by invariant natural killer T cells. Frontiers in immunology, 9, 1360.
- Evavold, C. L., & Kagan, J. C. (2018). How inflammasomes inform adaptive immunity. Journal of molecular biology, 430(2), 217-237.
- Günther, J., & Seyfert, H.-M. (2018). The first line of defence: insights into mechanisms and relevance of phagocytosis in epithelial cells. Seminars in immunopathology,
- Hartnett, J. N. (2015). Dynamics of adaptive immunity during Lassa virus infection and a proposed mechanism for immune impairment Tulane University].
- Heggi, M. T., Nour El-Din, H. T., Morsy, D. I., Abdelaziz, N. I., & Attia, A. S. (2024). Microbial evasion of the complement system: a continuous and evolving story. Frontiers in immunology, 14, 1281096.
- Ho, A. W., & Kupper, T. S. (2019). T cells and the skin: from protective immunity to inflammatory skin disorders. Nature Reviews Immunology, 19(8), 490-502.
- Kim, C. H. (2018). Immune regulation by microbiome metabolites. Immunology, 154(2), 220-229.
- Kobayashi, S. D., Malachowa, N., & DeLeo, F. R. (2018). Neutrophils and bacterial immune evasion. Journal of innate immunity, 10(5-6), 432-441.
- Kogut, M. H., Lee, A., & Santin, E. (2020). Microbiome and pathogen interaction with the immune system. Poultry science, 99(4), 1906-1913.
- La Fata, G., Weber, P., & Mohajeri, M. H. (2018). Probiotics and the gut immune system: indirect regulation. Probiotics and antimicrobial proteins, 10, 11-21.
- Lauvau, G., & Soudja, S. M. H. (2015). Mechanisms of memory T cell activation and effective immunity. Crossroads Between Innate and Adaptive Immunity V, 73-80.
- Lazar, V., Ditu, L.-M., Pircalabioru, G. G., Gheorghe, I., Curutiu, C., Holban, A. M., Picu, A., Petcu, L., & Chifiriuc, M. C. (2018). Aspects of gut microbiota and

immune system interactions in infectious diseases, immunopathology, and cancer. Frontiers in immunology, 9, 1830.

- Lehtoranta, L., Latvala, S., & Lehtinen, M. J. (2020). Role of probiotics in stimulating the immune system in viral respiratory tract infections: A narrative review. Nutrients, 12(10), 3163.
- Lopez-Santamarina, A., Lamas, A., del Carmen Mondragón, A., Cardelle-Cobas, A., Regal, P., Rodriguez-Avila, J. A., Miranda, J. M., Franco, C. M., & Cepeda, A. (2021). Probiotic effects against virus infections: new weapons for an old war. Foods, 10(1), 130.
- Malys, M. K., Campbell, L., & Malys, N. (2015). Symbiotic and antibiotic interactions between gut commensal microbiota and host immune system. Medicina, 51(2), 69-75.
- McComb, S., Thiriot, A., Akache, B., Krishnan, L., & Stark, F. (2019). Introduction to the immune system. Immunoproteomics: methods and protocols, 1-24.
- Medzhitov, R. (2021). The spectrum of inflammatory responses. Science, 374(6571), 1070-1075.
- Muire, P. J., Mangum, L. H., & Wenke, J. C. (2020). Time course of immune response and immunomodulation during normal and delayed healing of musculoskeletal wounds. Frontiers in immunology, 11, 1056.
- Natoli, G., & Ostuni, R. (2019). Adaptation and memory in immune responses. Nature immunology, 20(7), 783-792.
- Obeagu, E. I., & Obeagu, G. U. (2023). Human Immunodeficiency Virus and tuberculosis infection: A review of prevalence of associated factors. Int. J. Adv. Multidiscip. Res, 10(10), 56-62.
- Pallmer, K., & Oxenius, A. (2016). Recognition and regulation of T cells by NK cells. Frontiers in immunology, 7, 251.
- Raje, N., & Dinakar, C. (2015). Overview of immunodeficiency disorders. Immunology and Allergy Clinics, 35(4), 599-623.
- Rankin, L. C., & Artis, D. (2018). Beyond host defense: emerging functions of the immune system in regulating complex tissue physiology. Cell, 173(3), 554-567.
- Riera Romo, M., Pérez-Martínez, D., & Castillo Ferrer, C. (2016). Innate immunity in vertebrates: an overview. Immunology, 148(2), 125-139.
- Saravia, J., Chapman, N. M., & Chi, H. (2019). Helper T cell differentiation. Cellular & molecular immunology, 16(7), 634-643.

- Sattler, S. (2017). The role of the immune system beyond the fight against infection. The immunology of cardiovascular homeostasis and pathology, 3-14.
- Scott, B., Green, K., & Berry, D. (2018). The fine balance between mutualism and antagonism in the Epichloë festucae–grass symbiotic interaction. Current Opinion in Plant Biology, 44, 32-38.
- Sompayrac, L. M. (2022). How the immune system works. John Wiley & Sons.
- van de Veen, W., Stanic, B., Wirz, O. F., Jansen, K., Globinska, A., & Akdis, M. (2016). Role of regulatory B cells in immune tolerance to allergens and beyond. Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, 138(3), 654-665.
- Vijay, K. (2018). Toll-like receptors in immunity and inflammatory diseases: Past, present, and future. International Immunopharmacology, 59, 391-412.
- Voelkner, N. (2019). Riding the Shi: from infection barriers to the Microbial city. International Political Sociology, 13(4), 375-391.
- Wang, X., Li, N., Ma, M., Han, Y., & Rao, K. (2022). Immunotoxicity in vitro assays for environmental pollutants under paradigm shift in toxicity tests. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 20(1), 273.
- Yoo, J. Y., Groer, M., Dutra, S. V. O., Sarkar, A., & McSkimming, D. I. (2020). Gut microbiota and immune system interactions. Microorganisms, 8(10), 1587.
- Zhou, Z., Xu, M.-J., & Gao, B. (2016). Hepatocytes: a key cell type for innate immunity. Cellular & molecular immunology, 13(3), 301-315.
- Zhu, J. (2018). T helper cell differentiation, heterogeneity, and plasticity. Cold Spring Harbor perspectives in biology, 10(10), a030338.

CHAPTER- 7

THE FUTURE OF VIRAL VACCINES: NOVEL TARGETS AND STRATEGIES

Waqas Ashraf[1]*, Khizar Abbas[1]*, Muhammad Moazam Jalees[1] and Shafeeq Ur Rehman[1], Muhammad Shan[1], Ejaz u Rehman[1] and Syed Muhammad Adnan[1]
[1]Department of Microbiology, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan *Both authors shared equally
https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526440

ABSTRACT
Effective vaccine development is required because viral diseases represent a danger to world health. Immunization was initially used to lower infectious disease-related death and morbidity. Conventional vaccination strategies frequently encounter obstacles such as low effectiveness, variation in antigens, and logistical limitations. Examining new targets and creative approaches, this chapter explores the exciting developments in the field of viral vaccine research. Explore the possibility of focusing on host factors involved in viral replication, conserved viral proteins, and viral non-coding RNAs. It also covers new vaccination platforms, such as DNA vaccines, which have improved immunogenicity and scalability, and viral vector and mRNA vaccines, which may be delivered as viral antigens using nanoparticle-based vaccines. Revers vaccinology approach for the vaccine development. Knowing about these innovative advancements allows us to imagine a day in the future when viral vaccinations offer a more extensive and long-lasting defense against a greater variety of infectious illnesses.

Key Words: Vaccines, Viral Vaccines, rDNA Vaccines, Dead Vaccines, Live Vaccines

INTRODUCTION
As a key component of public health, viral vaccines have been developed to prevent and control illnesses that have traditionally resulted in high rates of morbidity and death. Smallpox and measles cases have almost completely disappeared as a result of vaccination initiatives, while polio, measles, and hepatitis rates have significantly decreased (Gothefors, 2008). Vaccines have a purpose beyond personal defense; they also aid in the development of herd immunity, which protects susceptible groups and lessens the strain on healthcare systems. Viral vaccinations continue to be very important as the whole community fights off current viral threats and gets ready for future pandemics (Greenwood, 2014).

Present-day viral vaccinations have limits despite their significant effect. A lot of vaccinations only provide partial protection, requiring booster shots or regular updates, especially when it comes to quickly evolving diseases like coronaviruses and influenza (Morens et al., 2023). In addition, the international response to vaccine deliveries is hampered by challenges such as vaccine apprehension, difficulties with

logistics, and maintaining cold chain in low resource settings. It is very important to look for new targets for immunization that will not be standard as we progress into the future. This chapter will examine novel targets, such as membrane proteins, non-structural proteins, nucleic acids, and other potential antigenic components that could enable the development of vaccines. Moreover, we will turn to new generation vaccines; such as, live attenuated vaccines, vector systems, DNA & mRNA vaccines and protein-based vaccines. The goal of these innovative strategies is to eliminate present restrictions as well as evolve with the changing viral landscape to boost our ability to respond to viral diseases. Based on estimates made by the World Health Organization, it has been concluded that vaccines prevent two to three million deaths every year. Further, the introduction of effective vaccines is likely to lead to the successful global eradication of polio, as already the case with smallpox (Lohiniva et al., 2023). Furthermore, vaccinations save the nation's healthcare system about $500 billion in medical expenses and hospital stays (Orenstein & Ahmed, 2017).

There are several infectious illnesses for which there are no effective vaccines available, despite the enormous effectiveness of conventional vaccinations. Vaccines against human infections, including Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), herpes simplex virus (HSV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), tuberculosis (TB), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), have not been successful in developing. 39 million people have died from HIV worldwide, while over 36 million people are currently infected (Pandey & Galvani, 2019). Antiretroviral treatment (ART) is available, yet despite this, some 2 million individuals still get HIV annually. The same is true for TB, which claims 1.6 million lives each year (Singh et al., 2020). Around 20% of the more than 40,000 newborns with congenital CMV infection in the United States alone each year go on to have neurodevelopmental delays, lifelong hearing loss, or brain damage (Johnson et al., 2012). A further significant hazard to international health is the emergence and reemergence of viruses like Zika, Ebola, and most recently, SARS-CoV-2 virus. It is usually not feasible to combat epidemics using standard vaccination platforms since doing so demands the quick development of vaccines. The creation of innovative vaccination methods is of great interest because of these difficulties. Three potential platforms mRNA vaccines, vector-based vaccines, and materials science approaches to vaccination will be examined in this study.

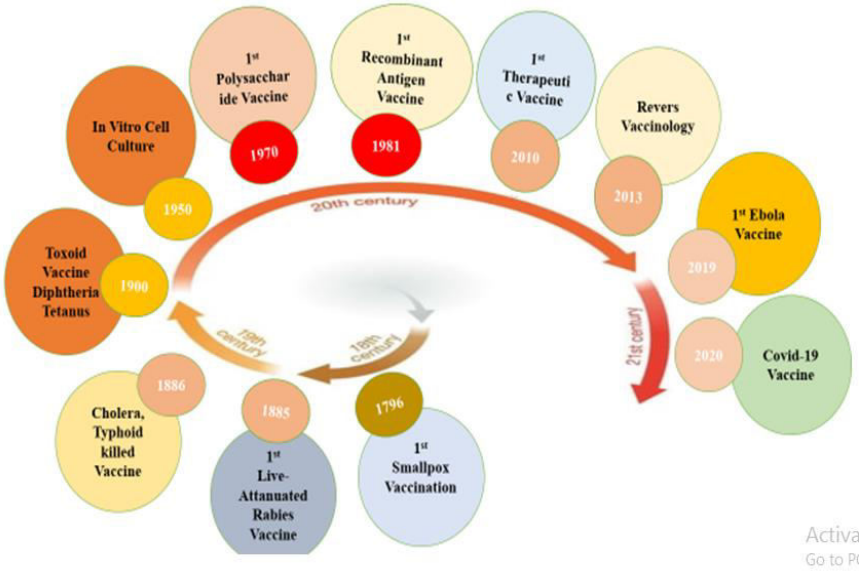


Fig 1: The History of Vaccine Development

This **figure 1** explains the history of the vaccine development. In 1796, Edward Jenner experimentally immunized a child from smallpox when he was inoculated with cowpox sores from the hand of a milkmaid. Later on, Louis Pasteur successfully developed a rabies live attenuated vaccine for humans. In 19th century Koch developed the germ theory of microbes that led to the discovery of 1st generation vaccine in the 20th century following the discovery of toxoids and toxins in attenuated form. In 1930, significant advancements in laboratory methods made it possible the cultivate virus within the chick embryo. In 2010 first therapeutic vaccine developed and in 2020 the development of Covid-19 vaccine.

VIRAL VACCINE STRATEGIES

In particular, since the national immunization programs were initially developed and well organized in the 1960s, immunizations have contributed to a revolution in public health. Many diseases that formerly constituted the bulk of pediatric deaths have almost disappeared in nations with elevated vaccination rates. The World Health Organization (WHO) calculated that the existing immunization programs greatly reduce the death rates of children under five worldwide, saving between two and three million lives yearly. To develop vaccines against antigenically variable pathogens such as human immunodeficiency viruses, a deeper understanding of the immunological bases of vaccinations is imperative. Additionally, outbreaks posing a threat to global health security, such as COVID-19 or Ebola, must be controlled. Finally, strategies for reviving immune responses in aging immune systems must be developed to protect the growing number of older adults from a variety of infectious illnesses (Pawelec, 2018). Antigens can induce protective immunity since they form the basis of vaccines that have been developed since the late 1980s against several viral diseases (Robbins et al., 1989).

Viral vector vaccines:
The potential use of viral vectors as immunization techniques has been discussed. Based on the virus's capacity to infect cells, it serves various functions.

The advantages of viral vectors may be summed up as follows:

(i) Very effective gene transduction

(ii) Very focused gene delivery to the targeted cells

(iii) Eliciting strong immune responses improved cellular immunities (Ura et al., 2014).

Due to their capacity to promote strong cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses and intracellular antigen production, Recombinant viral vectors may have therapeutic uses as they eventually result in the removal of virus-infected cells (E Gomez et al., 2011). Viral vector-based immunizations have the potential to be employed more shortly to combat serious diseases like HIV-1 and malaria. The techniques of viral integrations have been used in some of the vectors to achieve steady expressions of important genes. Existing anti-viral immunity is another barrier in the therapeutic viral vectors' application. This is the consequence of prior viral exposures creating neutralizing antibodies that lower vaccination efficacy. Most viral instances had their pathogenicity reduced or eliminated by genetic engineering (Srinivas, 2021). Furthermore, the bulk of viral vectors have replication defects. To replicate in the infected cells, for example, the target gene is swapped for both of the early encoding region sections (E1A and E1B) in adenovirus-based vectors (Team, 2016).

Recombinant DNA or protein vaccines:
This technique allows for the fusion of DNA from two or more sources. The insertion of a corresponding viral gene fragment into the virus or yeast cell gene has been used to develop vaccines against the human papillomavirus (HPV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), and influenza (Orenstein et al., 2022). When the altered virus or yeast cell grows, it produces influenza hemagglutinin, pure hepatitis B surface antigen, or HPV capsid protein (Rodrigues et al., 2015).

Nowadays, the vast bulk of vaccine research has been based on very pure recombinant proteins or pathogen subunits. One example of a traditional recombinant protein vaccine now being used on humans is the prevention of HBV infections, a chronic liver disease that affects people worldwide (Michel & Tiollais, 2010. The current immunizations are produced by yeast cells expressing the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBs-Ag). The accumulation of HBs Ag results in virus-like particles (VLP) that are very immunogenic, making the HBV vaccine an extremely effective vaccination (Adkins & Wagstaff, 1998). The filtration of culture supernatant may be aided by the secretion of antigen by the yeast expression system. Furthermore, yeast cells possess some eukaryotic cellular components that are in charge of post-translation protein modification, which may convert glycosylated proteins into other forms (Adkins & Wagstaff, 1998). Several firms received the technology for

producing HBV vaccinations, and as a consequence of increased competition, costs were lowered and the immunization became accessible to most poor countries.

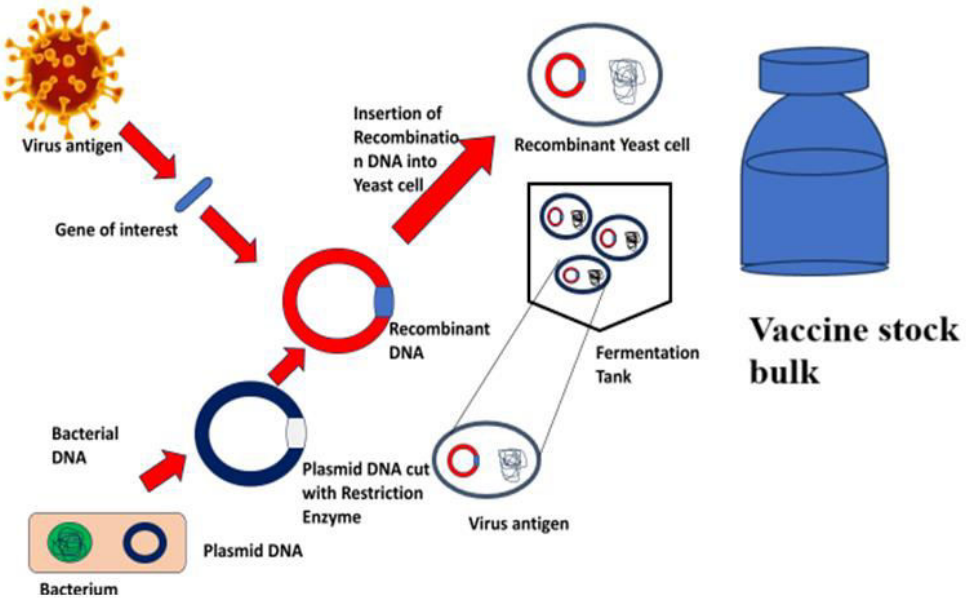


Fig 2: Production of rDNA vaccination

DNA vaccination

This method involves directly injecting naked DNA plasmid into the muscle as a vaccination system with the ability to elicit immune responses and protection following the challenge. It has been used to express multiple antigens from a variety of pathogens with encouraging results (Oliveira et al., 1999). In DNA vaccination, also referred to as genetic vaccination, a plasmid with the following components is used: (a) a strong promoter from the cytomegalovirus in general; (b) a replication origin of E. Coli for plasmid amplification; (c) multiple cloning sites where the gene that needs to be expressed could be inserted; and (d) antibiotic as a marker of selection. The idea behind a DNA vaccination technique is that host cells can directly manufacture an antigen in a way that is comparable to what occurs during viral infections. Consequently, class I MHC molecules may help the anti-gens to be transformed into proteins made in the cytoplasm and broken peptides that the immune system has been exposed to. Furthermore, class II MHC molecules may process the protein's export or secretion, which might lead to the development of certain anti-body reactions (Oliveira et al., 1999). DNA injections may be better than current vaccination techniques for several reasons, including these vaccines result in humoral and cell-mediated immunity, as opposed to attenuated immunizations, which provide an infection risk. Additionally, issues like inadequate target molecule folding or high purifying costs that arise with the production of recombinant protein vaccinations are avoided by using DNA vaccines (Dertzbaugh, 1998).

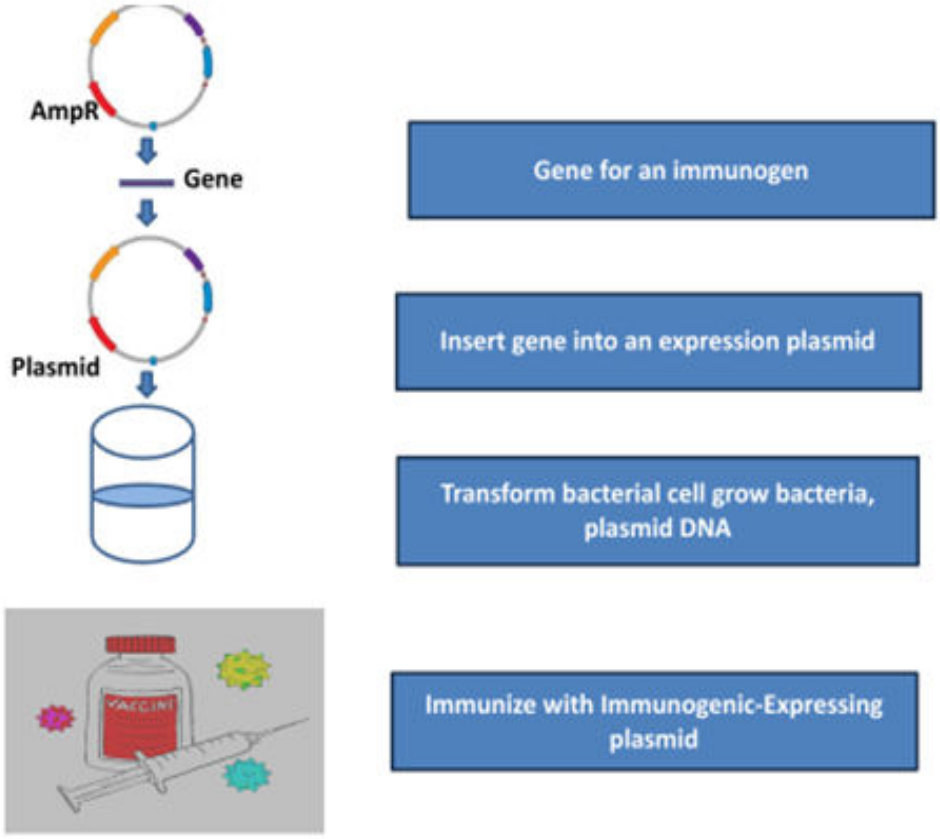


Fig 3: Method of preparing DNA vaccine

Vaccines against inactivated viruses:

These vaccines are usually produced by subjecting the virulent virus to physical or chemical agents, such as formalin or β-propiolactone, to remove its infectivity while preserving its immunogenicity. While the virus was initially derived from infected animal sources, such as mouse brains, the infected cell cultures provide more hygienic starting materials (Sanders et al., 2015). One of the main drawbacks is that high antigen doses are required to produce a strong enough anti-body reaction (Vetter et al., 2018). With such vaccinations, the course of treatment usually consists of two or three injections; however, booster doses may be required periodically to maintain the protective immunity (Clem, 2011). The physical or chemical processes used to remove the inactivated viral vaccine infectiousness may do significant harm to the antigenicity of the antigens, especially those that are necessary to trigger cell-mediated immune responses.

This causes a weaker mucosal and cell-mediated immune response. Formalin, the most commonly used inactivating agent, has been shown to cause irreversible changes in a variety of viral anti-gens; the reason for its ongoing use is the cautious

actions taken by regulatory bodies and vaccine manufacturers, as well as the paucity of studies on the topic (Schiøler et al., 2007). The advantages of using β-propiolactone in the production of certain human rabies vaccines include the preservation of proteins and the complete hydrolysis of the inactivating agent into non-toxic products (Perrin & Morgeaux, 1995). When dealing with enveloped viruses, non-ionic detergents such as poly-oxyline ethers may solubilize the virions and release glycol-protein probes along with other envelope proteins. Known as "split" vaccines, solubilized glycoproteins are semi-purified using differential centrifugation or ultra-filtration. This method is used to generate certain commonly used influenza vaccines (Burrell et al., 2016; Hanley, 2011).

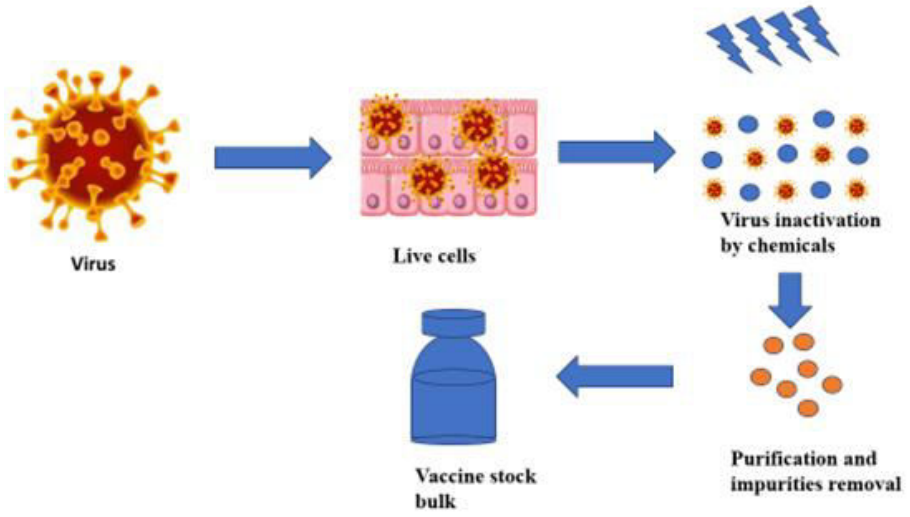


Fig 4: The method of manufacturing an inactivated vaccination

Live Vaccinations:

The live vaccination contains live attenuated germs that are still capable of reproducing inside the host. Because microorganisms are weakened, most of their ability to spread illness has been lost. Still, they maintain their immunogenic properties. Most of the time, live vaccinations exhibit significantly higher immunogenicity than inactivated vaccinations because natural infection is almost perfectly mimicked by evoking a wider range of immune responses, including cellular (such as CD8+ and CD4+ T cells) and humoral (such as B cells) (Hanley, 2011). Usually, a single vaccine treatment is sufficient to induce long-term, and in many situations, even lifelong, protection. However, the safety issues are the biggest disadvantage of such vaccinations: especially older live vaccinations such as the oral polio vaccine (OPV), which carries a risk of reverting to the natural virulence due to back-mutations in the attenuated organism and potentially causing symptomatic affections in the recipient or in the unprotected contact that are similar to infections by wild viruses e.g., vaccination-related paralytic poliomyelitis following the OPV (Pliaka et al., 2012).

Toxoids vaccine

Another range of vaccinations is called toxoids. Bacterial toxins (diphtheria and tetanus) are the source of toxoids. As well as requiring repeated dosage administration, toxoids are not very immunogenic (Delrue et al., 2012).

Mixture Vaccine

Vaccines conjugated to carbohydrates are more immunogenic and stable since they are produced by the conjugation of an antigenic protein (Pai et al., 2002). Immunization subunit Protease expression systems, like *E. coli*, are often used to make protein antigens for subunit vaccines, typically created using recombinant DNA technology. To boost their potency, they often need adjuvants and formulation.

Why Vaccinate, and Why Vaccines of the Next Generation?

Third-generation vaccinations, such as viral vector and mRNA vaccines, are generating a lot of attention after the introduction of second-generation vaccines. The benefits of third-generation vaccinations will be covered in this section. As illnesses emerged and reemerged throughout human history, several epidemics and pandemics occurred. Millions of lives have been lost and several nations' economies, politics, and social relationships have been impacted by the slow diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of the disease (Kagaayi & Serwadda, 2016). The main worry underlying the advantageous applications of these technologies genome editing, synthetic biology, Systems biology and, genetic engineering have the potential to be exploited in biological warfare and the threat of bioterrorism against humanity by producing novel infectious diseases (Ahteensuu, 2017). Thus, it is essential to embrace new platforms for the manufacturing of vaccines to be ready for any threat to public health and to resist both naturally occurring emerging illnesses and possible misuse of harmful viruses. This is due in part to rapid transportation and increased worldwide human communication (Tatem et al., 2006). The biggest threats to modern human survival are natural disasters, emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), and the abuse of viruses for illegal reasons (Fan & Moon, 2017). Modern human communities have expanded quite quickly in the last several decades. The complexity has increased and created an appropriate environment for newly discovered infections or the resurgence of previously eliminated pathogens. To regulate medical services and future facilities, such as genetic engineering laboratories, it is important to take into account the susceptibility of contemporary human life and communities to newly developing and reemerging viruses, as well as their potential to swiftly evolve into destructive outbreaks and pandemics (Jones & Yackley, 2018; Principi & Esposito, 2018).

Novel Viral Vaccine Targets

One of the best methods for avoiding infectious illnesses has traditionally been vaccination. While the spike protein is the main target of many of the existing vaccines, especially those against coronaviruses, researchers are also looking at other targets to improve efficacy and expand protection (Trovato et al., 2020).

Beyond the Spike Protein

The spike protein, a remarkable reasoning constituent of numerous viruses, particularly the coronaviruses, has been the center of effective studies in vaccine search. While such an approach makes use of spike protein immunization, it should be recognized that it does have an ideological limitation as more variants come. However, this strategy suggests making further vaccines targeting additional proteins, which would provide even more effective and long-lasting vaccines (Cunningham et al., 2016).

Membrane Proteins

Membrane proteins are the fundamental constituents of a virus's coat. They are important for the processes of a virus attaching, fusing, and entering the cells of the hosts. They help counteract the spike protein paradigm by neutralizing proteins binding to the virion essential for entry into cells (Cunningham et al., 2016).

Envelope Glycoproteins

The envelope glycoproteins such as gp120 and gp41 are also important for the infection of the target cells by HIV. Recent designs aimed at vaccines have focused on the requirement to generate antibodies that block these glycoproteins. For instance, a regimen designed to attack such proteins has been documented in the RV144 study to reduce the risk of HIV infection by 31% (Mdluli et al., 2020). Influenza: The influenza virus makes use of a membrane protein known as hemagglutinin (HA), which enhances the penetration of respiratory epithelial cells. Implemented vaccine strategies against conserved regions of HA including the stalk region have shown promise in the induction of broadly neutralizing antibodies (Neu et al., 2016).

Ion Channels

Ion channels encoded by viruses: Many viruses like coronaviruses possess ion channels in their structure which are crucial in some life cycle stages, for instance, viral uncoating and replication. For example, envelope protein E of SARS-CoV-2 also acts as an ion channel and is capable of enhancing viral virulence. Exploring the possibility of developing peptide-based vaccines or small molecules that inhibit these channels may lead to promising preventive measures (Yadav et al., 2021).

Non-Structural Proteins

Non-structural proteins (NSPs) are critical in immune evasion and viral replication among other essential activities. They are herded for vaccine development because they are not directly composed of the virus but contribute to its pathogenic cycle (Deering et al., 2014).

Viral Proteases

Nonstructural protein NS3/4A, a serine protease that digests viral polyprotein is present in the hepatitis C virus (HCV) (Gomes, 2017). They are already being used with inhibitors of the protease, although other approaches may also be sought for possible immunogens. T-cell responses triggered by NS3 immunization can aid in the management of HCV infection (Adugna, 2023).

RNA-Dependent RNA Polymerase (RdRp)

RdRp can be considered an object of vaccination against the Zika virus. Research suggests that when vaccinated a particular animal model, RdRp, the immune response is provoked enough to protect against the Zika virus (Munjal et al., 2017). The possibility of the impact of such vaccines can be enhanced by applying this technique to other flaviviruses (Scherwitzl et al., 2017).

Accessory Proteins

SARS-CoV-2: NSP1 and NSP3, two non-structural proteins, have a significant role in the immune evasion. Bearing these proteins in mind can lead to better development of T-cells' performance vaccines that would target them can supplement the immunological profile of the body against the virus (McGill et al., 2021).

Nucleic Acids

Viral entities including RNA and DNA are prototypes of nucleic acids representing the next distinct target for vaccine development. Attacking a virus' nucleic acid can help its capability to replicate and secrete its proteins and thus prevent an infection (Qin et al., 2021).

Antisense Oligonucleotides for HCV

Basic and clinical studies provided evidence for the targeted antisense oligonucleotides to form complexes with HCV RNA (Bajan & Hutvagner, 2020). These oligonucleotides reduce viral titers in infected individuals through the inhibition of viral protein synthesis. This strategy could be adjusted for other viral diseases like Zika and HIV-caused diseases (Krüger et al., 2021).

CRISPR-Cas Systems

Some of the viral genomic sequences described in this article can undergo targeted degradation and inactivation through the CRISPR-Cas system. HSV and HIV are among the viruses that targeted and distinguished and have been eliminated using CRISPR in laboratory tests (De Buhr & Lebbink, 2018).

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING IN VACCINE DESIGN

Implementing ML and AI in vaccine production shifts the approach to developing vaccines from conventional forms of production. These technologies have enabled scientists to analyze extremely large datasets, as well as predict the behaviors of viruses and adjuvants, at a speed and accuracy that were practically unimaginable only a few years ago (Sarmadi et al., 2023). Two important applications: for maximizing the effects of vaccination and predicting characteristics of virus mutations and focusing on antigens.

USING AI TO PREDICT VIRAL MUTATIONS AND ANTIGENIC SITES

Predicting Viral Mutations

Certainly, fast mutating viruses are a known fact, and RNA viruses, in particular, are likely to evolve immune-evasive mutants. To address such a contingency, AI systems

can analyze genetic sequences. This capability assists the researchers protect themselves from new viral threats (Agrebi & Larbi, 2020).

APPLICATIONS

Next-Generation Sequencing (NGS)

Using NGS data AI systems have been found to be capable of identifying patterns of mutations in viral genomes and call attention to areas within common change. For such circumstances, AI has been used to examine sequence data and predict which changes are likely to affect transmissibility or vaccine protection (Agrebi & Larbi, 2020).

Genomic Surveillance

Some machine learning-based tools that might perform real-time analysis to forecast mutational changes are forecast. For public health programs to be effective, it must be able to shift from one vaccination formulation to another as soon as possible (Mohamed et al., 2022).

Identifying Antigenic Sites

A vaccine has to be able to recognize specific constituents of the virus to call a potent immune response. AI can assist with this approach on possible antigenic sites based on the evaluation of protein sequences and structural characteristics (Guarra & Colombo, 2023).

APPLICATIONS

a) Structural Bioinformatics:

Dedication to improving protein structure prediction at high levels of accuracy is owed to AI systems such as Alpha Fold (Chen et al., 2024). Through structural analysis, investigators can help to design vaccines and locate fragments of viral proteins that should act as immunogenic determinants of the viral proteins.

b) Epitope Prediction:

The string and pattern recognition learning model concerning the established immunological reactions can predict T-cell receptacles and B-cell receptacles or epitopes (Bukhari et al., 2022). For example, the Immune Epitope Database (IEDB) uses machine learning techniques to identify potential Epitopes that need to be validated through experimental analysis (Rawal et al., 2021).

OPTIMIZATION OF VACCINE EFFICACY THROUGH MACHINE LEARNING MODELS

Enhancing Vaccine Formulation

There is a belief that machine learning can improve the vaccination compositions by predicting the interactions of interconnected parts within the immune system. Such a capacity to predict outcomes might lead to less toxic, and more efficacious immunizations (Russo et al., 2020).

APPLICATIONS

Adjuvant Selection:
AI is capable of deciding which adjuvant combinations would generate the best immune responses based on the information data regarding multiple adjuvants (Russo et al., 2020). Molecular engineering in the examples includes the discovery of the best adjuvant combinations through machine learning topics in the case of mRNA vaccines, making the vaccinations more effective (Nandi et al., 2024).

Dosage Optimization:
Clinical trial information may be further fed to a machine-learning algorithm to determine the right dosage schedules (Gutowski et al., 2023). In doing so, this study provides one of the stronger assurances that vaccinations provide the right amount of immunological activity without producing undesired side effects.

Predictive Modeling for Vaccine Response
Using artificial intelligence, the researchers are likely to develop models that model the immune system's response to a particular formulation of a vaccine. These models can be employed in Clinical trial design and vaccine development (Thomas et. al., 2022).

Immune Response Prediction:
From this, it will be possible to predict the effects of individual genetic differences on immunity elicited by the vaccine through machine learning (De Neuter, 2019). From the analysis of different population groups, it is possible to design effective vaccinations obtaining genetic information, as needed.

Simulating Vaccine Impact
AI can mimic how immunization programs will influence population health and help decision-makers make the right decision. For instance, models can be used to estimate the rates of endemic diseases when vaccinated, or not, and guide why and where resources should be targeted next (Baclic et al., 2020).

Reverse vaccinology
A novel strategy in vaccine production, reverse vaccinology has transformed search for potent vaccine candidates to fight bacteria resistant to antibiotics. The creation of vaccines has historically depended on growing a pathogen and then inactivating or weakening it in order to elicit an immune response. However, reverse vaccinology employs a different approach by identifying possible vaccine targets through the use of bioinformatics and computational study of pathogen genomes. Finding certain protein elements, or epitopes, in pathogen genomes that are most likely to elicit strong immune responses is the main goal of this novel approach. The creation of multi-epitope-based vaccinations is made possible by researchers' ability to anticipate and choose these epitopes by examining the pathogen's genetic material (Enayatkhani et al., 2021). This method works well to increase the efficacy of vaccinations created to protect against a wide variety of quickly changing antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Additionally, reverse vaccinology enables a quicker and more targeted vaccine

development process. The reverse vaccinology technique presents encouraging opportunities in the search for potent vaccinations against antibiotic-resistant bacteria, since antibiotic resistance continues to be a serious danger to world health. In the search of potent vaccinations against microorganisms resistant to antibiotics, the reverse vaccinology technique presents encouraging opportunities (Tobuse, Ang, & Yeong, 2022).

CONCLUSION

As viruses continue to evolve and pose new challenges to public health, exploring alternative vaccine targets beyond the spike protein is essential. Membrane proteins, non-structural proteins, and nucleic acids offer promising avenues for developing effective vaccines against a wide array of viral infections. By leveraging advanced technologies and innovative approaches, researchers can create vaccines that not only provide broader protection but also improve our ability to respond to emerging viral threats. The journey towards these novel vaccine targets will require collaboration across disciplines, sustained funding, and a commitment to addressing the complexities of viral immunology and vaccine development. Through these efforts, we can enhance our preparedness for future pandemics and protect global health more effectively.

REFERENCES

- Adkins, J. C., & Wagstaff, A. J. (1998). Recombinant hepatitis B vaccine: a review of its immunogenicity and protective efficacy against hepatitis B. *BioDrugs*, *10*(2), 137-158.
- Adugna, A. (2023). Therapeutic strategies and promising vaccine for hepatitis C virus infection. *Immunity, Inflammation and Disease*, *11*(8), e977.
- Agrebi, S., & Larbi, A. (2020). Use of artificial intelligence in infectious diseases. In *Artificial intelligence in precision health* (pp. 415-438). Elsevier.
- Ahteensuu, M. (2017). Synthetic biology, genome editing, and the risk of bioterrorism. *Science and engineering ethics*, *23*(6), 1541-1561.
- Baclic, O., Tunis, M., Young, K., Doan, C., Swerdfeger, H., & Schonfeld, J. (2020). Artificial intelligence in public health: Challenges and opportunities for public health made possible by advances in natural language processing. *Canada Communicable Disease Report*, *46*(6), 161.
- Bajan, S., & Hutvagner, G. (2020). RNA-based therapeutics: from antisense oligonucleotides to miRNAs. *Cells*, *9*(1), 137.
- Bukhari, S. N. H., Jain, A., Haq, E., Mehbodniya, A., & Webber, J. (2022). Machine learning techniques for the prediction of B-cell and T-cell epitopes as potential vaccine targets with a specific focus on SARS-CoV-2 pathogen: A review. *Pathogens*, *11*(2), 146.

- Burrell, C. J., Howard, C. R., & Murphy, F. A. (2016). *Fenner and White's medical virology*. Academic Press.
- Chen, L., Li, Q., Nasif, K. F. A., Xie, Y., Deng, B., Niu, S., Pouriyeh, S., Dai, Z., Chen, J., & Xie, C. Y. (2024). AI-Driven Deep Learning Techniques in Protein Structure Prediction. *International journal of molecular sciences*, *25*(15), 8426.
- Clem, A. S. (2011). Fundamentals of vaccine immunology. *Journal of global infectious diseases*, *3*(1), 73-78.
- Cunningham, A. L., Garçon, N., Leo, O., Friedland, L. R., Strugnell, R., Laupèze, B., Doherty, M., & Stern, P. (2016). Vaccine development: From concept to early clinical testing. *Vaccine*, *34*(52), 6655-6664.
- De Buhr, H., & Lebbink, R. J. (2018). Harnessing CRISPR to combat human viral infections. *Current opinion in immunology*, *54*, 123-129.
- De Neuter, N. (2019). *Machine learning for decision support in adaptive immunology* University of Antwerp].
- Deering, R. P., Kommareddy, S., Ulmer, J. B., Brito, L. A., & Geall, A. J. (2014). Nucleic acid vaccines: prospects for non-viral delivery of mRNA vaccines. *Expert opinion on drug delivery*, *11*(6), 885-899.
- Delany, I., Rappuoli, R., & De Gregorio, E. (2014). Vaccines for the 21st century. *EMBO molecular medicine*, *6*(6), 708-720.
- Delrue, I., Verzele, D., Madder, A., & Nauwynck, H. J. (2012). Inactivated virus vaccines from chemistry to prophylaxis: merits, risks and challenges. *Expert review of vaccines*, *11*(6), 695-719.
- Denis, M., Knezevic, I., Wilde, H., Hemachudha, T., Briggs, D., & Knopf, L. (2019). An overview of the immunogenicity and effectiveness of current human rabies vaccines administered by intradermal route. *Vaccine*, *37*, A99-A106.
- Dertzbaugh, M. T. (1998). Genetically engineered vaccines: an overview. *Plasmid*, *39*(2), 100-113.
- E Gomez, C., L Najera, J., Krupa, M., Perdiguero, B., & Esteban, M. (2011). MVA and NYVAC as vaccines against emergent infectious diseases and cancer. *Current gene therapy*, *11*(3), 189-217.
- Elmgren, L., Li, X., Wilson, C., Ball, R., Wang, J., Cichutek, K., Pfleiderer, M., Kato, A., Cavaleri, M., & Southern, J. (2013). A global regulatory science agenda for vaccines. *Vaccine*, *31*, B163-B175.
- Eto, A., Saito, T., Yokote, H., Kurane, I., & Kanatani, Y. (2015). Recent advances in the study of live attenuated cell-cultured smallpox vaccine LC16m8. *Vaccine*, *33*(45), 6106-6111.

- Fan, Y., & Moon, J. J. (2017). Particulate delivery systems for vaccination against bioterrorism agents and emerging infectious pathogens. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Nanomedicine and Nanobiotechnology*, *9*(1), e1403.
- Gomes, R. (2017). *Exploring genetic and physical aspects of Hepatitis C Virus non-structural proteins involved in the formation of the replication complex* University of Southampton].
- Gothefors, L. (2008). The impact of vaccines in low-and high-income countries. *Annales Nestlé (English ed.)*, *66*(2), 55-69.
- Greenwood, B. (2014). The contribution of vaccination to global health: past, present and future. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, *369*(1645), 20130433.
- Guarra, F., & Colombo, G. (2023). Computational Methods in Immunology and Vaccinology: Design and Development of Antibodies and Immunogens. *Journal of Chemical Theory and Computation*, *19*(16), 5315-5333.
- Gupta, E., Gupta, S. R., & Niraj, R. R. K. (2020). Identification of drug and vaccine target in Mycobacterium leprae: A reverse vaccinology approach. *International journal of peptide research and therapeutics*, *26*, 1313-1326.
- Gutowski, T., Antkiewicz, R., & Szlufik, S. (2023). Machine learning with optimization to create medicine intake schedules for Parkinson's disease patients. *PloS one*, *18*(10), e0293123.
- Haber, P., Moro, P. L., Ng, C., Dores, G. M., Perez-Vilar, S., Marquez, P. L., & Cano, M. (2020). Safety review of tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid, acellular pertussis vaccines (Tdap) in adults aged≥ 65 years, Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS), United States, September 2010–December 2018. *Vaccine*, *38*(6), 1476-1480.
- Hanley, K. A. (2011). The double-edged sword: How evolution can make or break a live-attenuated virus vaccine. *Evolution: Education and Outreach*, *4*, 635-643.
- Jain, N. K., Sahni, N., Kumru, O. S., Joshi, S. B., Volkin, D. B., & Middaugh, C. R. (2015). Formulation and stabilization of recombinant protein based virus-like particle vaccines. *Advanced drug delivery reviews*, *93*, 42-55.
- Johnson, J., Anderson, B., & Pass, R. F. (2012). Prevention of maternal and congenital cytomegalovirus infection. *Clinical obstetrics and gynecology*, *55*(2), 521-530.
- Jones, T. F., & Yackley, J. (2018). Foodborne disease outbreaks in the United States: a historical overview. *Foodborne Pathogens and Disease*, *15*(1), 11-15.
- Kagaayi, J., & Serwadda, D. (2016). The history of the HIV/AIDS epidemic in Africa. *Current HIV/Aids Reports*, *13*, 187-193.

- Kreiter, S., Vormehr, M., Van de Roemer, N., Diken, M., Löwer, M., Diekmann, J., Boegel, S., Schrörs, B., Vascotto, F., & Castle, J. C. (2015). Mutant MHC class II epitopes drive therapeutic immune responses to cancer. *Nature*, *520*(7549), 692-696.
- Krüger, A., de Jesus Santos, A. P., de Sá, V., Ulrich, H., & Wrenger, C. (2021). Aptamer applications in emerging viral diseases. *Pharmaceuticals*, *14*(7), 622.
- Liu, M. A., Wahren, B., & Hedestam, G. B. K. (2006). DNA vaccines: recent developments and future possibilities. *Human gene therapy*, *17*(11), 1051-1061.
- Logunov, D. Y., Dolzhikova, I. V., & Shcheblyakov, D. V. (2021). Data discrepancies and substandard reporting of interim data of Sputnik V phase 3 trial–Authors' reply. *Lancet (London, England)*, *397*(10288), 1883.
- Lohiniva, A.-L., Nurzhynska, A., Mueed, A., Ali, A., Ahmed, K., Ayiku, P., Amo-Adjei, J., Kawakatsu, Y., Shetye, M., & Greiner, K. (2023). Strengthening polio vaccine demand in Ghana: Understanding the factors influencing uptake of the vaccine and the effectiveness of different message frames. *PloS one*, *18*(2), e0279809.
- McGill, A. R., Khalil, R., Dutta, R., Green, R., Howell, M., Mohapatra, S., & Mohapatra, S. S. (2021). SARS–CoV-2 immuno-pathogenesis and potential for diverse vaccines and therapies: opportunities and challenges. *Infectious Disease Reports*, *13*(1).
- Mdluli, T., Jian, N., Slike, B., Paquin-Proulx, D., Donofrio, G., Alrubayyi, A., Gift, S., Grande, R., Bryson, M., & Lee, A. (2020). RV144 HIV-1 vaccination impacts post-infection antibody responses. *PLoS pathogens*, *16*(12), e1009101.
- Michel, M.-L., & Tiollais, P. (2010). Hepatitis B vaccines: protective efficacy and therapeutic potential. *Pathologie Biologie*, *58*(4), 288-295.
- Mohamed, T., Sayed, S., Salah, A., & Houssein, E. H. (2022). Deep Neural Network for Virus Mutation Prediction: A Comprehensive Review. *Integrating Meta-Heuristics and Machine Learning for Real-World Optimization Problems*, 225-255.
- Morens, D. M., Taubenberger, J. K., & Fauci, A. S. (2023). Rethinking next-generation vaccines for coronaviruses, influenzaviruses, and other respiratory viruses. *Cell host & microbe*, *31*(1), 146-157.
- Moyle, P. M., & Toth, I. (2013). Modern subunit vaccines: development, components, and research opportunities. *ChemMedChem*, *8*(3), 360-376.
- Munjal, A., Khandia, R., Dhama, K., Sachan, S., Karthik, K., Tiwari, R., Malik, Y. S., Kumar, D., Singh, R. K., & Iqbal, H. M. (2017). Advances in developing therapies to combat Zika virus: current knowledge and future perspectives. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, *8*, 1469.

- Nandi, A., Dey, Y. N., Maity, D., & Das, A. (2024). Vaccine development strategies and impact. In *Diagnosis and Analysis of COVID-19 Using Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning-based Techniques* (pp. 149-180). Elsevier.
- Neu, K. E., Dunand, C. J. H., & Wilson, P. C. (2016). Heads, stalks and everything else: how can antibodies eradicate influenza as a human disease? *Current opinion in immunology*, *42*, 48-55.
- Oliveira, S., Rosinha, G., De-Brito, C., Fonseca, C., Afonso, R., Costa, M., Goes, A., Rech, E., & Azevedo, V. (1999). Immunological properties of gene vaccines delivered by different routes. *Brazilian journal of medical and biological research*, *32*, 207-214.
- Orenstein, W. A., & Ahmed, R. (2017). Simply put: Vaccination saves lives. In (Vol. 114, pp. 4031-4033): National Acad Sciences.
- Orenstein, W. A., Offit, P. A., Edwards, K. M., & Plotkin, S. A. (2022). *Plotkin's Vaccines, E-Book*. Elsevier Health Sciences.
- Oyarzun, P., Ellis, J. J., Gonzalez-Galarza, F. F., Jones, A. R., Middleton, D., Boden, M., & Kobe, B. (2015). A bioinformatics tool for epitope-based vaccine design that accounts for human ethnic diversity: application to emerging infectious diseases. *Vaccine*, *33*(10), 1267-1273.
- Pai, V. B., Heyneman, C. A., & Erramouspe, J. (2002). Conjugated heptavalent pneumococcal vaccine. *Annals of Pharmacotherapy*, *36*(9), 1403-1413.
- Pandey, A., & Galvani, A. P. (2019). The global burden of HIV and prospects for control. *The Lancet HIV*, *6*(12), e809-e811.
- Pawelec, G. (2018). Age and immunity: what is "immunosenescence"? *Experimental gerontology*, *105*, 4-9.
- Perrin, P., & Morgeaux, S. (1995). Inactivation of DNA by β-propiolactone. *Biologicals*, *23*(3), 207-211.
- Pliaka, V., Kyriakopoulou, Z., & Markoulatos, P. (2012). Risks associated with the use of live-attenuated vaccine poliovirus strains and the strategies for control and eradication of paralytic poliomyelitis. *Expert review of vaccines*, *11*(5), 609-628.
- Powell, K. (2004). DNA vaccines—back in the saddle again? *Nature biotechnology*, *22*(7), 799.
- Principi, N., & Esposito, S. (2018). Mumps outbreaks: A problem in need of solutions. *Journal of Infection*, *76*(6), 503-506.
- Purcell, A. W., McCluskey, J., & Rossjohn, J. (2007). More than one reason to rethink the use of peptides in vaccine design. *Nature reviews Drug discovery*, *6*(5), 404-414.

- Qin, F., Xia, F., Chen, H., Cui, B., Feng, Y., Zhang, P., Chen, J., & Luo, M. (2021). A guide to nucleic acid vaccines in the prevention and treatment of infectious diseases and cancers: from basic principles to current applications. *Frontiers in cell and developmental biology*, *9*, 633776.
- Rawal, K., Sinha, R., Abbasi, B. A., Chaudhary, A., Nath, S. K., Kumari, P., Preeti, P., Saraf, D., Singh, S., & Mishra, K. (2021). Identification of vaccine targets in pathogens and design of a vaccine using computational approaches. *Scientific Reports*, *11*(1), 17626.
- Robbins, J., Schneerson, R., Szu, S., Fattom, A., Yang, Y., Lagergard, T., Chu, C., & Sørensen, U. (1989). Prevention of invasive bacterial diseases by immunization with polysaccharide-protein conjugates. New Strategies for Oral Immunization: International Symposium at the University of Alabama at Birmingham and Molecular Engineering Associates, Inc. Birmingham, AL, USA, March 21–22, 1988,
- Rodrigues, A. F., Soares, H. R., Guerreiro, M. R., Alves, P. M., & Coroadinha, A. S. (2015). Viral vaccines and their manufacturing cell substrates: New trends and designs in modern vaccinology. *Biotechnology journal*, *10*(9), 1329-1344.
- Russo, G., Reche, P., Pennisi, M., & Pappalardo, F. (2020). The combination of artificial intelligence and systems biology for intelligent vaccine design. *Expert Opinion on Drug Discovery*, *15*(11), 1267-1281.
- Sanders, B., Koldijk, M., & Schuitemaker, H. (2015). Inactivated viral vaccines. *Vaccine analysis: strategies, principles, and control*, 45-80.
- Sarmadi, A., Hassanzadeganroudsari, M., & Soltani, M. (2023). Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning Applications in Vaccine Development. *Bioinformatics Tools for Pharmaceutical Drug Product Development*, 233-253.
- Scherwitzl, I., Mongkolsapaja, J., & Screaton, G. (2017). Recent advances in human flavivirus vaccines. *Current Opinion in Virology*, *23*, 95-101.
- Schiøler, K. L., Samuel, M., & Wai, K. L. (2007). Vaccines for preventing Japanese encephalitis. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*(3).
- Sette, A., & Rappuoli, R. (2010). Reverse vaccinology: developing vaccines in the era of genomics. *Immunity*, *33*(4), 530-541.
- Singh, R., Dwivedi, S. P., Gaharwar, U. S., Meena, R., Rajamani, P., & Prasad, T. (2020). Recent updates on drug resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. *Journal of applied microbiology*, *128*(6), 1547-1567.
- Srinivas, K. P. (2021). Recent developments in vaccines strategies against human viral pathogens. *Recent Developments in Applied Microbiology and Biochemistry*, 3-12.

- Tatem, A. J., Rogers, D. J., & Hay, S. I. (2006). Global transport networks and infectious disease spread. *Advances in parasitology*, *62*, 293-343.
- Team, W. E. R. (2016). After Ebola in West Africa—unpredictable risks, preventable epidemics. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *375*(6), 587-596.
- Thomas, S., Abraham, A., Baldwin, J., Piplani, S., & Petrovsky, N. (2022). Artificial intelligence in vaccine and drug design. *Vaccine Design: Methods and Protocols, Volume 1. Vaccines for Human Diseases*, 131-146.
- Trovato, M., Sartorius, R., D'Apice, L., Manco, R., & De Berardinis, P. (2020). Viral emerging diseases: challenges in developing vaccination strategies. *Frontiers in immunology*, *11*, 2130.
- Ura, T., Okuda, K., & Shimada, M. (2014). Developments in viral vector-based vaccines. *Vaccines*, *2*(3), 624-641.
- Vetter, V., Denizer, G., Friedland, L. R., Krishnan, J., & Shapiro, M. (2018). Understanding modern-day vaccines: what you need to know. *Annals of Medicine*, *50*(2), 110-120.
- Yadav, A., Pandey, D., & Ashraf, G. M. (2021). Peptide based therapy for neurological disorders. *Current Protein and Peptide Science*, *22*(9), 656-665.
- Enayatkhani, M., Hasaniazad, M., Faezi, S., Gouklani, H., Davoodian, P., Ahmadi, N., . . . Ahmadi, K. (2021). Reverse vaccinology approach to design a novel multi-epitope vaccine candidate against COVID-19: an in silico study. *Journal of Biomolecular Structure and Dynamics, 39*(8), 2857-2872.
- Tobuse, A. J., Ang, C. W., & Yeong, K. Y. (2022). Modern vaccine development via reverse vaccinology to combat antimicrobial resistance. *Life Sciences, 302*, 120660.

CHAPTER- 8

DIVERSITY OF VIRAL RECEPTORS: ROLE IN SPECIES SPECIFICITY

Waqas Ashraf[1*], Muhammad Shan[1*], Shafeeq Ur Rehman[1], Muhammad Shahid Mehmood and Muhammad Shaheryar Munir

[1]Department of Microbiology, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan [*] Both authors contributed equally

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526755

ABSTRACT

To enter the host cell, viruses adhere to specific receptors on the host cell surface, and these specificities of attachment essentially define the host range. Usually, these receptors are proteins, glycoproteins, or other molecules that are located on the membrane of specific target cells. The binding and or recognition between viral surface protein and host receptor is not constant. Based on the phylogenetic tree, viruses change continuously and a change in the receptor binding protein can enable the virus to use a new receptor or cross to a new species. In this chapter, different modes of virus-cell interactions are described concerning molecular properties of viral and cellular receptors and their implication in the specificity of viral infection. This receptor-virus interaction is quite specific, determining the number of species a virus can affect, or species specificity or host range. With more details about specific viral receptors and host organisms, this study also explores species level variability, the role of genetic differences, and the determination of how receptor and host immune factors can affect viral progressions or limitations. Taking cross-sectional lessons from zoonotic and non-zoonotic cases, it further draws out the evolutionary interactions between viruses and the hosts.

Keywords: Virus-host, Virus-receptors, Cell adhesion molecules, ACE2, Sialic acid, CD4, CXCR4, CCR5, and CXCR4

INTRODUCTION

Viral nuclear material, whether DNA or RNA, is comparatively shielded by a protective cytosolic environment of an infected cell and cellular membranes; however, the cell-free stage that viral genomes must pass through to reach new host cells is dangerous. Viruses defend themselves from these hazards by encasing their nucleic acid inside membrane or protein-covered particles (Oswald et al., 2023). For a virus, this packaging presents a thermodynamic conundrum: the particles need to be both suitably labile to guarantee that the contents are released when they come into contact with suitable target cells and sufficient to shield the genome from surrounding immunological assaults. Therefore, upon entrance, some molecular and/or cellular environmental signals may unleash viruses, that are built as metastable molecular assemblages that need little energy input (Marsh & Helenius, 2006; Polsky, 2022). The method of unlocking is mostly dependent on receptors, which may either

immediately cause the chemical changes that result in fusion/penetration or drive virions to particular cellular areas where signals from the surroundings cause fusion/penetration and infection. As a result, the essential barrier to infection, the plasma membrane or endosome membrane, is often the limiting cellular membrane over which viral genomes are transmitted. This process is closely linked to the unlocking process. Throughout the examination, receptor-mediated signaling will become clear as a crucial element of viral entry that may function at many phases, as well as insights into how viruses have evolved from their basic entrance motifs (Fierro et al., 2022).

Receptor sites on a virus capsid or membrane glycoproteins on a virus facilitate the first interactions between a virus and a host cell (Marsh & Helenius, 2006; Noman et al., 2021), attach to glycoprotein or glycolipid binding site, bind on specific target cells, such as heparan sulfate proteoglycans (de Haan et al., 2005; Hayashida et al., 2022; Marketa Vlasak et al., 2005). Human rhinovirus type 89 variants use heparan sulfate proteoglycan for cell attachment (Markete Vlasak et al., 2005). These early contacts, which are often electrostatic and may not be very specific, are essentially meant to provide a virus with a first foothold from which it may subsequently attract certain receptors that initiate the processes leading to the entrance. The molecules on the cell surface known as receptors perform tasks necessary for a successful infection (Pantaleo et al., 2022). Simple situations allow receptors to effectively bind viral endocytosis; otherwise, receptors can be used to drive penetration/fusion at the target cell surface or make important changes in viral surface proteins, or they can play the role of triggering particular signaling channels that support viral entry.

VIRAL RECEPTORS: MECHANISM AND FUNCTION

An essential first stage in the life cycle of an infectious virus is detection and attachment to cellular receptors, which is crucial for controlling tissue tropism, host range, and viral pathogenicity (Grove & Marsh, 2011). As obligatory intracellular pathogens, viruses depend on the functions of host cells to complete their infectious life cycle and eventually propagate to other host cells. Hence, viruses employ sophisticated techniques to synchronize their binding to one or more receptors to cross the plasma membrane barrier and gain entry to the essential host cell components. Most viruses have been observed to use SA receptors for initial host cell attachment. In other cases, these attachments use another step in the virus life cycle, including the initiation of the signaling process or virus internalization (Neu et al., 2011; Stehle & Khan, 2014). SA receptors are more diverse in their shape due to the mechanism of hydroxyl group methylation, and acetylation exists in 50 different shapes shown in Fig 1. The 5-N-acetyl neuraminic acid (Neu5Ac), in which the N-acetyl group replaces the 5-carbon position, is the most frequently occurring SA in men (Varki & Schauer, 2009). Changes in ganglioside expression may cause disease states such as Tay-Sachs disease, Guillain-Barré syndrome, lysosomal storage disorder, Alzheimer's disease, and infantile-onset epileptic syndrome because glycans like gangliosides are so essential to regular cellular functions (Altheide et al., 2006; Robert K et al., 2011). Many viruses carry out attachment, entrance, and signaling by

binding to one or more particular receptors (Grove & Marsh, 2011). One or more of the aforementioned tasks may be performed by a single viral receptor, or viruses can mediate each function by using different receptors, which adds even more specificity to tissue tropism. In other situations, the coordination of contacts between the virus and the receptor is required to facilitate certain activities, such as the initiation of signaling processes (Coyne & Bergelson, 2006; Grove & Marsh, 2011; O'Hara & Garcea, 2016).

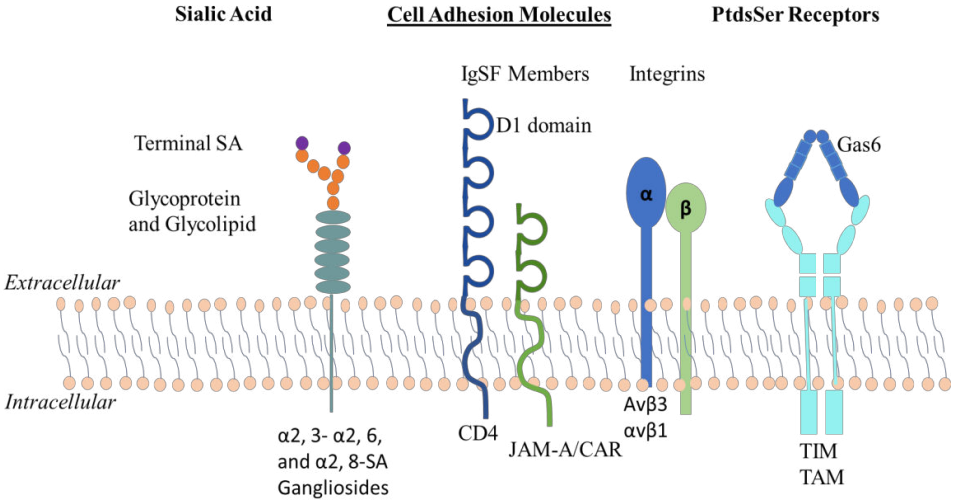


Fig. 1 Common viral receptors that mediate viral entry into the host cell

Host Specificity and Tissue Tropism

The capacity of a virus to preferentially infect cells in certain organs is termed tropism (either cell or organ tropism), and it depends on both viral and host factors. Tropism may be classified as either cellular or organ tropism. Contact is required between viral attachment proteins and suitable cellular receptors at the cellular level. Although such interactions are often examined in cultured cells, the scenario is far more complex in live beings. Certain viruses need numerous cellular receptors, or co-receptors, and also use distinct receptors on various cell types (McFadden et al., 2009). The cell attachment glycoprotein of the human immunodeficiency virus may bind several receptors, including CD4, CXCR4, and CCR5, facilitating the infection of T cells and macrophages (Calado et al., 2023; Singer et al., 2001). The expression of receptors may be dynamic; for example, experiments have shown that mice treated with neuraminidase exhibit considerable protection against intranasal influenza virus infection. This protection persists until the neuraminidase-sensitive receptors have been replenished. Typically, the receptors for a particular virus are located inside certain cell types present in designated organs, and only these cells may be infected (Krausgruber et al., 2020; Mothes et al., 2010). This is a crucial element that influences the pathogenesis of the disease caused by a certain virus, together with the virus's tissue and organ tropism.

Table 1: Virus receptors used as the virus entry point to the host cell

Sr.#	Family	Virus	Receptors*
1	*Picornaviridae*	poliovirus	PVR (CD155)—Ig family
2	*Picornaviridae*	Echovirus 1	α2β1 integrin VLA-2
3	*Retroviridae*	Human immunodeficiency virus	CXCR4, CD4, CCR5, CCR3, (heparan sulfate proteoglycan)
4	*Picornaviridae*	Human rhinovirus 14	ICAM-1 intercellular cell adhesion molecule-1)—Ig family
5	*Orthomyxoviridae*	Influenza C virus	9-O-acetylsialic acid
6	*Orthomyxoviridae*	influenza A virus	Sialic acid
7	*Paramyxoviridae*	Newcastle disease virus	Sialic acid
8	*Coronaviridae*	Transmissible gastroenteritis virus	Aminopeptidase N
9	*Coronaviridae*	Mouse hepatitis virus	CEA (carcinoembryonic antigen)—Ig family
10	*Picornaviridae*	Hepatitus A	HAVCR1
11	*Rhabdoviridae*	Rabies virus	nAchR
12	*Paramyxoviridae*	Nipah Virus	EphrinB3, Ephrin B2
13	*Picornaviridae*	Rhinovirus	ICAM-1

*(Casasnovas, 2013; Maclachlan & Dubovi, 2010).

Intracellular elements that exert their effects after virus attachment, such as viral enhancers, may also be essential for successful infection. The presence of crucial receptors is not the only factor that defines a cell's susceptibility to infection. Viral enhancers are short nucleotide sequences that are often repeated in tandem. These sequences may include motifs indicative of DNA-binding sites for various cellular or viral site-specific DNA-binding proteins (transcription factors) (Pathak, 2023). Viral enhancers are gene activators that boost the transcriptional effectiveness of viral or cellular genes (Zhu et al., 2016). Viral enhancers augment the binding of DNA-dependent RNA polymerase to promoters, hence accelerating the transcription process. Many transcription factors that regulate specific enhancer sequences in viruses are restricted to particular cells, tissues, or host species, thereby determining viral tropism and potentially serving as specialized virulence factors. Such enhancers are located inside the genomic DNA of HPV (Warburton et al., 2021). These enhancers are only active in keratinocytes, especially in the fraction responsible for HPV replication. Enhancer sequences have been found in the genomes of retroviruses and many herpesviruses, among other viruses (Hossain et al., 2024). In these genomes, enhancer regions seem to modify tropism by regulating the expression of viral genes in certain cell types.

Molecular Basis of Receptor Specificity

The molecular mechanism of receptor differentiation concerns the ability of receptors to interact with specific ligands (hormones, drugs, or neurotransmitters) and to modulate specific biological effects (und Halbach & Dermietzel, 2006).

Structural Biology of Viral Receptor Interactions

The concept of specificity is most profoundly anchored on host-SAR-CoV viral receptor specificity in terms of the overall structural conformation, molecular interactions, as well as receptor VSR interactions. The process by which viruses enter their host cells is a sequence that is commenced by viral proteins adhering to selected receptors on the host cell surface. This interaction is very selective, which allows the viruses to penetrate the target cells without considerable affection from the other types of cells. The strength and selectivity of the interactions depend mainly on the complex protein-protein interfaces involved in the interactions between viral surface proteins and host receptors.

The residues in the protein-protein contact sites where the viral surface proteins come in contact with their relevant receptors are essential in defining the specificity of viral entry. These interfaces are described by a wide range of interactions such as the hydrogen bonds, hydrophobic contacts, and electrostatic interactions that keep the complex of virus and receptor stable. Molecular and atomic analyses employing X-ray crystallography and recent cryo-electron microscopy have mapped out the specific location of amino residues in these interface regions. For instance, in HIV the envelope glycoprotein gp120 acts on T-cell receptors to form a complex which is a prerequisite for virus entry (Checkley et al., 2011; Klasse, 2012).

Viral glycoproteins are particularly critical in receptor recognition and subsequent virus infection of the host cell. These glycoproteins; many of which can be heavily glycosylated; play a major role in defining the tropism of the virus to the cell types that are susceptible to infection by the virus. What is particularly intriguing is the receptor binding domain (RBD), which is a fragment of these glycoproteins that binds with the host receptor. For example, in coronaviruses, the project has an RBD that can attach to the ACE2 receptor on the surface of a human cell (Yi et al., 2020). The high level of structural plasticity of these RBDs enables the hooking of different receptors from one host organism to another, making the efficiency of their spread high (Mudgal, 2014). In addition, the change of glycoproteins may affect the receptor-binding property, that can result in immune escape ability and enhanced transmission rates. Therefore, elucidation of the structural complexity of these viral glycoproteins and their interaction with the respective receptors is central not only for understanding viral diseases but also for the development of antiviral drugs and vaccines.

Table 2: Diversity of host receptors used by Viruses

Virus name	Family	Receptor Name	Host	Nature of Receptor
HIV	*Retroviridae*	CD4, CCR5/CXCR4	Human	Protein
Avian leukosis/ sarcoma virus	*Retroviridae*	Tva receptor	Avian	Protein
Murine leukemia virus E	*Retroviridae*	mCAT1 receptor	Murine	Protein
Bovine leukemia virus	*Retroviridae*	CAT1/SLC7A 1	Bovine	Protein
Poliovirus	*Picornaviridae*	Poliovirus Receptor (PVR)	Human	Protein
Coxsackievirus B	*Picornaviridae*	CAR,DAF	Human	Protein
Human rhinovirus 14	*Picornaviridae*	ICAM-1	Human	Protein
Echovirus 1	*Picornaviridae*	Integrin α2β1	Human	Protein
FMD- wild-type virus	*Picornaviridae*	Integrin αvβ3	Bovine, swine, etc.	Protein
FMD- cell culture adapted virus	*Picornaviridae*	Integrins, haparan sulfate	Various	Protein
Feline calicivirus	*Caliciviridae*	JAM-A	Feline	Protein
Adenovirus 2	*Adenovirridae*	CAR	Human	Protein
Adenoviruses	*Adenovirridae*	CAR	Human, other animals	Protein
Herpes simplex virus 1	*Herpesviridae*	CD46	Human	Protein
Human cytomegalovirus 1	*Herpesviridae*	PDGFRα	Human	Protein
Epstein-Barr virus	*Herpesviridae*	CD21	Human	Protein
Pseudorabies virus	*Herpesviridae*	CD21	Swine, other animals	Protein
Feline	*Parvoviridae*	Canine	Feline	Protein

parvovirus		Parvovirus Receptor (CPVR)		
Adeno-associated virus 5	*Parvoviridae*	α-(2,3)-linked Sialic acid receptor	Human	Protein
Influenza A virus	*Orthomyxoviridae*	Hemagglutinin (HA)	Human, avian, swine, etc.	Protein
Influenza C virus	*Orthomyxoviridae*	Hemagglutinin (HA)	Human	Protein
Canine distemper virus	*Paramyxoviridae*	CD150	Canine	Protein
New castle disease virus	*Paramyxoviridae*	sialic acid	Avian	Protein
Bovine respiratory syncytial virus	*Paramyxoviridae*	Nucleolin	Bovine	Protein
Hendra virus	*Paramyxoviridae*	Ephrin-B2	Various	Protein
Rotavirus	*Reoviridae*	Various integrins, sialic acid	Human, other animals	Protein
Reovirus	*Reoviridae*	Junctional Adhesion Molecule A (JAM-A)	Human, other animals	Protein
Mouse hepatitis virus	*Coronaviridae*	ACE2	Murine	Protein
Transmissible gastroenteritis virus	*Coronaviridae*	APN	Swine	Protein
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus	*Arenaviridae*	Alpha-dystroglycan	Human, other animals	Protein
Dengue virus	*Flaviviridae*	DC-SIGN, Mannose Receptor	Human	Protein

Co-receptors and Their Role in Specificity

Co-receptors are thus important players in the differentiation of viral tropism with primary receptors showing dependence on co-receptors for their function (Eslami et al., 2022). These additional proteins facilitate the binding and fusion processes and positively regulate tropism and pathogenicity of numerous viruses.

In the case of HIV, the virus primarily interacts with CD4 receptors but needs co-receptors; CCR5 or CXCR4, to infect target cells (Yandrapally et al., 2021). Between these two co-receptors, the virus has to decide a suitable one for its interaction which depends upon the particular phase of infection (Hoffman & Doms, 1998). At the initial stages of the illness, HIV relies on the CCR5 receptor, which is found on many immune cells: macrophages, and T-helper cells. These strains are called R5-tropic because they infect cells with of or no expression of entry co-receptor CCR5. Apart from mediating attachment, interaction with gp120 of the viral envelope and the CCR5 coreceptor leads to structural changes that favor the budding of viral and cell membranes. In a later stage of the infection, some HIV strains change the coreceptor and start using CXCR4 (Gorry & Ancuta, 2011), which is mainly expressed in T cells. These strains are called X4-fuse tropic viruses and may result from a mutation that changes the viral gp120 to interact with CXCR4 (Bonner, 2024). CCR5 to CXCR4 tropism transition is thought to be linked to the progression of the disease and may contribute to more profound immunodeficiency. Due to the unique feature of HIV which interacts closely with co-receptors CCR5 and CXCR4 on the host cells Surface, the nature of infection and treatment model is determined. These co-receptors are targeted by antiretroviral therapies including CCR5 antagonists thus proving a pivotal role of co-receptor interactions in HIV replication.

Apart from HIV, other viruses exploit other co-receptors to gain access to the target host cell. These interactions can significantly determine the viruses' efficiency in reciprocation with the host organism as well as the viral pathogenic ability. The virus that causes COVID-19 attacks the ACE2 receptor but also the co-receptors including neuropilin-1 which facilitate the virus to enter (López-Cortés et al., 2023). It is also important to understand that balance or interaction between these receptors influences the virulence and transmission across the various tissues of the species harboring the virus.

Ebola virus glycoprotein has been found to bind to some co-receptors such as TIM-1 and NPC1 which are involved in the process of viral entry in target cells (Miller et al., 2012). It's important for determining the host range and transmission dynamics of the virus to consider these interactions to be very specific. Most viruses bind to specific receptors and co-receptors which somewhat reduces the range with which the specific virus can infect. For example, the ocular tropism is critical in deciding the zoonotic potential because a virus that can infect one species does not have a spillover potential in another due to differences in receptor expression and receptor anatomy (Abdelwhab & Mettenleiter, 2023). This is well illustrated by the observation that certain subspecies of influenza can affect avian populations, but then need a certain level of adaptation to affect human beings.

FACTORS INFLUENCING RECEPTOR-LIGAND AFFINITY

Factors such as the rate of association or dissociation between receptor and ligand, the type of competition, the selectivity of different ligands, the involvement of other molecules, and the resulting affinity changes due to mutations. The efficiency of viral

attachment and entry in host cells depends on the receptor-ligand affinity (Jolly & Sattentau, 2006). Several factors affect this preference some of which include differences in host receptor sequences, and other structural changes accorded to viral proteins.

Differences in a sequence variation within those host receptors can greatly impact the receptor's ability to bind viral ligands (Jackson et al., 2003; Mair et al., 2014). It shows that slight variations in the amino acid sequences can translate into major changes in the receptor's conformation and probable antiviral engagements. Main genetic variation arises from polymorphism on host receptors by dint of which there are variations in receptor expression levels and functions. For example, some mutations of certain genes such as the CCR-5 gene would protect people from contracting HIV (Galvani & Novembre, 2005). THE CCR5-Δ32 allele is already known to serve as an example where genetic variance influences receptor availability and, more specifically, infection potential (Carrington et al., 1999).

SPECIFICITY OF VIRAL PROTEINS FOR RECEPTOR BINDING

It is common, that viruses change their protein structure to improve the binding to receptors and specificity of the virus. These adaptations may be the effects of evolutionary forces that enhance the viral invasion of host cells (Kim, 2020). In specific, viral proteins, especially those which are glycoproteins in nature, are commonly featured with specialized regions committed to binding to the receptors of the host. For example, the RBD of the spike protein in coronaviruses is seen to change its conformation to increase affinity to ACE2 thereby increasing the efficiency of the virus entry (Ou et al., 2021). It can be seen that changes in this domain mean either an increase in the level of infectivity or the ability to interact with other receptors.

That is, the glycosylation of viral proteins can also affect the receptor-binding properties and host-cell tropism. Some specimens show that the action of glycosylation on certain epitopes could alter their binding affinity and specificity by hiding or even changing their charges depending on their surrounding environment (Brooks et al., 2008; Majewska et al., 2020). Furthermore, the conformational plasticity of virus-associated proteins exposes the reality that they exist and function in at least two conformations; one fitting the currently defined receptor, the other, a higher affinity receptor. Eventually, genetic changes may occur that bring the virus into closer contact with the receptors on the host cells in question. This can pertain to modifications that make the virus interaction with the host-receptor more solid or modifications that allow the virus to interact better with co-receptors. Such adaptations are important for the appearance of a new variety that can affect different organisms or immune systems (Mercer et al., 2010; Schneider-Schaulies, 2000).

Organismal Pressures Shaping Viral Receptors

Viral infections are the result of a co-evolution process between viruses and their host organisms, with both sides applying considerable evolutionary pressure on the other. This relationship defines the degree of viral receptor identification and consequently

impacts virulence and host permissiveness. Relationship between viruses and host receptors, thus, have an ongoing cycle of evolutionary host-parasite dynamic (Godkin & Smith, 2017). Since viruses have continuously evolved to access new host receptors for their benefit, on the same note, hosts also develop new ways of protecting their receptors against those viral invasions (Dai et al., 2020).

This evolutionary arms race is due to the virus's Search for new mechanisms to cause intensive infection in its target host cells without the obliteration by the host immune system. Any viruses that can change their outer proteins in a way that would avoid host immunity or even use host receptors to their advantage are favored. Scientists observed that many viruses with higher pathogenicity have mutations produced to make the virus attach to host receptors more effectively. For instance, a mutation within the RBD will enhance the virus's ability to bind to the host receptor (Wu et al., 2012). These are typical to viruses with high mutation rates, such as 'seasonal' influenza and coronaviruses, where small changes in the virus genome may lead to changes in receptor recognition and viral tropism.

It has widely been established that host receptor polymorphisms are major predictors of an individual's susceptibility to virus infections. There are differences in the receptor genes, due to these differences the functional characteristics concerning viral entry are affected.

Variations in receptor genes can be also associated not only with altered receptor levels but also with the changes in receptors' conformation. For instance, differences in the density of the CCR5 receptor will define issues of vulnerability to HIV infection. For instance, people with the CCR5-Δ32 mutation cannot be infected by the R5-tropic HIV strain, a case of certain genetic makeup being locked to resisting specific viruses (Mohamed et al., 2022).

Even the distribution and variation of receptor polymorphisms across the tissues can also affect the functions of viruses in relationship to their host. For instance, variations in ACE2 receptor distribution across organs might partially explain substantial differences in diseases, such as COVID-19 (Bourgonje et al., 2020), severity polymorphisms that modulate DNA receptor function or penetrate strengths affect vulnerability and disease trends.

IMPACT OF MUTATIONS ON VIRAL RECEPTOR

Changes depict a central role in determining the capacity by which the viruses infect new hosts and enhance their relations with the host receptors. Mutations to the genomic structure can increase the viral adaptive fitness as well as transmissibility and enable the virus to tap into fresh epidemiological opportunities. As with many other viruses, they struggle constantly to evolve to new classes of receptors, thus enabling them to spread between species. Such flexibility is commonly regulated by host responses as well as other factors inherent within the environment.

The H5N1 avian influenza virus mainly interacts with receptors in birds specifically in birds' red blood cells antigens containing sialic acid (Stephenson et al., 2003; Zhao

& Pu, 2022). Nonetheless, certain mutations in the viral hemagglutinin protein permit some strains to assume a more efficient interaction between the virus and human-type receptors, which justifies the occurrence of limited human infections. An example is the H7N9 strain that has some mutations that enhance its pathogenicity to human respiratory cells (Ke et al., 2017).

New hosts have also been found by the West Nile virus and Zika virus by changing their receptor binding proteins through mutations (Rossi et al., 2018). For example, changes in the envelope protein in the Zika virus increase the virus tropism for human neural cells and thus increase the virulence of the virus in human societies (Carbaugh et al., 2019).

Even, SARS-CoV-2, the virus that causes COVID-19 has revealed how a viral mutation defines receptor usage and host tropism (Cosar et al., 2022). SARS-CoV-2 is a neighbor of SARS-CoV virus that targeted mainly civet cats. But what made SARS-CoV-2 capable of efficient interaction with human receptors, namely ACE2, was another typical feature of this virus (Conceicao et al., 2020).

Molecular modeling analyses also suggested certain key changes within the SARS-CoV-2 spike protein, especially those located in the RBD, increase its binding propensity to hACE2 (Luan et al., 2021). For example, the D614G mutation stabilizes the viral spike protein resulting in subsequent high viral replication rates (Gellenoncourt et al., 2022; Jackson et al., 2021). The very appearance of this mutation may be explained by selective pressures in humans and heat adaptation during viral transmission.

SARS-CoV-2 spread rapidly and it brought forth various variants that include mutations that boost receptor affinity or change the way the virus behaves. Enhanced ability to spread can be seen in variants Alpha (B.1.1.7) and Delta (B.1.617.2) caused by mutations in the spike protein which reveals how virus adaptations alter public health responses (Carabelli et al., 2023).

Infections in humans occur from pathogens transmitted between species. Agents transmitted from animals to humans include zoonotic viruses that commonly cause new and serious health issues (Al-Tayib, 2019). Identifying the factors behind zoonosis and transferring infections is important for forecasting and soothing outbreaks.

Zoonosis identifies the transmission of pathogens from animals to humans and can trigger new infection outbreaks. This change is shaped by different parameters including climate and human interaction. Matching of viral receptors between species allows zoonotic viruses to successfully infect humans. To effectively transfer from animals to humans a virus needs its receptor-binding proteins to interact well with human cell receptors. ACE2 functions as the main receptor for both coronaviruses. SARS-CoV originated from wildcats and was transferred to humans (Zhai et al., 2020). Human ACE2 is of great importance for the spike proteins' ability to infect others due to their strong binding (Hamdy et al., 2023).

Influenza viruses from parts of avian species can infect humans if the hemagglutinin adjusts to promote stronger association with human receptor sites. H5N1 and H7N9 viruses can transmit to humans and illustrate the significance of receptor compatibility in zoonotic transfer. Mutations in human receptor genes can change vulnerability to zoonotic viruses. Altered receptor expression or form can decide if a virus can attach and enter into human cells affecting how likely it is for cross-species transmission.

MERS-CoV infects individuals through its cell receptor called DPP4 amid a notable variation in receptor specificity (Rabaan et al., 2020). Coronaviruses serve as a key illustration of zoonotic pathogens that have modified to infect humans via certain receptor bonds.

To enter cells the original SARS coronavirus hooks onto the ACE2 receptor. The zoonotic origins of this virus found their way back to civet cats. The spike protein of SARS-CoV grips human ACE2 well suggesting viral entry and following infection (Hamdy et al., 2023).Humans and some animal species including camels serve as the main reservoir for the dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP4) receptor of MERS-CoV. The binding efficiency of the MERS-CoV spike protein with human DPP4 is inferior to what is observed with SARS-CoV (Ghosh et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2020).This virus has enhanced its ability to connect with ACE2 receptors in humans better than SARS-CoV. Changes in the spike protein's receptor-binding domain boost its attraction to ACE2 and promote human-to-human spread. SARS-CoV-2 can effectively use this receptor which has spurred its fast spread and created major health concerns (Hamdy et al., 2023).

Although bats are their usual hosts Nipah and Hendra zoonotic viruses have the potential to affect both humans and different species (Skowron et al., 2022). This virus links to fruit bats and can affect people with serious respiratory problems and encephalitis. Nipah virus interacts with ephrin-B2 and ephrin-B3 as receptors. In various human tissues, these receptors are found and enable the virus to initiate disease transmissions due to zoonotic spread.

Zoonotic Viruses and Cross-Species Infections

Zoonoses simply the movement of infectious agents from animals to humans initiating the occurrence of previously unseen diseases. Several viruses that jump species usually evolve to affect different residents including people. Effective transfer of these viruses depends on how their receptors function between different species. The compatibility of receptor interactions crucially determines species jumps. Whether a virus can alter species occurs largely due to the similarities in viral receptor interactions with humans and animals. To successfully infect a host virus must strongly connect its surface to targeted receptors on the host's cells.

A multitude of zoonotic viruses show molecule structures that can adhere to receptors in both animal and human hosts. The close match of ACE2 found in humans and

specific animal types (e.g. bats and civet cats) boosts the likelihood of zoonotic spreading (Zhao et al., 2020).

Though it matches in structure to a receptor a virus's binding strength can still change. Modifications in the viral site that interacts with receptors can improve its action towards human receptors and enhance the risk of successful infection. Mutations in the spike protein of SARS-CoV-2 raised its ability to attach to human ACE2 and promoted effective human-to-human transfer.

Receptors do not match in their compatibility among all species. Some forms of avian influenza strongly link to sialic acid receptors that are common among birds but not in humans. The incompatibility of receptors creates a block to spread and keeps these viruses from affecting humans unless alterations enhance their compatibility. Because ephrin-B2 and ephrin-B3 serve as receptors for this virus it can infect humans and bats due to shared receptor presence in each species (Xu et al., 2012). The same receptors are used by both Nipah and Hendra viruses for attachment which highlights the effective reception of transmission from bats to horses and rarely to people.

In 2002 the SARS-CoV-1 emerged and chiefly selected the ACE2 receptor for cellular infiltration. At first Taiwanese rats transmitted SARS-CoV to people. The spike protein of SARS-CoV reaches into human ACE2 quite quickly and allows its swift global spread. The engagement served as an important determinant in the outbreak's harshness. The distinct feature of MERS-CoV is its dependence on the dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP4) receptor for entry into human body cells. Camels serve as the primary source of MERS-CoV and infrequent human cases happen. The interaction of MERS-CoV with human DPP4 is weaker than that of SARS-CoV with ACE2. The virus linked to the COVID-19 outbreak has revealed extraordinary bonding potential towards human ACE2 and exceeded prior viruses (Ponga, 2020). Altered regions in the spike protein improved its interaction with ACE2 facilitating efficient transmission between humans. New variants clearly show how SARS-CoV-2 has adjusted to the selective pressures acting on human communities (Ali & Vijayan, 2020).

Species differences create obstacles to biochemical interactions between viruses and host receptors. Animal species limits effectively stop the spread of zoonotic pathogens frequently because of their incompatible receptors (Warren & Sawyer, 2019). A large number of viruses have optimized their ability to connect with specific receptors located in their initial hosts. Receptor incompatibility blocks successful attachment and entry when these viruses meet human cells (Paulson, 1985). Sialic acid receptors in birds serve as a primary site for avian influenza binding. If mutations do not produce binding sites for human receptors these viruses tend not to infect humans.

Variations in receptor protein genes across species may obstruct the entry of infections. Some receptor shapes found in animals do not match the binding points of viral proteins fitted for human receptors (Spear et al., 2000). As time progresses hosts

acquire more robust immunity that forms new challenges. If a virus alters to align better with a new receptor its chances of infecting a new host may decrease due to increased immune response (Belouzard et al., 2012; Spear et al., 2000).

CONCLUSION

The process of viral entry, that involves the release of viral nucleic acid into a protective cytosolic environment and cellular membranes. Upon entering, molecular and cellular environmental signals can unleash viruses, which are metastable molecular assemblages that require little energy input. Receptor-mediated signaling is a crucial element of viral entry and helps viruses evolve from their basic entrance motifs. The life cycle of an infectious virus involves detection and attachment to cellular receptors, which are crucial for controlling tissue tropism, host range, and viral pathogenicity. Viral infections are the result of a co-evolution process between viruses and host organisms, with both sides applying considerable evolutionary pressure on the other. Mutations in viral receptors are crucial for viruses to infect new hosts and enhance their relations with host receptors. These mutations can increase viral adaptive fitness and transmissibility, allowing the virus to tap into fresh epidemiological opportunities. Mutations in human receptor genes can change vulnerability to zoonotic viruses, affecting the likelihood of cross-species transmission. Receptor compatibility is crucial for species jumps, as a virus must strongly connect its surface to targeted receptors on the host's cells. Species differences create obstacles to biochemical interactions between viruses and host receptors, and variations in receptor protein genes across species may obstruct the entry of infections. These receptors can play a crucial role in developing therapeutic strategies.

REFERENCES

- Abdelwhab, E. M., & Mettenleiter, T. C. (2023). Zoonotic animal influenza virus and potential mixing vessel hosts. Viruses, 15(4), 980.
- Al-Tayib, O. A. (2019). An overview of the most significant zoonotic viral pathogens transmitted from animal to human in Saudi Arabia. Pathogens, 8(1), 25.
- Ali, A., & Vijayan, R. (2020). Dynamics of the ACE2–SARS-CoV-2/SARS-CoV spike protein interface reveal unique mechanisms. Scientific reports, 10(1), 14214.
- Altheide, T. K., Hayakawa, T., Mikkelsen, T. S., Diaz, S., Varki, N., & Varki, A. (2006). System-wide genomic and biochemical comparisons of sialic acid biology among primates and rodents: evidence for two modes of rapid evolution. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 281(35), 25689-25702.
- Belouzard, S., Millet, J. K., Licitra, B. N., & Whittaker, G. R. (2012). Mechanisms of coronavirus cell entry mediated by the viral spike protein. Viruses, 4(6), 1011-1033.
- Bonner, X. A. (2024). Determining Genotypic and Phenotypic Factors Influencing Macrophage Tropism in the HIV-1 Envelope Protein.

- Bourgonje, A. R., Abdulle, A. E., Timens, W., Hillebrands, J. L., Navis, G. J., Gordijn, S. J., Bolling, M. C., Dijkstra, G., Voors, A. A., & Osterhaus, A. D. (2020). Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2), SARS-CoV-2 and the pathophysiology of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). The Journal of pathology, 251(3), 228-248.
- Brooks, S., Carter, T., Royle, L., Harvey, D., Fry, S., Kinch, C., Dwek, R. A., & Rudd, P. M. (2008). Altered glycosylation of proteins in cancer: what is the potential for new anti-tumour strategies. Anti-Cancer Agents in Medicinal Chemistry (Formerly Current Medicinal Chemistry-Anti-Cancer Agents), 8(1), 2-21.
- Calado, M., Pires, D., Conceição, C., Santos-Costa, Q., Anes, E., & Azevedo-Pereira, J. M. (2023). Human immunodeficiency virus transmission—Mechanisms underlying the cell-to-cell spread of human immunodeficiency virus. Reviews in medical virology, 33(6), e2480.
- Carabelli, A. M., Peacock, T. P., Thorne, L. G., Harvey, W. T., Hughes, J., Peacock, S. J., Barclay, W. S., De Silva, T. I., Towers, G. J., & Robertson, D. L. (2023). SARS-CoV-2 variant biology: immune escape, transmission and fitness. Nature reviews microbiology, 21(3), 162-177.
- Carbaugh, D. L., Baric, R. S., & Lazear, H. M. (2019). Envelope protein glycosylation mediates Zika virus pathogenesis. Journal of virology, 93(12), 10.1128/jvi. 00113-00119.
- Carrington, M., Dean, M., Martin, M. P., & O'Brien, S. J. (1999). Genetics of HIV-1 infection: chemokine receptor CCR5 polymorphism and its consequences. Human molecular genetics, 8(10), 1939-1945.
- Casasnovas, J. M. (2013). Virus-receptor interactions and receptor-mediated virus entry into host cells. Structure and Physics of Viruses: An Integrated Textbook, 441-466.
- Checkley, M. A., Luttge, B. G., & Freed, E. O. (2011). HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein biosynthesis, trafficking, and incorporation. Journal of molecular biology, 410(4), 582-608.
- Conceicao, C., Thakur, N., Human, S., Kelly, J. T., Logan, L., Bialy, D., Bhat, S., Stevenson-Leggett, P., Zagrajek, A. K., & Hollinghurst, P. (2020). The SARS-CoV-2 Spike protein has a broad tropism for mammalian ACE2 proteins. PLoS biology, 18(12), e3001016.
- Cosar, B., Karagulleoglu, Z. Y., Unal, S., Ince, A. T., Uncuoglu, D. B., Tuncer, G., Kilinc, B. R., Ozkan, Y. E., Ozkoc, H. C., & Demir, I. N. (2022). SARS-CoV-2 mutations and their viral variants. Cytokine & growth factor reviews, 63, 10-22.

- Coyne, C. B., & Bergelson, J. M. (2006). Virus-induced Abl and Fyn kinase signals permit coxsackievirus entry through epithelial tight junctions. Cell, 124(1), 119-131.
- Dai, X., Zhang, X., Ostrikov, K., & Abrahamyan, L. (2020). Host receptors: the key to establishing cells with broad viral tropism for vaccine production. Critical reviews in microbiology, 46(2), 147-168.
- de Haan, C. A., Li, Z., te Lintelo, E., Bosch, B. J., Haijema, B. J., & Rottier, P. J. (2005). Murine coronavirus with an extended host range uses heparan sulfate as an entry receptor. Journal of virology, 79(22), 14451-14456.
- Eslami, N., Aghbash, P. S., Shamekh, A., Entezari-Maleki, T., Nahand, J. S., Sales, A. J., & Baghi, H. B. (2022). SARS-CoV-2: receptor and co-receptor tropism probability. Current Microbiology, 79(5), 133.
- Fierro, N. A., Rivera-Toledo, E., Ávila-Horta, F., Anaya-Covarrubias, J. Y., & Mendlovic, F. (2022). Scavenger receptors in the pathogenesis of viral infections. Viral Immunology, 35(3), 175-191.
- Galvani, A. P., & Novembre, J. (2005). The evolutionary history of the CCR5-Δ32 HIV-resistance mutation. Microbes and Infection, 7(2), 302-309.
- Gellenoncourt, S., Saunders, N., Robinot, R., Auguste, L., Rajah, M. M., Kervevan, J., Jeger-Madiot, R., Staropoli, I., Planchais, C., & Mouquet, H. (2022). The spike-stabilizing D614G mutation interacts with S1/S2 cleavage site mutations to promote the infectious potential of SARS-CoV-2 variants. Journal of virology, 96(19), e01301-01322.
- Ghosh, P., Jayaram, S., Patwardhan, D., Marimuthu, S., Lenehan, P., Venkatakrishnan, A., Hughes, T., Zemmour, D., Anand, P., & Soundararajan, V. (2021). Diversity of coronavirus receptors.
- Godkin, A., & Smith, K. A. (2017). Chronic infections with viruses or parasites: breaking bad to make good. Immunology, 150(4), 389-396.
- Gorry, P. R., & Ancuta, P. (2011). Coreceptors and HIV-1 pathogenesis. Current HIV/AIDS Reports, 8, 45-53.
- Grove, J., & Marsh, M. (2011). The cell biology of receptor-mediated virus entry. Journal of Cell Biology, 195(7), 1071-1082.
- Hamdy, M. E., El Deeb, A. H., Hagag, N. M., Shahein, M. A., Alaidi, O., & Hussein, H. A. (2023). Interspecies transmission of SARS CoV-2 with special emphasis on viral mutations and ACE-2 receptor homology roles. International journal of veterinary science and medicine, 11(1), 55-86.

- Hayashida, K., Aquino, R. S., & Park, P. W. (2022). Coreceptor functions of cell surface heparan sulfate proteoglycans. American Journal of Physiology-Cell Physiology, 322(5), C896-C912.
- Hoffman, T. L., & Doms, R. W. (1998). Chemokines and coreceptors in HIV/SIV-host interactions. Aids, 12, S17-S26.
- Hossain, M. J., Nyame, P., & Monde, K. (2024). Species-Specific Transcription Factors Associated with Long Terminal Repeat Promoters of Endogenous Retroviruses: A Comprehensive Review. Biomolecules, 14(3), 280.
- Jackson, C. B., Zhang, L., Farzan, M., & Choe, H. (2021). Functional importance of the D614G mutation in the SARS-CoV-2 spike protein. Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications, 538, 108-115.
- Jackson, T., King, A. M., Stuart, D. I., & Fry, E. (2003). Structure and receptor binding. Virus research, 91(1), 33-46.
- Jolly, C. L., & Sattentau, Q. J. (2006). Attachment factors. Viral entry into host cells, 1-23.
- Ke, C., Mok, C. K. P., Zhu, W., Zhou, H., He, J., Guan, W., Wu, J., Song, W., Wang, D., & Liu, J. (2017). Human infection with highly pathogenic avian influenza A (H7N9) virus, China. Emerging infectious diseases, 23(8), 1332.
- Kim, C.-H. (2020). SARS-CoV-2 evolutionary adaptation toward host entry and recognition of receptor O-Acetyl sialylation in virus–host interaction. International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 21(12), 4549.
- Klasse, P. J. (2012). The molecular basis of HIV entry. Cellular microbiology, 14(8), 1183-1192.
- Krausgruber, T., Fortelny, N., Fife-Gernedl, V., Senekowitsch, M., Schuster, L. C., Lercher, A., Nemc, A., Schmidl, C., Rendeiro, A. F., & Bergthaler, A. (2020). Structural cells are key regulators of organ-specific immune responses. Nature, 583(7815), 296-302.
- López-Cortés, G. I., Palacios-Pérez, M., Hernández-Aguilar, M. M., Veledíaz, H. F., & José, M. V. (2023). Human coronavirus cell receptors provide challenging therapeutic targets. Vaccines, 11(1), 174.
- Luan, B., Wang, H., & Huynh, T. (2021). Enhanced binding of the N501Y-mutated SARS-CoV-2 spike protein to the human ACE2 receptor: insights from molecular dynamics simulations. FEBS letters, 595(10), 1454-1461.
- Maclachlan, N. J., & Dubovi, E. J. (2010). Fenner's veterinary virology. Academic press.
- Mair, C. M., Ludwig, K., Herrmann, A., & Sieben, C. (2014). Receptor binding and pH stability—How influenza A virus hemagglutinin affects host-specific virus

infection. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA)-Biomembranes, 1838(4), 1153-1168.

- Majewska, N. I., Tejada, M. L., Betenbaugh, M. J., & Agarwal, N. (2020). N-glycosylation of IgG and IgG-like recombinant therapeutic proteins: why is it important and how can we control it? Annual Review of Chemical and Biomolecular Engineering, 11(1), 311-338.
- Marsh, M., & Helenius, A. (2006). Virus entry: open sesame. Cell, 124(4), 729-740.
- McFadden, G., Mohamed, M. R., Rahman, M. M., & Bartee, E. (2009). Cytokine determinants of viral tropism. Nature Reviews Immunology, 9(9), 645-655.
- Mercer, J., Schelhaas, M., & Helenius, A. (2010). Virus entry by endocytosis. Annual review of biochemistry, 79(1), 803-833.
- Miller, E. H., Obernosterer, G., Raaben, M., Herbert, A. S., Deffieu, M. S., Krishnan, A., Ndungo, E., Sandesara, R. G., Carette, J. E., & Kuehne, A. I. (2012). Ebola virus entry requires the host-programmed recognition of an intracellular receptor. The EMBO journal, 31(8), 1947-1960.
- Mohamed, H., Gurrola, T., Berman, R., Collins, M., Sariyer, I. K., Nonnemacher, M. R., & Wigdahl, B. (2022). Targeting CCR5 as a component of an HIV-1 therapeutic strategy. Frontiers in immunology, 12, 816515.
- Mothes, W., Sherer, N. M., Jin, J., & Zhong, P. (2010). Virus cell-to-cell transmission. Journal of virology, 84(17), 8360-8368.
- Mudgal, G. (2014). Structural insights into coronavirus binding to host aminopeptidase N and interaction dynamics. Universidad Autónoma de Madrid.
- Neu, U., Bauer, J., & Stehle, T. (2011). Viruses and sialic acids: rules of engagement. Current opinion in structural biology, 21(5), 610-618.
- Noman, A., Aqeel, M., Khalid, N., Hashem, M., Alamari, S., Zafar, S., Qasim, M., Irshad, M. K., & Qari, S. H. (2021). Spike glycoproteins: Their significance for corona viruses and receptor binding activities for pathogenesis and viral survival. Microbial pathogenesis, 150, 104719.
- O'Hara, S. D., & Garcea, R. L. (2016). Murine polyomavirus cell surface receptors activate distinct signaling pathways required for infection. MBio, 7(6), 10.1128/mbio. 01836-01816.
- Oswald, J., Constantine, M., Adegbuyi, A., Omorogbe, E., Dellomo, A. J., & Ehrlich, E. S. (2023). E3 Ubiquitin Ligases in Gammaherpesviruses and HIV: A Review of Virus Adaptation and Exploitation. Viruses, 15(9), 1935.
- Ou, J., Zhou, Z., Dai, R., Zhang, J., Zhao, S., Wu, X., Lan, W., Ren, Y., Cui, L., & Lan, Q. (2021). V367F mutation in SARS-CoV-2 spike RBD emerging during the

early transmission phase enhances viral infectivity through increased human ACE2 receptor binding affinity. Journal of virology, 95(16), 10.1128/jvi. 00617-00621.

- Pantaleo, G., Correia, B., Fenwick, C., Joo, V. S., & Perez, L. (2022). Antibodies to combat viral infections: development strategies and progress. Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 21(9), 676-696.
- Pathak, R. (2023). G-quadruplexes in the viral genome: unlocking targets for therapeutic interventions and antiviral strategies. Viruses, 15(11), 2216.
- Paulson, J. C. (1985). Interactions of animal viruses with cell surface receptors. In The receptors (pp. 131-219). Elsevier.
- Polsky, S. (2022). The Dark Posthuman: Dehumanization, Technology, and the Atlantic World. punctum books.
- Ponga, M. (2020). Quantifying the adhesive strength between the SARS-CoV-2 S-proteins and human receptor and its effect in therapeutics. Scientific reports, 10(1), 17538.
- Rabaan, A. A., Al-Ahmed, S. H., Sah, R., Alqamber, M. A., Haque, S., Patel, S. K., Pathak, M., Tiwari, R., Yatoo, M. I., & Haq, A. U. (2020). Behind COVID-19, MERS-CoV, another Coronavirus that should not be forgotten–A review of its current epidemiology, molecular dynamics, phylogeny, pathology, therapeutics and future challenges. Behind COVID-19, MERS-CoV, another Coronavirus that should not.
- Robert K, Y., Tsai, Y.-T., Ariga, T., & Yanagisawa, M. (2011). Structures, biosynthesis, and functions of gangliosides-an overview. Journal of oleo science, 60(10), 537-544.
- Rossi, S. L., Ebel, G. D., Shan, C., Shi, P.-Y., & Vasilakis, N. (2018). Did Zika virus mutate to cause severe outbreaks? Trends in microbiology, 26(10), 877-885.
- Schneider-Schaulies, J. r. (2000). Cellular receptors for viruses: links to tropism and pathogenesis. Journal of General Virology, 81(6), 1413-1429.
- Singer, I. I., Scott, S., Kawka, D. W., Chin, J., Daugherty, B. L., DeMartino, J. A., DiSalvo, J., Gould, S. L., Lineberger, J. E., & Malkowitz, L. (2001). CCR5, CXCR4, and CD4 are clustered and closely apposed on microvilli of human macrophages and T cells. Journal of virology, 75(8), 3779-3790.
- Skowron, K., Bauza-Kaszewska, J., Grudlewska-Buda, K., Wiktorczyk-Kapischke, N., Zacharski, M., Bernaciak, Z., & Gospodarek-Komkowska, E. (2022). Nipah virus–another threat from the world of zoonotic viruses. Frontiers in microbiology, 12, 811157.

- Spear, P. G., Eisenberg, R. J., & Cohen, G. H. (2000). Three classes of cell surface receptors for alphaherpesvirus entry. Virology, 275(1), 1-8.
- Stehle, T., & Khan, Z. M. (2014). Rules and exceptions: sialic acid variants and their role in determining viral tropism. Journal of virology, 88(14), 7696-7699.
- Stephenson, I., Wood, J., Nicholson, K., & Zambon, M. (2003). Sialic acid receptor specificity on erythrocytes affects detection of antibody to avian influenza haemagglutinin. Journal of medical virology, 70(3), 391-398.
- und Halbach, O. v. B., & Dermietzel, R. (2006). Neurotransmitters and neuromodulators: Handbook of receptors and biological effects. John Wiley & Sons.
- Varki, A., & Schauer, R. (2009). Sialic acids. Essentials of Glycobiology. 2nd edition.
- Vlasak, M., Goesler, I., & Blaas, D. (2005). Human rhinovirus type 89 variants use heparan sulfate proteoglycan for cell attachment. Journal of virology, 79(10), 5963-5970.
- Vlasak, M., Roivainen, M., Reithmayer, M., Goesler, I., Laine, P., Snyers, L., Hovi, T., & Blaas, D. (2005). The minor receptor group of human rhinovirus (HRV) includes HRV23 and HRV25, but the presence of a lysine in the VP1 HI loop is not sufficient for receptor binding. Journal of virology, 79(12), 7389-7395.
- Warburton, A., Markowitz, T. E., Katz, J. P., Pipas, J. M., & McBride, A. A. (2021). Recurrent integration of human papillomavirus genomes at transcriptional regulatory hubs. NPJ Genomic Medicine, 6(1), 101.
- Warren, C. J., & Sawyer, S. L. (2019). How host genetics dictates successful viral zoonosis. PLoS biology, 17(4), e3000217.
- Wu, K., Peng, G., Wilken, M., Geraghty, R. J., & Li, F. (2012). Mechanisms of host receptor adaptation by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 287(12), 8904-8911.
- Xu, K., Broder, C. C., & Nikolov, D. B. (2012). Ephrin-B2 and ephrin-B3 as functional henipavirus receptors. Seminars in cell & developmental biology,
- Yandrapally, S., Mohareer, K., Arekuti, G., Vadankula, G. R., & Banerjee, S. (2021). HIV co-receptor-tropism: cellular and molecular events behind the enigmatic co-receptor switching. Critical reviews in microbiology, 47(4), 499-516.
- Yi, C., Sun, X., Ye, J., Ding, L., Liu, M., Yang, Z., Lu, X., Zhang, Y., Ma, L., & Gu, W. (2020). Key residues of the receptor binding motif in the spike protein of SARS-CoV-2 that interact with ACE2 and neutralizing antibodies. Cellular & molecular immunology, 17(6), 621-630.

- Zhai, X., Sun, J., Yan, Z., Zhang, J., Zhao, J., Zhao, Z., Gao, Q., He, W.-T., Veit, M., & Su, S. (2020). Comparison of SARS-CoV-2 spike protein binding to human, pet, farm animals, and putative intermediate hosts ACE2 and ACE2 receptors. bioRxiv, 2020.2005. 2008.084061.
- Zhang, Y.-y., Li, B.-r., & Ning, B.-t. (2020). The comparative immunological characteristics of SARS-CoV, MERS-CoV, and SARS-CoV-2 coronavirus infections. Frontiers in immunology, 11, 2033.
- Zhao, C., & Pu, J. (2022). Influence of host sialic acid receptors structure on the host specificity of influenza viruses. Viruses, 14(10), 2141.
- Zhao, X., Chen, D., Szabla, R., Zheng, M., Li, G., Du, P., Zheng, S., Li, X., Song, C., & Li, R. (2020). Broad and differential animal angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 receptor usage by SARS-CoV-2. Journal of virology, 94(18), 10.1128/jvi. 00940-00920.
- Zhu, H., Wang, G., & Qian, J. (2016). Transcription factors as readers and effectors of DNA methylation. Nature Reviews Genetics, 17(9), 551-565.

CHAPTER- 9

THE MICROBIAL TOOLBOX: EMERGING TRENDS AND INNOVATIONS IN APPLIED MICROBIOLOGY

Waqas Ashraf[1*], Shafeeq Ur Rehman[1*], Muhammad Moazam Jalees[1], Khizar Abbas[1], Muhammad Shan[1], Ejaz u Rehman[1], Syed Muhammad Adnan[1], Muhammad Shahzad Nazar[1], Muhammad Adnan[1] and Tariq Abbas[1]

[1]Department of Microbiology, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan *Both the authors shared equally

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526774

ABSTRACT

Microorganisms play a vital role in various fields of human life such as food fermentation and drug development. Among the most promising branches of microbiology is the applied microbiology which occupies the study of microorganisms for practical purposes and has significant progress in recent years. This chapter focuses on novel advancements and emerging research in this area, covering a wide range of industries that use microbes. Microbes have recently emerged as agents of alteration in every industry, from agriculture to the environment, to health and other fields. Accordingly, a comprehensive review is made of current views on the possible means for increasing crop productivity by using microbial biofertilizers, on the bioremediation potentialities of microbial populations in contaminated environments, and on microbial biotechnology solutions for treating diseases. Further, it explores the future of synthetic biology to design microorganisms for applications including the generation of biofuels and drugs.

Keywords: Applied Microbiology, Microbial power, Bioremediation, Microbial Tools, CRISPR

INTRODUCTION

Microorganisms are the ancient organisms that have occupied every location and hold major functions in life-sustaining processes including nutrient cycling and environmental balance. The use of microbes for various activities has been in practice by human beings for many years, though this was not deliberate in most cases, for instance use of microbes in the production of bread, beers, and wines (Bamforth & Cook, 2019). But in recent years, various developments in biotechnology and molecular biology have dramatically enhanced the possibility of the potential of microbes to be explored, and their application in multiple processes (Bamforth & Cook, 2019; Pepper et al., 2011).

"Microbiology is the study of all living organisms that are too small to be seen with the naked eye and plays a vital role in many sectors like health, environment, etc. Applied microbiology is one of the branches of microbiology that focuses on the use of microorganisms in various fields for beneficial effects (Maurya et al., 2021). This

branch of microbiology utilizes microorganisms, including bacteria, fungi, viruses, and algae to solve issues or optimize techniques in areas like agriculture, medicine, environmental practices, and biotechnology. Applied microbiology also focuses on the use of microbial systems-based "Toolbox" to gain higher efficiency, effectiveness, and innovation in various applications (Gadd & Sariaslani, 2024).

Microbial Toolbox is therefore described as the set of tools and approaches that enhance comprehension and management of microorganisms by science and engineering. Some of these tools are CRISPR for gene editing, relative to metagenomic techniques for the estimation of complex microbial ecosystems, synthetic biology for designing microscopic organisms with unique properties, and bioinformatics for analyzing a large volume of data generated in microbial sciences (Mushtaq et al., 2021). Each can point to novel types of innovation and open windows to higher orders of applications that span from industrial microbiology and biotechnology to pharmacogenomics and individualized medicine.

The high diversification of microorganisms is the primary reason for their versatility. Each of them bacteria, fungi, algae, and viruses has its usefulness that is used in different fields. For instance, the bacterium in the nitrogen cycle in agriculture, yeast in food technology and preparation of beverages, and antibiotics in pharmaceuticals (Bhowmik & Patil, 2018; Rani & Soni, 2007). They play a vital role in the breaking down of organic materials and are also involved in improving the fertility of the soil, and in synthesizing certain antibiotics such as penicillin. Algae are used in biofuel production and therefore contribute to carbon fixing which is very crucial in combating climate change (Mehta et al., 2023). Surprisingly, one of the major applications includes genetic engineering of very small micro-creatures like viruses though these are related to diseases (Snow et al., 2005).

Finally, applied microbiology is a pivotal discipline that uses the capabilities of microorganisms to stimulate progress in numerous fields. Apart from promoting agricultural yields, microbes are useful in creating high-value products such as vaccines and antibiotics, among other life-supporting inventions. As more and more discoveries are made on different functional aspects of microbes, the practical applications of microbiology will also continue to grow to address several world challenges today (Gadd & Sariaslani, 2024). The advancement of molecular biology techniques and the combination of microbiology, bioinformatics, and synthetic biology together with chemical engineering is resulting in a new age of microbial engineering. In the present time, researchers and industries do not use microbial systems only in the classical areas including agriculture, food processing, and medicine but also in areas such as bioremediation, energy generation, and even astronautics (Jiménez-Díaz et al., 2022; Katz et al., 2018). This chapter will present a review of modern advances in applied microbiology, as well as the Microbial Toolbox which is a set of knowledge on tools and technologies which may help in microbiological advancements.

KEY MICROBIAL TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES

CRISPR and Gene Editing

The gene editing tool that has earned much value in the recent past is CRISPR. First identified in bacteria as a defense mechanism, CRISPR technology allows for specific modifications of DNA and for change to be made, with the precision of a scalpel, to the genes of microbial life forms (Guzmán-Zapata et al., 2021). Microbial engineering using the CRISPR technique has advanced its speed in the applied microbiology field to promote microbial strains for different purposes, ranging from intensifying their capacity to metabolize hazardous substances to producing innovative bio-based chemicals with economic potential (Javed et al., 2023).

CRISPR is much easier to use than previous technologies such as zinc-finger nucleases or TALENs because instead of using an engineered protein structure to find the DNA target sequence, it uses an RNA molecule and Cas9 protein "scissors "to cleave the DNA (Munawar & Ahmad, 2021). This technology, therefore, brings new prospects to construct genetically modified microbes with improved attributes. In industrial microbiology, the use of CRISPR-engineered microbes have been used to improve fermentation, boost the production of biofuels, and create even novel enzymes that can be useful to the industrial process (Waryah et al., 2018).

Research trends from microbial engineering show that beyond lab sciences, the multiple-fold functionality of CRISPR is evident. For instance, through the help of CRISPR, researchers have designed the species of *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) that produce a high volume of butanol a higher-density fuel than ethanol (Garg et al., 2023; Koppolu & Vasigala, 2016). Moreover, by harnessing the CRISPR technology, new strains of *Streptomyces* that contain fresh antibiotics required to fight AMR have been designed (Murugaiyan et al., 2022). In yeast, the application of better genetic engineering approaches such as CRISPR/Cas 9 has grown to enhance genetic editions. The use of yeast as a microbe has found considerable importance for the large-scale production of food additives, fine chemicals, renewable biofuels, and fine chemicals (Wang et al., 2021).

Synthetic Biology

Microbial engineering design and construction have reached a new level in the synthetic biology of new biological systems. This particular toolbox applies biology, engineering, and computer science to generate what has been termed 'designer organisms' for a particular purpose (Mandel & Marchant, 2014). Different from genetic modification, which often is a standard use of some genetic code for modifying the existent genes, synthetic biology enables engineers to design new biological components, elements, and systems (Sriram et al., 2018).

The progress in synthetic biology implies that scientists can design and construct 'genetic circuits' to control the function of microbes in the same way that an electrical circuit controls the operations of a machine (Xia et al., 2019). The following has led to the creation of microbes that are engineered to perform very specific roles such as

detecting pollutants and synthesizing biomolecules for use in various applications. The current synthetic biology also enables controlling the microbes in such a way that they either change in response to particular environmental conditions or die when they are done with their task, unlike the risks a conventional genetic engineer might create (Hofkin et al., 2017).

Undoubtedly, the creation of microbial cell factories is one of the most prospective trends in applied microbiology, organisms that can be generated for the production of various desired substances, that can serve humanity's interests including biofuel and medicines (Hussain et al., 2022). For example, certain yeast strains have been genetically modified to synthesize artemisinin which is used to cure malaria (Zeng et al., 2008). In the food industry, synthetic biology is being employed to engineer microbes that manufacture substitute proteins for foods that can be used to feed the increasing population. Thus, it can be concluded that with the growth of synthetic biology systems, it will be integrated into many industries from agricultural to energy production and even pharmaceutical ones (Graham & Ledesma-Amaro, 2023).

Metagenomics

Metagenomics has shifted a new paradigm in microbial ecology since it allows for the analysis of all the genes without any reference to the specific microbes present in the environment. This is especially important since many microbes in nature cannot be isolated using traditional means in the laboratory (Mardanov et al., 2018). The entire microbial community metagenomic sequencing not only provides a complete view of the microbial populations and their interactions with their surroundings but also of the environment such as soil and water and epithelial surfaces of the human body (Tas et al., 2021).

The human microbiome is one of the major sequenced fields that has shown great improvement in the application of metagenomics. Gut microbiota in particular contributes a very significant factor to human health (Aggarwal et al., 2022; Milani et al., 2017). In the past decade, explorations via metagenomic analysis indicate that human gastrointestinal tracts host microbes that play positive roles in welfare and ailment prevention. This has resulted in other therapies such as Probiotics, Prebiotics, and even fecal microbiota transplant (FMT) with the general public aim of balancing microbes in the patient for instance irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) or *Clostridioides difficile* infection (Biazzo & Deidda, 2022).

Metagenomic can be applied in metagenomic analysis of the taxonomic distribution of microbial communities in different environments soil, water, and air; by so doing it provides information on the functions of microbes in the cycling of nutrients, climate change, and the sustenance of the environment (Long et al., 2016). For example, the metagenomic analysis of the marine environments, for instance, identified new plastics-degrading microorganisms that can be used in attempts to reduce the effects of the plastic pollution issue. Similarly, it has been used to identify new enzymes, from soil bacteria, to aid in transforming plant biomass into biofuel, which is a better source of energy (Grossart et al., 2020).

Enhancing Soil Fertility and Plant Growth

The microorganisms that contribute to the fertility of the soils are very vital in managing the growth of the plants from naturally practiced farming. Bacteria, fungi, and actinomycetes play a significant role in the conversion of nutrients such as nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the soil through the decomposition of organic matter. Such nutrients are taken up by the plant leading to enhanced growth (Sharma et al., 2020).

Biofertilizers

Biofertilizers are those fertilizers that are naturally produced by using microorganisms to improve the fertility of the soil as well as the health of the plants. The advantages of using biofertilizers on plants are shown in Figure 1. There are several types of biofertilizers, each serving different roles in promoting plant growth.

- **Rhizobium:** These bacteria are involved in fixing nitrogen in the sense that they build close associations with plants that belong to the legume family, they can fix nitrogen in the atmosphere in a way that it can be easily utilized by the plants. This improves the ground nitrogen base and in so doing minimizes the use of artificial nitrogen fertilization (Verma et al., 2020).
- **Mycorrhiza:** These fungi form mycorrhizal relationships in the root tissues of plants and improve the plant's capacity to take up water, phosphorus, and other important nutrients. As for the benefits of mycorrhizal fungi to the plant, it also enhances the plant's protection from pathogenic fungi in the soil as well as acts as a facilitator against stresses such as drought (Khaliq et al., 2022).

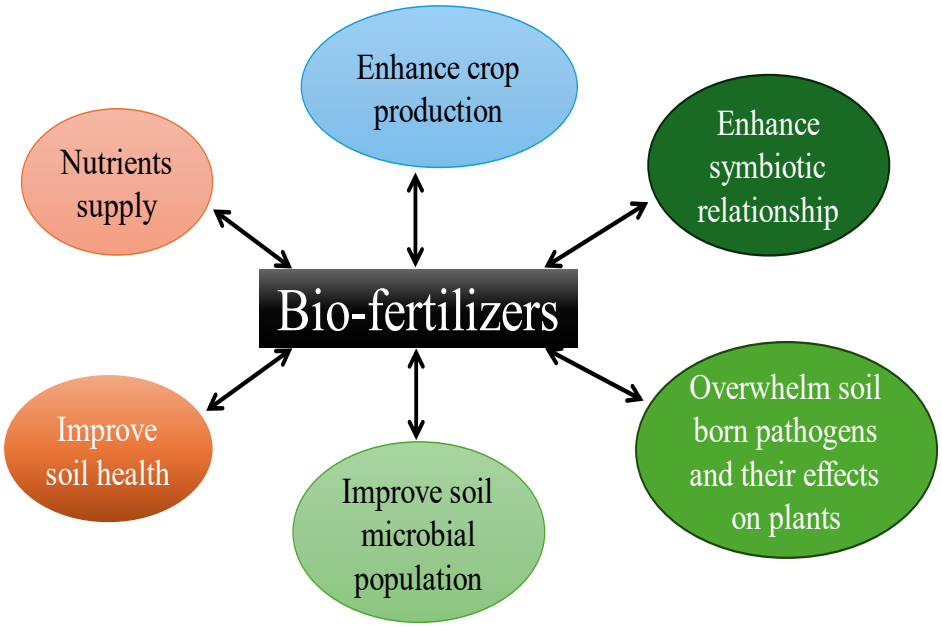


***Fig 1**:* Advantages of biofertilizers.

Biopesticides: Natural Solutions for Pest Control

Biopesticides are biological controllers of pests which are microscopic organisms such as bacteria, fungi, and viruses. They are a better solution to chemical pesticides because they are selective in their action against pests of concern while sparing beneficial pests and the environment at large. An example of the first type is *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) a bacterium that is toxic for specific insects that are pests, but it does not harm humans, animals, and all other species of wildlife (Tijjani et al., 2016). Some examples include fungal bio pesticides; *Beauvaria bassiana* and *Metarhilizium anisopliae* which are parasites that infect and cause death to many insect pests as a measure towards integrated pest management. Biopesticides provide several advantages: they break down on their own in the environment and chemicals remain low in the process and pests do not easily develop resistance to these bio controls (Oguh et al., 2019).

Microbial Innovations in Industrial application

Microorganisms are significant in several industrial processes since they possess numerous metabolic activities. This section focuses on the general industrial applications of microbes, such as fermentations, antibiotics, bioremediation, and the role of microbes in the generation of energy (Bustamante-Torres et al., 2022).

Table 1: Some important microorganisms with their products and uses

Sr. No	Product	Microorganisms	Uses
1	Lysine	*Micrococcus glutamicus*	Animal feed additive
2	Jute	*Bacillus subtilis*	Retting
3	Lactic Acid	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus, L. delbrueckii*	Textile, laundry, leather industry
4	Bacterial amylase	*Bacillus subtilis*	Sizing paper, de-sizing textiles
5	Bacterial protease	*Bacillus subtilis*	Spot remover, bating hides
6	Oil spill cleaning	*Pseudomonas putida*	Oil spill cleaning
7	2,3 butanediol	*Bacillus polymixa, Enterobacter aerogens*	Solvent, chemical intermediate
8	Vinegar	*Acetobacter spp*	Food industry
9	Tobacco	*Proteus vulgaris, Bacillus*	Curing
10	Acetone Butanol	*Clostridium acetobutyricum*	Solvents
11	Bioinsecticide	*Bacillus thuringiensis*	Control of insect pests

Microbial Fermentation: From Bread to Bioethanol

The microbial fermentation process is as old as human civilization and is used in the preparation of foods and beverages to a very large extent. It is the process where microorganisms oxidatively decarboxylate organic acids into less oxidized products

becoming alcohol, acids, or gases without oxygen. Examples, which include *baker's yeast*, and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* are highly significant in the synthesis of bread and wines, whereby the yeasts convert sugars to carbon dioxide and ethanol respectively (Martinez Ortega et al., 2015). Similarly, bacteria such as *Lactobacillus* are used to ferment dairy products to yield yogurt and cheese.

In addition to food production, microbial fermentation is today's relevant activity in the generation of renewable bioethanol. Organisms like yeast are used for fermentation of biomass like corn or sugarcane to ethanol. Bioethanol can thus be said to be a cleaner fuel than traditional fossil fuels and is important in the fight against greenhouse emissions and the use of non-renewable resources (KV et al., 2022).

MICROBIAL POWER IN WASTE MANAGEMENT AND BIOREMEDIATION

Microorganisms are important actors in the decomposition of waste and the bioremediation of waste materials including organic and inorganic pollutants in ecosystems. They utilize microbes for breaking down effluent organic matter to decrease the pollution of water at the wastewater treatment plant. The bacterial group comprised of *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* has been notable in the biodegradation of toxic chemicals, oil, and heavy metals into forms that pose a relatively lesser threat (Yadav et al., 2022).

In the advanced stage of the water bio-treatment process which is better than the tertiary, microbes are also used for the removal of foreign compounds including heavy metals by biosorption and bioaccumulation. In addition to the improved water quality that microbial communities afford in the treatment of wastewater, there is the added advantage of creating resources such as nutrients and biogas that improve the sustainability of the procedure (Mudzanani et al., 2021).

Characteristic of the bioremediation process is the use of microorganisms in the treatment process whereby soil and water been polluted with oil spillage, industrial by-products, or agricultural drainage water (Figure 2). They can also be used in degrading or detoxifying hazardous products so that ecosystems can be rehabilitated (Garg et al., 2020). For instance, *Alcanivorax* bacteria are used in the process of breaking down hydrocarbons in oil spill clean-up processes hence these are key players in the restoration of the environment (Pete et al., 2022).

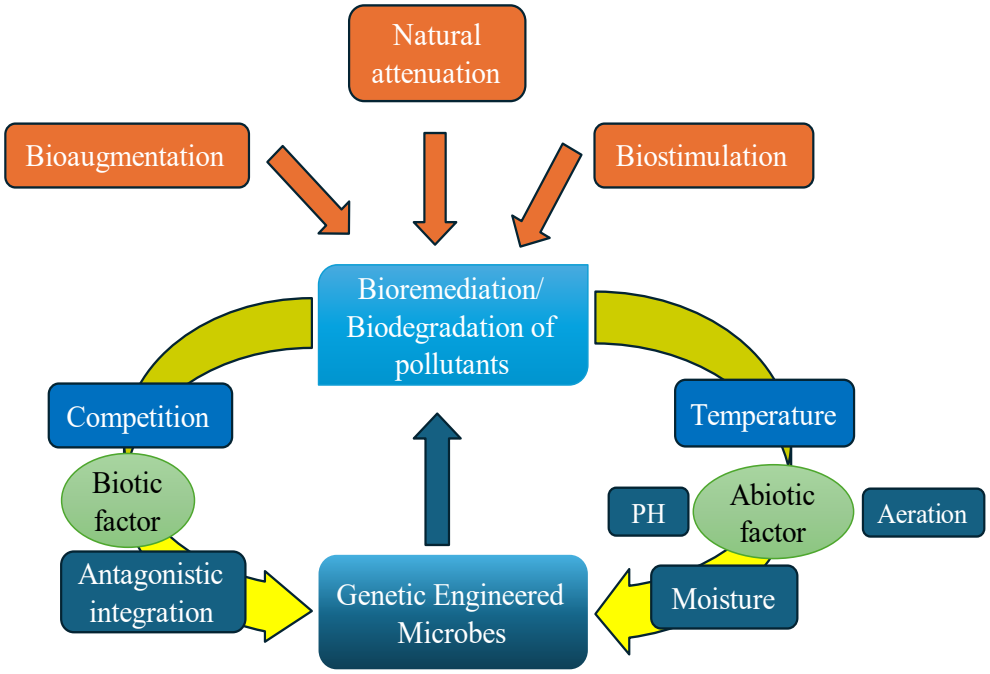


Fig 2: Overview of bioremediation.

Microbial Innovation in Biofuel Production: Green Energy Alternatives

The application of microbes in the production of biofuel is a rapidly emerging technology as people look for cleaner sources of energy than those provided by fossil fuels (Figure 3). Microbial biofuel production therefore involves the use of fermentable material derived from biomass in the production of bioethanol or Biogas. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is used to convert the sugars produced from crops such as corn and sugarcane to ethanol, which can be combined with gasoline (da Silva Fernandes et al., 2022). Biodiesel is produced from vegetable oil or animal fats through the transesterification process. Algae, for example, are widely considered a feasible feedstock for biodiesel production from the standpoint that they are fast-growing organisms, and they produce huge quantities of lipids, and fats which can be converted to biodiesel. Some *cyanobacteria* and *green algae* are being genetically modified to increase the efficiency of the organisms in synthesizing lipids which serve as a source of biofuel (Bardhan et al., 2019).

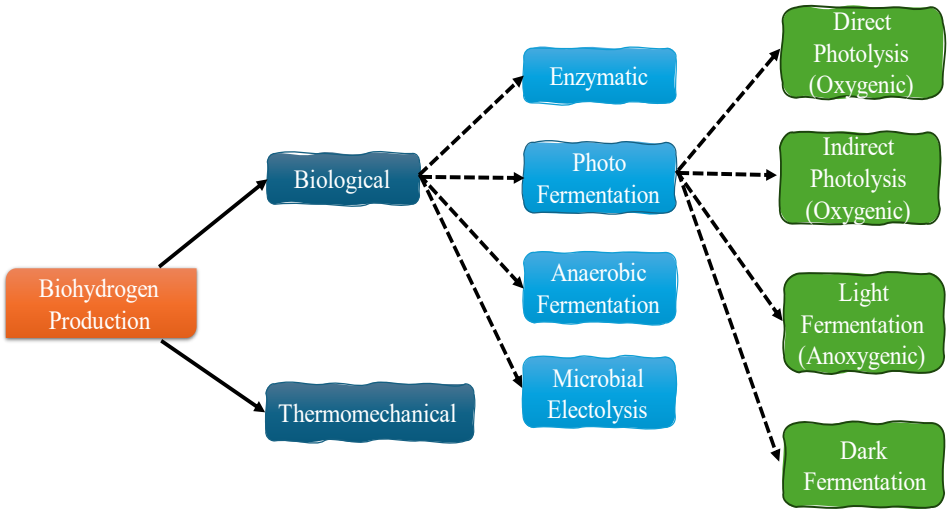


Fig 3: Production of Biofuel

Antibiotic Resistance: Challenges and Microbial Solutions

Along with tremendous progress in science, the 21st century has presented antibiotic resistance as one of the biggest challenges in global health. The abuse and irrational use of antibiotics have developed multi-drug resistance (MDR) bacteria commonly called "superbugs" bearing high resistance to most available treatments. This has various implications for public health since simple ailments that used to be cured easily have now become complex to treat (Salam et al., 2023). Most of the world's natural environments contain microbes that synthesize new bioactive compounds with antibacterial potential, which could replace current-stated antibiotics. Further, an effort to consider bacteriophages which are viruses that target and eliminate bacteria is being considered as an antibiotic substitute. Natural bacterial enemies including phages in phage therapy have offered a hopeful model to treat bacterial infections that do not respond to normal antibiotics. Furthermore, new trends in synthetic biology make it possible to create bacteria and fungi; new antimicrobial agents, and new sources in different ways, which may help to reveal the relevance of the modern problem of antibiotic resistance (Guzmán-Trampe et al., 2017).

Microbial Solutions: Addressing Environmental Challenges

Microbes can be very useful in recycling and rebirthing the life and health of our ecosystems through nutrient cycling and depollution since they possess the ability to decompose pollutants. These capabilities ensure that microbes are useful in controlling the environments used in bioremediation, treating wastewater, and treating oil spills, and heavy metals. This section introduced an understanding of the contribution of microbes in combating environmental issues and making the environment sustainable (Ahamed & Prasad, 2022).

Table 2: Different microorganisms used in bioremediation (Ayilara & Babalola, 2023)**.**

Type of organism	Species	Pollutant remediated
Bacteria	*Bacillus sonorensis and Bacillus licheniformis*	Naphthalene
	E.coli	Hexavalent chromium
	Rhodovibrio sp. Bacillus sp., and Formosa sp. Rhodopirellula sp	Hydrocarbon
	Spirulina sp., and Chlorella sp.	Nickel, Lead, and dichromate
	Bacillus sp., Shewanella sp., Pseudomonas sp., Thermus sp. and Enterobacter sp.	Chromium
	Bacillus licheniformis	Dyes
	Staphylococcus sp., and Bacillus sp.	Endosulfans
	P. aeruginosa, Fusarium sp., Alcaligenes odorans., and Corynebacterium propinquum	Oils
	Cunninghamella elegans., and Saccharomyces cerevisiae	Heavy metals and mercury
	Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Crude oil
	Spirogyra hyaline, and Cyclotella cryptica	Mercury
	A. fumigatus, Cladosporium sp., and Terichoderma sp.	Cadmium
	Corynebacterium propinquum, P. aeruginosa, and Alcaligenes odorans	Phenol
	B. cereus, P. cepacia, and B. coagulans,	Diesel oil
Fungi	*Aspergillus sp.*	N-hexadecane
	Ganoderma lucidum	Pyrene
	Phanerochaete chrysosporium	4,4 dibromodiphenyl ether
	Coprinus comatus	4-Hydroxy-3,5-dichlorobiphenyl
	Phanerochaete chrysosporium	Toluene, benzene, N-heterocyclic explosives, and xylene
	Penicillium sp., and Aspergillus sp.	polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, chlorophenols, and

		Aliphatic hydrocarbons
Algae	*Chlorococcum humicola*	Iron
	F. vesiculosus	Nickel, lead, cadmium, and Chromium,
	Microcystis aeruginosa	Cadmium
	Chlorococcum humicola	Cobalt
	Microcystis aeruginosa	Arsenic
	Fucus vesiculosus	Zinc
	Scenedesmus protuberans	Cadmium

INNOVATIVE MICROBIAL APPROACHES IN OIL SPILL CLEANUP AND HEAVY METAL DETOXIFICATION

Microbes are very significant in bioremediation and they are involved in the break up of oil slicks, and cleaning up contaminated ground that was polluted by toxic metals. Regarding oil spills, certain types of bacteria, *Alcanivorax* and *Pseudomonas*, are capable of destroying hydrocarbon in the oil and converting them into harmless substances such as CO2 and H2O (Radice et al., 2023). They are indigenous microbes of the oil-impacted site and self-sustenance is based on hydrocarbon resources. Bioremediation has also been applied in past large-scale disasters including the Exxon Valdez spill in Alaska and the recent oil leak in the Gulf of Mexico where microorganisms were focused to enhance the usual rate at which oil is degraded (Zhu et al., 2022).

Another form of environmental pollution that is on the rise is the pollution by heavy metals, which mainly originates from industrial operations including mining and processing. Some specific strains of microorganisms are capable of fixing or converting the heavy metals into forms that are less hazardous by bioleaching and biosorption. For instance, *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* is used in the bioleaching process of copper and gold while fungi for example *Aspergillus niger* remove lead and cadmium from polluted soil. This microbial intervention lowers toxicity as well as the ability of heavy metals to move and spread hence the decontamination of polluted ecosystems (Dong et al., 2023).

Microbial Strategies in the Food Industry

Microbes have been used in food production and preservation for centuries during activities such as fermentation and the production of cheese and beer among others. Fermentation is the way of preserving food but in the process, it not only develops the taste and the texture of the foods being served but also increases the shelf life and improves the nutrient value of the food being produced. This section explores the use of microbes in food and beverages with special emphasis on dairy products and food safety (Mazhar et al., 2022).

Fermentation in Food Preservation and Production

Fermentation is one of the anaerobic catabolism that involves the breakdown of carbohydrates including sugars and starch into alcohol and or organic acids through the action of microorganisms. This has been in practice for many years as a

nutritional way of preserving food, as a way of adding taste. This is mainly due to the activities of bacteria, yeasts, and molds whereby the compounds in the foods are actively fermented by these microorganisms, and the products of the fermentation process are known to suppress the growth of spoilage microorganisms (Pérez-Díaz et al., 2017).

Most fermented foods like sauerkraut, kimchi, pickles, and soy sauce use lactic acid bacteria (LAB) including *Lactobacillus* species that ferment lactic acid which has naturally occurring preservatives. Fermentation makes the food unfavorable for bacterial growth and hence helps in preserving the food and at the same time enhancing various flavor formations. Fermentation does not only preserve foods but also enriches them by making the vitamins, minerals, and enzymes available in foods more easily. Thus, many fermented foods are deemed 'probiotic' foods, which are favorable to the gut and the body (Sionek et al., 2023).

Advances in Microbial Food Safety and Spoilage Prevention

Even though microbes play a crucial role in the production of food, some microorganisms are responsible for spoilage and may lead to infections if not handled appropriately. New developments in microbial food safety are geared towards preventing the germination of pathogenic microorganisms in foods and equally extending the shelf life of foods. Technologically advanced strategies including microbial biosensors, biopreservation, and natural antimicrobial agents such as spoiling organisms and foodborne pathogens are being advanced in the food chain. Biopreservation is a process where naturally occurring antimicrobial compounds such as; bacteriocins which are produced by lactic acid bacteria are used to hamper the growth of spoilage organisms as well as pathogens (Jhandai et al., 2019). For instance, Nisin that is bacteriocin obtained from *Lactococcus lactis* is legal for use in dairy products, meats, and canned foods as well as in beverages to combat *Listeria* as well as other pathogenic bacteria (Ibrahim et al., 2021).

Other related developments that are being developed include microbial biosensors that are being developed to give online instantaneous detection of pathogenic bacteria in the food chain to signal possible contamination. These biosensors use the entire microbial cells or some of their components to detect specific pathogens, toxins, or spoilage agents to ascertain the safety of food as it transits via the processing and marketing networks (Ali et al., 2020).

Microbes in Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering

Microbes have therefore taken central roles in biotechnology and genetic engineering which have affected areas including pharmaceutical companies, crops and soils, and environmental science. This section addresses the involvement of engineered microorganisms in medical practice; the consequences of residual genomic techniques, including CRISPR; and the assembly of fresh microbial devices by synthetic biology (Pant et al., 2021).

Genetically Modified (GM) Microbes in the Pharmaceutical Industry

The application of GM microbes is beneficial to the pharmaceutical industry because it provides a way of producing important drugs, vaccines, and therapeutic proteins at a commercial scale. For the synthesis of molecular bioactive drugs involving bacteria, fungi, etc., as well as animal cells, costs incurred during drug manufacturing are minimized most of the time. Bacteria like *E.coli* were another example of recombinant organisms that were initially genetically engineered to produce insulin which is the basic unit of treating diabetes today. This method replaced the previous animal-based insulin making this process more ethical, efficient, and economical (Kapoor et al., 2020). GM microbes are also employed as vaccines, enzymes as well as monoclonal antibodies for pharma products. For instance, yeast and bacterial cells are genetically engineered to produce subunits of the hepatitis B surface antigen which is the basis of the hepatitis B vaccine. These engineered microbes can produce a large amount of necessary and useful drugs, and contribute to the resolution of the problems of the pharmaceutical industry and the construction of the concept of personal medicine.

INNOVATIONS IN RECOMBINANT DNA TECHNOLOGY: APPLICATION OF MICROBES ACROSS AGRICULTURE AND INDUSTRY

Technically, heterologous recombination also referred to as recombinant DNA or rDNA is a technology that involves the use of DNA isolated from two or more organisms to create new DNA containing specific characteristics. This forms the foundation of the development of GM organisms and has many uses in the synthesis of pharmaceuticals, food crops, and bioinformatics (Vipra et al., 2022). In agriculture, distinct Recombinant DNA technology is used for creating microorganisms that enhance plant growth, protect from pests and diseases, and also make the soil fertile. The microbes are genetically engineered to produce enzymes that can either transform the agricultural residues into biogases or remediate the contaminated soils (Pandey et al., 2021). Recombinant microbes are also employed in the synthesis of industrial enzymes that are used in biofuels, detergents, and the food industry. For instance, cellulase and amylase generated from recombinant microbes employed in the breakdown of plant biomass that funds bioenergy production enhances alacrity and efficacy (Srivastava et al., 2021).

Future Directions in Microbial Research and Technology

There are today more and more new advancements in this field of microbial research through technologies and methods that show microbial potentialities in ways that had not been expected before. Other trends include artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML), synthetic biology, microbial engineering, and other advanced production which are transforming industries in future health, agriculture, and environment segments (Bhardwaj et al., 2022). This section describes trends that are currently present in microbial-related discoveries, AI in microbial sourcing, the impending future of synthetic biology, and the likely economic implications of advanced work in these fields in future markets (Holzinger et al., 2023).

The Role of AI and ML in Microbial Discovery

Such innovations as AI and ML are producing a tremendous influence on microbial study by reducing the time for famous new microbes and bioactive compounds and their utility. Large volumes of data from real omics such as genomics, metagenomics, and proteomics are examples of big data that can be processed by AI and assist the discovery of new microbial species and estimating their functions at a faster and more efficient pace than what can be explained manually (Sahayasheela et al., 2022). ML is most significant when applied to induce regularity from microbial data and execute predictive analytics on microbes' behavior of genes' function and interactivity. AI techniques have been employed to predict changes likely to occur in synthetic microbes to display required features. For instance, there is an ability of AI models to facilitate an efficient design of microbial strains to generate biofuels, pharmaceuticals, or enzymes (Huo & Wang, 2024). It is also used in drug discovery, particularly in the detection of new antibiotics and antimicrobial compounds from microbial sources. Using Big Data, AI can identify which of the soil bacteria's genome is likely to contain the new antibiotic compounds thus expediting the discovery of new drugs to contain antibiotic-resistant bacteria (David et al., 2021).

CONCLUSION

Microbiology is the study of living things that are too small to see and is important to medicine, the environment, and human health. The field of applied microbiology is equipped with the advanced microbial toolbox to employ microbes in biotechnology, waste management, molecular medicine, food safety, and agriculture. Microorganisms are necessary for the production of biofuel, food, medication, waste management, insect repellents, soil nutrients, and plant fertilization. Production of amino acids, bioethanol, biofuel, and penicillin are just a few industries that have used microbial fermentation techniques. Antibiotics, antimicrobial agents, and probiotics are examples of microbial innovations in medicine. Microbiological contributions to vaccine manufacturing are essential for effective and safe vaccinations. Natural antimicrobial agents, biopreservation, and biosensors are improving microbiological food safety. These sectors are also being transformed by recombinant DNA technology, synthetic biology, CRISPR technology, and genetic manipulation finding their way forward with Artificial intelligence and machine learning.

REFERENCES

- Aggarwal, N., Kitano, S., Puah, G. R. Y., Kittelmann, S., Hwang, I. Y., & Chang, M. W. (2022). Microbiome and human health: current understanding, engineering, and enabling technologies. *Chemical reviews*, *123*(1), 31-72.
- Ahamed, M. I., & Prasad, R. (2022). *Application of microbes in environmental and microbial biotechnology*. Springer.
- Ali, A. A., Altemimi, A. B., Alhelfi, N., & Ibrahim, S. A. (2020). Application of biosensors for detection of pathogenic food bacteria: a review. *Biosensors*, *10*(6), 58.

- Ayilara, M. S., & Babalola, O. O. (2023). Bioremediation of environmental wastes: the role of microorganisms. *Frontiers in Agronomy*, *5*, 1183691.
- Bamforth, C. W., & Cook, D. J. (2019). *Food, fermentation, and micro-organisms*. John Wiley & Sons.
- Bardhan, P., Gupta, K., & Mandal, M. (2019). Microbes as bio-resource for sustainable production of biofuels and other bioenergy products. In *New and future developments in microbial biotechnology and bioengineering* (pp. 205-222). Elsevier.
- Bhardwaj, A., Kishore, S., & Pandey, D. K. (2022). Artificial intelligence in biological sciences. *Life*, *12*(9), 1430.
- Bhowmik, S. N., & Patil, R. T. (2018). Application of microbial biotechnology in food processing. In *Crop Improvement Through Microbial Biotechnology* (pp. 73-106). Elsevier.
- Biazzo, M., & Deidda, G. (2022). Fecal microbiota transplantation as new therapeutic avenue for human diseases. *Journal of Clinical Medicine*, *11*(14), 4119.
- Bustamante-Torres, M., Romero-Fierro, D., Estrella-Nuñez, J., Cuadros-Buenaventura, E., & Bucio, E. (2022). Application of microbes in biotechnology, industry, and medical field. *Application of microbes in environmental and microbial biotechnology*, 113-152.
- da Silva Fernandes, F., de Souza, É. S., Carneiro, L. M., Alves Silva, J. P., de Souza, J. V. B., & da Silva Batista, J. (2022). Current ethanol production requirements for the yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae. *International journal of microbiology*, *2022*(1), 7878830.
- David, L., Brata, A. M., Mogosan, C., Pop, C., Czako, Z., Muresan, L., Ismaiel, A., Dumitrascu, D. I., Leucuta, D. C., & Stanculete, M. F. (2021). Artificial intelligence and antibiotic discovery. *Antibiotics*, *10*(11), 1376.
- Dong, Y., Zan, J., & Lin, H. (2023). Bioleaching of heavy metals from metal tailings utilizing bacteria and fungi: Mechanisms, strengthen measures, and development prospect. *Journal of Environmental Management*, *344*, 118511.
- Gadd, G. M., & Sariaslani, S. (2024). *Advances in Applied Microbiology*. Elsevier.
- Garg, D., Samota, M. K., Kontis, N., Patel, N., Bala, S., & Rosado, A. S. (2023). Revolutionizing biofuel generation: Unleashing the power of CRISPR-Cas mediated gene editing of extremophiles. *Microbiological research*, *274*, 127443.
- Garg, S. (2020). Bioremediation of agricultural, municipal, and industrial wastes. In *Waste Management: Concepts, Methodologies, Tools, and Applications* (pp. 948-970). IGI Global.

- Graham, A. E., & Ledesma-Amaro, R. (2023). The microbial food revolution. *Nature Communications*, *14*(1), 2231.
- Grossart, H. P., Massana, R., McMahon, K. D., & Walsh, D. A. (2020). Linking metagenomics to aquatic microbial ecology and biogeochemical cycles. *Limnology and Oceanography*, *65*, S2-S20.
- Guzmán-Trampe, S., Ceapa, C. D., Manzo-Ruiz, M., & Sánchez, S. (2017). Synthetic biology era: Improving antibiotic's world. *Biochemical pharmacology*, *134*, 99-113.
- Guzmán-Zapata, D., Vargas-Morales, B. V., & Loyola-Vargas, V. M. (2021). From genome scissors to molecular scalpel: evolution of CRISPR systems. *Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering Reviews*, *37*(1), 82-104.
- Hofkin, B. (2017). *Living in a microbial world*. Garland Science.
- Holzinger, A., Keiblinger, K., Holub, P., Zatloukal, K., & Müller, H. (2023). AI for life: Trends in artificial intelligence for biotechnology. *New Biotechnology*, *74*, 16-24.
- Huo, D., & Wang, X. (2024). A new era in healthcare: The integration of artificial intelligence and microbial. *Medicine in Novel Technology and Devices*, 100319.
- Hussain, M. H., Mohsin, M. Z., Zaman, W. Q., Yu, J., Zhao, X., Wei, Y., Zhuang, Y., Mohsin, A., & Guo, M. (2022). Multiscale engineering of microbial cell factories: A step forward towards sustainable natural products industry. *Synthetic and systems biotechnology*, *7*(1), 586-601.
- Ibrahim, S. A., Ayivi, R. D., Zimmerman, T., Siddiqui, S. A., Altemimi, A. B., Fidan, H., Esatbeyoglu, T., & Bakhshayesh, R. V. (2021). Lactic acid bacteria as antimicrobial agents: Food safety and microbial food spoilage prevention. *Foods*, *10*(12), 3131.
- Javed, M. U., Hayat, M. T., Mukhtar, H., & Imre, K. (2023). CRISPR-Cas9 system: A prospective pathway toward combatting antibiotic resistance. *Antibiotics*, *12*(6), 1075.
- Jhandai, P., Jadhav, V. J., & Gupta, R. (2019). Bio-preservation of foods: A review. *European Journal of Nutrition & Food Safety*, *11*(4), 164-174.
- Jiménez-Díaz, V., Pedroza-Rodríguez, A. M., Ramos-Monroy, O., & Castillo-Carvajal, L. C. (2022). Synthetic biology: a new era in hydrocarbon bioremediation. *Processes*, *10*(4), 712.
- Kapoor, D., Sharma, P., Sharma, M. M. M., Kumari, A., & Kumar, R. (2020). Microbes in pharmaceutical industry. *Microbial diversity, interventions and scope*, 259-299.

- Katz, L., Chen, Y. Y., Gonzalez, R., Peterson, T. C., Zhao, H., & Baltz, R. H. (2018). Synthetic biology advances and applications in the biotechnology industry: a perspective. *Journal of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*, *45*(7), 449-461.
- Khaliq, A., Perveen, S., Alamer, K. H., Zia Ul Haq, M., Rafique, Z., Alsudays, I. M., Althobaiti, A. T., Saleh, M. A., Hussain, S., & Attia, H. (2022). Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi symbiosis to enhance plant–soil interaction. *Sustainability*, *14*(13), 7840.
- Koppolu, V., & Vasigala, V. K. (2016). Role of Escherichia coli in biofuel production. *Microbiology insights*, *9*, MBI. S10878.
- KV, N. S. (2022). Applications of Microbes in Food Industry. *Application of microbes in environmental and microbial biotechnology*, 323-338.
- Long, P. E., Williams, K. H., Hubbard, S. S., & Banfield, J. F. (2016). Microbial metagenomics reveals climate-relevant subsurface biogeochemical processes. *Trends in microbiology*, *24*(8), 600-610.
- Mandel, G. N., & Marchant, G. E. (2014). The living regulatory challenges of synthetic biology. *Iowa L. Rev.*, *100*, 155.
- Mardanov, A. V., Kadnikov, V. V., & Ravin, N. V. (2018). Metagenomics: A paradigm shift in microbiology. In *Metagenomics* (pp. 1-13). Elsevier.
- Martinez Ortega, A. (2015). Most significant biotechnological improvements on the production process of wine, beer and bread.
- Maurya, D. K., Kumar, A., Chaurasiya, U., Hussain, T., & Singh, S. K. (2021). Modern era of microbial biotechnology: opportunities and future prospects. In *Microbiomes and plant health* (pp. 317-343). Elsevier.
- Mazhar, S., Yasmeen, R., Chaudhry, A., Summia, K., Ibrar, M., Amjad, S., & Ali, E. (2022). Role of Microbes in Modern Food Industry. *International Journal of Innovations in Science and Technology*, *4*(1), 65-77.
- Mehta, P., Sahil, K., Sarao, L. K., Jangra, M., & Bhardwaj, S. (2023). Algal biofuels: clean energy to combat the climate change. In *Basic Research Advancement for Algal Biofuels Production* (pp. 187-210). Springer.
- Milani, C., Duranti, S., Bottacini, F., Casey, E., Turroni, F., Mahony, J., Belzer, C., Delgado Palacio, S., Arboleya Montes, S., & Mancabelli, L. (2017). The first microbial colonizers of the human gut: composition, activities, and health implications of the infant gut microbiota. *Microbiology and molecular biology reviews*, *81*(4), 10.1128/mmbr. 00036-00017.
- Mudzanani, K., Van Heerden, E., Mbhele, R., & Daramola, M. O. (2021). Enhancement of biogas production via co-digestion of wastewater treatment

sewage sludge and brewery spent grain: Physicochemical characterization and microbial community. *Sustainability*, *13*(15), 8225.

- Munawar, N., & Ahmad, A. (2021). CRISPR/Cas system: an introduction. *CRISPR Crops: The Future of Food Security*, 1-35.
- Murugaiyan, J., Kumar, P. A., Rao, G. S., Iskandar, K., Hawser, S., Hays, J. P., Mohsen, Y., Adukkadukkam, S., Awuah, W. A., & Jose, R. A. M. (2022). Progress in alternative strategies to combat antimicrobial resistance: Focus on antibiotics. *Antibiotics*, *11*(2), 200.
- Mushtaq, M., Ahmad Dar, A., Skalicky, M., Tyagi, A., Bhagat, N., Basu, U., Bhat, B. A., Zaid, A., Ali, S., & Dar, T.-U.-H. (2021). CRISPR-based genome editing tools: Insights into technological breakthroughs and future challenges. *Genes*, *12*(6), 797.
- Oguh, C., Okpaka, C., Ubani, C., Okekeaji, U., Joseph, P. S., & Amadi, E. (2019). Natural pesticides (biopesticides) and uses in pest management-a critical review. *Asian Journal of Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering*, *2*(3), 1-18.
- Pandey, S. (2021). Recombinant DNA Technology for Sustainable Plant Growth and Production. *Harsh Environment and Plant Resilience: Molecular and Functional Aspects*, 99-120.
- Pant, G., Garlapati, D., Agrawal, U., Prasuna, R. G., Mathimani, T., & Pugazhendhi, A. (2021). Biological approaches practised using genetically engineered microbes for a sustainable environment: a review. *Journal of Hazardous Materials*, *405*, 124631.
- Pepper, I., Gerba, C. P., Gentry, T., & Maier, R. M. (2011). *Environmental microbiology*. Academic press.
- Pérez-Díaz, I. M., Altuntas, E. G., & Juneja, V. K. (2017). Microbial fermentation in food preservation. *Microbial Control and Food Preservation: Theory and Practice*, 281-298.
- Pete, A. J. (2022). *Bioremediation of Petroleum-Based Contaminants by Alkane-Degrading Bacterium Alcanivorax Borkumensis* Louisiana State University and Agricultural & Mechanical College].
- Peters, J., & Stoger, E. (2011). Transgenic crops for the production of recombinant vaccines and anti-microbial antibodies. *Human Vaccines*, *7*(3), 367-374.
- Radice, R. P., De Fabrizio, V., Donadoni, A., Scopa, A., & Martelli, G. (2023). Crude oil bioremediation: From bacteria to microalgae. *Processes*, *11*(2), 442.
- Rani, D., & Soni, S. (2007). Applications and commercial uses of microorganisms. *Microbes: a source of energy for 21st century*, 71-126.

- Sahayasheela, V. J., Lankadasari, M. B., Dan, V. M., Dastager, S. G., Pandian, G. N., & Sugiyama, H. (2022). Artificial intelligence in microbial natural product drug discovery: current and emerging role. *Natural product reports*, *39*(12), 2215-2230.
- Salam, M. A., Al-Amin, M. Y., Salam, M. T., Pawar, J. S., Akhter, N., Rabaan, A. A., & Alqumber, M. A. (2023). Antimicrobial resistance: a growing serious threat for global public health. Healthcare,
- Sharma, D., Gahtyari, N. C., Chhabra, R., & Kumar, D. (2020). Role of microbes in improving plant growth and soil health for sustainable agriculture. *Advances in Plant Microbiome and Sustainable Agriculture: Diversity and Biotechnological Applications*, 207-256.
- Sionek, B., Szydłowska, A., Küçükgöz, K., & Kołożyn-Krajewska, D. (2023). Traditional and new microorganisms in lactic acid fermentation of food. *Fermentation*, *9*(12), 1019.
- Snow, A. A., Andow, D. A., Gepts, P., Hallerman, E. M., Power, A., Tiedje, J. M., & Wolfenbarger, L. (2005). Genetically engineered organisms and the environment: Current status and recommendations 1. *Ecological Applications*, *15*(2), 377-404.
- Sriram, G. Applications of Synthetic Biology in Microbial Biotechnology, 2018.
- Srivastava, R. K., Shetti, N. P., Reddy, K. R., Kwon, E. E., Nadagouda, M. N., & Aminabhavi, T. M. (2021). Biomass utilization and production of biofuels from carbon neutral materials. *Environmental Pollution*, *276*, 116731.
- Taş, N., de Jong, A. E., Li, Y., Trubl, G., Xue, Y., & Dove, N. C. (2021). Metagenomic tools in microbial ecology research. *Current Opinion in Biotechnology*, *67*, 184-191.
- Tijjani, A., Bashir, K., Mohammed, I., Muhammad, A., Gambo, A., & Musa, H. (2016). Biopesticides for pests control: A review. *Journal of Biopesticides and Agriculture*, *3*(1), 6-13.
- Verma, R., Annapragada, H., Katiyar, N., Shrutika, N., Das, K., & Murugesan, S. (2020). Rhizobium. In *Beneficial microbes in agro-ecology* (pp. 37-54). Elsevier.
- Vipra, M., Patil, N., & Sivaram, A. (2022). Applications of recombinant DNA technology. In *A Complete Guide to Gene Cloning: From Basic to Advanced* (pp. 143-157). Springer.
- Waryah, C. B., Moses, C., Arooj, M., & Blancafort, P. (2018). Zinc fingers, TALEs, and CRISPR systems: a comparison of tools for epigenome editing. *Epigenome editing: methods and protocols*, 19-63.

- Xia, P.-F., Ling, H., Foo, J. L., & Chang, M. W. (2019). Synthetic genetic circuits for programmable biological functionalities. *Biotechnology advances*, *37*(6), 107393.
- Yadav, A. N., Suyal, D. C., Kour, D., Rajput, V. D., Rastegari, A. A., & Singh, J. (2022). Bioremediation and waste management for environmental sustainability. *Journal of Applied Biology and Biotechnology*, *10*(2), 1-5.
- Zeng, Q., Qiu, F., & Yuan, L. (2008). Production of artemisinin by genetically-modified microbes. *Biotechnology letters*, *30*, 581-592.
- Zhang, Y., Nielsen, J., & Liu, Z. (2021). Yeast based biorefineries for oleochemical production. *Current Opinion in Biotechnology*, *67*, 26-34.
- Zhu, Z., Merlin, F., Yang, M., Lee, K., Chen, B., Liu, B., Cao, Y., Song, X., Ye, X., & Li, Q. K. (2022). Recent advances in chemical and biological degradation of spilled oil: a review of dispersants application in the marine environment. *Journal of Hazardous Materials*, *436*, 129260.

CHAPTER- 10

MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY FOR FOOD PRODUCTION: A SUSTAINABLE FUTURE

[1]Arooj Fatima, [1]Areeba Shafiq, [5]Sofia Kashif, [2]Urwah Ishaque, [2]Sadia Zubair, [3]Mariam Anjum, [4]Zeeshan Arif, [3]Tajwar Mustafa, [1]Hafsa Munir and [1]Muhammad Ahsan

[1]Department of Microbiology, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[2]Department of Zoology, The Government Sadiq College Women University, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[3]Department of Food Science, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[4]Faculty of Veterinary Sciences, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur,

[5]Department of Biochemistry, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15526819

ABSTRACT

The use of technology to make sustainable food products using microorganisms is known as microbial biotechnology. Microbes, including fungus, bacteria, and yeast, are an important part of the environment and aid in the generation of food through various processes, including fermentation. Fermentation is the gradual breakdown of organic materials caused by enzymes or microbes, which converts carbs into organic acids or alcohols. It converts bigger organic molecules, like glucose, into alcohol and releases energy. Environmental reclamation is greatly impacted by microbial biotechnology. The preparation techniques for several ancient fermented meals were frequently unknown and were passed down as family customs to succeeding generations. The earliest food preservation techniques frequently involve the fermentation processes of drying and salting. While most fermentation methods benefit from the presence of microbes, others may increase the risk of food contamination and food-borne illnesses.

Increasingly, molecular genetic techniques-based diagnostic approaches are being used in underdeveloped nations since they improve the sensitivity and speed of microbiological tests. Microbial biotechnology finds various uses in the producing food (including drinks) derived from dairy, horticulture, animal husbandry, and agriculture. This chapter covers biotechnological tools and resources that can be used to study and develop microorganisms that have the potential to improve food quality, safety, and consistency; increase production efficiency of food ingredients, food additives, and food processing aids (enzymes); diversify the fermentation

process' outputs; and, lastly, enhance food-related diagnostic and identification systems.

Key words: missing

INTRODUCTION

The majority of life on Earth is made up of microbes, both in quantity and overall biomass. Since they were the first living things on Earth, they have undergone significant evolution and now display a range of functional, evolutionary, and metabolic variety that is much beyond that of any other species in the Tree of Life. The habitats of certain microorganisms determine the boundaries of the biosphere and the biosphere-geosphere boundary because they may live in harsh conditions that are inhospitable to most other forms of life (Stan-Lotter 2017). Microbes can withstand harsh environmental conditions; it is possible that they helped life—and consequently the biosphere—recover from the major natural disasters that occurred on Earth and led to the mass extinctions. For example, deep-sea microbes were likely mostly shielded from the damaging heat or cold waves in the atmosphere and were able to endure for extended periods without light (Yayanos 1995). In many ways, microbes represent both our history and our future. All other species have surfaces covered with microbes, which can even inhabit internal or intracellular niches in certain cases. Microbes affect various physiological functions in their hosts, such as feeding, health, disease status, and overall well-being (Turroni, Milani et al. 2020).

An organism's microbiome is the collection of its microbial flora. Food animals' and agricultural plants' microbiomes control productivity, which controls the amount and quality of food produced worldwide. We learn that the human microbiome, sometimes referred to as a human organ (Ricke, Hacker et al. 2018), plays a major role in our well-being when their normally benign networked activities are disrupted, as is the case when antibiotic treatment is administered. The intestinal microbiota in particular provides a multitude of metabolic and physiological services(Candela, Biagi et al. 2015).

Since the beginning of human civilization, microbial activity and products have been used to benefit humanity (the creation of beer, and cheese including fermented milk products, bread, wine, etc.). The 1970s gene technology revolution signaled the beginning of a quantum qualitative and quantitative growth in microbial technologies, even though their scope expanded over time (Shaver and Shaver 2018). A combination of factors will accelerate access to new microbial diversity over the next several decades, especially through increased biosphere exploration, (meta)genomics approaches, the discovery as well experimental establishment of novel kinds of metabolism and metabolic routes, new advancements in analytical techniques, instrumentation and miniaturization (e.g., microfluidics), and growing systems and synthetic biology development and application (Zarraonaindia, Smith et al. 2013).

The need for various new and improved goods and processes related to food manufacturing and security, environmental protection, and sustainable energy

supplies will drive innovation in addition to technological advancements (Silvestre and Ţîrcă 2019). These demands originate in the social, medical, and commercial domains. Research on microbiomes and their effects on human health, nutrition, and disease is accelerating the development of innovative microbial applied paradigms in therapeutic and prevention measures (Chauhan and Kumar 2023). Multidisciplinary research is also producing new data on plant and agricultural microbiomes, and this data has great potential for enhanced farm profitability and production as well as sustainable nutrition and disease management (Fig. 1).

Recent years have witnessed a significant increase in environmental microbiology study due to the wide range of unknown diversity of microbes and the ubiquitous influence of microbial activities on biosphere functioning, human endeavors, and wellness. Even with this increased effort, approximately 90% of the variety of microbes is still unknown. A wealth of novel and enhanced biotechnological advancements and applications in the fields of chemicals, medicines, energy, mining, materials, agriculture, food, and environmental protection may be found in this new biodiversity (Anand, Vaishnav et al. 2022).

Therefore, the remarkable breadth of human activities and requirements that microbial technology may be used for, as well as the amazing diversity of applications that it can handle, makes it distinctive and nearly unique (Council, Earth et al. 2007). Microbial innovation has the potential to significantly contribute on many levels. In many domains to global attempts to attain sustainability, precisely because the objectives of sustainability have extremely varied and complicated components and needs (Fig. 1). It is possible to see microbial technology as a unifying factor in our advancement towards sustainability (Aguilar, Twardowski et al. 2019).

Nonetheless, individual microbiological application areas and action in the various attempts toward sustainable development are often seen as isolated entities rather than as linked and dependent parts of a landscape continuum (Caporali 2011). This chapter stated purpose is to proactively foster innovation in applied microbiology and the application of discoveries for the benefit of humanity.

We must emphasize with all humility that the range of opportunities offered in this chapter is only a glimpse of the topic's potential to promote sustainable development since new applications in the extremely field of microbial biotechnology are being discovered and improved upon almost every week.

IMPORTANCE OF SUSTAINABLE FOOD PRODUCTION

Microorganisms are a logical source of a broad range of enzymes for application in food and other biotechnological systems due to their biochemical diversity. Microorganisms that have undergone genetic modification are more capable of producing enzymes, perhaps including those derived from mammals (Taylor and Richardson 1979). Furthermore, microbial enzymes are becoming increasingly competitive due to advancements in methods of producing and purifying enzymes,

such as affinity chromatography. As a result, there are countless opportunities to produce microbial enzymes that can catalyze almost any desired process. Less than 20 of the 2000 known enzymes are now meaning full for commercial purposes. The total industrial value of all enzymes employed in food processing and biotechnology now is only $60 million in the US (DiCosimo, McAuliffe et al. 2013).

For various reasons, additional and distinct microbial enzymes are required. Food enzymologists utilize various enzymes to take advantage of new food sources and develop food technology. Organic chemists utilize enzymes to catalyze certain stereochemical reactions, such those that result in medicine manufacturing. Enzymes are being used more and more in medicine as therapeutic agents(Mu, Wang et al. 2020). Most of these necessary enzymes will most likely be provided by microorganisms. Enzyme-based applications gain from emerging technology. Immobilization which might lower expenses and improve processing effectiveness. Enzyme immobilization onto certain electrodes enables sensitive, fast, and targeted analysis of natural products like urea and glucose. For some disorders, enzyme immobilization in vivo or ex vivo may be helpful (Taylor and Richardson 1979).

Currently, some types of bacteria, yeasts, and molds are utilized as sources of enzymes for food preparation. The three most practical, well-known, and secure microbial sources of enzymes are *Aspergillus oryzae, Aspergillus niger, and Bacillus subtilis*. Modern fermentation methods enable the regulated and repeatable synthesis of infinite amounts of microbial enzymes. Erickson has talked about the large-scale synthesis of microbial enzymes (personal communication) (Priyadarshini and Pandey 2018). Enzyme preparations made by two yeasts, two fungi, one bacterium, and one other microorganism have been categorized by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as generally accepted as safe (GRAS) (Table 2). The bulk of the enzymes required are generated by each of the aspergilli species. The most prevalent types of enzymes involve those that break breakdown proteins or carbs (Bennett 2007). The FDA has authorized several additional microorganisms as sources for enzyme preparations that can be used in food (Table 1). These enzyme preparations have a unique use, a remarkable yield, or a desired stability that makes them beneficial. Two notably successful products in the market are the fungus rennet’s and Streptomyces sp.'s glucose isomerase (Welsh, Murray et al. 1989). High-fructose syrup is made from cornstarch using glucose isomerase, and fungus rennet rapidly replacing the decreasing amount of calf rennet in cheese making (Saxena, Gupta et al. 2001). Perhaps the need to prove the healthfulness and purity of enzymes derived from organisms not generally regarded as safe (GHAS) is a barrier to the broader deployment of enzymes produced by bacteria in food systems. It is expensive and time-consuming to petition the FDA for authorization for the desired usage(Crippa 2023).

Table 1 Sources of Microbial Enzymes For Food Use: Non"Gras" Organisms

Microorganism	Enzymes
Mucor miehi, M.Pusillus var.Lindt	Rennets
Escherichia coli	Lactase
Streptomyces sp.	Glucose isomerase
Rhizopus spp.	Amylase, Glucoamylase and lipase
Bacillus Licheniformis	Catalase
Saccharomyces Lactis	Lactase

Table 2 Sources of Microbial Enzymes for food use: "gras" organisms

Microorganism	Enzymes
Bacillus subtilis	Amylase (high temperature), neutral protease, alkaline protease
Aspergillus wyzae,	Amylase, glucoamylase, protease, lactase, acid protease, catalase,
Saccharomyces cereoisiae	Invertase
Kluyoeromyces fragilis	Lactase

ROLE OF MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY IN SUSTAINABLE FOOD SYSTEMS

For thousands of years, people have used microorganisms to manufacture products like bread, beer, and wine. A second phase of traditional microbial biotechnology was started during World War I, which resulted in the fermentations of acetone-butanol and glycerol (El-Mansi 2018). Processes that produced vitamins, antibiotics, and citric acid, among other things, accomplished this. Molecular biology and traditional industrial microbiology were merged in the early 1970s to produce over 40 biopharmaceutical medications, such as erythropoietin, human growth hormone, and interferons. Modern international commerce heavily relies on microbiology, especially in the food, chemical, and pharmaceutical industries (Walsh 1999).

Bread baking and other food preparation processes have long made use of microbial biotechnology. However, as modern biotechnology advances, microbial metabolites—even their genes or genomes—have the potential to be applied in the food processing sector, namely in the areas of food fermentation, ingredients, enzymes, food testing, and postharvest management of horticultural crops (Pedrosa, Lima et al. 2021). However, the selection and improvement of microorganisms to boost yields, efficiency, and manufacturing control, as well as the reliability, caliber, and safety of bioprocessed goods, is the aim of the application of microbe-based biotechnology in the food processing industry (Bindu, Bhadra et al. 2024).

The phrase "microorganism" or "microbe" refers to a class of microscopic living things, which includes molds, yeasts, and bacteria (Sciences 2001). An essential component of the processing mechanism in the making of fermented foods is

microorganisms. Enhancing microbial cultures by conventional and molecular methods is possible, and enhancing bacteria, yeasts, and molds is a popular topic of study in academia and industry.

MICROBIAL PROCESSES IN FOOD PRODUCTION

Fermentation process

Through the action of microbes, fermentation is a process that aids in the breakdown of big organic molecules into simpler ones. For instance, protein is transformed into peptides and amino acids by yeast enzymes, whereas sugar and starches are turned into alcohol.

Fermenting microorganisms involves *Lactobacillus, Enterococcus, streptococcus, penicillium,* and *Rhizopus* (Sharma, Garg et al. 2020).

TYPES OF FERMENTATION PROCESS

Alcohol fermentation; is a method wherein yeast, which is a common organism, ferments wine to make ethanol (wine beer)

Lactic acid fermentation; is mainly the work of lactic acid bacteria that occur in mil products.

Acetic acid fermentation; is a process in which *Acetobacter* converts alcohol to acetic acid in the presence of oxygen.

Alkali fermentation; takes place during fresh poultry egg, and fish.

Bio preservation and Biocontrol; the application of non-pathogenic bacteria and their metabolites to extend food's shelf life and increase microbiological safety.

Antibiotics and native microbiota are used in bio preservation. Fermentation is among the most prevalent types (Nath, Chowdhury et al. 2014).

Bacillus Bio preservatives; *Bacillus spp*., like lactic acid bacteria have been used for 100 years in making foods and enzymes for food processing (Nath, Chowdhury et al. 2014).

BIOCONTROL METHODS

Physical methods: Include high heat pressure, ultraviolet radiation, high preservation,

Chemical methods: Chemicals, essential oils, etc (Linares-Morales, Gutiérrez-Méndez et al. 2018).

Table 3 Microbial production of food ingredients (enzymes)

Source	enzymes	Microorganisms	
Yeast	Invertase	saccharomyces cerevisiae	(Underkofler, Barton et al. 1958)
Bacterial	Amylase, penicillinase	bacillus	(Underkofler, Barton et al. 1958)
Fungal	Amylase,protease, catalase	Aspergillus oryzae amd niger	(Underkofler, Barton et al. 1958)

SINGLE CELL PRODUCTION

Various microorganisms are used to produce single cell production. Yeast is suitable for SCP due to its nutritional quality. Bacteria, fungi. and algae also produced SCP (Suman, Nupur et al. 2015).

APPLICATION OF MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY IN THE FOOD INDUSTRY

Dairy products like milk

The primary carbohydrate in milk is lactose. Along with magnesium and calcium, lactose can promote the combination of minerals. Lipid material in milk is used to carry fat-soluble vitamins A, C, and E (Sundarraj, Rajathi et al. 2018).

APPLICATIONS IN DAIRY PRODUCTS

Recombinant bovine; Recombinant vaccines , DNA fingerprinting , Animal cloning, Gene forming

Dairy processing; probiotics, convincing milk through genetic engineering**,** dairy enzymes

By-products waste from the milk industry; biomass, bioplastic, and biofuels (Sundarraj, Rajathi et al. 2018).

Fermented beverages

The production of organic acids and alcohol during fermentation makes it useful for preserving food. Anaerobic fermentation of sugar results in the production of CO2 and ethanol. Elevated ethanol concentrations damage lipid and fatty acid production and integrity. A crucial stage in the creation of vinegar, beer, and a wine is fermentation. Alcoholic and lactic fermentation are the two most often used types of food fermentation (Alkaline and malolactic) (Vinicius De Melo Pereira, De Carvalho Neto et al. 2020). In wine, the former is significant. For wine to remain stable over time, aging involves converting malic acid into lactic acid and CO2 (Volschenk, Van Vuuren et al. 2006) (Fig 1).

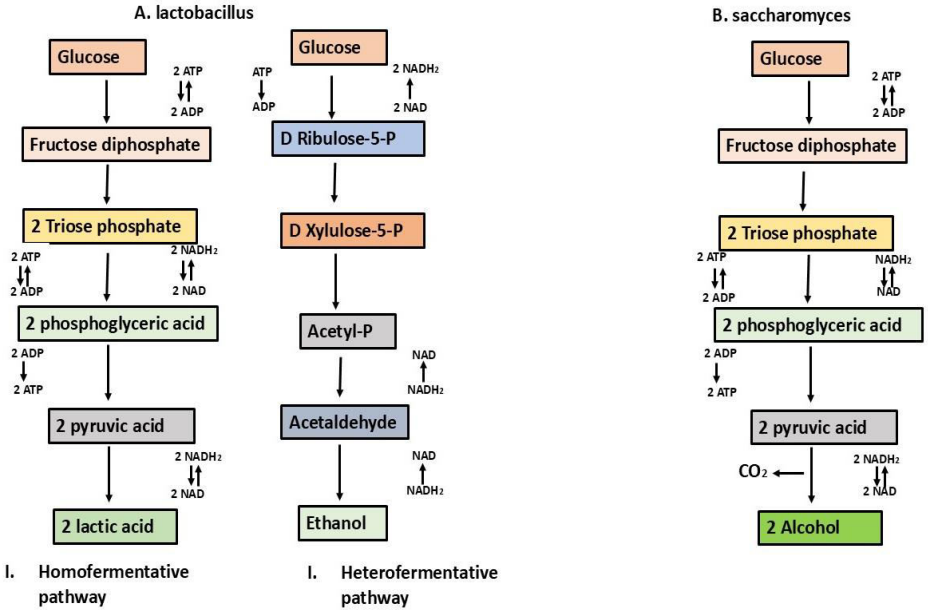


Figure 4 Fermentation path paways i) Homofermentative ii) Hetrofermentative

Bakery products

Bakery products and cereals are valuable sources of our food calories and protein requirements. Bakery products are affected by microorganisms.

Bacterial spoilage

Bacteria have the potential to contaminate baked products. e.g bacillus

Yeast spoilage

Two types of yeast affect baked products (i.e., visible yeast and non-visible) e. g saccharomyces cerevisiae (Saranraj and Geetha 2012).

Seafoods

Food components with a marine foundation can come from many sources, including sponges, microbes, and marine plants. Omega 3 fatty acids, found in seafood like fish, are good for your health. Salmonella, vibrio spp., and other foodborne pathogens are present in fish and seafood.

Plant based alternatives

Plant-based fermentation is intriguing since vegetables are a source of vital nutrients including vitamins, minerals, and antioxidants, and is ideal for lactose intolerant or allergy-prone individuals. Food is impacted by Pseudomonas species in plants (Wuyts, Van Beeck et al. 2020).

SUSTAINABILITY ASPECTS OF MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY

Utilizing microorganisms to generate products and services is known as microbial biotechnology, and it presents a viable path toward sustainable food production. We can create novel solutions to urgent global issues like resource depletion,

environmental degradation, and food security by utilizing the power of microbes. The sustainability of microbial biotechnology is examined in this area with particular attention on decreased environmental impact, increased food safety and quality, improved resource efficiency, ethical issues, and social issues (Bennett, Chi-Ham et al. 2013).

Reduced Environmental Impact

There is a chance that microbial biotechnology will drastically reduce the environmental impact of food production. Energy consumption is one important area where this technology can have a good effect. Fossil fuels are frequently used extensively during conventional food production methods for refrigeration, processing, and transportation. Conversely, microbial activity could exist in relatively low temperatures that would cost less energy. For instance, microbial fermentation-produced biofuels can fulfill part for the demand of fossil fuels employed in transportation (Shahid, Batool et al. 2021). Besides, microbial biotechnology can alleviate pollution problems as well because it can also improve the cycles of waste management. If food waste and agricultural wastes are used to support microbial actions, then such wastes can be minimized from fill, and instead, be converted as useful products. This cuts down wastage and supports resource conservation as well as decreases the emission of some greenhouse gases through decomposition (Singh & Singh 2022).

Improved Resource Efficiency

Microbial biotechnology has presented the chances for increasing resource utilization in food production. In targeting consumers, one sees it deemed fit to incorporate agricultural by-products into production. Agro and food processing wastes which include animal dung, agricultural residues, and food manufacturing waste are some of the by-products that are either dumped or utilized improperly. Resource productivity can also be improved and virgin resources' demand minimized by applying microorganisms in transforming waste products into valuable products, such as animal feed or biofuels (Lohri, Diener et al. 2017).

Also, microbial technology can utilize water at a better efficiency at a lesser cost than conventional technology. Water intensive pre- farming practices are practiced in arid or semi-arid areas. Precision fermentation and hydroponics have the potential to decrease water usage, and hence enhance water productivity among the microbial based technologies. Also, microbial biotechnology can improve the utility of water more efficiently and economically. Irrigational farmer practices that require substantial water are prominent in arid or semi-arid areas. Precision fermentation and hydroponics can be implemented to save water and increase water productivity while microbial-based products can cut down water usage (Golla 2021).

Enhanced Food Safety and Quality

It can also be seen that microbial biotechnology has great potential in the conception and functioning of measures which can guarantee the safety and quality of foods. GM microorganisms can be cultured to produce natural enzymes or anti-bacterial agents

that enhance food preservation or decrease the chances of food-borne diseases. For instance, it is possible, with the help of genetically modified yeast strains, to evoke the secretion of enzymes that might hydrolyze toxic compounds in nutrients.

In addition, microbial biotechnology could be employed to enhance the nutritional quality of food products. Microorganisms can produce the required vitamins, minerals and other beneficial chemicals which can be incorporated into foods. This can assist in eradicating issues to do with starvation and enhance the general upbeat angle of dishes.

ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS AND SOCIAL IMPACTS

Nonetheless, scientific and technological advances in microbial biotechnology look very promising; however, the ethical or the social costs should not be overlooked. Of these, the most worrisome is that it leads to the emergence of antibiotic-resistant bacteria or lets free into the environment such influential beings as genetically modified organisms. To decrease these risks, there should be more authoritative control and assessments of the risks.

Its effects on society must be taken into account, crucial to all microbial biotechnology. Because innovative products derived from microbes are being developed and promoted could potentially bring about economic and social impacts on many stakeholders ranging from the farmers, the consumers, and the whole communities' point of view. Mitigating the risks or sharing the costs unequally, and maximizing the returns on microbial biotechnology have to be managed.

Thus, microbial biotechnology seems to offer the possibility of a sustainable method of food production. Another benefit of this technology, that environmentally friendly means, better quality and safer food, optimal resource utilization, and handling of moral and social issues may lead to better and stronger food systems. The future is greatly promising in this field of research and development as we may anticipate even higher rates of innovativeness and advantages in the future decades.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES AND CHALLENGES

Emerging Trends in Microbial Biotechnology for Food Production

The aimed microbial biotechnology the use of microorganisms to produce various products is expected to bring a revolution in the food production and processing industry. Future food production will be impacted by the following emerging trends:

Synthetic biology: By using the aforementioned technologies, it may be feasible to create new biological systems in which specific microbes may be cultivated for specific uses. For instance, synthetic biologists are creating new goods or bacterial enzymes to enhance the food's safety, quality, and nutritional content.(Sharma, Gupta et al. 2021).

CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing: Using this form of editing of genes the microbes are being altered for specific uses in the food processing industry. Scientists can increase the effectiveness of microbial activities, decrease waste, and produce more

sustainably produced food items by introducing certain genetic modifications (Hume, Whitelaw et al. 2011).

Precision fermentation: Precision fermentation: This technique produces specific compounds by meticulously controlling the bacteria' fermentation process in bioreactors. Precision fermentation is gaining popularity as a way to produce alternative proteins like plant-based meat and milk alternatives, as well as essential components like vitamins, minerals, and omega-3 fatty acids (Augustin, Hartley et al. 2024).

Gut microbiome engineering: The comprehension of the microbiome of humans has prompted endeavors to modify microbial communities for enhanced well-being and capacity to tolerate certain foods. Scientists want to improve general digestive health, lessen food allergies, and improve nutrient absorption by adding new beneficial microbes or altering already existing ones (Sirisinha 2016).

RESEARCH NEEDS AND TECHNOLOGICAL ADVANCEMENTS

More investigation and technical developments are needed in a few areas of research to fully exploit bacterial biotechnology in food production:

Metabolic engineering: Getting the most out of microbial metabolism is essential to producing desired molecules efficiently. Scientists are working on metabolic pathway engineering that maximizes yields while minimizing byproducts, using computational techniques and experimental methodologies (Rangel, Gómez Ramírez et al. 2020).

High-throughput screening: Effective screening techniques are necessary to find microorganisms with the qualities that are desired. Novel strains are being discovered and characterized more quickly thanks to the development of automation and sophisticated analytical methods (Sandrin, Goldstein et al. 2013).

Up-scaling and process optimization: There are financial, energy-efficient, and quality-related obstacles when transferring microbial procedures from lab to industrial settings. To assure economic viability, research is concentrated on creating bioreactors that are scalable and on improving fermentation conditions (Rastogi 2011).

Cost reduction: The price of applying microbial biotechnology to produce food items may prevent them from becoming widely accepted. This way, improved strain engineering, scale advantages, and operational efficiencies are being pursued to reduce the cost of manufacturing (Lee and Kim 2015).

Regulatory and Policy Issues

Due to the establishment of microbial biotechnology in the food industries, there needs to be a strict regulation of safety and quality. Important policy and regulatory concerns include:

Food safety: To justify the use of microbial biotechnology food safety measures have to be put in place. It will be necessary to establish the requirements for evaluating the

safety left by genetically modified microorganisms and the goods created from them by the regulatory agencies.

Labeling: This means that content labels have to be clear and specific enough so that the consumer can make the right decision. A set of labeling policies that would provide an actual picture of the use of microbe-based biotechnology in food production must be established by the regulators (Raghu, Kumar et al. 2013).

Intellectual property: Thus, legal protection in microbial biotechnology investment and research requires special Intellectual property protection. Strict rules about patents and licensing are one of the requirements for stimulating the research activity.

International trade: There is a need to ensure that countries that regulate the use of microbial biotechnology in the production of various food products align their regulatory regulations. Thus, international cooperation is needed to ensure consistent rules and procedures under which such work is to be done (Mukherjee, Gómez-Sala et al., 2022).

CONSUMER ACCEPTANCE AND MARKET POTENTIAL

Consumer acceptance is an indispensable component in commercializing microbial biotechnology food products. Factors influencing consumer acceptance include:

Perception of safety: Customers need to believe that microbial biotechnology is secure and helpful. Outreach and education initiatives can help debunk myths and foster confidence(Jimenez, Gamble-George et al. 2022).

Nutritional value: The nutritional value of food items is attracting more and more attention from consumers. Meals with better nutritional properties, such as more protein or vitamins and minerals, can be generated using microbial biotechnology (Matassa, Boon et al. 2016).

Taste and texture: A food product's sensory qualities are essential to its adoption by consumers. The goal of research and development is to produce goods generated from microbial biotechnology that satisfy consumer standards for appearance, texture, and flavor(PF Guiné, CD Ramalhosa et al. 2016).

Sustainability: The effects of food production on the environment are coming to consumer attention. Microbial biotechnology may help with sustainable issues including cutting back on waste production, using less water and land, and lowering greenhouse gas emissions (Akinsemolu 2018).

CONCLUSION

Microbial biotechnology has the potential to revolutionize the food sector by providing creative answers to urgent problems in food security, sustainability, and nutrition. It offers a promising future for the food industry. This field has the potential to create new functional meals, improve food safety and quality, and transform food production methods by using microbes. However, it is vital to handle important factors including customer acceptability, regulatory compliance, continuous research, and evolving trends in order to fully fulfill its potential. Microbial

biotechnology can open the door to a more secure, wholesome, and sustainable food future by addressing these issues.

REFERENCES

- Aguilar, A., et al. (2019). "Bioeconomy for sustainable development." Biotechnology Journal **14**(8): 1800638.
- Akinsemolu, A. A. (2018). "The role of microorganisms in achieving the sustainable development goals." Journal of cleaner production **182**: 139-155.
- Anand, U., et al. (2022). "Current advances and research prospects for agricultural and industrial uses of microbial strains available in world collections." Science of The Total Environment **842**: 156641.
- Augustin, M. A., et al. (2024). "Innovation in precision fermentation for food ingredients." Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition **64**(18): 6218-6238.
- Bennett, A. B., et al. (2013). "Agricultural biotechnology: economics, environment, ethics, and the future." Annual Review of Environment and Resources **38**(1): 249-279.
- Bennett, S. E. B. J. W. (2007). "An overview of the genus Aspergillus." The Aspergilli: 23-34.
- Bindu, A., et al. (2024). "Bioelectrochemical biosensors for water quality assessment and wastewater monitoring." Open Life Sciences **19**(1): 20220933.
- Candela, M., et al. (2015). "Dynamic efficiency of the human intestinal microbiota." Critical reviews in microbiology **41**(2): 165-171.
- Caporali, F. (2011). "Agroecology as a transdisciplinary science for a sustainable agriculture." Biodiversity, biofuels, agroforestry and conservation agriculture: 1-71.
- Chauhan, N. S. and S. Kumar (2023). Microbiome Therapeutics: Personalized Therapy Beyond Conventional Approaches, Elsevier.
- Council, N. R., et al. (2007). "The new science of metagenomics: revealing the secrets of our microbial planet."
- Crippa, C. (2023). "Artisanal food productions of animal origin: exploring food safety in the age of Whole Genome Sequencing."
- DiCosimo, R., et al. (2013). "Industrial use of immobilized enzymes." Chemical Society Reviews **42**(15): 6437-6474.
- El-Mansi, M. (2018). Fermentation microbiology and biotechnology: An historical perspective. Fermentation Microbiology and Biotechnology, Fourth Edition, CRC Press**:** 3-8.

- Golla, B. (2021). "Agricultural production system in arid and semi-arid regions." International Journal of Agricultural Science and Food Technology **7**(2): 234-244.
- Hume, D., et al. (2011). "The future of animal production: improving productivity and sustainability." The Journal of Agricultural Science **149**(S1): 9-16.
- Jimenez, J., et al. (2022). "Public engagement with biotechnology inside and outside the classroom: Community-focused approaches." GEN biotechnology **1**(4): 346-354.
- Lee, S. Y. and H. U. Kim (2015). "Systems strategies for developing industrial microbial strains." Nature biotechnology **33**(10): 1061-1072.
- Linares-Morales, J. R., et al. (2018). "Biocontrol processes in fruits and fresh produce, the use of lactic acid bacteria as a sustainable option." Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems **2**: 50.
- Lohri, C. R., et al. (2017). "Treatment technologies for urban solid biowaste to create value products: a review with focus on low-and middle-income settings." Reviews in Environmental Science and Bio/Technology **16**: 81-130.
- Matassa, S., et al. (2016). "Microbial protein: future sustainable food supply route with low environmental footprint." Microbial biotechnology **9**(5): 568-575.
- Mu, R., et al. (2020). "Application of enzymes in regioselective and stereoselective organic reactions." Catalysts **10**(8): 832.
- Mukherjee, A., et al. (2022). "Global regulatory frameworks for fermented foods: A review." Frontiers in nutrition **9**: 902642.
- Nath, S., et al. (2014). "Role of biopreservation in improving food safety and storage." Int. J. Eng. Res. Appl **4**(1): 26-32.
- Pedrosa, M. C., et al. (2021). "Food metabolites as tools for authentication, processing, and nutritive value assessment." Foods **10**(9): 2213.
- PF Guiné, R., et al. (2016). "New foods, new consumers: innovation in food product development." Current Nutrition & Food Science **12**(3): 175-189.
- Priyadarshini, A. and P. Pandey (2018). Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology: Fundamentals, Advances, and Practices for a Greener Future, Apple Academic Press.
- Raghu, H., et al. (2013). "Spores Based Biosensors for Monitoring Bacterial and Non-bacterial Contaminants in Milk and Milk Products." Lecture Compendium: 78.
- Rangel, A. E., et al. (2020). "From industrial by-products to value-added compounds: the design of efficient microbial cell factories by coupling systems

metabolic engineering and bioprocesses." Biofuels, Bioproducts and Biorefining **14**(6): 1228-1238.

- Rastogi, N. K. (2011). "Opportunities and challenges in application of ultrasound in food processing." Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition **51**(8): 705-722.
- Ricke, S. C., et al. (2018). Unraveling food production microbiomes: concepts and future directions. Food and feed safety systems and analysis, Elsevier**:** 347-374.
- Sandrin, T. R., et al. (2013). "MALDI TOF MS profiling of bacteria at the strain level: a review." Mass spectrometry reviews **32**(3): 188-217.Saranraj, P. and M. Geetha (2012). "Microbial spoilage of bakery products and its control by preservatives." International Journal of Pharmaceutical & biological archives **3**(1): 38-48.
- Saxena, R., et al. (2001). Role of fungal enzymes in food processing. Applied mycology and biotechnology, Elsevier. **1:** 353-386.
- Sciences, N. A. o. (2001). Microbial processes: promising technologies for developing countries, The Minerva Group, Inc.
- Shahid, M. K., et al. (2021). "Biofuels and biorefineries: Development, application and future perspectives emphasizing the environmental and economic aspects." Journal of environmental management **297**: 113268.
- Sharma, A., et al. (2021). "Enzyme engineering: current trends and future perspectives." Food reviews international **37**(2): 121-154.
- Sharma, R., et al. (2020). "Microbial fermentation and its role in quality improvement of fermented foods." Fermentation **6**(4): 106.
- Shaver, P. and P. Shaver (2018). Science today, Springer.
- Silvestre, B. S. and D. M. Ţîrcă (2019). "Innovations for sustainable development: Moving toward a sustainable future." Journal of cleaner production **208**: 325-332.
- Singh, A. and A. Singh (2022). "Microbial degradation and value addition to food and agriculture waste." Current Microbiology **79**(4): 119.
- Sirisinha, S. (2016). "The potential impact of gut microbiota on your health: Current status and future challenges." Asian Pac J Allergy Immunol **34**(4): 249-264.
- Stan-Lotter, H. (2017). Physicochemical Boundaries of Life, Springer.
- Suman, G., et al. (2015). "Single cell protein production: a review." Int. J. Curr. Microbiol. App. Sci **4**(9): 251-262.
- Sundarraj, A. A., et al. (2018). "Food biotechnology applications in dairy and dairy products." Journal of Pharmacy Research **12**(4): 520-525.

- Taylor, M. J. and T. Richardson (1979). "Applications of microbial enzymes in food systems and in biotechnology." Advances in applied microbiology **25**: 7-35.
- Turroni, F., et al. (2020). "The infant gut microbiome as a microbial organ influencing host well-being." Italian journal of pediatrics **46**: 1-13.
- Underkofler, L., et al. (1958). "Production of microbial enzymes and their applications." Applied microbiology **6**(3): 212-221.
- Vinicius De Melo Pereira, G., et al. (2020). "A review of selection criteria for starter culture development in the food fermentation industry." Food reviews international **36**(2): 135-167.
- Volschenk, H., et al. (2006). "Malic acid in wine: Origin, function and metabolism during vinification."
- Walsh, G. (1999). "Biopharmaceuticals, an overview." Biopharmaceuticals, an Industrial Perspective: 1-34.
- Welsh, F. W., et al. (1989). "Microbiological and enzymatic production of flavor and fragrance chemicals." Critical Reviews in Biotechnology **9**(2): 105-169.
- Wuyts, S., et al. (2020). "Applications of plant-based fermented foods and their microbes." Current opinion in biotechnology **61**: 45-52.
- Yayanos, A. A. (1995). "Microbiology to 10,500 meters in the deep sea." Annual review of microbiology **49**: 777-804.
- Zarraonaindia, I., et al. (2013). "Beyond the genome: community-level analysis of the microbial world." Biology & philosophy **28**(2): 261-282.

CHAPTER- 11

RESPIRATORY MICROBIOTA AND HUMAN LUNG HEALTH

[1]Muhammad Faheem, [2]*Fouzia Tabassum, [2]Shaheen Kousar, [2] Sayda Umi Farwa, [3]Fareeha Jamil, [4]Taqdees Aimen, [5]Rabia Javed, [2] Mishal Shabir, [6]Muhammad Sarmad Zia and [2]Uzma Batool

[1]Department of Poultry Sciences, Muhammad Nawaz Shareef University of griculture Multan

[2]Department of Zoology, Wildlife and Fisheries, Muhammad Nawaz Shareef University of Agriculture Multan

[3]Department of Zoology, Government Sadiq College Women University Bahawalpur

[4]Department of Pharmacy, Quaid I Azam University

[5]Sheikh Khalifa Bin Zayed Al Nahyan Medical and Dental College

[6]Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15532943

ABSTRACT

Numerous bacteria populating the upper respiratory tract (URT) and lower respiratory tract (LRT), support immunological development, pathogen resistance, and airway protection within air passageway. The composition of the microbiome is shaped from birth by factors such as antibiotic exposure, environmental influences, delivery methods, age and lifestyle impacting the interaction between the gut and lung microbiota. The functional importance and anatomical features of the upper and lower respiratory tract microbiomes are investigated in this chapter. This chapter highlights lungs and the gut microbiota, which have a significant role in regulating lung cancer, respiratory infections, cystic fibrosis (CF), asthma, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Smoking-related alterations in the gut microbiome accelerate the course of COPD, but probiotics have shown promise in lowering inflammation. Unbalances in the gut microbiota of CF patients are correlated with a more severe form of the disease. There's growing evidence that the gut microbiota may influence the course of lung cancer and how well it responds to treatment. There's strong evidence that respiratory infections are linked to intestinal Dysbiosis, highlighting the necessity of microbiota manipulation as a treatment strategy. Ultimately relationship between gut health and respiratory disorders is highlighted in this chapter, switching calls for more investigation to identify the core mechanisms and consider microbiota-targeted therapies.

Key Words: Gut microbiota, Secretory IgA, Dysbiosis and Respiratory tract, upper respiratory tract, lower respiratory tract

INTRODUCTION

For millions of years, microbial communities have coevolved with humans and now live on every surface of the body, including the mucosa of the respiratory system

(Wilson et al. 2021). Maintaining human health depends heavily on certain bacterial communities in the respiratory tract, especially in the upper and lower respiratory tracts (URT and LRT) (Man et al 2017). However, focusing on gastrointestinal microbiota, the latest sequencing advancements allowed to extend the knowledge of current respiratory microbiota (Faner et al. 2017). The trachea, bronchi, and lungs, together constitute the LRT while the nose, sinuses, and throat constitute the URT of the respiratory tract (Kukwa et al. 2021). Especially in the URT these regions are densely populated with bacteria adapted to this region and effectively prevent respiratory infections from settling and moving to the LRT (de Koff et al. 2019). Respiratory infections typically start with pathogenic bacteria that occupy the neighborhood of the URT (Derakhshan-Nezhad 2023). Therefore, the resident microbiota offers protection against URT colonization by a mechanism called colonization resistance (Hakansson et al., 2018). The respiratory microbiota likely influences local immune responses and respiratory tract structural development together with an anti-infectious function (de Steenhuijsen et al. 2020). It is now recognized that establishing a regular respiratory microbiota and the ecological factors that affect its development are key themes for upcoming research issues (Chotirmall et al. 2017). The host respiratory microbiota can explain colonization resistance to respiratory pathogens since the respiratory tract microbiota serves as a barrier known as the pathogen gatekeeper (Glieca et al. 2024). This chapter is oriented on the ecological and environmental aspects of microbial biofilm formation that takes place in respiratory tracts and the influence exerted by the resulting microbial communities on respiratory health (Li et al. 2022). At the same time, much effort is devoted to the study of the physiological functions of the microbiota occupying the upper and lower respiratory tract of the human host (Santacroce et al. 2020). In this chapter discussing the respiratory microbiota, the structural and functional arguments that indicate its physiological function in maintaining human health will be considered.

ANATOMICAL STUDY OF RESPIRATORY TRACT MICROBIOME

The Upper Respiratory Tract Microbiome

Many bacteria such as *Firmicutes, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Proteobacteria*, and *Fusobacteria* are present in the upper respiratory tract from areas like the nose, the rhino-pharynx, and the oropharynx (Alqarni et al. 2022). For example, particular conditions may include higher humidity, temperature, or lower oxygen level and in this connection, such bacteria can develop at different locations. Through competing for nutrients and attachment sites, the microbiome prevents pathogenic infections and plays a critical function in heating, humidifying, and filtering air (Seong 2022). Beginning at birth, microbial colonization is impacted by antibiotic use, delivery methods (c-section or vaginal), and environmental factors (food and lactation, for example) (Zhao 2023). Immune system maturation is influenced by the early formation of the microbiota; exposure to specific bacteria during infancy shapes immunity and lung health (Seong 2022). According to studies, a healthy microbiome during infancy may help prevent respiratory disorders, but disruptions can result in

pathological problems (Santacroce et al. 2020). Important bacterial species include *Corynebacterium, Moraxella, Staphylococcus*, and *Streptococcus* dominate during infancy, with *Streptococcus pneumoniae* colonizing asymptomatically (Kelly et al. 2022).

Nostrils

Children's and adults' nasal microbiomes differ in a few ways due to environmental factors and local immunity (Igartua et al. 2017). It is uncertain whether the numerous *Streptococcaceae, Moraxellaceae*, and *Neisseriaceae* found in children are a result of separate microbial development or if they are a product of the neighboring rhino-pharynx (Santacroce et al. 2020). The immune system is crucial, with neutrophils, NK cells, and antimicrobial peptides serving as the first line of defense (Kraus et al. 2021). Adults has more *Staphylococcus* species than *Streptococcus* species which is predominant in the young ones. *Actinobacteria; Corynebacterium* and *Propionibacterium* are identified in both groups, however, there are only traces of anaerobes belonging to the bacterial division of Bacteroidetes (Dombrowska-Pali et al.2024). Dietary proteobacteria are diverse; *Gammaproteobacteria* concentration is higher in adult's nostrils while children's contain more *Moraxellaceae* (Song et al. 2021). The glands secreting sebum originating from the nostrils can sustain lipophilic bacteria like *Propionibacterium* that transform sebum into fatty acid and decrease pH (Toro-Ascuy et al.2017; Turturice et al.2017). The biofilm formation of *Staphylococcus aureus* is further protected by the creation of coproporphyrin III by *Propionibacterium*, which further produces bacterial cohabitation in this oxygen- and moisture-rich environment.

Hinopharynx

Developmentally subsequently, the dynamics of the rhino-pharyngeal microbiome differ and they are most prevailingly occupied by *Moraxella, Corynebacterium, Dolosigranulum, Streptococcus*, and *Staphylococcus* species at birth. The delivery method affects its composition more; for instance, vaginal births contain *Streptococcus* and *Dolosigranulum* while cesarean births contain *Staphylococcus* and *Corynebacterium* and food does influence it (Reynoso-García et al.2022; Dombrowska-Pali et al.2024; Mittal et al.2022). As a microbial adult, Moraxella is not seen and species share the niche with those in the oropharynx (*Streptococcus* for instance) and the anterior roots (*Corynebacterium, Staphylococcus* among others). The rhino-pharynx is colonized by anaerobic non-spore-forming Gram-negative bacillus that is commonly identified in children with oropharynx and oral cavity infections like *Prevotella* and *Veillonella* (Yadav et al.2022).

Oropharynx

Oropharynx is exposed to various endogenous and foreign bacteria because of its location: participation in the gastrointestinal tract, lower respiratory tract, larynx, rhino-pharynx, and oral cavity (Santacroce et al. 2020; Man et al 2017; Imai et al.2021; Wilson et al 2021). The genera *Streptococcus, Haemophilus*, and *Neisseria* spp., and Gram-negative anaerobic species including *Veillonella, Prevotella,*

Leptotrichia, and *Fusobacterium* are reported to colonize the rhinopharynx of healthy adults (Colombo et al.2019). The pharynx is host to many pathogens of the *Streptococcus* type: *S. pneumoniae, S.pyogenes* capable of causing septic shock and other related diseases, *S. agalactiae* as indicated in Figure 1.

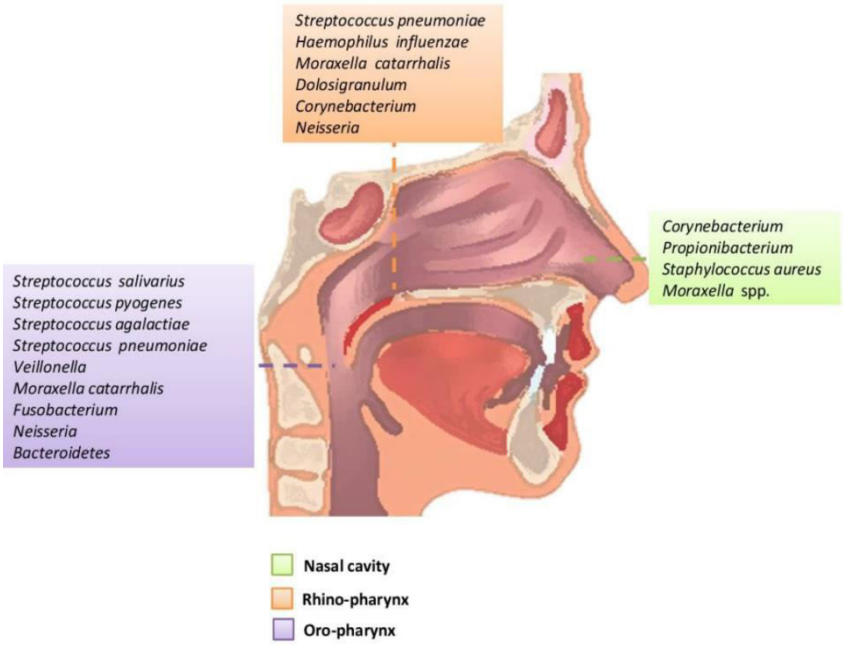


Figure 1. Common bacteria genera and microbial species of an adult at the upper respiratory tract

The Lower Respiratory Tract Microbiome

The signals from the pulmonary and intestinal microbiota are crucial during early development for the immune system and the airway epithelial cells (Invernizzi et al. 2020). The human lung microbiome includes bacteria, viruses, bacteriophages, and fungi of which preliminary compositions are *Aspergillus, Cladosporium, Eurotium* and *Penicillium*, which have been analyzed in research since 2010 using DNA and RNA analysis (Nguyen et al. 2019). Five major bacterial phyla include *Proteobacteria, Fusobacteria, Actinobacteria, Firmicutes*, and *Bacteroidetes. Prevotella, Fusobacterium, Streptococcus,* and *Veillonella* are common genera; Haemophilus and other potentially pathogenic genera are very uncommon (Verma et al.2018; Sędzikowska and Szablewski 2021). Early life experiences shape the lung microbiome, which is impacted by factors like age, nutrition, surroundings, and antibiotic use. The microbial compositions of the various lung regions (bronchi, bronchioles, and alveoli) are influenced by several factors, including (a) microbial immigration through micro-aspiration and inhalation; (b) microbial elimination through coughing, mucociliary clearance, and immune responses; and (c) local conditions like oxygen levels, microbial competition, inflammation, and nutrient

availability (Reynoso-García et al.2022; Dombrowska-Pali et al.2024; Mittal et al.2022).

Table 1. Principal fungal and bacterial taxa found in adult humans' lower respiratory tract microbiomes. Table 1. Main bacteria and fungi genera of the lower respiratory tract microbiome of adult people

Bacteria	Fungi
Prevotella	Aspergillus
Sphingomonas	Cladosporium
Pseudomonas	Penicillum
Acinetobacter	Eurotium
Fusobacterium	Candida
Megasphaera	Malassezia
Veillonella	Neosartorya
Staphylococcus	Saccharomyces
Streptococcus	

FORCES THAT SHAPE THE MICROBIOTA COMPOSITION

With 55 phyla, the diversity of microorganisms on Earth is immense. Four of them are found in the human colon primarily: *Firmicutes, Proteobacteria, Actinobacteria*, and *Bacteroides* (Mittal et al.2022). This indicates that the colon is not suitable for the competitive growth of most bacteria. The biophysical characteristics of mucosal surfaces, such as pH, moisture content, and temperature, are mostly to blame (Milgroom 2023). Furthermore, throughout evolution, the host has evolved a range of selection forces that further impact the colonization process (Penczykowski et al. 2016). Beneficially to this special environment, these endogenous factors contribute to orchestrating and modulating microbe–microbe and host–microbe crosstalk (O'Callaghan and O'Toole 2011).

ENDOGENOUS FORCES

Mucus

Bacterial motility is impaired by mucus secretion in the direction of the epithelial layer (Hansson 2019). It reduces the chances of microbial bioavailability in the body circulation system and the inflammation that follows which is detrimental to the bacteria and the host tissues (Grigg and Sonnenberg 2017). However, the impact of mucus and its contents can also be used to shape the microbiota found therein. This is due to the fact that some bacterial species are capable of attaching to, sticking on, feeding on or, modifying the mucus layer (Garcia et al.2017).

Secretory IgA

Circulating immune globulin, specifically secretory IgA, is produced in copious amounts every day and thus presumably implicated in regulating the microbiota (Huus et al.2021). However, it may also be useful in the control of the dispersal of pathogenic bacteria as well as in the positive selection of specific microbial species (León and Francino 2022). To enhance the binding of Secretory IgA, for example, a

bacterium such as *Bacteroides fragilis* may change its surface antigens, thus enhancing the interaction of the bacteria with the mucosal interface of the intestine (Nicolas 2011; Glieca et al. 2024)). This goes further to show that binding avidity, the type of antigen or interaction site may influence the bacterial selection regarding antibody binding differently (Hakansson et al 2018. What is notable is that even mice cloned from the same strain, or humans with precisely the same DNA sequences will have a different array of IgA antibodies; this observation accords with data indicating that individual microbiota can also vary (de Steenhuijsen et al. 2020). This implies that the stochastic character of antibody diversification may regulate the apparent randomness in microbiota composition (Chotirmall et al. 2017).

Innate and adaptive immune recognition

The number and diversity of the microbiota can be influenced by several innate immunological systems (Patwa and Shah 2015). These include the synthesis of antimicrobial peptides and the ability of nearby innate immune cells and epithelial cells to sense bacteria (Glieca et al. 2024). Changes in the microbiota composition can be seen when these processes are compromised, as in the cases of deficiency in TLR2, TLR5, α-defensin, and the adaptor MyD88. However, given that several later investigations disputed those earlier findings, the effect of detection by the innate immune system on the composition of the microbiota is debatable (Li et al. 2022). MyD88, TLR2, TLR4, TLR5, and TLR9 did not have any effect on the makeup of the microbiota, according to studies that used wild type littermate controls to eliminate confounding variables that can affect the microbiome composition (such as cage environment) (Patwa and Shah 2015). A comparable disparity was noted in investigations involving mice lacking the retinoblastome135. The innate immune system's recognition of an object may trigger an increase in B and T-cell-based adaptive responses. The unique profile of microbiota composition in RAG1-deficient mice, which lack mature B cells and T cells, illustrates their significance in determining the composition of the microbiota.

EXOGENOUS FORCES

Diet

The primary recognized environmental element influencing the composition of the microbiota is diet. Numerous foods are said to influence the microbiome; the most researched ones are lipids, fibers, unpasteurized cow's milk, and breast milk.

Environmental biodiversity

It has been demonstrated that residing close to agricultural and forest areas, which for their high species richness, positively correlates with the diversity of Proteobacteria on study participants' skin. It's interesting to note that this type of bacteria was linked to a lower incidence of atopy and the generation of IL-10 by human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. In contrast, keeping pets causes household members to acquire their microbiome (inversely connected with allergy) (Santacroce et al. 2020; Li et al. 2022). These findings demonstrate the impact that exposure to ambient microorganisms can have on the colonization of the human body.

Infection

A pathogen's rapid growth within the host can modify interactions between microbes and between hosts, which can lead to modifications in the microbiota's makeup (Seong 2022). For instance, influenza virus infection in mice altered the intestinal microbiota's makeup or even temporarily reduced it, which made the animals more vulnerable to Salmonella serovar Typhimurium infection (Zhao 2023). Moreover, influenza virus-induced modifications to the makeup of the microbiota resulted in increased IL-15 production by intestinal epithelial cells, a factor that exacerbated intestinal damage and TH17 cell polarization (Seong 2022). Other infectious agents, such as bacteria (like *Citrobacter rodentium* or adherent-invasive *E. coli*) and helminths (like *Opisthorchis viverrine, H. polygyrus bakeri, or C. sinensis*), have also been reported to exhibit this capacity to induce alterations in the microbial population (Santacroce et al. 2020).

Antibiotics

It has been suggested that antibiotic-induced alterations in the structure of the microbiota lead to several illnesses, such as infectious diseases, allergies, and autoimmune conditions (Igartua et al. 2017).

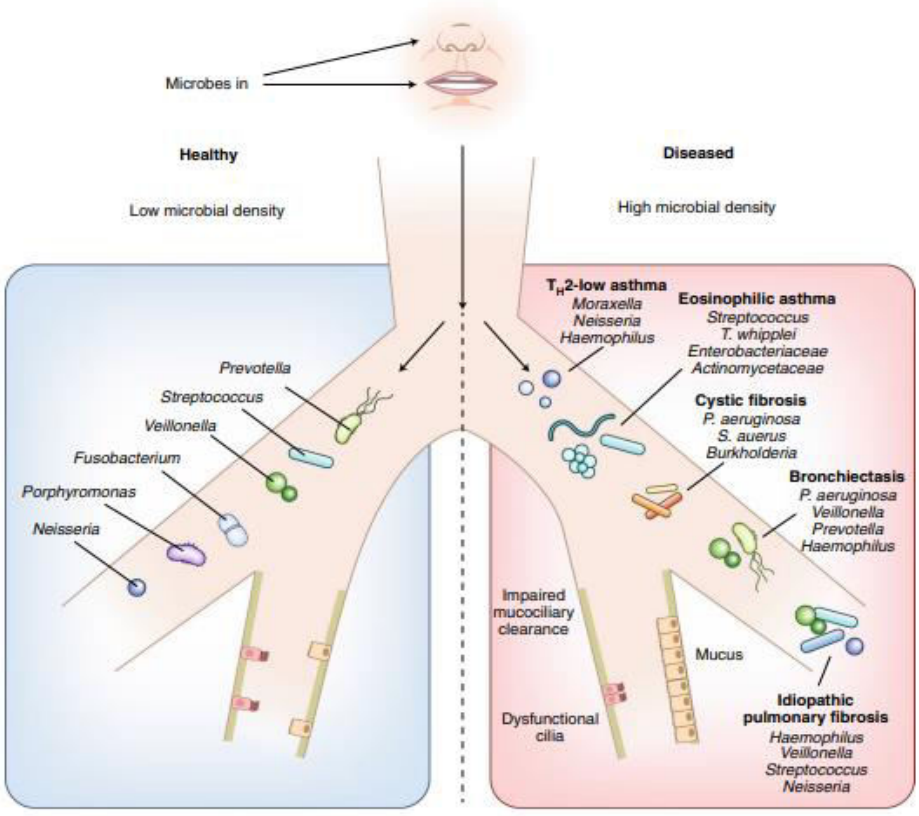


Figure 2 Lung microbiota in healthy versus diseased settings.

In healthy lungs, six major genera; *Prevotella, Streptococcus, Veillonella, Fusobacterium, Porphyromonas,* and *Neisseria*—colonize the airways at low density. The transient nature of the lung microbiome results from a balance between bacterial immigration (e.g., microaspiration) and elimination by mucociliary clearance and immune defenses. In diseased lungs, microbial growth exceeds the airways' clearance capacity, increasing microbial density. Impaired cilia function and excess mucus add to reduced clearance and trapping of microbes. Different respiratory conditions feature distinct dominant bacteria: Cystic fibrosis: *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus*, *Burkholderia*; TH2-low asthma: *Moraxella, Haemophilus, Neisseria*; Eosinophilic asthma: *Streptococcus, T. whipplei, Actinomycetaceae, Enterobacteriaceae* and Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis: *Haemophilus, Veillonella, Streptococcus, Neisseria*

THE GUT MICROBIOTA AND RESPIRATORY DISEASES

Asthma

Chronic inflammatory asthma is typified by hyperresponsiveness and reversible airflow limitation. Its increasing mortality and prevalence underscore the growing public health concern about it (Kraus et al. 2021). The "hygiene hypothesis" postulates that initial exposure to specific bacteria aids in the maturation of the immune system and that their absence may make people more susceptible to allergies and asthma (Song et al. 2021). Research employing cutting-edge sequencing methods has demonstrated that the gut microbiota makeup of asthma sufferers varies from that of healthy people, potentially impacting the development of asthma. Better health outcomes are associated with more microbial diversity (Turturice et al.2017). Childhood asthma has been linked to low gut microbial variety in infancy, whereas nursing protects and fosters diversity. Infants fed formula, on the other hand, typically have less diversity in their microbiome (Toro-Ascuy et al.2023). Asthma patients also exhibit specific bacterial alterations, including increased abundances of *Clostridium* and *Eggerthella lenta* and reduced levels of *Bifidobacterium, Akkermansia*, and *Faecalibacterium* (Reynoso-García et al.2022). Early *Clostridium difficile* colonization has been associated with a later risk of developing asthma in children.

Researchers have looked into controlling or preventing asthma through gut microbiota modulation (Dombrowska-Pali et al.2024). According to Arrieta et al 2022, asthmatic newborns had lower concentrations of *Lachnospira, Veillonella, Faecalibacterium, and Rothia*; these bacteria were also found to lessen inflammation and asthma symptoms when given to germ-free mice. Supplementing with probiotics, particularly *Lactobacillus rhamnosus, Lactobacillus casei,* and *Bifidobacterium breve*, has demonstrated possible advantages (Mittal et al.2022). According to some research, probiotics taken during pregnancy and the early years of life may lower the incidence of allergies and asthma, particularly in babies born via Caesarean section (Yadav et al.2022). Nevertheless, the outcomes of other randomized controlled trials (RCTs) have been contradictory (Colombo et al.2019; Imai et al.2021). In several pieces of research, probiotics also had no impact on asthma symptoms in patients and there were no alterations in symptoms, quality of life, respiratory infections or lung

capacity (Invernizzi et al.2020). Fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) has also been advocated as a way of restoring gut health, especially in cases of asthma. Although it has not been widely used to treat asthma, further work is needed to ensure that FMT treatment is safe for the condition (Nguyen et al.2019).

COPD

The preventable and treatable respiratory condition, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), is characterized by escalating pulmonary inflammation and irreversible airflow obstruction (Hansson 2019). Due to the high global incidence rate, mortality, and disability, it is considered a global public health problem (Torre et al. 2016). Whereas smoking is mainly associated with COPD, the latest findings suggest that there is a link between COPD and gastrointestinal disorders such as IBD. However, limited literatures available that address COPD patient's gut microbiome (López-Campos et al.2016). The main risk factor for COPD – smoking – influences the immune system and the conformation of the gut microbiota. Knowledge shows that smoking status impacts the conformation of the gut microbiota (Nussbaumer-Ochsner et al. 2011). Torre et al. 2016, found that, after smoking cessation, the composition of the gut microbiota in smokers was different from that of non-smokers having higher *Actinobacteria* and *Firmicutes* and reduced *Bacteroidetes* and Proteobacteria. Moreover, Divo et al.2015 found an elevated level of *Lachnospiraceae* in mice under the condition of exposure to smoke based on the research. Probiotic treatments have demonstrated potential; in mice, *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium breve* decreased alveolar damage and airway inflammation (Celli et al.2010). Human macrophages exposed to cigarette smoke showed anti-inflammatory effects from these probiotics as well (Agustí et al.2012). To verify probiotics' therapeutic potential, more studies on COPD patients are necessary.

CF

The cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) mutation is the principal cause of cystic fibrosis (CF), a prevalent autosomal recessive disease mostly affecting the lungs (Derichs et al.2013). Among the first bodily regions to be impacted in CF patients, the GI tract also exhibits a severe CFTR malfunction, indicating a close connection between the lung and the gut (Hunt et al.2013). Indeed, the structure and function of the gut microbiota in CF patients were also significantly changed, the microbial distribution and density were significantly reduced as well as the number of bacterial species in the gut microbiota of CF patients than the healthy individuals (Schmidt et al.2016; Farinha et al.2013; Meng et al.2017). For instance, compared to HCs, CF patients' guts showed lower abundances of Bacteroides, *Bifidobacterium adolescentis*, and *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* and higher abundances of *Staphylococcus, Streptococcus*, and *Veillonella dispar*. Moreover, the development and severity of cystic fibrosis seem to be regulated by the gut microbiota linked with the presence of CFTR polymorphisms (Zhang and Chen 2016). Supporting the idea about the influence of gut microbiota on airway inflammation in cystic fibrosis (CF), numerous RCTs performed over the recent years described the

connection between the disease improvement associated with the restoration of gut microbiota after administration of probiotics (Pranke et al. 2014). Besides, the study showed that lactobacillus treatment had a trend of reducing the bacterial density and increasing the microbial richness in the gut of CF patients with a superior quality of life and a lower rate of exacerbation (Cantin 2016). Nevertheless, there were some inconsistencies in the presented conclusions as well. For instance, Torre et al. 2016 found no changes in pulmonary function, or exacerbations of the disease, between the probiotic and placebo groups (Sosnay et al. 2013). Therefore, a meta-analysis argued that well-designed and adequately powered RCTs are required to determine the safety and the efficacy of probiotics and explore the particular probiotic strains or doses that are highly useful for individuals with cystic fibrosis.

Lung Cancer

Lung cancer is a severe global health issue as morbility and mortality are on the increase, globally. Research has suggested a possibility of a link between lung cancer growth and gut microbes (Travis 2011). In a general study, it was found that antibiotic exposure including macrolides, cephalosporins and penicillin increased the risk of lung cancer and the fact of change in gut flora also plays an important role here (de Groot 2018). There were no changes in alpha gut diversity between the lung CA patients and the HCs but significant deviations in the beta diversity. Lung cancer patients have lower end *Bifidobacterium* and *Actinobacteria* levels; and higher Enterococcus that may be prognosticators for the progression of lung cancer (Malhotra et al. 2018).

Respiratory Infection

Increased morbidity and mortality are known to be associated with the most common respiratory infectious diseases worldwide (Unger and Bogaert 2017). Respiratory infections like pneumonia affect the immune response of a host and the gut microbiota shows a significant part in pulmonary immune system (Chen et al. 2020). Schuijt et al. 2021 studied that the mice with depleted microbiota developed more bacterial lethality, inflammation, and deaths compared to normal microbiota mice. Whereas treatments like FMT improved the regrowth of the performed microbiota and enhanced the array of gastrointestinal pathogens antibiotic resistance against pneumonia (Rodríguez et al. 2011). As many as ten million people get tuberculosis (TB), especially pulmonary TB, annually and most of these are in low and middle income countries (Laaksi et al. 2012). The gut microbiota may stop from colonizing the lungs too soon (Camargo et al. 2011). Increased Mycobacterium tuberculosis (Mtb) dispersion was linked to antibiotic disturbance of the gut microbiota (Pore et al. 2010; Farinha et al.2013). Significant variations in gut microbiota were seen in TB patients, with fewer *Bacteroidetes* (good for gut health)and an elevation of Actinobacteria and Proteobacteria, which include numerous pathogens (Pranke et al.2014; Cantin 2016). Patients treated with standard anti-TB medication (HRZE; isoniazid, rifampicin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol) had a persistent dysbiosis with a rise in *Erysipelatoclostridium* and *Prevotella* and a decrease in *Ruminococcus, Eubacterium, Lactobacillus,* and *Bacteroides* (Sosnay et al.2013). The restoration of

anti-Mtb immunity with probiotic supplementation, especially *Lactobacillus*, showed promise, signifying a major role for gut microbiota in the pathogenesis of tuberculosis (Torre et al. 2016).

Other Respiratory Diseases

Apart from the prevalent respiratory conditions mentioned above, there is an assured association between the gut microbiota and other respiratory disorders such as ILD, ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP), acute lung injury (ALI), and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) (Travis 2011). For instance, people with silicosis and pulmonary fibrosis have been found to have altered gut microbiotas, and those with ILD are characterized by progressive fibrosis and respiratory failure (de Groot 2018). ARDS/ALI remains the primary cause of organ failure in critical care patients, and although VAP is a common infection in mechanically ventilated, mortality is fairly high (Torre et al. 2016). The authors found that bacteria and pathogens derived from the gut were present in high concentration in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid BALF of patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), suggesting that gut-lung translocation may take place. In addition, FMT can effectively reduce inflammation factors in ALI mice, while the GI microbiota is involved in the development of ALI (Torre et al. 2016). Such non-ventilated patients may have a significantly lower priority for developing microbiologically confirmed ventilated aneurism than patients who were randomized for treatment in ventilated patients (Laaksi et al. 2012). Also, a meta-analysis showed a trend toward the reduced rate of intubated patients with VAP due to probiotic consumption which points towards the possible clinical usefulness of the prebiotics (Chen et al. 2020).

The Gut-Lung Axis

Gut microbiota impacts both the systemic and local immune compartments have been known for a long time, and the role of the gut microbiota in autoimmune disorders such as RA is well defined. Both the gut and the lungs are mucosal areas that are exposed to environmental stimuli, therefore it's plausible that they have a similar microbiota and that the microbiota can cause inflammation and/or localized immunity in both organs (Rodríguez et al. 2011). According to the existing evidence initiating autoimmune disease might be associated with alterations in gut/lung microbiome. This notion is backed up by prior work, which determined raised intestinal permeability in COPD patients and modified function and architecture of the intestinal mucosa in asthma patients (Laaksi et al. 2012). In addition, an increasing investigations suggest that the lungs and intestines can have immunological connections. Succinylation of tissue proteins promotes systemic and local as well as lung mucosa immune responses, and respiratory disorders can be affected by the gut microbiota. If taken collectively, locally resident microbiota is likely to modulate this complex symbiosis of the gut and lungs (Van Meerbeeck et al. 2011).

PERSPECTIVES OF LUNG MICROBIOME RESEARCH

Limitations of Lung Microbiome Research

Most of the lung microbiome literature published to date focuses on an observational research strategy that analyzes cross-sectional data with clinical factors (Unger and Bogaert 2017). As mentioned in this review, studies on the lung microbiome have investigated that the microbial composition of respiratory diseases, including asthma, COPD, bronchiectasis, lung cancer, and respiratory viral infections, differs from that of healthy subjects (Rodríguez et al. 2011). However, reports of the lung microbiome alone do not fully explicate the underlying mechanisms of these infections (van Doorn et al. 2020). Furthermore, there are no rigorous, prescriptive criteria for designing microbiome studies, carrying out experiments, detecting microbiomes using 16S rRNA gene sequencing, whole-genome sequencing, and shotgun metagenomics gene sequencing, analyzing microbiome data, or reporting results (Laaksi et al. 2012). So, each research design should be assessed in light of steady and accepted experimental methods, practicability, and sample principles (Cruz et al. 2011).

MICROBE-HOST INTERACTIONS SHAPE LUNG IMMUNE HOMEOSTASIS

This is because the host mucosal immune status has to be in equilibrium with the bacterial flora resident in peripulmonary sites (Chen et al. 2020). There are quite several circumstances that could alter the pulmonary microbiota, which consequently results in immune dysfunction that would lead to inflammatory responses as well as respiratory disease (Cruz et al. 2011). Current industrialized culture impacts the human microbial world and the risk of infectious disease which is why the ‘hygiene hypothesis’ underlined the paramount link between the modification of the symbiotic microbiota and the imbalance of immune stability. In the developmental stage of every human being, both the acquisition and development of the commensal microbiota shape the maturation of the immune system in crucially.Kim estimates that the balance of immunological tolerance and recognition can be achieved by the products of commensal bacteria’s microorganism linked molecular patterns like lipopolysaccharide and flagellin concerning sIgA. The Th2 phenotype is in excess of the pattern of the immune system in the *in utero* environment throughout pregnancy (Chen et al. 2020). Lung naïve T cells change their phenotypes from Th2 to Th1 when the newborn acquires symbiotic microbiota at birth to enhance the infant’s immunity to allergic ailments (Rodríguez et al. 2011). Since microbial compounds activate Th17 and Treg, bleomycin-induced imbalanced lung microbiota stimulating the activation of TNF-α and IL-17B through the Toll-like receptor-Myd88 adaptor pathway are developed (Torre et al. 2016). To improve long-term health, it may be possible to train the innate and adaptive immune systems' responses by manipulating the microbiome of newborns.

Clinical Application of the Lung Microbiome

According to the current findings and other studies, it is envisioned that the lung microbial profile could become useful for clinical diagnostics of respiratory diseases in the near future (van Doorn et al. 2020). The ultimate goal of lung microbiome research is precision medicine, which comprises identifying critical diagnostic or therapeutic characteristics that impact clinical outcomes (Van Meerbeeck et al. 2011). The lung microbiome itself may not be productive as a treatment for respiratory disorders, even though the gut microbiome may be changed by diet to alter the gut-lung axis (Rodríguez et al. 2011). Proper characterization of the lung microbiome of specific disease endotypes, clarification of endotype-related gene targets modulated by the lung microbiome, and development of novel methods to affect the lung microbiome are necessary to achieve a personalized therapeutic approach based on the lung microbiome, disease phenotype, and co-morbidities associated with the respiratory disease (Van Meerbeeck et al. 2011).

Potential Target to Prevent and Treat Pulmonary Infections

The microbial communities that reside in the lung can provide an obstacle that protects against respiratory illnesses, and host immunity, pathogenic virome, and the pulmonary microbiome interact intricately to play important roles in lung inflammation and immunological reactions. Secondary bacterial infections can occur concurrently with or after viral infections, and the pathogenic harm resulting from respiratory tract viruses can be described by the infectious process of imbalanced innate and acquired immunological homeostasis (Unger and Bogaert 2017). On the other hand, by upregulating the expression of viral entry receptors, chronic infection or the colonization of harmful microorganisms can also cause viral infections. Research on viral and bacterial co-infections aids exploring novel, effective strategies for the prevention of respiratory diseases, as evidence is mounting that the complex collaborations between viruses and bacteria at various levels in the lower respiratory tract can affect the host phenotypic effects.

Current studies on the lung microbiome advance our knowledge for a range of respiratory disorders like probiotics have the advantageous ability to control host immunity and prevent pathogen invasion, they are frequently used in the treatment of infectious airway illnesses (van Doorn et al. 2020). Numerous lactic acid bacteria (LAB) strains have also been shown to be competent to stimulate the mucosal immune system and offer productive protection against Streptococcus pneumoniae infections. Cumulative research has shown that oral or nasal administration of Lactobacillus and other probiotics could inflect the respiratory innate immune responses and encourage health benefits against the influenza virus. The symbiotic microbiota can generate short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), which in turn activate G protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), and systematically affect the host respiratory system against Klebsiella pneumoniae infection (Gridelli et al. 2015). Targeted handling to restore the gut microbiota could be a key component of a treatment plan for COVID-19 and a means of accelerating recovery since the dysbiosis of the gut microbiota was implicated in the severity of the virus by influencing the host immune

responses (Cruz et al. 2011). Probiotics, prebiotics, and functional foods can check or treat respiratory infections by directly inhibiting the growth of pathogens or indirectly modulating the host's immune system (Torre et al. 2016) (Figure 3).

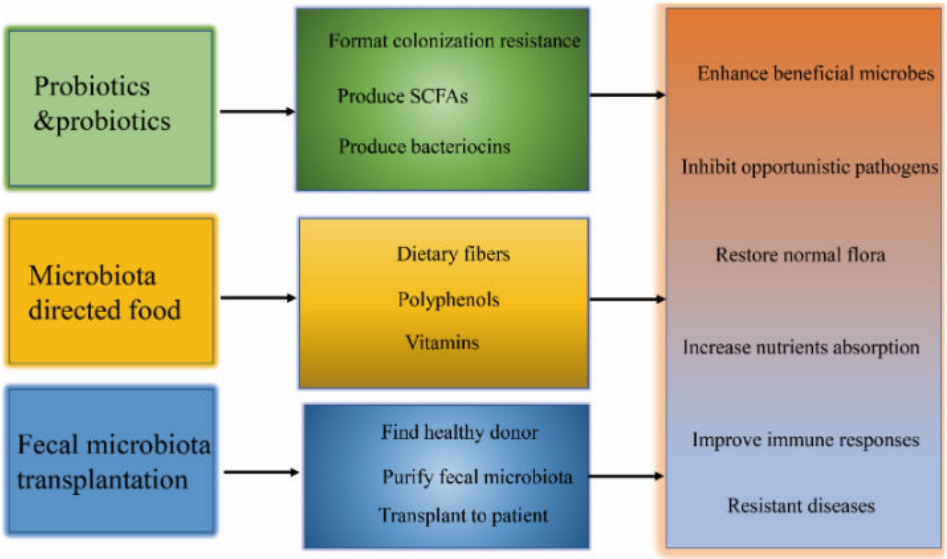


Figure 3. Techniques for controlling and preventing respiratory illnesses that focus on the symbiotic bacteria. Respiratory disorders may benefit from probiotic use, nutritional management, and fecal microbiota transplantation, which target the gut and lung microbiota.

CONCLUSION

This study emphasizes the complex interaction between the URT and LRT microbiomes, which shows that disruptions in both categories can lead to respiratory diseases. Respiratory health is impacted by microbial makeup, which is influenced by various factors including antibiotic usage, environmental biodiversity, and dietary practices. The anatomical and physiological study of respiratory tract Microbiota reveals that numerous microbial species present in nostrils, Rhinopharynx, Oropharynx, bronchi, bronchioles and alveoli etc. are majorly contributing in the maintenance and wellness of respiratory tract. Decline or improper growth of respiratory Microbiota can lead towards serious lungs problems such as Asthma, Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, Cystic Fibrosis, lung cancer and ultimately leading towards lung's death. Further increasing investigations about the Gut-Lung Axis suggest that the lungs and intestines can have immunological connections. Succinylation of tissue proteins promotes systemic and local as well as lung mucosa immune responses, and respiratory disorders can be affected by the gut microbiota. If taken collectively, locally resident microbiota is likely to modulate this complex symbiosis of the gut and lungs. As research corroborated the correlation between lung cancer, respiratory infections, COPD, CF, and dysbiosis in the gut microbiome, it established a context of the microbiota in managing consequent immune responses

and the diseases. Fecal microbiota transplantation and probiotics have antiviral pathways that are still in development and need further investigation and research for the definitive identification of strains and mechanisms. Microbiome modification may enhance options for preventing and managing lung illness and ultimately enhance patient lung health,

REFERENCES

- Afonso, A.S. et al., 2011. COPD in the general population: prevalence, incidence and survival. *Respiratory medicine*, *105*(12), pp.1872-1884.
- Agustí A. et al., 2012. Persistent systemic inflammation is associated with poor clinical outcomes in COPD: a novel phenotype. PloS one, 7(5), p.e37483.
- Alqarni, M.A., 2022. *Does Pituitary Tumour Apoplexy Have an Infective Aetiology?* (Doctoral dissertation, University of Manchester).
- Camargo Jr. et al., 2011. Cord-blood 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels and risk of respiratory infection, wheezing, and asthma. *Pediatrics*, *127*(1), pp.e180-e187.
- Cantin, A.M., 2016. Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator. Implications in cystic fibrosis and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Annals of the American Thoracic Society*, *13*(Supplement 2), pp.S150-S155.
- Cavaillès, A. et al., 2013. Comorbidities of COPD. *European Respiratory Review*, *22*(130), pp.454-475.
- Celli, B.R., 2010. Predictors of mortality in COPD. *Respiratory medicine*, *104*(6), pp.773-779.
- Chen, Z.M. et al., 2020. Diagnosis and treatment recommendations for pediatric respiratory infection caused by the 2019 novel coronavirus. *World journal of pediatrics*, *16*, pp.240-246.
- Chotirmall, S.H. et al, 2017. Microbiomes in respiratory health and disease: an Asia-Pacific perspective. *Respirology*, *22*(2), pp.240-250.
- Colombo, A.P.V. and Tanner, A.C.R., 2019. The role of bacterial biofilms in dental caries and periodontal and peri-implant diseases: a historical perspective. *Journal of dental research*, *98*(4), pp.373-385.
- Cruz, C.S.D. et al., 2011. Lung cancer: epidemiology, etiology, and prevention. *Clinics in chest medicine*, *32*(4), pp.605-644.
- de Groot, P.M. et al., 2018. The epidemiology of lung cancer. *Translational lung cancer research*, *7*(3), p.220.
- de Koff E.M., et al, 2019. The early-life microbiome: the key to respiratory health. *The Lung Microbiome (ERS Monograph). Sheffield, European Respiratory Society*, pp.67-87.

- de Steenhuijsen Piters et al, 2020. Early life microbiota and respiratory tract infections. *Cell Host & Microbe*, *28*(2), pp.223-232.
- Derakhshan-Nezhad, E., 2023. An Overview of Bacterial Respiratory Tract Infections and their Etiologies. *Journal of Medical Bacteriology*, *11*(1-2), pp.36-46.
- Derichs, N., 2013. Targeting a genetic defect: cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator modulators in cystic fibrosis. *European Respiratory Review*, *22*(127), pp.58-65.
- Divo, M.J et al., 2015. COPD comorbidities network. *European Respiratory Journal*, *46*(3), pp.640-650.
- Dombrowska-Pali, A. et al., 2024. Human Milk Microbiome—A Review of Scientific Reports. *Nutrients*, *16*(10), p.1420.
- Faner, R., et al, 2017. The microbiome in respiratory medicine: current challenges and future perspectives. *European Respiratory Journal*, *49*(4).
- Farinha, C.M. et al., 2013. Control of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator membrane trafficking: not just from the endoplasmic reticulum to the G olgi. *The FEBS journal*, *280*(18), pp.4396-4406.
- Frati, F., Salvatori, C., Incorvaia, C., Bellucci, A., Di Cara, G., Marcucci, F. and Esposito, S., 2018. The role of the microbiome in asthma: the gut–lung axis. *International journal of molecular sciences*, *20*(1), p.123.
- Garcia, M. et al., 2017. Invited review: ruminal microbes, microbial products, and systemic inflammation. *The Professional Animal Scientist*, *33*(6), pp.635-650.
- Glieca, S. et al., 2024. The role of airways microbiota on local and systemic diseases: a rationale for probiotics delivery to the respiratory tract. *Expert Opinion on Drug Delivery*, *21*(7), pp.991-1005.
- Gridelli, C. et al., 2015. Non-small-cell lung cancer. *Nature reviews Disease primers*, *1*(1), pp.1-16.
- Grigg, J.B. and Sonnenberg, G.F., 2017. Host-microbiota interactions shape local and systemic inflammatory diseases. *The Journal of Immunology*, *198*(2), pp.564-571.
- Hakansson, A.P. et al, 2018. Bacterial-host interactions: physiology and pathophysiology of respiratory infection. *Physiological reviews*, *98*(2), pp.781-811.
- Hansson, G.C., 2019. Mucus and mucins in diseases of the intestinal and respiratory tracts. *Journal of internal medicine*, *285*(5), pp.479-490.

- Hunt, J.F. et al., 2013. Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (ABCC7) structure. *Cold Spring Harbor perspectives in medicine*, *3*(2), p.a009514.
- Huus, K.E. et al., 2021. Diversity and dynamism of IgA− microbiota interactions. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, *21*(8), pp.514-525.
- Igartua, C. et al., 2017. Host genetic variation in mucosal immunity pathways influences the upper airway microbiome. *Microbiome*, *5*, pp.1-17.
- Imai, K., Iinuma, T. and Sato, S., 2021. Relationship between the oral cavity and respiratory diseases: Aspiration of oral bacteria possibly contributes to the progression of lower airway inflammation. *Japanese Dental Science Review*, *57*, pp.224-230.
- Invernizzi, R. et al., 2020. Respiratory microbiome and epithelial interactions shape immunity in the lungs. *Immunology*, *160*(2), pp.171-182.
- Kelly, M.S. et al., 2022. Non-diphtheriae Corynebacterium species are associated with decreased risk of pneumococcal colonization during infancy. The ISME journal, 16(3), pp.655-665.
- Kraus, R.F. and Gruber, M.A., 2021. Neutrophils—from bone marrow to first-line defense of the innate immune system. *Frontiers in immunology*, *12*, p.767175.
- Kukwa, A. et al, 2021. Anatomical and functional assessment of patency of the upper respiratory tract in selected respiratory disorders–Part 1. *Metrology and Measurement Systems*, *4*(28).
- Laaksi, I., 2012. Vitamin D and respiratory infection in adults. *Proceedings of the Nutrition Society*, *71*(1), pp.90-97.
- León, E.D. and Francino, M.P., 2022. Roles of secretory immunoglobulin A in host-microbiota interactions in the gut ecosystem. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, *13*, p.880484.
- Li, Z. et al., 2022. Targeting the pulmonary microbiota to fight against respiratory diseases. *Cells*, *11*(5), p.916.
- López-Campos, J.L. et al., 2016. Global burden of COPD. *Respirology*, *21*(1), pp.14-23.
- Malhotra, J. et al., 2016. Risk factors for lung cancer worldwide. *European Respiratory Journal*, *48*(3), pp.889-902.
- Man, W. H. et al., 2017. The microbiota of the respiratory tract: gatekeeper to respiratory health. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, *15*(5), 259-270.
- Meng, X. et al., 2017. The cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) and its stability. *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, *74*, pp.23-38.

- Milgroom, M.G., 2023. Biology of Infectious Disease: From Molecules to Ecosystems. Springer Nature.
- Mittal, P. et al., 2022. Microbiome in Upper Respiratory Tract Infections. *Microbiome in Inflammatory Lung Diseases*, pp.309-325.
- Nguyen, L.D. et al., 2015. The lung mycobiome: an emerging field of the human respiratory microbiome. Frontiers in microbiology, 6, p.89.
- Nicolas, R.O.L., 2011. *Role of secretory IgA in the control of commensal homeostasis in the intestine* (Doctoral dissertation, Université de Nice Sophia-Antipolis (France).
- Nussbaumer-Ochsner, Y. and Rabe, K.F., 2011. Systemic manifestations of COPD. *Chest*, *139*(1), pp.165-173.
- O'Callaghan, J. and O'Toole, P.W., 2011. Lactobacillus: Host–microbe relationships. *Between Pathogenicity and Commensalism*, pp.119-154.
- Patwa, A. and Shah, A., 2015. Anatomy and physiology of respiratory system relevant to anaesthesia. *Indian journal of anaesthesia*, *59*(9), pp.533-541.
- Penczykowski, R.M. et al., 2016. Understanding the ecology and evolution of host–parasite interactions across scales. *Evolutionary applications*, *9*(1), pp.37-52.
- Pore, P.D. et al., 2010. Study of risk factors of Acute Respiratory Infection (ARI) in under-fives in Solapur. *National Journal of Community Medicine*, *1*(02), pp.64-67.
- Pranke, I.M. and Sermet-Gaudelus, I., 2014. Biosynthesis of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator. *The international journal of biochemistry & cell biology*, *52*, pp.26-38.
- Rajan, S., 2019. *Medical microbiology*. MJP Publisher.
- Reynoso-García, J. et al., 2022. A complete guide to human microbiomes: Body niches, transmission, development, dysbiosis, and restoration. *Frontiers in Systems Biology*, *2*, p.951403.
- Rodríguez, L. et al., 2011. Malnutrition and gastrointestinal and respiratory infections in children: a public health problem. *International journal of environmental research and public health*, *8*(4), pp.1174-1205.
- Santacroce, L., Charitos, I.A., Ballini, A., Inchingolo, F., Luperto, P., De Nitto, E. and Topi, S., 2020. The human respiratory system and its microbiome at a glimpse. *Biology*, *9*(10), p.318.
- Schmidt, B.Z. et al., 2016. Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator modulators in cystic fibrosis: current perspectives. *Clinical pharmacology: advances and applications*, pp.127-140.

- Sędzikowska, A. and Szablewski, L., 2021. Human gut microbiota in health and selected cancers. *International journal of molecular sciences*, *22*(24), p.13440.
- Seong, D., 2022. *Fate and Transport of the Microbiome in Built Environments* (Doctoral dissertation, University of South Carolina).
- Song, A. et al., 2021. Exploration of the relationship between intestinal flora changes and gut acute graft-versus-host disease after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Translational Pediatrics*, *10*(2), p.283.
- Sosnay, P.R. et al., 2013. Defining the disease liability of variants in the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene. *Nature genetics*, *45*(10), pp.1160-1167.
- Toro-Ascuy, D. et al., 2023. Microbiota profile of the nasal cavity according to lifestyles in healthy adults in Santiago, Chile. *Microorganisms*, *11*(7), p.1635.
- Torre, L.A. et al., 2016. Lung cancer statistics. *Lung cancer and personalized medicine: current knowledge and therapies*, pp.1-19.
- Travis, W.D., 2011. Pathology of lung cancer. *Clinics in chest medicine*, *32*(4), pp.669-692.
- Turturice, B.A. et al., 2017. Perinatal bacterial exposure contributes to IL-13 aeroallergen response. *American journal of respiratory cell and molecular biology*, *57*(4), pp.419-427.
- Unger, S.A. and Bogaert, D., 2017. The respiratory microbiome and respiratory infections. *Journal of Infection*, *74*, pp. S84-S88.
- van Doorn, H.R. and Yu, H., 2020. Viral respiratory infections. In *Hunter's tropical medicine and emerging infectious diseases* (pp. 284-288). Elsevier.
- Van Meerbeeck, J.P. et al., 2011. Small-cell lung cancer. *The Lancet*, *378*(9804), pp.1741-1755.
- Verma, D. et al., 2018. Insights into the human oral microbiome. *Archives of microbiology*, *200*, pp.525-540.
- Wilson, M. et al, 2021. Microbes and infectious diseases. *Close Encounters of the Microbial Kind: Everything You Need to Know About Common Infections*, 3-48.
- Yadav, M.K. et al., 2022. Nanotechnology and Human Health: Current Research and Future Trends.
- Zhang, Z. and Chen, J., 2016. Atomic structure of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator. *Cell*, *167*(6), pp.1586-1597.
- Zhao, J., 2023. Global airborne bacteria and antibiotic resistome from natural distribution to anthropogenic impacts: community structure, biogeography, driving mechanism, and human health.

CHAPTER- 12

ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE IN POULTRY: CHALLENGES AND SOLUTION

Muhammad Bilal[1], Ali Nawaz Awan[2], Muhammad Usman[3], Haseeb Asif[4], Kausar Zeb[5], Tarkan Şahin[6], Zubair Ahmed[7], Aneela Gul[8], Jameel Ahmed Buzdar[1, 8*] and Shah Jahan Musakhail[1]

[1]Disease Investigation Laboratory, Livestock and Dairy Development Department Quetta, Baluchistan

[2]Department of Livestock management, Breeding and Genetics, University of Agriculture Peshawar

[3]Department of Poultry Science, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Sub Campus Toba Tek Singh

[4]Department of Pathobiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, CVAS Campus, 12-Km Chiniot Road, Jhang 35200, Pakistan

[5]Animal Husbandry, Service Training Institute Khyber Pakhtunkhwa Peshawar

[6]Department of Animal Nutrition and Nutritional Diseases, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine Kafkas University, Kars, Turkey

[7]Livestock and Dairy Development Department Quetta, Baluchistan

[8]Institute of Physiology and Pharmacology, University of Agriculture Faisalabad

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15532964

ABSTRACT

Antibiotic resistance is a major concern in poultry industry due to the wide use of antibiotics as growth promoters in poultry diets. Resistance to antibiotics is damaging humans and animals throughout the world. In different countries antibiotics used as growth promoters in livestock and poultry have been banned to reduce antibiotic resistance. Therefore, to improve poultry growth and reproduction performance and control pathogenic bacterial infection, there is potential to use trace minerals as non-antibiotic growth promoter. Trace minerals are important growth promoter in poultry that are involved in vital physiological functions. These trace minerals an effective of chemicals, growth promoter, and antibacterial agents. Due to their strong bioavailability, they exhibited a good effect on the immunity of poultry birds. The trace minerals like copper, zinc and manganese shown to improve the growth performance and overall health of poultry birds. trace mineral has the ability to reduce the need for antibiotics in poultry production by reducing the presence of antibiotic residues in poultry products. Despite the potential benefit of trace minerals as growth promoter there are some limitations to their use. Their high levels of supplementations are toxic to birds so, they must be given to optimal levels in the diet of poultry birds. In this review we aim to explore the current knowledge and future aspects to use of trace minerals as growth promoters in the poultry industry and their effectiveness in reducing the antibiotic residues in poultry products.

Key Words: Antibiotic residue, Antibiotic growth promoter, Trace minerals, Alternative growth promoter, poultry industry.

INTRODUCTION

Globally the poultry industry is an important aspect of animal agriculture (Mottet and Tempio, 2017). The industry is growing day by day due to high demand of poultry meat and eggs (Rahman *et al.*, 2017). The demand for food worldwide is rising in tandem with the world's growing population (Germer *et al.*, 2011). People tend to adjust their preferences from grains to meat and high-value diets in nations with better socioeconomic levels (Drewnowski and Popkin, 1997). Over the previous three decades, there has been a 70% increase in their choice of for chicken as a protein source (Heir *et al.*, 2021). Numerous studies have demonstrated how feed affects host health by controlling the animal's gut microbiome (Kogut and Arsenault, 2016). It is a proven truth that the commercialization and intensification of the chicken industry are expedited by recent discoveries and the usage of various growth boosters, probiotics, and probiotic supplements (Oakley *et al.*, 2014).

Antibiotics have been used for decades to treat microbiological infections in chickens all throughout the world (Agyare *et al.*, 2018) and enhance their performance (Mehdi *et al.*, 2018). However, the use of antibiotic growth promoters (AGP) is either limited or outright forbidden in certain countries because of public health concerns about the global rise in antimicrobial resistance (Wielinga *et al.*, 2014). As a result, researchers have looked for and created AGP substitutes (Castillo-López *et al.*, 2017). Trace minerals, probiotics and prebiotics are now the replacements that have the broadest approval among all the contenders.

One of the potential alternatives to antibiotic is the use of trace minerals as growth promoters (Gadde *et al.*, 2017). Trace minerals like copper, zinc, and manganese are essential micro nutrients that play vital role in various metabolic processes in poultry (Silva *et al.*, 2019). Incorporating trace elements (such as manganese, iron, chromium, selenium, copper, zinc, and silver) into broiler diets (Hassan *et al.*, 2020), layers (Patra and Lalhriatpuii, 2020), turkeys (Bhanja and Verma, 2021), quails (Patra and Lalhriatpuii, 2020), etc. Outstanding antibacterial properties of Ag, Cu, and Zn against important poultry diseases including *Salmonella* and *Campylobacter* show their potential for application in chicken production (Duffy *et al.*, 2018). Additionally, recent research has shown that micro elements can influence gut health by boosting the numbers of benevolent microorganisms (*Lactobacillus* and *Faecalibacterium*) and short-chain fatty acid synthesis (Zarei *et al.*, 2011).

Various sources of supplemental Cu and Zn, like sulfate or citrate, oxides are added to the diet that are produced from herbal feedstuffs (Debski, 2016). Nevertheless, some of these sources exhibit low bioavailability, can irritate the intestinal mucosa, or result in increased excretion of trace minerals into the environment (Bist and Choudhary, 2022). For poultry, organic sources of zinc and copper are preferred because of their better bioavailability and lack of side effects from inorganic trace

elements (Byrne and Murphy, 2022). Particularly for Zinc and copper, the limits of the sources previously mentioned are not applicable to the hydroxychloride forms of these metals (Patra and Lalhriatpuii, 2020). Compared to copper sulphate, hydroxychloride copper has been shown to have equal to higher bioavailability (Wagner *et al.*, 2016). Eskandani et al. (2021) observed, depending on how broiler chicks responded in terms of development and performance, hydroxychloride Zn had a better relative bioavailability of Zn than feed grade $ZnSO_4.H_2O$ (Eskandani *et al.*, 2021). Only a small portion of trace minerals are soluble in water, but they are completely soluble in weak acids, which accounts for their enhanced efficiency. Although the majority of research on the hydroxychloride minerals (Zinc, copper, and Manganese) has focused on them separately, they are often mixed into meals. Given the widespread use of hydroxychloride trace minerals (Zn, Mn, and Cu) in poultry, it is crucial to understand how they behave in trace mineral premixes as well as how different Zn concentrations affect the performance and carcassyield of broiler chickens (Groff-Urayama *et al.*, 2023). Additionally, it is important to understand how minerals are deposited in tissues, which has not been thoroughly investigated.

This chapter aims to explore the use of trace minerals as growth promoters in the poultry industry and their effectiveness in reducing the antibiotic residue load in poultry products. The review also highlights the overview of current knowledge about the use of antibiotics in poultry industry, the mechanisms of action of trace minerals, and evidence supporting their use as growth promoters. Similarly, the review also focuses on the limitations to the use of trace minerals along with the potential for further research in this area. It provides a comprehensive analysis of the potential for trace minerals to replace antibiotics as growth promoters in the poultry industry.

ANTIBIOTIC RESIDUES IN FOOD AND THEIR HEALTH EFFECTS

Antibiotics are commonly used in poultry for therapeutic and prophylactic purposes, as well as to improve feed efficiency and promote growth (Park *et al.*, 2016). However, the presence of antibiotic residues in poultry products can occur when drugs are administered in an extra-label fashion or when withholding periods after treatment are not followed (Tesfaye, 2019). This is a major concern for human health due to the potential harmful effects of antibiotic residues on consumers (Jammoul and El Darra, 2019). The presence of antibiotic residues in animal products such as milk, meat, and eggs can contribute to the development of antibiotic resistance in both animals and humans (Ngangom *et al.*, 2019). This can lead to a poor response to treatment during illness (Friedman *et al.*, 2016). There are also two major concerns regarding the presence of antibiotic residues in these products. The first is the potential for allergic reactions, even at smaller doses (Fymat, 2017). The second is the disruption of soil microbial communities and the potential for the development of antibiotic resistance (Jayalakshmi *et al.*, 2017).

The presence of antibiotic residues in food products is a significant public health issue (Ghimpețeanu *et al.*, 2022). Milk, meat, and eggs containing antibiotic residues are widely consumed by individuals of all ages around the world, raising concerns about

the potential long-term effects of exposure (Chen *et al.*, 2019). Prolonged exposure to antibiotic residues in food can lead to changes in the drug resistance of intestinal microflora, which can have serious consequences for human health (Qian *et al.*, 2021). In addition to the development of antibiotic resistance, exposure to antibiotic residues in food can also lead to allergic reactions, particularly to potent antigens or haptens (Bhoomika *et al.*, 2019). Individuals who are regularly exposed to antibiotic residues in their occupation may be at increased risk for developing such reactions (Lundborg and Tamhankar, 2017). Allergic reactions to ß-lactam antibiotic residues in milk or meat have been reported in many cases (Kyuchukova, 2020). It is a one of the hypersensitivity reaction (Priyanka *et al.*, 2017). It may either IgE-mediated and non-IgE-mediated. IgE-mediated reactions (Bhoomika *et al.*, 2019) occur immediately after exposure to a drug and may include symptoms such as urticarial (Guo and Saltoun, 2019), anaphylaxis (Baynes *et al.*, 2016), bronchospasm (Harper *et al.*, 2018), and angioedema (Guo and Saltoun, 2019). Non-IgE-mediated reactions include hemolytic anemia (Vyskocil *et al.*, 2019), thrombocytopenia (Mehr and Brown-Whitehorn, 2019), acute interstitial nephritis (Muglia *et al.*, 2018), serum sickness (Colli *et al.*, 2021), vasculitis (Patterson and Stankewicz, 2022), erythema multiforme (Lopes *et al.*, 2021), Stevens-Johnson syndrome (Collado-Chagoya *et al.*, 2018), and toxic epidermal necrolysis (Joshi and Khan, 2021). The use of antibacterial agents such as tetracyclines, nitrofurans, and sulfonamides as feed additives in cattle and poultry is widespread, and their residues may be excreted in milk, meat, and eggs (Venter *et al.*, 2017). These residues can cause toxicological effects in humans (Kyuchukova, 2020). Nitrofurans at higher concentrations can have carcinogenic and mutagenic effects (Ramos *et al.*, 2017), while chloramphenicol has been associated with optic neuropathy and brain abscess (Levin *et al.*, 2019), which can manifest in varying degrees of severity and clinical presentation (Kalal *et al.*, 2016). Figure 1 represent the mechanism of antibiotic resistant it spread, exposure and impact on human health.

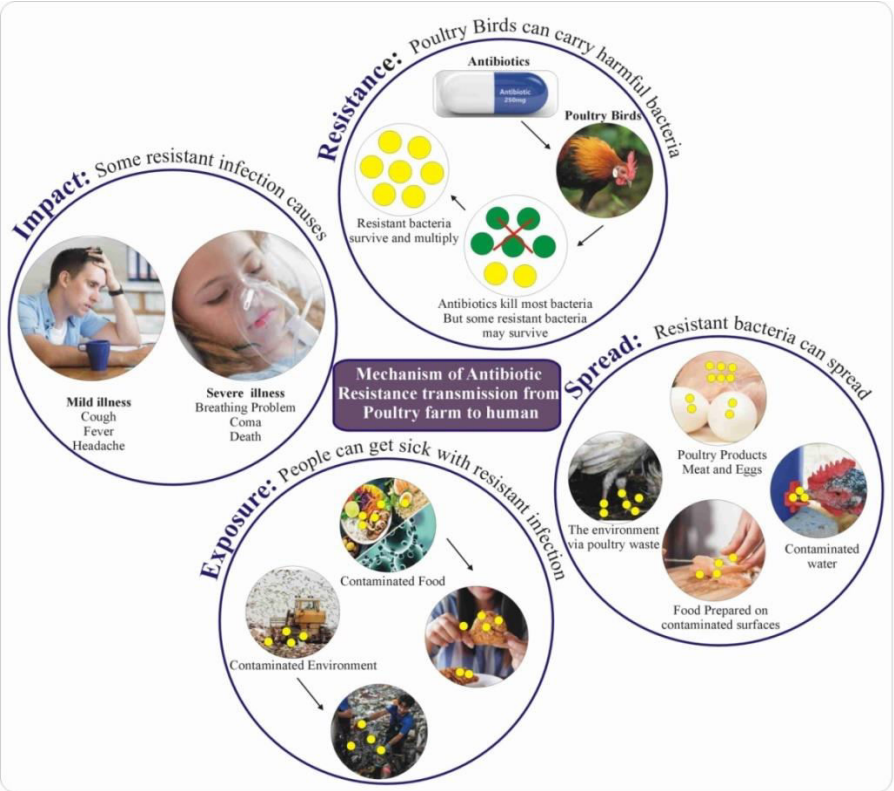


Figure 1: The systematic diagram representing the mechanism of antibiotics resistance transmission from poultry farm to human being

TRACE MINERALS AS ALTERNATIVE GROWTH PROMOTERS

When antibiotics are removed from subtherapeutic feed additives, poultry health deteriorates as a result of increased diarrhea, decreased body weight, and mortality (Low *et al.*, 2021). Consequently, identifying alternatives such as trace minerals may offer preventive management and assist in competing with bacterial diseases (Schomburg, 2020). These minerals offer numerous important advantages to poultry production systems, like immune regulation and prevention of gastrointestinal problems (Azad *et al.*, 2020). They decrease the prevalence of antimicrobial resistance, the contamination of food with drug residues, and protect the people from consuming food contaminated with antibiotic residues (Pérez-Rodríguez and Mercanoglu Taban, 2019). In poultry, whose life expectancy is short, the microbiota of the gut is essential for the development of the immune system in the intestinal mucosal area (Clavijo and Flórez, 2018). Various metabolites and compounds, including trace minerals, short-chain fatty acids (propionic and butyric acid), organic acids (acetic acid), vitamin K, and folic acid, these bacterial populations alter the GI micro-environment (Trzeciak and Herbet, 2021). These metabolites have impact on intestinal ecology by improving gut epithelial cells, boosting up the innate immune system, increase the availability of nutrients and overall the performance of birds (Jha

and Mishra, 2021). The trace minerals reduce bacterial competition for nutrients in the small intestine (López-Gálvez *et al.*, 2021), decrease the production of growth-depressing metabolites like aromatic phenols (Jin *et al.*, 2020), ammonia (Singh and Suchit, 2016), bile degradation products (Yadav and Jha, 2019), and reduce microbially-induced growth depression in birds either directly or indirectly (Kim, 2018). Intestinal proinflammatory phases can be decreased, which improves feed efficiency and poultry growth production (Feng *et al.*, 2021). Therefore, the trace elements added to chicken diets promote growth and lower pathogenic load, which would ultimately improve the health of the birds.

Trace minerals importance, sources, bioavailability and interaction

The fundamental components of our planet and all living things are known as "trace elements," which, despite appearing in very small quantities, are essential for a wide range of physiological processes (Bhattacharya *et al.*, 2016). We have seen a dramatic increase in the scientific field's efforts to study, characterize, and estimate trace elements particularly in recent years. The trace elements are crucial components of meals for humans, feed for livestock, agricultural fertilizer, and growth media for bacteria with biotechnological value (Shukla *et al.*, 2018). There are various definitions that exit for trace elements under different areas of scientific field. According to biochemical researchers, trace elements are required to retain the physiological harmony of a living being, even though they are required in only minute quantities they typically function as cofactor in metabolic reactions (Islam *et al.*, 2023). Trace elements include several non-metals such as iodine and boron, different heavy metals i.e. cobalt, manganese, zinc, copper, iron, chromium, vanadium and nickel (Maret, 2016) and some metalloids arsenic, silicon, and selenium (Das and Biswas, 2022). Well-known toxins, arsenic and chromium are classified as vital poisons are yet necessary for the proper operation of our metabolism (Bhat *et al.*, 2019). Absence of trace elements like strontium, fluorine and lithium impacts the various biologically active metabolic processes even though their role is not mechanically fully understood (Keays *et al.*, 1974). Small quantities of trace minerals are present in nature, yet they are crucial for maintaining a number of biophysical and metabolic events that take place within cells, such as the formation and operation of enzymes, the upkeep of bones and blood, immunological reactions, or the flow of impulses from the brain (Islam *et al.*, 2023). They must be received through nutrition, and a balanced and diverse diet is crucial for receiving a number of nutrients our bodies require (Silva *et al.*, 2019). Heterogeneous micronutrients known as minerals and trace elements (MTEs) can be found in a variety of plant and animal meals (Netsere, 2020). Insulin resistance, coronary and renal illness, ageing, and the likelihood of fractures are all related to deficient trace element use. Numerous cellular processes related to physical activity and athletic performance require these micronutrients, including energy retention and utilization, the breakdown of protein, inflammation, circulation of oxygen, myocardial rhythms, the metabolism of bones, and immunological function (Heffernan *et al.*, 2019). Marine creatures have special biological processes that allow them to take into their bodies and hold onto the trace

elements found in their food and water (Lall and Kaushik, 2021). For the proper functioning of humans and animals trace minerals such as boron arsenic, chromium, silicon, nickel, lithium, lead, fluorine ,molybdenum, and vanadium are considered to be necessary (Lall and Kaushik, 2021). According to standard definitions, trace minerals separately make up less than 0.01% of body mass and together make up about 1% of the body's total mass and it includes iodine, iron, manganese, zinc ,selenium, chromium, fluorine, cobalt, copper and molybdenum (Strachan, 2010).

The rate at which the consumed trace minerals from a certain source are absorbed in a form that can be metabolized by the animal is known as the bioavailability (Mehri, 2020). Whilst absorption can happen anyplace throughout the digestive system but most of trace minerals are absorbed mainly in duodenum of small intestine (Kiela and Ghishan, 2016). The animals can also absorb copper and zinc. The proventriculus in chickens is another potential location for absorption (Byrne and Murphy, 2022). Minerals from inorganic substances have a tendency to separate and undergo absorption when they are consumed and enter the upper portions of the gastro-intestinal tract (GIT) (Yadav *et al.*, 2022). Nevertheless with the lower GIT, the increased lumen pH promotes an association among mineral cations along with additional food constituents, causing the creation of insoluble structures with substantially reduced animal availability(Nissar *et al.*, 2017). Perhaps by surprise, the lining of the duodenum has been found to have a greater degree of absorbing minerals in poultry than more distal intestinal parts (Bortoluzzi *et al.*, 2020). Scientists are increasingly focusing on the bioavailability of copper because using $CuSO_4$ as a main component in nutrition has certain unfavorable impacts, including interactions with other components and physicochemical issues due to its elevated hygroscopicity and chemical responsiveness (Ritter *et al.*, 2018). Numerous studies have evaluated the bioavailability of $CuSO_4$ to various Cu compounds. Copper citrate is being asserted to be more effective than $CuSO_4$. On the basis of the concentrations of copper in the hepatocytes ((FEEDAP), 2016), Ledoux et al. also demonstrated the comparative bioavailability of cupric oxide, cupric carbonate, and cupric sulphate via intake levels of 150, 300, and 450 mg Cu/kg feed; the relative biological availability was estimated to be 88.5% for sulphate , 54.3%for carbonate and 0% for the oxide (Scott *et al.*, 2018). The uptake of Zn through the intestine and its circulation-level are key factors in its efficiency (Zhang *et al.*, 2021). It is well known that the naturally occurring form of Zn is more readily absorbed than the inorganic form. However at the moment poultry breeders commonly supplement Zn in chicken diets with amounts higher than those advised by the NRC to prevent the danger of the mineral's absence (Mohamed Zein, 2019). There are two types of selenium included in poultry food: inorganic selenium and organic selenium in quantities in (0.5 ppm) (0.3 ppm) concentration, the latter of which has improved bioavailability (Gangadoo *et al.*, 2020). Different chemical form in which selenium exits determine its bioavailability in poultry (Elkhateeb *et al.*, 2022). Due to its poor gastrointestinal absorption and effective hepatic clearance, Manganese has little risk for cytotoxicity. Figure 2 represent the interaction among the minerals in chicken.

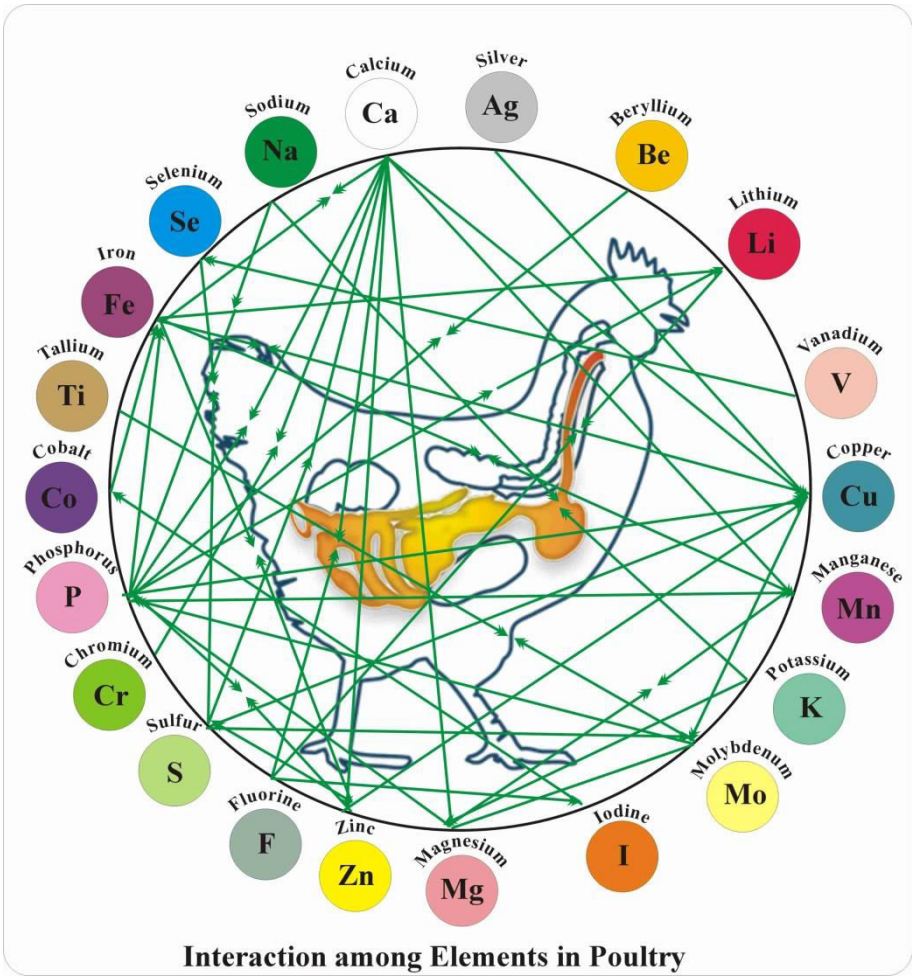


Figure 2: The digramic representation of interaction among different elements used in poultry diet

REGULATION AND GUIDELINES TO USE OF TRACE MINERALS

An antibiotic-free diet, used in broiler feed should refer to a guide that provides recommended ratios of trace minerals. For instance, a higher level of copper may be recommended in the starter phase due to its antimicrobial (Menazea and Ahmed, 2020) and gut health-promoting effects (Gumus and Gharibzahedi, 2021). In Europe and some parts of Asia, the maximum level of copper in finished feed cannot exceed 25 ppm (Navarro-Tapia *et al.*, 2021), whereas this restriction does not apply in the USA and other parts of Asia (Sabry *et al.*, 2021). The guideline also suggests the appropriate supplementation levels (in ppm) of our performance trace mineral range relative to the overall requirement (Navidshad *et al.*, 2019). By replacing inorganic trace minerals with more bioavailable sources, better performance can be achieved due to the minerals' different metabolic pathways and modes of action (De Marco *et al.*, 2017). This avoids competition between trace minerals for the same absorption

channels in the gut, leading to better mineral uptake, greater resilience against pathogenic and anti-nutritional challenges, and improved overall ROI, without altering the total dosage (Ognik *et al.*, 2016). This approach is more sustainable and cost-effective.

Synergistic and antagonistic effect on growth

The impact of various supplemental Cu resources on the blood trace mineral and lipoprotein condition of broiler poultry showed that greater Cu levels in the diet were observed with lower serum levels of both manganese and iron (da Cruz Ferreira Júnior *et al.*, 2022). $CuSO_4$ supplementation resulted in substantially greater serum zinc levels than Cu propionate supplementation, although Cu meals had no effect on the serum's overall cholesterol content (Scott *et al.*, 2018). When supplemental Zn is given to egg-laying chickens to encourage growth, it decreases the intake of food, increases plasma corticosterone levels, and causes the birds to produce antibodies (Wasti *et al.*, 2020). Zn in excess fortification results accumulation in the kidneys and liver (Staniek and Wójciak, 2018). Sadoval et al. investigated the impact of various nutritional Zn sources orally on the on tissues' levels of the minerals Fe, Cu and Zn (Naz *et al.*, 2016). Drop in Cu content following Zn supplementation by gavage method is observed as compared to administering Zn in the meal (Liu *et al.*, 2017). The level of Zn and Fe remains unaffected by Zn supplementation (Mezzaroba *et al.*, 2019). In bird's kidneys fed with resulted in higher levels of copper and iron (Naz *et al.*, 2016). According to certain studies, Zn interacts with the accessibility of the mineral calcium, which is crucial for the production of steroid hormones (LH), which are needed for the entire procedure of producing eggs (Naz *et al.*, 2016). When added to poultry diets, zinc enhances albumen weight and may change the size of eggs and thickness (Abd El-Hack *et al.*, 2017). According to studies, adding selenium to chicken's nutrition reduced the harmful effects of heavy metals like Pb and Cd by enticing the body's natural antioxidant defence mechanisms (Kushwaha *et al.*, 2022). It also decreased the expression of a variety of molecules like immune proteins ,apoptotic factors , and heat stress proteins at the mRNA level (Seremelis *et al.*, 2019). Selenium works as an antioxidant alongside vitamin E to stop or at least slow the ageing of cells and tissues (Alonge *et al.*, 2019). Additionally, Se works in concert with the antioxidant vitamin E, which constitutes a few of the elements affecting how well the body's defence system functions (Dudkiewicz *et al.*, 2012). Excessive levels of iron can also make it harder for the body to utilize other vital nutrients including P, Mg, Se, and Cu. Manganese, may react with a number of other minerals found in food, such as Fe and Zn, by either competing with Fe for intestinal absorption sites or by lowering tissue levels of Zn and Fe (Byrne and Murphy, 2022).

POTENTIAL MEDICINAL EFFECTS OF MICRO MINERALS

Antioxidant effect

Micro minerals have been shown to have antioxidant effects in poultry birds (Kuttappan *et al.*, 2021). Antioxidants protect cells from oxidative damage caused by free radicals (Zulaikhah, 2017), which are unstable molecules produced by normal

metabolic processes or exposure to environmental factors such as radiation and pollution (Garcia-Caparros *et al.*, 2021). Micro minerals are involved in various antioxidant pathways in the body, including the synthesis of antioxidant enzymes such as superoxide dismutase (SOD) (do Carmo Cupertino *et al.*, 2017), glutathione peroxidase (GPx) (Goff, 2018), and catalase (Habte-Tsion *et al.*, 2020). Micro minerals for example, selenium is a key component of GPx, which is one of the most important antioxidant enzymes in the body. Copper is involved in the synthesis of SOD, which is an important antioxidant enzyme that protects against damage caused by superoxide radicals (Surai, 2016). Zinc is also involved in the synthesis of SOD and can help protect against oxidative stress (Marreiro *et al.*, 2017). Compared to other domesticated animals, poultry is more susceptible to heat exhaustion since they lack sweat glands, have a quick metabolic activity, and have rising body's temperature (Gonzalez-Rivas *et al.*, 2020). To lessen the impact of the elevated free radicals, birds can activate their endogenous antioxidant mechanisms (Admassu and Kebede, 2019). According to some theories, selenium's metabolic function is to shield cells from oxidation and tissue damage. To counteract the thermal stress-induced ROS generation, rapid oxidation of GSH to GSSG is required (Horváth and Babinszky, 2018). By the activation of proteins including glycosyl transferase, SOD, and pyruvate carboxylase, it takes part in numerous cellular metabolisms. It is an essential part of the Mn-SOD, which protects cells from damage caused by oxidation (Alagawany *et al.*, 2021). When copper is free, it promotes oxidation. Moreover, copper is a component of SOD and protects living things from reactive oxygen species. A pharmaceutical dose of copper salt reduced cholesterol active 7-hydroxylase (Yang *et al.*, 2018).

Immunomodulatory effects

The Micro minerals have the capability to regulate the immune system of poultry birds by enhancing the systematic antibody response in the serum. Selenium (Se) controls the body's primary Se-containing antioxidant enzymes and glutathione pool by upregulating these key elements of the oxidative defense system. Se is an important factor of glutathione-peroxidase (GSHPx). Supplementing with natural dietary selenium boosted immune function and decreased lipid peroxidation byproducts. In poultry, high temperature is associated with lowering the immunological response. The increased lymphatic tissue weight, increased phagocytic activity, and improved antibody production could all be contributing factors to the stronger immune reaction. Se is essential for the defense system's optimal operation, and its lack may cause reduced phagocytic activity, diminished interleukin synthesis, and lowered generation of T lymphocytes. Through boosting immunological systems, antibody formation, and phagocytic events of lymphocytes, Se fortification in broiler food has increased the immune response in poultry (Safiullah *et al.*, 2019). Superoxide dismutase (SOD), an anti - oxidant activity, is catalyzed by Mn, Zn, and Cu. These metals also affect immune agents such thymus peptides, cytokines, and enzymes. By increasing immunoglobulin (IgA, IgM, and IgG) quantities, the addition of naturally occurring zinc had a beneficial effect on the

immune system and may have improved broilers' biological responses (Feng *et al.*, 2010). Cu plays a role in both humoral (helps produce antibodies) and cell-mediated defense (assists in eliminating invading bacteria). It exhibits immunostimulating properties & encourages the maintenance of a healthy microbiome in the gastrointestinal tract (Makarski *et al.*, 2014)

Antibacterial effects

In poultry industry, trace minerals are frequently utilized and are typically given in the feed. Substances made of organoselenium are known to have antibacterial, antitumor, and antioxidative properties (Malyugina *et al.*, 2021). This newly synthesized compounds' Minimum Inhibitory Concentration (MIC) was established against both gram positive and gram negative bacteria (Duman *et al.*, 2019). When used against *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Bacillus subtilis*, a few of the compounds exhibited moderate to considerable efficacy (Radhakrishna *et al.*, 2010). Good antibacterial properties of Ag, Cu, and Zn nanoparticles against important poultry pathogens including Campylobacter and Salmonella point to their possibility usage in chicken production (Wang *et al.*, 2020). The gram-negative bacteria *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and the gram-positive bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus epidermidis*, were used to test Se-NPs' antibacterial efficacy. Notably, *S. epidermidis* (MIC 125 ppm) and *S. aureus* were significantly affected by PVA-SeNPs (MIC 125 ppm). Se nanoparticles have the potential to be employed as antibacterial and antioxidant agents, according to the study's findings (Boroumand *et al.*, 2019).

Antiviral effects

In poultry, the use of micro minerals decreases the viral replication in several ways (Hassan *et al.*, 2020). Zinc is involved in the development and function of immune cells that can target and eliminate viruses (Sadeghsoltani *et al.*, 2021), such as T cells and natural killer cells (Allen *et al.*, 1983). Zinc can also enhance the production of interferons, which are signaling molecules that can inhibit viral replication (Bächle *et al.*, 2016). Similarly, Selenium is also involved in the production of interferons and can enhance the activity of immune cells that target viruses. Some studies have shown that micromineral supplementation can enhance the antiviral activity of animals (Dalgaard *et al.*, 2018). For example, supplementation with zinc has been shown to reduce the incidence and severity of viral infections in various animal species, including chickens, pigs, and cows (Lei *et al.*, 2022). Supplementation with selenium has been shown to enhance the activity of immune cells that can target and eliminate viruses, and reduce the severity of viral infections in various animal species (Thirumdas *et al.*, 2021). In addition to that copper is also known to have antiviral properties and has been shown to reduce the replication of certain viruses in poultry birds (Ishida, 2018). The overall, mechanism of antimicrobial potential medicinal and beneficial effects of micro minerals in poultry (Figure 3).

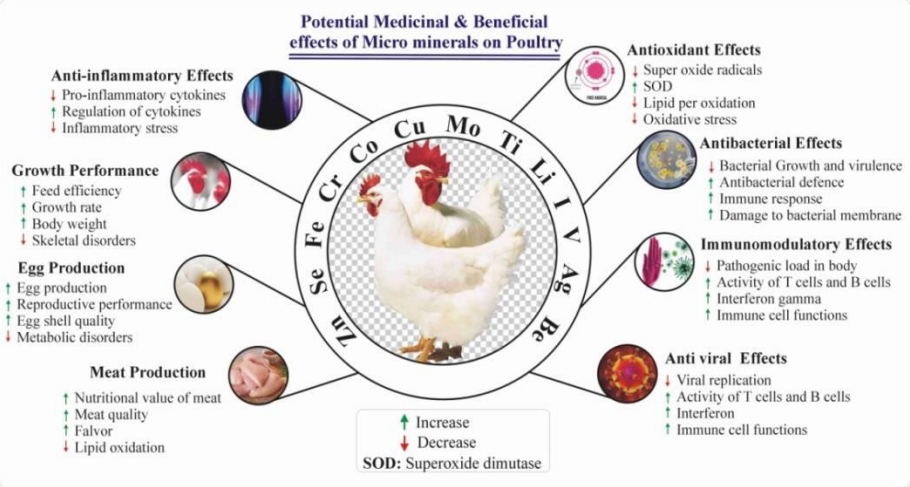


Figure 3. Showing the beneficial effect of micro minerals on poultry birds

LIMITATION FOR THE USE MICRO MINERALS IN POULTRY DIET

To maintain the efficacy of the animal feed, Se concentrations in chicken feed must not go above 0.5 mg/kg (Rao *et al.*, 2016). As a result, further study is needed to comprehend Selenium's mode function and to investigate the advantages of Se supplementation to poultry (Surai and Kochish, 2020). Selenosis is brought on by excessive levels of Se in the feed (0.5–0.6 mg/kg of feed) (Michalczuk *et al.*, 2021). Selenosis may be acute and chronic and its symptoms ranges from heart atrophy (Raisbeck, 2020), blindness, lower limb austerity and chronic stage leads to abnormalities of central nervous system (Michalczuk *et al.*, 2021). In livestock as an example, chronically low Fe consumption has been linked to harmful consequences in cattle, sheep and poultry birds including declines in important performance indices like dietary intake, muscle mass, and feed efficacy (Zhang *et al.*, 2017). Additionally described conditions include enteritis, hepatic necrosis, icterus, and hemoglobinuria (Gupta and Gupta, 2019). The illnesses linked to Cu, Fe, and Zn poisoning are frequently caused by phospholipid in membranes of cells being damaged, which results in cell death (Zafar *et al.*, 2016). Whereas brioler birds are far more vulnerable to long-term Cu toxicity and fortification is limited to 1.5 mg kg^{-1} DM, layer birds are very resistant to nutritional Cu, which is frequently supplied in excess as a growth booster (Byrne and Murphy, 2022), similarly, high level of Mn is required in the power house of cell mitochondria (Bortoluzzi *et al.*, 2020). Broken DNA strands were likewise brought on by the Cu-NP (10 g/ml). Cu-NP buildup in the hepatocytes and pulmonary tissues, reduced total body weight, and dose-related hepatic and pulmonary damages (Patra and Lalhriatpuii, 2020). Oxidative overload, the oxidation of lipids, cellular membrane destruction, and DNA damage caused by oxidation all play a role in zinc intoxication (Islam, 2017). Nano-Ag's interface is quickly oxidized by oxygen as well as various chemicals in surroundings and within organisms, releasing Ag+, a hazardous ion that may combine with amino acids, lipid particles, and DNA in living things (Arifin et al., 2020). It may result in damage to the genome,

oxidative stress, and a reduction in the antioxidant molecules (Li et al., 2020). In chickens, nano-Ag is harmless at smaller doses with little to no harmful effects, but more research is needed to determine any possible adverse consequences (Hassan et al., 2020). So, the trace minerals in toxic concentration may produce adverse effect on birds. Therefore, caution should be adopted and guideline must be followed before use of mineral practically in bird's diet.

Sr No.	Trace Minerals	RDA	Toxic Concentration	Model	Over all Effects	References
1	Zinc	50 mg Zn/kg	650 mg/L	Broiler	↑ Growth performance ↑Reproductive performance ↑Progeny viability ↑Immune status	(Huang *et al.*, 2019) (Zhang *et al.*, 2022)
2	Copper	5 & 8 mg/kg	More than 25 mg/kg	Broiler	↑ Body growth, development and maintenance ↑ Anti-bacterial ↑ Feed intake and efficiency ↑Muscle growth and development	(El Sabry *et al.*, 2021) (Sharif *et al.*, 2021)
3	Iodine	0.15 to 0.5 mg kg− 1 DM	More than 10 mg/kg	Male and Female Turkeys Birds	↑ α-globulins ↑ β-globulins ↑ γ-globulin ↓ fat content ↑ Ash content	(Meyer *et al.*, 2008) (Ostrikova *et al.*, 2019)
4	Cobalt	0.11 mg/kg	100–200 ppm	Lamb and Poultry birds	↑ Growth performance ↑ Feed conversions, ↑ Frame growth ↑ Carcass weights ↑ Dressing percentages ↑ Immunity	(Briggs, 2020) (Wu *et al.*, 2021)
5	Selenium	0.1 to 0.15 mg/kg	0.3-0.5 mg/kg	Poultry birds	↑ Growth performance ↑ FCR ↑ Antioxidant defense ↑ Anti-bacterial	(Michalczuk *et al.*, 2021) (Rana, 2021)
6	Iron	60 mg/kg feed	500 µg/dL in serum	Poultry birds	↑ Performance ↑ BW and BWG ↓ Serum cholesterol ↓ Total lipids of chickens	(Alagawany *et al.*, 2021) (Lacouture *et al.*, 1981)
7	Chromium	400 ppb	*50–150 mg/kg*	broiler diet	↑ Growth ↑ Metabolism ↓ Lipid and protein peroxidation	(Alagawany *et al.*, 2021)

↑: Increase ↓: Decrease FCR: Feed Conversion Ratio BW: Body Weight BWG: Body Weight Gain

CONCLUSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The ban on Antibiotic growth promoter in several countries has affect the poultry industry worldwide. There is an increasing demand to develop an alternative as Antibiotic growth promoter in poultry diet that assures a healthy and clean food for the human beings. Trace minerals successfully meeting this growing market demand in poultry industry. Feeding trace minerals to the poultry birds has gained more attention in recent years owing to reduce the antibiotics load, reduce the antibiotics residues in feed, enhancing the health and performance of birds, stimulating the immune response and showing many more medicinal and beneficial effects. Generally, the word is moving toward antibiotics free food, as antibiotics resistance is

a great challenge throughout the world. Updated studies suggest that trace minerals have the ability to reduce the antibiotic load in poultry birds. Their optimal level improves the growth of birds, stimulate gut development, boost the immunity, and increase the meat and egg quality and production. With the advancement of science and technology, the feeding of trace minerals has established a new scope for the scientist and research community to overcome the challenges to meet with antibiotics residues. In addition, the trace minerals being the most important component by simple methods can help a promising avenue to apply them in poultry industry as alternate growth promoter.

Author Contribution: All authors were equal contributors in writing this review article.

REFERENCES

- (FEEDAP), E.P. on A. and P. or S. used in A.F. 2016. Revision of the currently authorised maximum copper content in complete feed. *EFSA J.* 14:e04563.
- Abd El-Hack, M.E., M. Alagawany, M. Arif, M.T. Chaudhry, M. Emam and A. Patra. 2017. Organic or inorganic zinc in poultry nutrition: a review. *Worlds. Poult. Sci. J.* 73:904–915.
- Admassu, S. and M. Kebede. 2019. Application of antioxidants in food processing industry: Options to improve the extraction yields and market value of natural products. *Adv. Food Technol. Nutr. Sci* 5:38–49.
- Agyare, C., V.E. Boamah, C.N. Zumbi and F.B. Osei. 2018. Antibiotic use in poultry production and its effects on bacterial resistance. *Antimicrob. Resist. Glob. Threat* 1–20.
- Alagawany, M., S.S. Elnesr, M.R. Farag, R. Tiwari, M.I. Yatoo, K. Karthik, I. Michalak and K. Dhama. 2021. Nutritional significance of amino acids, vitamins and minerals as nutraceuticals in poultry production and health–a comprehensive review. *Vet. Q.* 41:1–29.
- Allen, J.I., R.T. Perri, C.J. McClain and N.E. Kay. 1983. Alterations in human natural killer cell activity and monocyte cytotoxicity induced by zinc deficiency. *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 102:577–589.
- Alonge, S., M. Melandri, R. Leoci, G.M. Lacalandra, M. Caira and G.G. Aiudi. 2019. The effect of dietary supplementation of vitamin E, selenium, zinc, folic acid, and N-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids on sperm motility and membrane properties in dogs. *Animals* 9:34.
- Arifin, D.C.V., D.I. Saragih and S.J. Santosa. 2020. Antibacterial activity of silver nanoparticles synthesized using tyrosine as capping and reducing agent. *Int. J.* 8.
- Azad, M.A.K., J. Gao, J. Ma, T. Li, B. Tan, X. Huang and J. Yin. 2020. Opportunities of prebiotics for the intestinal health of monogastric animals. *Anim. Nutr.* 6:379–388.

- Bächle, S.M., D.F.G. Malone, M. Buggert, A.C. Karlsson, P.-E. Isberg, A.J. Biague, H. Norrgren, P. Medstrand, M. Moll and J.K. Sandberg. 2016. Elevated levels of invariant natural killer T-cell and natural killer cell activation correlate with disease progression in HIV-1 and HIV-2 infections. *AIDS* 30:1713.
- Baynes, R.E., K. Dedonder, L. Kissell, D. Mzyk, T. Marmulak, G. Smith, L. Tell, R. Gehring, J. Davis and J.E. Riviere. 2016. Health concerns and management of select veterinary drug residues. *Food Chem. Toxicol.* 88:112–122.
- Bhanja, S.K. and S.V.S. Verma. 2021. Prospects of Nano minerals in Poultry Nutrition.
- Bhat, S.A., T. Hassan and S. Majid. 2019. Heavy metal toxicity and their harmful effects on living organisms–a review. *Int. J. Med. Sci. Diagnosis Res.* 3:106–122.
- Bhattacharya, P.T., S.R. Misra and M. Hussain. 2016. Nutritional aspects of essential trace elements in oral health and disease: an extensive review. *Scientifica (Cairo).* 2016.
- Bhoomika, P.T., A. Kadwalia, S. Jaiswal, B. Rani and P.K. Patel. 2019. Antibiotic residues in animal products and its effect on human health. *Pharma Innov. J.* 8:3–6.
- Bist, P. and S. Choudhary. 2022. Impact of heavy metal toxicity on the gut microbiota and its relationship with metabolites and future probiotics strategy: a review. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 200:5328–5350.
- Boroumand, S., M. Safari, E. Shaabani, M. Shirzad and R. Faridi-Majidi. 2019. Selenium nanoparticles: synthesis, characterization and study of their cytotoxicity, antioxidant and antibacterial activity. *Mater. Res. Express* 6:0850d8.
- Bortoluzzi, C., B.S. Vieira and T.J. Applegate. 2020. Influence of dietary zinc, copper, and manganese on the intestinal health of broilers under Eimeria challenge. *Front. Vet. Sci.* 7:13.
- Briggs, N.T. 2020. Effect of source and concentration of supplemental trace minerals on apparent absorption and retention, performance and physiological indicators of trace mineral status in lactating Holstein dairy cows.
- Byrne, L. and R.A. Murphy. 2022. Relative bioavailability of trace minerals in production animal nutrition: A review. *Animals* 12:1981.
- Castillo-López, R.I., E.P. Gutiérrez-Grijalva, N. Leyva-López, L.X. López-Martínez and J.B. Heredia. 2017. Natural alternatives to growth-promoting antibiotics (GPA) in animal production. *JAPS J. Anim. Plant Sci.* 27.
- Chen, J., G.G. Ying and W.J. Deng. 2019. Antibiotic Residues in Food: Extraction, Analysis, and Human Health Concerns. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* 67:7569–7586.

- Clavijo, V. and M.J.V. Flórez. 2018. The gastrointestinal microbiome and its association with the control of pathogens in broiler chicken production: A review. *Poult. Sci.* 97:1006–1021.
- Collado-Chagoya, R., J. Hernández-Romero, G.A. Eliosa-Alvarado, R.A. Cruz-Pantoja, R.I. Campos-Gutiérrez, A.A. Velasco-Medina and G. Velázquez-Sámano. 2018. Tolerance Induction to Antituberculosis Drugs in a Patient With Stevens–Johnson Syndrome/Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis Overlap. *Allergy Rhinol.* 9:2152656718783618.
- Colli, L.D., S. Gabrielli, E.M. Abrams, A. O'Keefe, J.L.P. Protudjer, E. Lavine, T. Pitt, A. Atkinson, T. Eiwegger and C. McCusker. 2021. Differentiating between β-lactam-induced serum sickness–like reactions and viral exanthem in children using a graded oral challenge. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol. Pract.* 9:916–921.
- da Cruz Ferreira Júnior, H., D.L. da Silva, B.R. de Carvalho, H.C. de Oliveira, J. Cunha Lima Muniz, W. Junior Alves, J. Eugene Pettigrew, S. Eliza Facione Guimarães, G. da Silva Viana and M.I. Hannas. 2022. Broiler responses to copper levels and sources: growth, tissue mineral content, antioxidant status and mRNA expression of genes involved in lipid and protein metabolism. *BMC Vet. Res.* 18:1–27.
- Dalgaard, T.S., M. Briens, R.M. Engberg and C. Lauridsen. 2018. The influence of selenium and selenoproteins on immune responses of poultry and pigs. *Anim. Feed Sci. Technol.* 238:73–83.
- Das, S. and A.K. Biswas. 2022. Comparative study of silicon and selenium to modulate chloroplast pigments levels, Hill activity, photosynthetic parameters and carbohydrate metabolism under arsenic stress in rice seedlings. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* 1–22.
- De Marco, M., M. V Zoon, C. Margetyal, C. Picart and C. Ionescu. 2017. Dietary administration of glycine complexed trace minerals can improve performance and slaughter yield in broilers and reduces mineral excretion. *Anim. Feed Sci. Technol.* 232:182–189.
- Debski, B. 2016. Supplementation of pigs diet with zinc and copper as alternative to conventional antimicrobials. *Pol. J. Vet. Sci.* 19.
- do Carmo Cupertino, M., R.D. Novaes, E.C. Santos, D.S.S. Bastos, D.C.M. Dos Santos, M. do C.Q. Fialho and S.L.P. da Matta. 2017. Cadmium-induced testicular damage is associated with mineral imbalance, increased antioxidant enzymes activity and protein oxidation in rats. *Life Sci.* 175:23–30.
- Drewnowski, A. and B.M. Popkin. 1997. The nutrition transition: new trends in the global diet. *Nutr. Rev.* 55:31–43.
- Dudkiewicz, M., T. Szczepińska, M. Grynberg and K. Pawłowski. 2012. A novel

protein kinase-like domain in a selenoprotein, widespread in the tree of life. *PLoS One* 7:e32138.

- Duffy, L.L., M.J. Osmond-McLeod, J. Judy and T. King. 2018. Investigation into the antibacterial activity of silver, zinc oxide and copper oxide nanoparticles against poultry-relevant isolates of Salmonella and Campylobacter. *Food Control* 92:293–300.
- Duman, A.N., I. Ozturk, A. Tunçel, K. Ocakoglu, S.G. Colak, M. Hoşgör-Limoncu and F. Yurt. 2019. Synthesis of new water-soluble ionic liquids and their antibacterial profile against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. *Heliyon* 5:e02607.
- El Sabry, M.I., F.K.R. Stino and W.A.A. El-Ghany. 2021. HH. *Trop. Anim. Health Prod.* 53:487.
- Elkhateeb, F.S.O., A.A. Ghazalah and A.A.A. Abdel-Wareth. 2022. Selenium as an essential micronutrient in poultry nutrition. A review. *SVU-International J. Agric. Sci.* 4:160–177.
- Eskandani, M., H. Janmohammadi, S.A. Mirghelenj, M. Ebrahimi and S. Kalanaky. 2021. Effects of zinc nanoparticles on growth performance, carcass characteristics, immunity, and meat quality of broiler chickens. *Iran. J. Appl. Anim. Sci.* 11:135–146.
- Feng, J., M. Lu, J. Wang, H. Zhang, K. Qiu, G. Qi and S. Wu. 2021. Dietary oregano essential oil supplementation improves intestinal functions and alters gut microbiota in late-phase laying hens. *J. Anim. Sci. Biotechnol.* 12:1–15.
- Feng, J., W.Q. Ma, H.H. Niu, X.M. Wu, Y. Wang and J. Feng. 2010. Effects of zinc glycine chelate on growth, hematological, and immunological characteristics in broilers. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 133:203–211.
- Friedman, N.D., E. Temkin and Y. Carmeli. 2016. The negative impact of antibiotic resistance. *Clin. Microbiol. Infect.* 22:416–422.
- Fymat, A.L. 2017. Antibiotics and antibiotic resistance. *Biomed J Sci Tech Res* 1:1–16.
- Gadde, U., W.H. Kim, S.T. Oh and H.S. Lillehoj. 2017. Alternatives to antibiotics for maximizing growth performance and feed efficiency in poultry: a review. *Anim. Heal. Res. Rev.* 18:26–45.
- Gangadoo, S., I. Dinev, N.-L. Willson, R.J. Moore, J. Chapman and D. Stanley. 2020. Nanoparticles of selenium as high bioavailable and non-toxic supplement alternatives for broiler chickens. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* 27:16159–16166.
- Garcia-Caparros, P., L. De Filippis, A. Gul, M. Hasanuzzaman, M. Ozturk, V. Altay and M.T. Lao. 2021. Oxidative stress and antioxidant metabolism under

adverse environmental conditions: a review. *Bot. Rev.* 87:421–466.

- Germer, J., J. Sauerborn, F. Asch, J. de Boer, J. Schreiber, G. Weber and J. Müller. 2011. Skyfarming an ecological innovation to enhance global food security. *J. für Verbraucherschutz und Leb.* 6:237–251.
- Ghimpețeanu, O.M., E.N. Pogurschi, D.C. Popa, N. Dragomir, T. Drăgotoiu, O.D. Mihai and C.D. Petcu. 2022. Antibiotic use in livestock and residues in food—A public health threat: A review. *Foods* 11:1430.
- Goff, J.P. 2018. Invited review: Mineral absorption mechanisms, mineral interactions that affect acid–base and antioxidant status, and diet considerations to improve mineral status. *J. Dairy Sci.* 101:2763–2813.
- Gonzalez-Rivas, P.A., S.S. Chauhan, M. Ha, N. Fegan, F.R. Dunshea and R.D. Warner. 2020. Effects of heat stress on animal physiology, metabolism, and meat quality: A review. *Meat Sci.* 162:108025.
- Groff-Urayama, P.M., J.M. Cruvinel, C.Y. Oura, T.S. Dos Santos, F.K. de Lima-Krenchinski, J.S. Batistioli, P.A.D. Rodrigues, K.V.Z. Augusto, Y. Han and J.R. Sartori. 2023. Sources and levels of copper and manganese supplementation influence performance, carcass traits, meat quality, tissue mineral content, and ileal absorption of broiler chickens. *Poult. Sci.* 102:102330.
- Gumus, C.E. and S.M.T. Gharibzahedi. 2021. Yogurts supplemented with lipid emulsions rich in omega-3 fatty acids: New insights into the fortification, microencapsulation, quality properties, and health-promoting effects. *Trends Food Sci. Technol.* 110:267–279.
- Guo, C. and C. Saltoun. 2019. Urticaria and angioedema. *Allergy & Asthma Proceedings*.
- Gupta, P.K. and P.K. Gupta. 2019. Toxic effects of metals and micronutrients. *Concepts Appl. Vet. Toxicol. An Interact. Guid.* 83–119.
- Habte-Tsion, H.-M., G.D. Kolimadu, W. Rossi, K. Filer and V. Kumar. 2020. Effects of Schizochytrium and micro-minerals on immune, antioxidant, inflammatory and lipid-metabolism status of Micropterus salmoides fed high-and low-fishmeal diets. *Sci. Rep.* 10:1–13.
- Harper, N.J.N., T.M. Cook, T. Garcez, L. Farmer, K. Floss, S. Marinho, H. Torevell, A. Warner, K. Ferguson and J. Hitchman. 2018. Anaesthesia, surgery, and life-threatening allergic reactions: epidemiology and clinical features of perioperative anaphylaxis in the 6th National Audit Project (NAP6). *Br. J. Anaesth.* 121:159–171.
- Hassan, S., F. Hassan and M.S. Rehman. 2020. Nano-particles of trace minerals in poultry nutrition: potential applications and future prospects. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 195:591–612.

- Heffernan, S.M., K. Horner, G. De Vito and G.E. Conway. 2019. The role of mineral and trace element supplementation in exercise and athletic performance: a systematic review. *Nutrients* 11:696.
- Heir, E., B. Moen, A.W. Åsli, M. Sunde and S. Langsrud. 2021. Antibiotic resistance and phylogeny of Pseudomonas spp. isolated over three decades from chicken meat in the Norwegian food chain. *Microorganisms* 9:207.
- Horváth, M. and L. Babinszky. 2018. Impact of selected antioxidant vitamins (Vitamin A, E and C) and micro minerals (Zn, Se) on the antioxidant status and performance under high environmental temperature in poultry. A review. *Acta Agric. Scand. Sect. A—Animal Sci.* 68:152–160.
- Huang, L., X. Li, W. Wang, L. Yang and Y. Zhu. 2019. The Role of Zinc in Poultry Breeder and Hen Nutrition: an Update. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 192:308–318.
- Ishida, T. 2018. Antiviral activities of Cu2+ ions in viral prevention, replication, RNA degradation, and for antiviral efficacies of lytic virus, ROS-mediated virus, copper chelation. *World Sci. News* 148–168.
- Islam, M., S. Akash, M.H. Jony, F.T. Nowrin, M. Rahman, A. Rauf and M. Thiruvengadam. 2023. Exploring the potential function of trace elements in human health: a therapeutic perspective. *Mol. Cell. Biochem.* 1–31.
- Islam, M.T. 2017. Oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction-linked neurodegenerative disorders. *Neurol. Res.* 39:73–82.
- Jammoul, A. and N. El Darra. 2019. Evaluation of Antibiotics Residues in Chicken Meat Samples in Lebanon.
- Jayalakshmi, K., M. Paramasivam, M. Sasikala, T. V Tamilam and A. Sumithra. 2017. Review on antibiotic residues in animal products and its impact on environments and human health. *J Entomol Zool Stud* 5:1446–1451.
- Jha, R. and P. Mishra. 2021. Dietary fiber in poultry nutrition and their effects on nutrient utilization, performance, gut health, and on the environment: a review. *J. Anim. Sci. Biotechnol.* 12:1–16.
- Jin, L.-Z., Y. Dersjant-Li and I. Giannenas. 2020. Application of aromatic plants and their extracts in diets of broiler chickens. *Feed Addit.* 159–185.
- Joshi, S.R. and D.A. Khan. 2021. Non-IgE-mediated drug hypersensitivity reactions. *Curr. Allergy Asthma Rep.* 21:41.
- Kalal, B.S., P. Puranik, S. Nagaraj, S. Rego and A. Shet. 2016. Scrub typhus and spotted fever among hospitalised children in South India: Clinical profile and serological epidemiology. *Indian J. Med. Microbiol.* 34:293–298.
- Keays, R.R., R. Ganapathy, J.C. Laul, U. Krähenbühl and J.W. Morgan. 1974.

The simultaneous determination of 20 trace elements in terrestrial, lunar and meteoritic material by radiochemical neutron activation analysis. *Anal. Chim. Acta* 72:1–29.

- Kiela, P.R. and F.K. Ghishan. 2016. Physiology of intestinal absorption and secretion. *Best Pract. Res. Clin. Gastroenterol.* 30:145–159.
- Kim, E. 2018. Effects of epidermal growth factor on gastrointestinal development and function for improved growth and efficiency in poultry.
- Kogut, M.H. and R.J. Arsenault. 2016. Gut health: The new paradigm in food animal production.
- Kushwaha, A., N. Hans, B.S. Giri, E.R. Rene and R. Rani. 2022. Uncovering the phytochemicals of root exudates and extracts of lead (Pb) tolerant Chrysopogon zizanioides (L.) Roberty in response to lead contamination and their effect on the chemotactic behavior of rhizospheric bacteria. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* 29:44998–45012.
- Kuttappan, V.A., M. Manangi, M. Bekker, J. Chen and M. Vazquez-Anon. 2021. Nutritional intervention strategies using dietary antioxidants and organic trace minerals to reduce the incidence of wooden breast and other carcass quality defects in broiler birds. *Front. Physiol.* 12:663409.
- Kyuchukova, R. 2020. Antibiotic residues and human health hazard-review. *Bulg. J. Agric. Sci.* 26:664–668.
- Lacouture, P.G., S. Wason, A.R. Temple, D.K. Wallace and F.H.J. Lovejoy. 1981. Emergency assessment of severity in iron overdose by clinical and laboratory methods. *J. Pediatr.* 99:89–91.
- Lall, S.P. and S.J. Kaushik. 2021. Nutrition and metabolism of minerals in fish. *Animals* 11:2711.
- Lei, X.G., G.F. Combs Jr, R.A. Sunde, J.S. Caton, J.D. Arthington and M.Z. Vatamaniuk. 2022. Dietary selenium across species. *Annu. Rev. Nutr.* 42:337–375.
- Levin, B., E.S. Goh, Y.H. Ng and D.S. Sethi. 2019. Endoscopic removal of a foreign body in the orbital apex abutting the optic nerve. *Singapore Med. J.* 60:265.
- Li, H., F. Mo, Y. Li, M. Wang, Z. Li, H. Hu, W. Deng and R. Zhang. 2020. Effects of silver (I) toxicity on microstructure, biochemical activities, and genic material of Lemna minor L. with special reference to application of bioindicator. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* 27:22735–22748.
- Liu, J.-H., X. Ma, Y. Xu, H. Tang, S.-T. Yang, Y.-F. Yang, D.-D. Kang, H. Wang and Y. Liu. 2017. Low toxicity and accumulation of zinc oxide nanoparticles in mice after 270-day consecutive dietary supplementation. *Toxicol. Res. (Camb).*

6:134–143.

- Lopes, N.T., C.E.O. Pinilla and A.C. Gerbase. 2021. Erythema multiforme after CoronaVac vaccination. *J. Eur. Acad. Dermatology Venereol.* 35:e717.
- López-Gálvez, G., M. López-Alonso, A. Pechova, B. Mayo, N. Dierick and J. Gropp. 2021. Alternatives to antibiotics and trace elements (copper and zinc) to improve gut health and zootechnical parameters in piglets: A review. *Anim. Feed Sci. Technol.* 271:114727.
- Low, C.X., L.T.-H. Tan, N.-S. Ab Mutalib, P. Pusparajah, B.-H. Goh, K.-G. Chan, V. Letchumanan and L.-H. Lee. 2021. Unveiling the impact of antibiotics and alternative methods for animal husbandry: A review. *Antibiotics* 10:578.
- Lundborg, C.S. and A.J. Tamhankar. 2017. Antibiotic residues in the environment of South East Asia. *Bmj* 358.
- Makarski, B., M. Gortat, J. Lechowski, W. Zukiewicz-Sobczak, P. Sobczak and K. Zawislak. 2014. Impact of copper (Cu) at the dose of 50 mg on haematological and biochemical blood parameters in turkeys, and level of Cu accumulation in the selected tissues as a source of information on product safety for consumers. *Ann. Agric. Environ. Med.* 21.
- Malyugina, S., S. Skalickova, J. Skladanka, P. Slama and P. Horky. 2021. Biogenic selenium nanoparticles in animal nutrition: a review. *Agriculture* 11:1244.
- Maret, W. 2016. The metals in the biological periodic system of the elements: concepts and conjectures. *Int. J. Mol. Sci.* 17:66.
- Marreiro, D.D.N., K.J.C. Cruz, J.B.S. Morais, J.B. Beserra, J.S. Severo and A.R.S. De Oliveira. 2017. Zinc and oxidative stress: current mechanisms. *Antioxidants* 6:24.
- Mehdi, Y., M.-P. Létourneau-Montminy, M.-L. Gaucher, Y. Chorfi, G. Suresh, T. Rouissi, S.K. Brar, C. Côté, A.A. Ramirez and S. Godbout. 2018. Use of antibiotics in broiler production: Global impacts and alternatives. *Anim. Nutr.* 4:170–178.
- Mehr, S. and T. Brown-Whitehorn. 2019. What do allergists in practice need to know about non–IgE-mediated food allergies. *Ann. Allergy, Asthma Immunol.* 122:589–597.
- Mehri, A. 2020. Trace elements in human nutrition (II)–an update. *Int. J. Prev. Med.* 11.
- Menazea, A.A. and M.K. Ahmed. 2020. Silver and copper oxide nanoparticles-decorated graphene oxide via pulsed laser ablation technique: Preparation, characterization, and photoactivated antibacterial activity. *Nano-Structures &*

Nano-Objects 22:100464.

- Meyer, U., K. Weigel, F. Schöne, M. Leiterer and G. Flachowsky. 2008. Effect of dietary iodine on growth and iodine status of growing fattening bulls. *Livest. Sci.* 115:219–225.
- Mezzaroba, L., D.F. Alfieri, A.N.C. Simão and E.M.V. Reiche. 2019. The role of zinc, copper, manganese and iron in neurodegenerative diseases. *Neurotoxicology* 74:230–241.
- Michalczuk, M., M. Batorska, U. Sikorska, D. Bień, J. Urban, K. Capecka and P. Konieczka. 2021. Selenium and the health status, production results, and product quality in poultry. *Anim. Sci. J.* 92:e13662.
- Mohamed Zein, R.S.E. 2019. Evaluation of Poultry Feed Quality in Some Factories in Khartoum State.
- Mottet, A. and G. Tempio. 2017. Global poultry production: current state and future outlook and challenges. *Worlds. Poult. Sci. J.* 73:245–256.
- Muglia, C., S.M. Abbassi, J. Huerta, A. Mattappallil, R. Khianey, A.H. Wolff and E. Capitle. 2018. Identification of patients eligible for penicillin skin test protocol. *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 141:AB38.
- Navarro-Tapia, E., M. Serra-Delgado, L. Fernández-López, M. Meseguer-Gilabert, M. Falcón, G. Sebastiani, S. Sailer, O. Garcia-Algar and V. Andreu-Fernández. 2021. Toxic elements in traditional kohl-based eye cosmetics in Spanish and German markets. *Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health* 18:6109.
- Navidshad, B., M. Mohammadrezaei, M. Zarei, R. Valizadeh, S. Karamati, F. Rezaei, S. Jabbari, R. Kachoei and P. Esmaeilinasab. 2019. The new progresses in trace mineral requirements of broilers, a review. *Iran. J. Appl. Anim. Sci.* 9:9–16.
- Naz, S., M. Idris, M.A. Khalique, Zia-Ur-Rahman, I.A. Alhidary, M.M. Abdelrahman, R.U. Khan, N. Chand, U. Farooq and S. Ahmad. 2016. The activity and use of zinc in poultry diets. *Worlds. Poult. Sci. J.* 72:159–167.
- Netsere, H. 2020. PRODUCTION OF BIOORGANIC LIQUID FERTILIZER FROM KHAT LEAVES AND ONION BULBS.
- Ngangom, B.L., S.S.A. Tamunjoh and F.F. Boyom. 2019. Antibiotic residues in food animals: Public health concern. *Acta Ecol. Sin.* 39:411–415.
- Nissar, J., T. Ahad, H.R. Naik and S.Z. Hussain. 2017. A review phytic acid: As antinutrient or nutraceutical. *J. Pharmacogn. Phytochem.* 6:1554–1560.
- Oakley, B.B., H.S. Lillehoj, M.H. Kogut, W.K. Kim, J.J. Maurer, A. Pedroso, M.D. Lee, S.R. Collett, T.J. Johnson and N.A. Cox. 2014. The chicken gastrointestinal microbiome. *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* 360:100–112.

- Ognik, K., A. Stępniowska, E. Cholewińska and K. Kozłowski. 2016. The effect of administration of copper nanoparticles to chickens in drinking water on estimated intestinal absorption of iron, zinc, and calcium. *Poult. Sci.* 95:2045–2051.
- Ostrikova, E.E., N.A. Ostapenko, A.S. Chernyshkov and N.V. Lenkova. 2019. Applying iodine-containing preparations as growth promoters in Russia's poultry farming. *Bulg. J. Agric. Sci.* 25:768–781.
- Park, Y.H., F. Hamidon, C. Rajangan, K.P. Soh, C.Y. Gan, T.S. Lim, W.N.W. Abdullah and M.T. Liong. 2016. Application of probiotics for the production of safe and high-quality poultry meat. *Korean J. food Sci. Anim. Resour.* 36:567.
- Patra, A. and M. Lalhriatpuii. 2020. progress and prospect of essential mineral nanoparticles in poultry nutrition and feeding—A review. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 197:233–253.
- Patterson, R.A. and H.A. Stankewicz. 2022. Penicillin allergy. *StatPearls [internet]*. StatPearls Publishing.
- Pérez-Rodríguez, F. and B. Mercanoglu Taban. 2019. A state-of-art review on multi-drug resistant pathogens in foods of animal origin: risk factors and mitigation strategies. *Front. Microbiol.* 10:2091.
- Priyanka, P.S., M.S. Sheoran and S. Ganguly. 2017. Antibiotic residues in milk-a serious public health hazard. *J. Environ. Life Sci.* 2:99–102.
- Qian, M., J. Wang, X. Ji, H. Yang, B. Tang, H. Zhang, G. Yang, Z. Bao and Y. Jin. 2021. Sub-chronic exposure to antibiotics doxycycline, oxytetracycline or florfenicol impacts gut barrier and induces gut microbiota dysbiosis in adult zebrafish (Daino rerio). *Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf.* 221:112464.
- Radhakrishna, P.M., K.C. Sharadamma, H.M. Vagdevi, P.M. Abhilekha, S.R. Mubeen and K. Nischal. 2010. Synthesis and antibacterial activity of novel organoselenium compounds. *Int. J. Chem.* 2:149.
- Rahman, M.S., D.-H. Jang and C.-J. Yu. 2017. Poultry industry of Bangladesh: entering a new phase. *Korean J. Agric. Sci.* 44:272–282.
- Raisbeck, M.F. 2020. Selenosis in ruminants. *Vet. Clin. Food Anim. Pract.* 36:775–789.
- Ramos, F., L. Santos and J. Barbosa. 2017. Nitrofuran veterinary drug residues in chicken eggs. *Egg Innovations and Strategies for Improvements*. Elsevier. pp.457–464.
- Rana, T. 2021. Prospects and future perspectives of selenium nanoparticles: An insight of growth promoter, antioxidant and anti-bacterial potentials in productivity of poultry. *J. Trace Elem. Med. Biol.* 68:126862.

- Rao, S.V.R., B. Prakash, M. Raju, A.K. Panda, R.K. Kumari and E.P.K. Reddy. 2016. Effect of supplementing organic forms of zinc, selenium and chromium on performance, anti-oxidant and immune responses in broiler chicken reared in tropical summer. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 172:511–520.
- Ritter, D., A. Bitsch, M. Elend, S. Schuchardt, T. Hansen, C. Brodbeck, J. Knebel, A. Fuchs, C. Gronewold and R. Fautz. 2018. Development and Evaluation of an In Vitro Test System for Toxicity Screening of Aerosols Released from Consumer Products and First Application to Aerosols from a Hair Straightening Process. *Appl. Vitr. Toxicol.* 4:180–192.
- Sabry, M.I. El, F.K.R. Stino and W.A.A. El-Ghany. 2021. Copper: benefits and risks for poultry, livestock, and fish production. *Trop. Anim. Health Prod.* 53:1–14.
- Sadeghsoltani, F., I. Mohammadzadeh, M.-M. Safari, P. Hassanpour, M. Izadpanah, D. Qujeq, S. Moein and M. Vaghari-Tabari. 2021. Zinc and respiratory viral infections: important trace element in anti-viral response and immune regulation. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 1–16.
- Safiullah, N. Chand, R.U. Khan, S. Naz, M. Ahmad and S. Gul. 2019. Effect of ginger (Zingiber officinale Roscoe) and organic selenium on growth dynamics, blood melanodialdehyde and paraoxonase in broilers exposed to heat stress. *J. Appl. Anim. Res.* 47:212–216.
- Schomburg, L. 2020. The other view: The trace element selenium as a micronutrient in thyroid disease, diabetes, and beyond. *Hormones* 19:15–24.
- Scott, A., K.P. Vadalasetty, A. Chwalibog and E. Sawosz. 2018. Copper nanoparticles as an alternative feed additive in poultry diet: a review. *Nanotechnol. Rev.* 7:69–93.
- Seremelis, I., G.P. Danezis, A.C. Pappas, E. Zoidis and K. Fegeros. 2019. Avian Stress-Related Transcriptome and Selenotranscriptome: Role during Exposure to Heavy Metals and Heat Stress. *Antioxidants (Basel, Switzerland)* 8.
- Sharif, M., M.A. Rahman, B. Ahmed, R.Z. Abbas and F. Hassan. 2021. Copper nanoparticles as growth promoter, antioxidant and anti-bacterial agents in poultry nutrition: prospects and future implications. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 199:3825–3836.
- Shukla, A.K., S.K. Behera, A. Pakhre and S.K. Chaudhari. 2018. Micronutrients in soils, plants, animals and humans. *Indian J. Fertil.* 14:30–54.
- Silva, C.S., C. Moutinho, A. Ferreira da Vinha and C. Matos. 2019. Trace minerals in human health: Iron, zinc, copper, manganese and fluorine. *Int. J. Sci. Res. Methodol.* 13:57–80.
- Singh, C. and S.P. Suchit. 2016. A review on role of supplementation of organic

acids on broiler's performance. *Lifesciences Leafl.* 75:113–131.

- Staniek, H. and R.W. Wójciak. 2018. The combined effects of iron excess in the diet and chromium (III) supplementation on the iron and chromium status in female rats. *Biol. Trace Elem. Res.* 184:398–408.
- Strachan, S. 2010. Trace elements. *Curr. Anaesth. Crit. Care* 21:44–48.
- Surai, P.F. 2016. Antioxidant systems in poultry biology: superoxide dismutase. *J. Anim. Res. Nutr.* 1:8.
- Surai, P.F. and I.I. Kochish. 2020. Food for thought: nano-selenium in poultry nutrition and health. *Anim. Heal. Res. Rev.* 21:103–107.
- Tesfaye, S. 2019. A review on the antimicrobial residues and their health impacts in Ethiopia. *Int. J. Microbiol. Res.* 10:139–147.
- Thirumdas, R., A. Kothakota, R. Pandiselvam, A. Bahrami and F.J. Barba. 2021. Role of food nutrients and supplementation in fighting against viral infections and boosting immunity: A review. *Trends food Sci. Technol.* 110:66–77.
- Trzeciak, P. and M. Herbet. 2021. Role of the intestinal microbiome, intestinal barrier and psychobiotics in depression. *Nutrients* 13:927.
- Venter, H., M.L. Henningsen and S.L. Begg. 2017. Antimicrobial resistance in healthcare, agriculture and the environment: The biochemistry behind the headlines. *Essays Biochem.* 61:1–10.
- Vyskocil, J., S. Tucek, I. Kiss, L. Fedorova, J. Nevrlka and L. Zdrazilova-Dubska. 2019. Type II hypersensitivity reactions after oxaliplatin rechallenge can be life threatening. *Int. Immunopharmacol.* 74:105728.
- Wagner, J.J., T.E. Engle, E. Caldera, K.L. Neuhold, D.R. Woerner, J.W. Spears, J.S. Heldt and S.B. Laudert. 2016. The effects of zinc hydroxychloride and basic copper chloride on growth performance, carcass characteristics, and liver zinc and copper status at slaughter in yearling feedlot steers. *Prof. Anim. Sci.* 32:570–579.
- Wang, Y., H. Wang, B. Wang, B. Zhang and W. Li. 2020. Effects of manganese and Bacillus subtilis on the reproductive performance, egg quality, antioxidant capacity, and gut microbiota of breeding geese during laying period. *Poult. Sci.* 99:6196–6204.
- Wasti, S., N. Sah and B. Mishra. 2020. Impact of heat stress on poultry health and performances, and potential mitigation strategies. *Animals* 10:1266.
- Wielinga, P.R., V.F. Jensen, F.M. Aarestrup and J. Schlundt. 2014. Evidence-based policy for controlling antimicrobial resistance in the food chain in Denmark. *Food Control* 40:185–192.
- Wu, J.P., R. Zhou, L.S. Liu, D.P. Casper, X. Lang, C.L. Wang, L.P. Zhang, S.

Wei and H.B. Liu. 2021. Growth performance, nutrient digestibility, blood parameters, and carcass characteristics by lambs fed an oregano and cobalt blend. *Animal* 15:100365.

- Yadav, S. and R. Jha. 2019. Strategies to modulate the intestinal microbiota and their effects on nutrient utilization, performance, and health of poultry. *J. Anim. Sci. Biotechnol.* 10:1–11.
- Yadav, S.K., Z.A. Khan, B. Mishra, S. Bahadur, A. Kumar and B. Yadav. 2022. The Toxic Side of Nanotechnology: An Insight into Hazards to Health and the Ecosystem. *Micro Nanosyst.* 14:21–33.
- Yang, Z., X.M. Qi, H.M. Yang, H. Dai, C.X. Xu and Z.Y. Wang. 2018. Effects of dietary copper on growth performance, slaughter performance and nutrient content of fecal in growing goslings from 28 to 70 days of age. *Brazilian J. Poult. Sci.* 20:45–52.
- Zafar, A., S. Singh and I. Naseem. 2016. Cu (II)-coumestrol interaction leads to ROS-mediated DNA damage and cell death: a putative mechanism for anticancer activity. *J. Nutr. Biochem.* 33:15–27.
- Zarei, M., M. Ehsani and M. Torki. 2011. Productive performance of laying hens fed wheat-based diets included olive pulp with or without a commercial enzyme product. *African J. Biotechnol.* 10:4303–4312.
- Zhang, J., Z. Li, C. Yu, H. Liu, B. Zhou, X. Zhang, T. Wang and C. Wang. 2022. Efficacy of using zinc oxide nanoparticle as a substitute to antibiotic growth promoter and zinc sulphate for growth performance, antioxidant capacity, immunity and intestinal barrier function in broilers. *Ital. J. Anim. Sci.* 21:562–576.
- Zhang, X., W. Wang, F. Mo, Y. La, C. Li and F. Li. 2017. Association of residual feed intake with growth and slaughtering performance, blood metabolism, and body composition in growing lambs. *Sci. Rep.* 7:1–11.
- Zhang, Y., X. Wei, Q. Sun, W. Qian, X. Liu, J. Li, Y. Long and X. Wan. 2021. Different types and functional effects of probiotics on human health through regulating glucose homeostasis. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* 69:14781–14791.
- Zulaikhah, S.T. 2017. The role of antioxidant to prevent free radicals in the body. *Sains Med.* 8:39–45.

CHAPTER- 13

PUBLIC HEALTH AND ZOONOSIS: EXPLORING VIRAL DISEASES INTERPLAY BETWEEN HUMAN AND ANIMAL HEALTH

Muhammad Bilal[1], Rahmeen Ajaz[2], Hammad Ahmed Hashmi[3], Naimat Ullah[4], Muhammad Waleed Kashif[5], Shumaila Ameer[6], Khurram Adrian Shah[7], Taufeeq Ahmed[1], Jamal Mehmood Shah[1] and Jameel Ahmed Buzdar [1*]

[1]Disease Investigation Laboratory, Livestock and Dairy Development Department, Government of Balochistan

[2]Department of Occupational health and safety, Universitas Indonesia

[3]Department of Clinical Studies, Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Agriculture University Rawalpindi

[4]Department of Parasitology, Faculty of Veterinary Science, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences (UVAS), Lahore-54000, Pakistan

[5]Faculty of veterinary Sciences, Bahaudin Zakariya University, Multan

[6]Animal Science Division, Nuclear Institute of Agriculture and Biology NIAB-C (PIEAS), Faislabad

[7]Department of Veterinary Sciences, The University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Swat

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533220

ABSTRACT

As the world continues to react and respond ineffectively to emerging infectious diseases like Middle Eastern Respiratory Syndrome and the Eola and Zika viruses. One Health is a more proactive and important method for prevention and preparedness. This is supported by growing transdisciplinary community. Through enhanced cross-sectoral collaboration, this method offers significant potential to both lessen the effect of disease outbreak load and minimize their recurrence in the future. Consortium members' utilization of One Health methodologies to highlight the potential for fruitful One Health outcomes that can be obtained by cooperative, transdisciplinary relationships.

Keywords: Zoonosis, Public Health, Viral Diseases, Animal Health, Human Health

INTRODUCTION

In history, outbreaks have plagued societies, spreading quickly or covertly. Human Immunodeficiency Virus/ Acquired Immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS), Middle Eastern Respiratory Syndrome (MERS), and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) have a great loss the lives, livelihoods destroyed and significant effects on larger scale economies (Emmanuel et al., 2020). The world is still not ready to control and adapt to rapidly changing disease dynamics, as evidenced by the latest outbreak and spread of Ebola virus diseases (EVD) and Zika virus diseases (ZVD) in West Africa. The impact of these outbreaks also caused serious economic and social repercussions worldwide as an example of how borders between nations and

continents that are trying to save their populations are vanishing. Most zoonotic diseases are recently identified infectious diseases (EIDs), caused by microbes that can spread from humans to animals (Galindo-González, 2022). Each year, these diseases claim the lives of tens of thousands of people, The billions of dollars' worth of economic damages by a single outbreak (Yamin, 2020). Although early outbreak management and prevention are crucial in reducing the impact of an epidemic, the recent Ebola Virus Disease (EVD) epidemic in West Africa has demonstrated that less developed countries remain vulnerable to such outbreaks.

Even though the significance of zoonotic illnesses is now widely acknowledged, research into the fundamental reasons of emergence and factors that promote dissemination has received little attention (El Amri *et al.*, 2020). In response to this knowledge vacuum on disease dynamics, a growing transdisciplinary community—often led by veterinarians and epidemiologists—has advocated for a more holistic, or One Health, approach that acknowledges the need to broaden disciplinary competence in public health. Veterinarians have been vocal proponents of the One Health movement since its inception, arguing that it is a paradigm for problem-solving that takes into account all elements of health—public, animal, and environmental (Wilcox and Steele, 2020). Despite the conceptual recognition of the necessity of this three-legged stool, when significant health issues are taken up in policy and practice, the environmental and animal bases of this stool are frequently given only a passing glance. Emerging and re-emerging diseases, like the Zika virus, EVD, H5N1 and H7N9 avian influenza, and the H1N1 pandemic influenza, serve as a reminder of the interconnectedness of human, animal, and ecosystem health and the need for a coordinated, interdisciplinary, collaborative, cross-sectoral approach at local, regional, and global levels for early detection and response to emerging pathogens (Kelly *et al.*, 2020).

Additionally, to the toll they have animal and human health, emerging and pandemic illnesses can have catastrophic economic implications. The result is associated with decline in trade, effect on travel, and tourism, as well as increases the cost of treatment and control (Skare et al., 2021). As trade and travel connect the world, the global society is greatly threatened by emerging infectious disorders, calling the health ministries and organizations to work together in the domains of health, environment, agriculture and trade. (Soberon et al., 2020).

The One Health approach has a great deal of promise to both decrease the effects of emergence events and stop them from happening again in the future through enhanced cooperation and awareness.

MAJOR VIRAL DISEASES

Zoonotic viruses are a significant group of viral illnesses because they impact both human health and the profitability of the livestock and related sectors. As a result, it is necessary for medical and veterinary services to communicate with one another and integrate their efforts to control disease. It is critical to have a solid understanding of

the epidemiological and ecological factors that contribute to the spread of illnesses like viral zoonosis as their geographic range continues to grow (Kumar et al. 2022).

Influenza

There is evidence of the influenza virus in many different bird and animal species. The pattern of surface proteins hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA) expression can be used to distinguish across strains. Eight incredibly malleable RNA molecules make up the virus's genome, which reorganizes and mutates itself when it infects a new host cell. This gives birth to fresh viral strains that are able to evade the host's natural immune response (Blagodatski et al. 2021). Avian influenza viruses, abbreviated as AIV, are the pathogens that are responsible for the rapid rise in the number of instances of this illness in poultry and other types of birds during the last few years. Several of the AI virus subtypes, in particular H5, H7, and H9, have shown that they are able to infect mammals despite being from different species (Rebel et al. 2011). These mammals include pigs as well as humans. Because of this, the avian flu should be considered a significant threat to the general public's health. Viruses that cause highly pathogenic avian influenza, often known as HPAI, are predominantly made up of the H5 and H7 subtypes. An infection with these viruses may cause one hundred percent mortality in chicken species that are vulnerable to the disease (Kargarfard et al. 2016).

Rabies

The Latin term "rabere" from which our English word "rabies" is derived, literally means "to be mad." Since the dawn of civilization, doctors have been able to identify the condition. The virus that causes rabies is zoonotic, which means that it may be transmitted from animals to humans. Rabies virus is transmitted from infected or rabid animals to people, who are then susceptible to contracting the disease as a result of this infection. Rabies is a fatal zoonotic illness that may be found everywhere in the world. Carnivores are the primary vectors through which the disease is transmitted to people and animals (Bilal 2021). At a conference of experts held by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 2018, it was stated that 21476 people in Africa lose their lives each year owing to rabies that was spread by dogs. More crucially, the bulk of fatalities on the continent occurred in rural areas and in people living in locations with limited access to healthcare, with the mortality rate among small children being especially high (Haselbeck et al. 2021). Rabies is spread by bites, which may often be witnessed, and the clinical indications are easily recognized, with infected animals generally passing away within one week of the disease's commencement (Mancy et al. 2022).

Ebola

The Ebola virus is a filamentous virus that causes severe hemorrhagic fever in males and is believed to travel from animals to humans in the same way as it passes from animals to people. There are three different genera that belong to the family Filoviridae. These genera include Cueva virus, Marburgvirus, and Ebolavirus. This virus has a big, unfragmented, single-stranded RNA that is negative in charge. This

RNA is responsible for the virulency of this virus. Due to these diseases caused high mortality and quick spread, Ebola virus has emerged as a major problem for public health across the world (Qazi et al. 2021). The viral spread is an important issue, as this virus spreads via the direct contact with blood, body secretions, organs, or other body fluids of infected wild animals or fruit bats. It can also spread through indirect contact with contaminated environments or human contact with contaminated environments. Fruit bats are thought to be the virus's natural carriers because they can contaminate environments. Fruit bats are thought to be the virus's natural carriers because they can spread it without getting sick themselves. The Ebola virus is the source of chronic and occasionally lethal hemorrhagic fever known as the Ebola Virus Disease (EVD) (Qazi et al. 2021).

Nipah virus

The Nipah virus, also known as NiV, is very virulent zoonotic virus. It belongs to the family Paramyxoviridae, genus Henipavirus. Our knowledge of NiV's global prevalence and the illnesses it causes, as well as the transmission of infectious pathogens and the manifestations of diseases, has evolved through time (Rahman and Chakraborty 2012). Different natural reservoirs of NiV like fruit bats, flying foxes belonging with genus Pteropus are causes of spread of virus to different organisms. Among these the most prevalent source of spread of virus are bats specially in the regions like in Asia, East Africa, and Australia. However, Bats, who are NiV's natural hosts, are asymptomatic carriers but nonetheless spread the virus via their saliva, urine, sperm, and waste (Banerjee et al. 2019). In Bangladesh, the incubation period was just ten days, but it varied from four days to two months during the epidemic that occurred in Malaysia. In Kerala, the length of time needed for an infection to develop was somewhere between 6 and 14 days, with 9.5 days serving as the median. NiV may manifest clinically as acute encephalitis, which is characterized by fever, head pain, vomiting, and respiratory distress. In addition, several patients suffered pneumonia, changes in their behavior, disorientations with uncontrolled movement, and low levels of awareness. A fever, myalgia, difficulty breathing, headache, vomiting, cough, altered sensorium, and encephalitis with seizures were some of the symptoms that were observed in affected patients during the epidemic in Kerala. The number of individuals exhibiting respiratory distress was much greater in outbreaks that occurred in Bangladesh and India (Chua et al. 2000).

Coronaviruses

Severe acute respiratory syndrome virus

One of the best-known instances of an infectious sickness is the late-2002 onset of severe acute respiratory syndrome. The global pandemic caused over 8,000 confirmed infections and ultimately resulted in roughly 800 fatalities. The SARS virus was discovered in palm civets in live animal markets and restaurants in the southern Chinese province of Guangdong (Faiq *et al.*, 2020). However, subsequent epidemiological and surveillance studies revealed that bats belonging to the

Rhinolophus genus were the true reservoir of the SARS and SARS-like coronaviruses, with civets likely acting as an amplifying and/or adapting host.

Middle East respiratory syndrome virus

Recently, a new coronavirus has emerged that causes an acute respiratory infection. It is called Middle East respiratory syndrome, or MERS. Thus far, over 160 cases of human infection with MERS coronavirus (CoV) have been reported from the Middle East, Europe, and Africa. The range of the death rate is 40% to 50%. Genome sequencing indicates that this virus is most closely linked to coronaviruses that are present in bats worldwide, including those that are found in South Africa and Asia (Geldenhuys *et al.*, 2021). This suggests that bats are probably the natural hosts of MERS or viruses similar to it, and that there is a good chance that similar viruses will emerge in other regions of the world. This theory was reinforced when a little polymerase chain reaction (PCR) fragment was found in Saudi Arabia's Egyptian tomb bats (*Taphozous perforatus*), matching in sequence to a human MERS-CoV isolate (Mann *et al.*, 2020). It is still unclear how the introduction entered the human population. Neutralizing antibodies were found in camels from Spain and the Middle East according to serological research. A MERS infection was identified in November 2013 in a 43-year-old male patient from Saudi Arabia. Prior to the commencement of the condition, he had no travel experience but had interacted with animals extensively. It's interesting to note that the patient's camels had fever and rhinorrhea and had positive MERS-CoV PCR results (Kassahun *et al.*, 2020). What exactly camels—or other animals—do to spread MERSCoV to humans is yet to be established.

COVID 19

The global health community is currently facing a threat from the coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic. Researchers and epidemiologists from all over the world are constantly attempting to comprehend and combat this unstable new disease. It is vital to examine the present medication alternatives and create possible new medications in order to contain this epidemic. Many pharmacological candidates are still in the trial stage, and a number of intervention strategies are being explored and implemented globally with varying degrees of effectiveness (Hossain *et al.*, 2020). Despite these drawbacks, efforts to improve the clinical outcomes of COVID-19 patients have hastened the development of therapeutic options, and some nations have effectively managed the virus. The use of complementary and alternative medicine has also recently established a trend in the management of coronaviruses (Kashte *et al.*, 2021). In order to bridge the gap between the effective traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) and the current COVID-19 treatment options available internationally (Yang *et al.*, 2020), this research looked at the efficacy, potential mechanisms, limitations, and difficulties associated with forecasting a future viable therapy candidate.

CONTROLLING STRATEGIES

Utilizing the One Health vaccination to break the chain of transmission Lastly, the deliberate creation of defenses against HeV infection in humans served as a striking

example of the One Health philosophy. Henipavirus infection of humans can occur in three different ways. Human infection with HeV has only been reported in relation to exposure to ill horses. Pigs were the source of human infection for NiV-Malaysia. The only henipavirus that has demonstrated bat-to-human transmission is NiV-Bangladesh (Joshi *et al.*, 2023).

Numerous strategies have been put forth in Australia to prevent human exposure to HeV, ranging from vaccination of humans or bats to eliminating all bat populations. These suggestions are either extremely costly or unfeasible. Thus, a two-pronged One Health strategy was created, consisting of a therapeutic human monoclonal antibody for post-exposure treatment and an equine vaccination to disrupt the sole known pathway of transmission between bats and people (Taylor *et al.*, 2022).

Research using animal challenge models showed that cats and ferrets might be effectively protected against deadly virus challenge by a subunit vaccination based on the recombinant HeV surface glycoprotein (Yang *et al.*, 2020). Additional equine experiments revealed that the same recombinant protein, along with a special equine adjuvant, might provide sterile immunity.

A license to utilize this vaccine in the field under the trade name Equivac®HeV (59) has been obtained by a commercial partner. To the best of the authors' knowledge, against any biosafety level-4 agent this was the first authorized vaccine. To eliminate newly developed zoonotic diseases, it was a great work on One Health approach.

Studying the epidemiology of Middle East respiratory illness and severe acute respiratory syndrome

Less than two years passed after the discovery of SARS-CoV before civets and bats were identified as the novel coronaviruses' transmitting and natural hosts, respectively. These viruses had never been discovered until the 2002–2003 outbreaks. This is a fantastic result and accomplishment by any measure. The close cooperation of experts in the fields of wildlife ecology, animal health, and public health made it possible. For instance, a team with much prior expertise studying the avian influenza virus at the human–animal interface identified civets as the primary transmission host (Joshi *et al.*, 2023). Similar to this, two separate groups of virologists, zoologists, veterinarians, ecologists, and epidemiologists—all of whom had substantial experience tracking the origin of zoonotic pathogens—made it feasible to identify horseshoe bats as the natural host of SARS-like coronaviruses (Alkhovsky *et al.*, 2022). These findings laid the groundwork for successful preventative actions, which appear to have contributed to the averting of the resurgence of SARS. Examples of these measures include the prohibition of dealing live civets and the mixing of bats and other mammals in live animal markets. The recent outbreak of COVID-19 opens a big question of source of transmission while infecting millions of people worldwide. However, accurate source of transmission is still unknown, however, new research offered promising hints to solve its enigma. It has been found that camels have antibodies against SARS and related viruses (Kiyong'a *et al.*, 2020). Table 1 provides

an overview of several viral diseases, highlighting their zoonotic sources, modes of transmission to humans, and the resulting health impacts.

Table 1. Highlighting various viral diseases, their zoonotic effects, and impacts on human health

Viral Disease	Zoonotic Source	Transmission to Humans	Effects on Human Health	References
Influenza	Birds (e.g., wild ducks, chickens)	Direct contact, airborne droplets	Respiratory illness, can lead to severe pneumonia and death	(Yamaji *et al.*, 2020)
Rabies	Various mammals (e.g., dogs, bats)	Bites or scratches from infected animals	Almost always fatal if untreated; neurological symptoms	(Malik *et al.*, 2020)
Ebola Virus Disease	Fruit bats, primates	Direct contact with infected animals or fluids	Severe hemorrhagic fever, high mortality rate (up to 90%).	(Raza and Rahman, 2020)
Nipah Virus	Fruit bats, pigs	Contact with infected bats, pigs, or their secretions	Respiratory illness, encephalitis; high mortality rate (40-75%).	(Sachan *et al.*, 2023)
Coronaviruses	Bats, camels (SARS, MERS, COVID-19)	Contact with infected animals or their environments	Respiratory symptoms, can lead to severe illness and death (especially COVID-19).	(Peeri *et al.*, 2020)
Zika Virus	Primarily Aedes mosquitoes	Mosquito bites, sexual transmission	Mild symptoms (fever, rash), but linked to severe birth defects.	(Rasmussen and Jamieson, 2020)

CONCLUSION

The rising trend of zoonotic viral development in recent decades have been illustrated briefly, moreover, the One Health concept impact was also very clearly stated that how outbreak occurs, its investigation, management and prevention. According to one health concept this work is unique, as no literature present before on this particular topic. So, this work may be more effective in the future in combating new and reemerging zoonotic diseases, helpful for the governments, health professionals, researchers at all levels to maximize One Health practices.

REFERENCES

- Alkhovsky, S., Lenshin, S., Romashin, A., Vishnevskaya, T., Vyshemirsky, O., Bulycheva, Y., Lvov, D., & Gitelman, A. (2022). SARS-like coronaviruses in horseshoe bats (Rhinolophus spp.) in Russia, 2020. Viruses, 14, 113.
- Banerjee, S., Gupta, N., Kodan, P., Mittal, A., Ray, Y., Nischal, N., Soneja, M., Biswas, A., & Wig, N. (2019). Nipah virus disease: A rare and intractable disease. Intractable rare Dis. Res., 8, 1–8.
- Bilal, A. (2021). Rabies is a zoonotic disease: a literature review. Occup. Med. Heal. Aff, 9.

- Blagodatski, A., Trutneva, K., Glazova, O., Mityaeva, O., Shevkova, L., Kegeles, E., Onyanov, N., Fede, K., Maznina, A., & Khavina, E. (2021). Avian influenza in wild birds and poultry: dissemination pathways, monitoring methods, and virus ecology. Pathogens, 10, 630.
- Chua, K. B., Bellini, W. J., Rota, P. A., Harcourt, B. H., Tamin, A., Lam, S. K., Ksiazek, T. G., Rollin, P. E., Zaki, S. R., & Shieh, W.-J. (2000). Nipah virus: a recently emergent deadly paramyxovirus. Science (80), 288, 1432–1435.
- Emmanuel, S. D., Tsware, B. J., Bugaje, I. M., Damau, A., & OPARA, N. (2020). DOES HIV/AID/SEVERE ACUTE RESPIRATORY SYNDROME (SARS), EBOLA, LASSA FEVER, CORONA VIRUS (COVID-19) PANDEMIC ETC RESPECTIVELY CURABLE OR SUPPRESS ABLE?
- Faiq, M., Kumar, A., Singh, H., Pareek, V., Qadri, R., Raza, K., Kumari, C., Narayan, R., Kumar, P., & Kulandhasamy, M. (2020). COVID-19: A review on molecular basis, pathogenic mechanisms, therapeutic aspects and future projections.
- Galindo-González, J. (2022). Live animal markets: Identifying the origins of emerging infectious diseases. Curr. Opin. Environ. Sci. Heal., 25, 100310.
- Geldenhuys, M., Mortlock, M., Epstein, J. H., Pawęska, J. T., Weyer, J., & Markotter, W. (2021). Overview of bat and wildlife coronavirus surveillance in Africa: A framework for global investigations. Viruses, 13, 936.
- Haselbeck, A. H., Rietmann, S., Tadesse, B. T., Kling, K., Kaschubat-Dieudonné, M. E., Marks, F., Wetzker, W., & Thöne-Reineke, C. (2021). Challenges to the fight against rabies—the landscape of policy and prevention strategies in Africa. Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health, 18, 1736.
- Hossain, M. F., Hasana, S., Al Mamun, A., Uddin, M. S., Wahed, M. I. I., Sarker, S., Behl, T., Ullah, I., Begum, Y., & Bulbul, I. J. (2020). COVID-19 outbreak: pathogenesis, current therapies, and potentials for future management. Front. Pharmacol., 11, 563478.
- Joshi, J., Shah, Y., Pandey, K., Ojha, R. P., Joshi, C. R., Bhatt, L. R., Dumre, S. P., Acharya, P. R., Joshi, H. R., & Rimal, S. (2023). Possible high risk of transmission of the Nipah virus in South and South East Asia: a review. Trop. Med. Health, 51, 44.
- Kargarfard, F., Sami, A., Mohammadi-Dehcheshmeh, M., & Ebrahimie, E. (2016). Novel approach for identification of influenza virus host range and zoonotic transmissible sequences by determination of host-related associative positions in viral genome segments. BMC Genomics, 17, 1–10.

- Kashte, S., Gulbake, A., El-Amin III, S. F., & Gupta, A. (2021). COVID-19 vaccines: rapid development, implications, challenges and future prospects. Hum. Cell, 34, 711–733.
- Kassahun, B., Berhanu, T., & Damtew, B. (2020). Review on coronavirus, a middle east respiratory syndrome (MERS-CoV). Online J. Anim. Feed Res., 10, 1–11.
- Kelly, T. R., Machalaba, C., Karesh, W. B., Crook, P. Z., Gilardi, K., Nziza, J., Uhart, M. M., Robles, E. A., Saylors, K., Joly, D. O., Monagin, C., Mangombo, P. M., Kingebeni, P. M., Kazwala, R., Wolking, D., Smith, W., Mazet, J. A. K., & Consortium, P. (2020). Implementing One Health approaches to confront emerging and re-emerging zoonotic disease threats: lessons from PREDICT. One Heal. Outlook, 2, 1.
- Kiyong'a, A. N., Cook, E. A. J., Okba, N. M. A., Kivali, V., Reusken, C., Haagmans, B. L., & Fèvre, E. M. (2020). Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) seropositive camel handlers in Kenya. Viruses, 12, 396.
- Kumar, N., Uversky, V. N., Tomar, S., Li, K. S. M., Chappell, K., & Lau, S. K. P. (2022). Emerging and re-emerging viral zoonoses. Front. Microbiol., 13, 978259.
- Mancy, R., Rajeev, M., Lugelo, A., Brunker, K., Cleaveland, S., Ferguson, E. A., Hotopp, K., Kazwala, R., Magoto, M., & Rysava, K. (2022). Rabies shows how scale of transmission can enable acute infections to persist at low prevalence. Science (80-.), 376, 512–516.
- Mann, R., Perisetti, A., Gajendran, M., Gandhi, Z., Umapathy, C., & Goyal, H. (2020). Clinical characteristics, diagnosis, and treatment of major coronavirus outbreaks. Front. Med., 7, 581521.
- Qazi, S., Khanam, A., & Raza, K. (2021). Ebola Virus: Overview, Genome Analysis and Its Antagonists. Hum. Viruses Dis. Treat. Vaccines New Insights, 123–142.
- Rahman, M., & Chakraborty, A. (2012). Nipah virus outbreaks in Bangladesh: a deadly infectious disease. WHO South-East Asia J. Public Heal., 1, 208–212.
- Rebel, J. M. J., Peeters, B., Fijten, H., Post, J., Cornelissen, J., & Vervelde, L. (2011). Highly pathogenic or low pathogenic avian influenza virus subtype H7N1 infection in chicken lungs: small differences in general acute responses. Vet. Res., 42, 1–11.
- Škare, M., Soriano, D. R., & Porada-Rochoń, M. (2021). Impact of COVID-19 on the travel and tourism industry. Technol. Forecast. Soc. Change, 163, 120469.
- Soberón, M., Sánchez-Chaparro, T., Urquijo, J., & Pereira, D. (2020). Introducing an organizational perspective in SDG implementation in the public sector in

Spain: The case of the former ministry of agriculture, fisheries, food and environment. Sustainability, 12, 9959.

- Taylor, J., Thompson, K., Annand, E. J., Massey, P. D., Bennett, J., Eden, J.-S., Horsburgh, B. A., Hodgson, E., Wood, K., & Kerr, J. (2022). Novel variant Hendra virus genotype 2 infection in a horse in the greater Newcastle region, New South Wales, Australia. One Heal., 15, 100423.
- Wilcox, B. A., & Steele, J. A. (2020). One health and emerging zoonotic diseases: Framework, integration and challenges. Handb. Glob. Heal., 1–49.
- Yamin, M. (2020). Counting the cost of COVID-19. Int. J. Inf. Technol., 12, 311–317.
- Yang, Y., Islam, M. S., Wang, J., Li, Y., & Chen, X. (2020). Traditional Chinese medicine in the treatment of patients infected with 2019-new coronavirus (SARS-CoV-2): a review and perspective. Int. J. Biol. Sci., 16, 1708.

CHAPTER- 14

CLIMATE CHANGE AND TICK-BORNE DISEASES

Muhammad Usman[1], Syed Jawad Hussain Shah[2], Muhammad Fawad[3*], Muhammad Asim[4], Hafiz Muhammad Talha Rahim[5], Tanzeela Rehman[2], Neslihan Ölmez[6], Rafia Bibi[2], Hizqeel Ahmed Muzaffar[5] and Hafiz Aftab Ahmed[7]

[1]Department of Livestock Management, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Pakistan

[2]PMAS Agriculture University, Rawalpindi, Pakistan

[3]Department of Zoology, Islamia College University, Peshawar, Pakistan

[4]Department of Livestock Management, Sindh Agriculture University, Tandojam, Pakistan

[5]KBCMA College of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Narowal, sub campus University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Pakistan

[6]Department of Parasitology, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Kafkas University, Kars, Turkey

[7]Department of Clinical Medicine and Surgery, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533256

ABSTRACT

The prevalence of ticks and tick-borne diseases is increasing worldwide. Human activities such as urbanization and deforestation are disturbing the natural habitats. As a result, humans and animals are coming in contact with ticks and the cases of tick-borne diseases are increasing, ultimately leading to economic losses. The impact of climate change on tick-borne diseases has become a public health challenge. Tick physiological cycles are affected by several factors including temperature, relative humidity, and precipitation levels. Lyme disease, tick-borne encephalitis, babesiosis, and anaplasmosis are among the tick-borne diseases that are being influenced by climate change. Species of ticks responsible for the transmission of these tick-borne diseases which were previously sensitive to certain temperature and humidity levels, are now becoming adapted to these levels, all because of climate change. There is a presence of epidemiological data that supports this fact in developed regions like Europe, Canada, and the United States. But such data is missing in the developed countries, probably due to a lack of research studies because of the poor economic conditions of these developing countries. People have to be educated about the effects of climate change on these tick-borne diseases so that the human activities that influence the climate can be minimized.

Keywords: ticks, tick-borne, diseases, climate, change, human, data

INTRODUCTION

A modification in climate patterns primarily brought about by the release of greenhouse gases from ecosystems and human activity is known as climate change. Currently, human activity has raised global temperatures by around 1.0°C over pre-industrial levels. If current emission rates continue, this increase is expected to reach 1.5°C around 2030. There were 315 natural disasters worldwide in 2018, and most of them were caused by climate change. Roughly 68.5 million people suffered, while storms, floods, wildfires, and droughts were responsible for $131.7 billion of the economic damages (Fawzy et al. 2020). There are ticks on every continent, and they are the primary vector for zoonotic infections. Since ticks spend most of their time outside of their hosts, it makes sense that climatic changes would have an impact on them. Although there might be a great deal of variety in such forecasts, most of empirical and theoretical research shows forecast range shifts or rises in ticks and tick-borne diseases. Because tick-borne disease systems are complicated, it might be challenging to pinpoint changes caused by climate change (Gilbert 2021). There is a widespread shortage of evidence that climate change affects ticks and tick-borne diseases. The main reason for this is that long-term, repeated data on the location and density of tick populations, as well as the incidence and frequency of tick-borne diseases, are lacking in the majority of the world (Nuttall 2022). The spread of numerous vector-borne diseases has been impacted by climate change, which presents a significant public health challenge in the years to come. Many explanations have been proposed to explain the connection between diseases carried by ticks and climate change. These possibilities include increased rates of proliferation, a longer season for transmission, modifications to ecological balances, and movement of vectors, maintenance hosts, or human populations due to climate change. Alterations in the epidemiological pattern can have disastrous outcomes, leading to a rise in diseases carried by ticks. Therefore, it is essential to look at the connection between diseases spread by ticks and climate change. Climate models that forecast changes in the ticks' geographic distribution can be utilized as a forecasting tool (Voyiatzaki et al. 2022). The primary causes of the spread of many tick-borne diseases include land use, deforestation, habitat loss, reforestation, animal and bird migration, and other factors that create an environment that makes more hosts possible. Additional factors contributing to the spread of tick-borne diseases include urbanization, tourism, biodiversity loss travel, and trade. These factors lead to a change in climate, leading to alternating patterns of tick-borne disease transmission (Ramzan et al. 2021).

The surrounding climate has a significant influence on tick activity. Tick abundance and behavior can be influenced by various climatic factors, including temperature, humidity, and precipitation levels. These factors can also impact tick growth, survival, and activity (Deshpande et al. 2023). Because tick lifecycles are sensitive to climate, ticks and tick-borne diseases are inherently climate-sensitive. Tick survival rates, development time, and host-seeking behavior are important to direct climate and weather sensitivities. Because of this sensitivity, a warming climate may, in some areas, result in higher rates of tick survival, shorter life cycles, and longer tick activity

seasons. With shifts in tick abundance, secondary effects of the changing climate on host populations may promote greater transmission of infections carried by ticks. Climate change is expected to bring high temperatures and extreme weather events (hot, cold, and flooding), which in certain places may decrease tick survival and pathogen transmission (Ogden et al. 2021). This chapter describes the impact of climate change on different important tick-borne diseases.

EFFECTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE ON TICK-BORNE DISEASES

Effects of climate change on Lyme disease

To reduce the burden of disease, it is essential to identify high-risk locations for the transmission of vector-borne diseases both now and in the future due to climate change. However, the complicated ecology of vector-borne diseases and the existence of interacting factors of disease transmission, such as globalization and land use change, make it difficult to measure and forecast the effects of climate change on the incidence of vector-borne diseases (Lafferty and Mordecai 2016). The most prevalent vector-borne disease in temperate regions, Lyme disease, is a prime example of this difficulty (Rosenberg 2018). The most prevalent vector-borne disease in the northern areas is Lyme disease, also becoming a greater public health concern in the US. This spirochete pathogen and tick vector life cycles are extremely sensitive to climate. But because of the complicated biology of the disease and the existence of numerous, interdependent factors of transmission, it has been difficult to assess how climate change may affect the prevalence of Lyme disease (Couper et al. 2021).

Temperature, humidity, and saturation deficit are the most important abiotic factors affecting the transmission of tick-borne diseases (Gilbert 2010). Lyme disease transmission is highly associated with increasing temperatures and intraseasonal temperature variations (Estrada-Peña et al. 2011). There are 22.05 cases of Lyme disease per 100,000 people in Western Europe each year. Lithuania has one of the greatest levels of disease prevalence in Europe. In contrast, from 2014 to 2016, there were documented 7424 new cases, or an approximate incidence rate of 85.4, compared to 73.9–100.6 instances per 100,000 individuals during 2011–2018. The nations of Northern and Southwest Europe have lower incidence rates since they have the lowest and highest temperatures in Europe, respectively (Voyiatzaki et al. 2022). Lyme disease cases are being reported in Canada because the climate in Canada is much more suitable for the nourishment of the vector responsible for the transmission of Lyme disease (Ogden et al. 2024).

Both the number of cases and the geographic range of Lyme borreliosis have increased in recent decades, with the disease's advent having an especially negative effect on northern latitudes and high-elevation areas of North America and Europe (Goren et al. 2023). Via their effects on host and/or vector populations, environmental conditions can have varying effects on the spread of Lyme disease. For instance, through direct and indirect impacts on their hosts (e.g., higher rodent numbers after pollen seeding of trees), rising temperatures and altered rainfall patterns may result in increased tick populations. However, variations in precipitation can also be

detrimental to tick populations, particularly if found in desert regions. Tick populations may decline depending on when these changes take place, however, *Ixodes ricinus* is also spreading into higher latitudes and altitudes due to local climate changes. To characterize and forecast the spread of Lyme disease, it is crucial to comprehend these linkages and their implications (Giesen et al. 2024).

From the perspective of public health, the area of Switzerland is probably more vulnerable to tick-borne diseases due to the rise in nymph abundance. Europe's public health officials need to be aware that deciduous trees' ability to produce seeds influences the number of *I. ricinus* and, consequently, the danger of tick-borne disease (Bregnard et al. 2020). Lyme disease has spread geographically and increased in occurrence since it was discovered. Given the extreme sensitivity of vector cycle and disease transmission to abiotic environments, it is anticipated that climate changes will impact the geographic distribution and severity of vector-borne disease. An important factor contributing to the rise in vectors and vector-borne disease may be certain aspects of climate change, such as altered precipitation patterns, increased climate variability, rising temperatures, and severe weather. Temperature extremes have an impact on the survival of vectors; low humidity reduces the host and/or meal-seeking activities of vectors; and an excessive or insufficient amount of rainfall has an impact on the rates of vector reproduction (Mark 2022).

In the United States, when it came to predicting the geographic distribution of Lyme cases, the seasonal mean maximum temperature from the previous year was superior to the mean temperature of the prior year. A rise in the mean maximum temperature the previous year was linked to an increase in the risk of Lyme disease in the Northeast but a drop in the number of Lyme cases in the Upper Midwest. Precipitation in the previous summer had a positive correlation with the risk of Lyme disease in the Upper Midwest. Whereas in the Northeast, there was a negative correlation with the amount of precipitation in the preceding autumn. The Upper Midwest's findings support the hypothesis that a combination of high temperatures and low humidity could control the number of ticks (Dong et al. 2020). In the mountainous areas of southern Virginia, higher elevation, higher vegetation density, and larger forest edge areas are all linked to cases of Lyme disease. There is no correlation between humidity and temperature and cases of Lyme disease. A correlation between the fragmentation of forests and cases of Lyme disease is not established yet. Adjacent areas of North Carolina and Tennessee contain forested mountain terrain that could provide an ideal setting for Lyme disease transmission to continue southward (Lantos et al. 2021).

Determining how multi-host pathogen spatiotemporal patterns align with natural ecosystem environmental variables helps explain the mechanisms underlying putative population dynamics drivers and realized geographic ranges. Finding these characteristics can help direct research into the interactions that cause infections in populations of pathogens and their environment (Tran et al. 2022). The number of hot, dry days in the previous year's larval stage has little impact on the abundance of

questing nymphs the next season or the prevalence of Lyme disease in humans. On the other hand, the density of questing nymphs and the incidence of Lyme disease in long-term endemic locations are significantly negatively impacted by dry summer weather during the nymphal questing season. The number of ticks observed feeding on small mammals is less affected by summer weather conditions than is the number of actively questing *Ixodes scapularis* gathered via dragging. Lyme disease has increased dramatically in recently endemic areas over time, although no correlation has been found between the disease's incidence and dry summer weather (Burtis et al. 2016). If a population is dispersed close to forested areas with a high deer population, an increased incidence of Lyme disease may be found in such locations. On the other hand, because there is less exposure to vectors in an urban setting with a high people density, the incidence of Lyme disease may be lower. However, it would seem that precipitation has a big impact on Lyme disease as ticks need moist, humid soil conditions to survive and are prone to desiccation. The type of land cover that has demonstrated the strongest correlation with Lyme disease is open space and its relationship to forest cover. This is to be expected, since, as was previously noted, open space is by definition the perfect home for diseased ticks and their vectors (Tran and Waller, 2013).

EFFECTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE ON TICK-BORNE ENCEPHALITIS

The spread of numerous vector-borne diseases in Europe has been impacted by climate change, which presents a significant public health challenge in the future. Many explanations have been proposed to explain the connection between diseases carried by ticks and climate change. These possibilities include increased rates of proliferation, a longer season for transmission, modifications to ecological balances, and movement of vectors, reservoir hosts, or human populations due to climate change. Alterations in the epidemiological pattern can have disastrous outcomes, leading to a rise in tick borne diseases. Therefore, it is imperative to look at the connection between diseases spread by ticks and climate change. Climate models that forecast changes in the ticks' geographic distribution can be utilized as a forecasting tool (Voyiatzaki et al. 2022).

The effect of climate change on the prevalence of tick-borne encephalitis in the tick-host enzootic cycle in a particular area is dependent on how the climate change patterns unique to that area affect the processes of tick population development and the dynamics of tick-borne encephalitis virus transmission, which includes both complex and co-feeding transmission routes. Planning public health measures, such as vaccination campaigns, to reduce the incidence of tick-borne encephalitis in residents and visitors requires predicting the transmission risk of the tick-borne encephalitis virus in the enzootic cycle with expected climate conditions (Nah et al. 2020). While the effect of daily temperature shifts on the number of cases of tick-borne encephalitis virus in ticks centered on field data is showing contrasting findings at the local scale, areas that exhibit rapid decreases in temperature in late summer and early autumn tend to be impacted by greater levels of tick-borne encephalitis incidence. For instance, in a tick-borne encephalitis center in Germany, there is no

indication that a quick fall in temperature has any impact on the minimal infection rate of nymphs the following spring (Dagostin et al. 2023). Finland saw a 15% annual increase in the prevalence of tick-borne encephalitis between 2007 and 2017. There is no statistically significant correlation between temperature and the incidence of tick-borne encephalitis, according to the analysis. Tick-borne encephalitis incidence is positively correlated with the number of white-tailed deer, according to a multivariable study of the effect of several animal densities. However, the frequency of tick-borne encephalitis decreased when the number of roe deer slain by hunters increased. Research adds to the body of knowledge on the role that wildlife plays in the spread of tick-borne encephalitis. Large mammals like deer can act as tick hosts and blood meals for ticks, which is why their numbers can significantly impact the rates of tick-borne encephalitis. Blood meals are required for three distinct stages of tick development (Dub et al. 2020).

The reason for the steady 10-fold increase in human cases of tick-borne encephalitis in Sweden over 30 years, starting in the 1980s, has been explained. It has been determined that changes in host abundance are most the cause of these changes, with climate playing a complex and indirect role through hosts, habitat, and human behavior. For instance, during this time, the number of roe deer (which do not spread the tick-borne encephalitis virus) fell. In some years, this was because of harsh winter weather that resulted in high mortality; consequently, more ticks were forced to feed on rodents, the carriers of disease transmitting virus.

In certain years, warmer, more humid summers enhanced the habitat of ground vegetation, tick activity, and tick survival while simultaneously promoting increased outdoor time. Furthermore, in certain years, there were more fruiting bodies of fungi in the woods, which attracted humans and exposed them to ticks. This was due to heavier summer rainfall. This is a great illustration of how the many other parameters important for the transmission cycle and human exposure may be impacted by climate change, thereby affecting the incidence of tick-borne diseases. This makes it very challenging to assign a relative value to each aspect (Gilbert 2021). Ticks are benefiting from rising temperatures by pushing the physiological boundaries of their latitudinal ranges, and the effect is comparable to their altitudinal limitations. The Czech Republic's mountainous regions are home to the most extensive evidence of *I. ricinus* and tick-borne encephalitis virus, which have been found to have ascended from 750 to over 1000 meters above sea level over two decades. This gain in elevation has coincided with a 1.4 °C increase in mean annual air temperature (Nuttall 2022). Ticks hide in the soil or leaf litter during the winter and consume the blood they ingest while on their hunt. To become active, ticks need warm temperatures and humidity (exiting from the soil and climbing into the foliage). During arid seasons, ticks can be active and search for hosts and food; nevertheless, these conditions shorten their life span. The best weather for tick migration and feeding is defined as temperatures of about 8°C and humidity levels of 70–80%. Adult *I. ricinus* ticks of the European subtype are most active in May–June and September–October (Wondim

et al. 2022). An increase in mean annual temperature is causing the expansion of tick-borne diseases including tick-borne encephalitis (Tokarevich et al. 2011).

Effects of climate change on Anaplasmosis

According to study findings, Kansas saw a steady rise in bovine anaplasmosis infections between 2005 and 2013, and throughout that time, the disease also spread to newer geographic locations. A cluster of central and south central counties has stronger space-time interaction for bovine anaplasmosis infection; this suggests that these counties have comparable risk factors and might be the focus of preventative and treatment efforts. At the county level, the space-time pattern for bovine anaplasmosis in Kansas is determined by three climatic change indices: minimum land surface temperature, diurnal temperature range, and relative humidity. This discovery holds importance when considering the impact of climate change on infectious diseases (Hanzlicek et al. 2016). *Rhipicephalus microplus* is a tick vector responsible for the transmission of anaplasmosis (de Carvalho Dias Filho et al. 2005). The life cycle of *R. microplus* is significantly influenced by climate seasonality; fluctuations in this element affect the number of generations (three to four annually), which in turn increases population size and may aid in dispersal. Significant environmental factors have been discovered that are comparable to those observed in field studies of this species. Important components of these models include annual mean temperature, seasonality in precipitation, and variables derived from humidity.

On the other hand, relative humidity is a crucial factor influencing the development of this species (Marques et al. 2020). Snow's insulating properties may mean that the impact of snowfall on disease rates varies depending on the minimum winter temperature. That is, an increase in snowfall would probably lead to increased anaplasmosis overwinter survival in areas with low minimum winter temperatures; however, in areas with higher minimum winter temperatures and humidity, like Long Island's maritime climate, the effect of snow on tick survivability might be minimal. Future research should focus primarily on snowfall and any possible changes in effect with lower winter temperatures (O'Connor et al. 2021). Many tick species have expanded into higher latitudes in North America due to environmental changes brought about by climate change. Tick-borne diseases are predicted to rise in frequency in Canada due to the environment growing more conducive to tick activity and the extension of the tick-friendly season brought about by rising temperatures. Other tick-borne diseases, such as anaplasmosis, have begun to appear in addition to Lyme disease and will probably become more common. Raising the temperature prolongs the season during which humans may be exposed to ticks, extends the range of tick hosts and reservoirs (such as mice and deer), and lengthens the tick-exposure period (Bouchard et al. 2019).

Effects of climate change on babesiosis

The distribution and activity of the principal ixodid vectors of human babesiosis (produced by *Babesia microti*, *Babesia venatorum*, and *Babesia divergens*) are examined regarding the impacts of present and future global warming. There is much

proof that the changing climate has affected the distributions of *Ixodes ricinus*, the vector in Europe, and *Ixodes scapularis* in North America. Rising temperatures have caused tick populations to expand northward and elevated *I. ricinus* sightings (Gray and Ogden 2021). An abrupt rise or fall to an ideal range of daily peak air temperature (12–17 °C) in spring and autumn is linked to the sudden development of canine babesiosis. Snowmelt and soil temperatures over 0°C are additional prerequisites for the spring season activation, which allows ticks to begin searching for hosts. While ticks appeared extremely resistant to rain and dry spells once activated, ideal conditions also included little to no precipitation. The majority of canine babesiosis cases that were reported occurred in temperatures between 10 and 16 °C. A lower limit of +5 °C appears appropriate for tick-transmitted disease risk prediction, as only 5% of cases occurred below this temperature. Perhaps some of those "cold" cases had an unusually short or extended incubation time, leading them to be incorrectly allocated to the presumed week of infection. just 2% of cases occurred above 20 °C, the upper limit is much tougher than the lower limit. Although soil temperature fluctuates later than air temperature, there is a close correlation between the two. The end of ground frost, which occurs temporally apart from rising air temperature in the event of thick snow and ice layers, is the most significant element influencing soil temperature for tick activation. Six cases were reported toward the end of the autumn/winter season, whereas 57 instances with springtime soil temperatures below +5 °C supported this (Leschnik et al. 2008).

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

The researchers remind us that tick-borne diseases are complicated diseases in which ticks and both domestic and wild animals play important roles. As such, environmental considerations, especially in climate change, must be considered. The implementation of surveillance systems by health authorities, the use of digital tools for the analysis and sharing of vital data about existing and new species, the creation of targeted funding strategies for emerging infections like babesiosis, and multidisciplinary collaboration between research groups will all be critical to achieving the required goals in the years to come. Lastly, to assess the danger of tick-borne diseases, it is essential to communicate with and work in conjunction with veterinary scientists, community healthcare providers, and the general public (Montero et al. 2022). There is a lack of proper epidemiological data regarding the abundance of these tick-borne diseases. Serious focus is required to have enough epidemiological data to make proper strategies for controlling these tick-borne diseases. Moreover, people have to be educated regarding the effects of climate change on the transmission of tick-borne diseases.

CONCLUSION

The prevalence of tick-borne diseases is increasing continuously. The increase in tick-borne diseases is influenced by several factors. Climate change is among these factors. Today, the world is facing the problem of global warming. The temperature of the world is increasing continuously. People are moving towards the cities, leading to urbanization. The natural climate is being disturbed adversely. Wildlife habitat has

been disturbed. All these factors are acting as driving factors for increased transmission of ticks and tick-borne diseases. The proper mode of transmission should be known for a better understanding of the tick-borne diseases.

For this reason, the effects of climate change on various tick-borne diseases have to be studied thoroughly, because climate change is regulating the transmission of tick-borne diseases. The burden of Lyme disease, tick-borne encephalitis, anaplasmosis, and babesiosis has increased in recent decades. Epidemiological data regarding the cases of these tick-borne diseases is available in developed countries like the United States, Canada, and European countries, but is lagging in developing countries. Humidity, temperature, rainfall, deforestation, urbanization, and global warming are the main climatic factors that regulate the transmission of tick-borne diseases. The reason is that these factors are directly correlated with the life cycle of ticks, thus indirectly correlated with tick-borne diseases. There is a need to control human migration to avoid disturbances in natural habitats, leading to decreased contact of ticks with the animals and human populations. There is a need to collect enough epidemiological data to make proper control strategies. Moreover, people have to be educated about the effects of climate change on the abundance of tick-borne diseases. Veterinarians, medical officers, public health specialists, and policymakers have to play their role to reduce the effects of human activities on the climate, thus limiting the prevalence of tick-borne diseases.

REFERENCES

- Bouchard C et al., 2019. Climate change and infectious diseases: The challenges: N increased risk of tick-borne diseases with climate and environmental changes. Canada Communicable Disease Report 45: 83.
- Bregnard C et al., 2020. Climate and tree seed production predict the abundance of the European Lyme disease vector over a 15-year period. Parasites & vectors 13: 1-12.
- Burtis JC et al., 2016. The impact of temperature and precipitation on blacklegged tick activity and Lyme disease incidence in endemic and emerging regions. Parasites & Vectors 9: 1-10.
- Couper LI et al., 2021. Impact of prior and projected climate change on US Lyme disease incidence. Global change biology 27: 738-754.
- Dagostin F et al., 2023. Ecological and environmental factors affecting the risk of tick-borne encephalitis in Europe, 2017 to 2021. Eurosurveillance 28: 2300121.
- de Carvalho Dias Filho F et al., 2005. Obtaining pure isolates of Babesia bovis and Babesia bigemina from larvae and nymph of Boophilus microplus in neonatal calves deprived of colostrum. Journal of Tropical Pathology 34: 3

- Deshpande G et al., 2023. Assessing the influence of climate change and environmental factors on the top tick-borne diseases in the United States: a Systematic Review. Microorganisms 12: 50.
- Dong Y et al., 2020. Comparing the climatic and landscape risk factors for Lyme disease cases in the Upper Midwest and Northeast United States. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health 17: 1548.
- Dub T et al., 2020. game animal density, climate, and tick-borne encephalitis in Finland, 2007–2017. Emerging Infectious Diseases 26: 2899.
- Estrada-Peña A et al., 2011. Correlation of Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato prevalence in questing Ixodes ricinus ticks with specific abiotic traits in the western Palearctic. Applied and environmental microbiology 77: 3838-3845.
- Fawzy S et al., 2020. Strategies for mitigation of climate change: a review. Environmental Chemistry Letters 18: 2069-2094.
- Giesen C et al., 2024. The role of environmental factors in Lyme disease transmission in the European Union: A systematic review. Tropical Medicine and Infectious Disease 9: 113.
- Gilbert L 2010. Altitudinal patterns of tick and host abundance: a potential role for climate change in regulating tick-borne diseases. Oecologia 162: 217-225.
- Gilbert L 2021. The impacts of climate change on ticks and tick-borne disease risk. Annual review of entomology 66: 373-388.
- Goren A et al., 2023. The emergence and shift in seasonality of Lyme borreliosis in Northern Europe. Proceedings of the Royal Society B 290: 20222420.
- Gray JS and Ogden NH 2021. Ticks, human babesiosis and climate change. Pathogens 10: 1430.
- Hanzlicek GA et al., 2016. Bayesian space-time patterns and climatic determinants of bovine anaplasmosis. PLoS One 11: 0151924.
- Lafferty KD and Mordecai EA 2016. The rise and fall of infectious disease in a warmer world. F1000Research 5
- Lantos PM et al., 2021. Environmental correlates of Lyme disease emergence in Southwest Virginia, 2005–2014. Journal of medical entomology 58: 1680-1685.
- Leschnik M et al., 2008. Seasonal occurrence of canine babesiosis is influenced by local climate conditions. International Journal of Medical Microbiology 298: 243-248.
- Mark L 2022. Effect of Climate Variability on Lyme Disease Cases in the United States–A Retrospective Study 5: 1-25.

- Marques R et al., 2020. Climate change implications for the distribution of the babesiosis and anaplasmosis tick vector, Rhipicephalus (Boophilus) microplus. Veterinary research 51: 1-10.
- Montero E et al., 2022. Babesia and human babesiosis. Pathogens 11: 399.
- Nah K et al., 2020. The potential impact of climate change on the transmission risk of tick-borne encephalitis in Hungary. BMC Infectious Diseases 20: 1-10.
- Nuttall PA 2022. Climate change impacts on ticks and tick-borne infections. Biologia 77: 1503-1512.
- O'Connor C et al., 2021. A comparative spatial and climate analysis of human granulocytic anaplasmosis and human babesiosis in New York state (2013–2018). Journal of Medical Entomology 58: 2453-2466.
- Ogden NH et al., 2024. Estimating the Incidence and Economic Cost of Lyme Disease Cases in Canada in the 21st Century with Projected Climate Change. Environmental Health Perspectives, 132: 027005.
- Ogden NH et al., 2021. Possible effects of climate change on ixodid ticks and the pathogens they transmit: Predictions and observations. Journal of Medical Entomology 58: 1536-1545.
- Ramzan M et al., 2021. Techniques for managing ticks and tick-borne diseases under changing climate; A review. Egyptian Academic Journal of Biological Sciences 13: 117-128.
- Rosenberg R 2018. Vital signs: trends in reported vectorborne disease cases—United States and Territories, 2004–2016. MMWR. Morbidity and mortality weekly report 67.
- Tokarevich NK et al., 2011. The impact of climate change on the expansion of Ixodes persulcatus habitat and the incidence of tick-borne encephalitis in the north of European Russia. Global health action 4: 8448.
- Tran PM and Waller L 2013. Effects of landscape fragmentation and climate on Lyme disease incidence in the northeastern United States. Ecohealth 10: 394-404.
- Tran T et al., 2022. Predicting spatio-temporal population patterns of Borrelia burgdorferi, the Lyme disease pathogen. Journal of Applied Ecology 59: 2779-2789.
- Voyiatzaki C et al., 2022. Climate changes exacerbate the spread of Ixodes ricinus and the occurrence of Lyme borreliosis and tick-borne encephalitis in Europe—how climate models are used as a risk assessment approach for tick-borne diseases. International journal of environmental research and public health 19: 6516.
- Wondim MA et al., 2022. Epidemiological trends of trans-boundary tick-borne encephalitis in Europe, 2000–2019. Pathogens 11: 704.

CHAPTER- 15

MONKEYPOX AND ITS EFFECTS ON BIODIVERSITY

Rida Fatima[1], Muhammad Tauseef Ahmad[2*], Rahmeen Ajaz[3], Farrukh Aziz[4], Muhammad Nadeem Afzal khan[5], Shahzada Khurram Adrian Shah[6], Muhammad Haroon[7], Muhammad Hussain[8], Muhammad Hassan[8] and Ghulam Murtaza Awan[9]

[1]Department of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[*2]Livestock and Dairy Development Department Government of Punjab Pakistan / Department of Pathology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Lahore Pakistan

[3]Faculty of Public Health, Department of Occupational Health and Safety, Universitas Indonesia (UI), Jakarta, Indonesia

[4]Department of Zoology, University of Okara, Punjab, Pakistan

[5]Department of Zoology, Gomal University, D.I. Khan, KPK, Pakistan

[6]Department of Veterinary Sciences, The University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Swat KPK, Pakistan

[7]Department of Zoology, Wildlife and Fisheries, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[8]Department of Pathobiology, University of Veterinary and Animals Science, Lahore, Sub-Campus Jhang, Punjab, Pakistan

[9]Faculty of Veterinary Animal Sciences, The University of Agriculture, D. I. Khan, KPK, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533299

ABSTRACT

This chapter examines the intricate connection between monkeypox outbreaks and biodiversity decline, emphasizing the essential role of wildlife reservoirs and environmental variables in enabling zoonotic disease transmission. With the increasing incidence of monkeypox outbreaks fueled by deforestation, climate change, and human intrusion into natural ecosystems, understanding the ecological ramifications of the virus is crucial for formulating effective public health and conservation initiatives. This review aims to integrate contemporary literature on the ecological and epidemiological dynamics of the monkeypox, emphasizing species variety, climate-induced changes in wildlife populations, and the roles of rodents and primates as reservoirs. This chapter synthesizes data from predictive modeling, ecological monitoring, and field research and thoroughly examines how climate change and habitat fragmentation intensify the danger of zoonotic spillovers. The analysis examines deficiencies in the existing comprehension of long-term ecological consequences and the efficacy of conservation methods, such as immunization campaigns and 'One Health' initiatives. These results highlight the necessity of implementing integrated conservation strategies that harmonize animal preservation

with public health objectives and suggest practical recommendations for subsequent studies and policy development. This chapter provides novel insights into reducing the dangers of zoonotic diseases, such as monkeypox, highlighting the necessity for adaptive strategies to bolster ecosystem resilience and prevent future outbreaks.

Keywords: Monkeypox, biodiversity loss, zoonotic diseases, climate change, conservation strategies, wildlife reservoirs, public health

INTRODUCTION

The monkeypox virus and its implications on biodiversity have been credited with the necessary weight as far as public health, management, and conservation biology discourse are concerned (Ranjan et al. 2023). Monkeypox, a zoonotic virus, provides material for adverse health hazards and wreaks havoc on complex ecological systems, especially in areas such as Central and West Africa, which have rich biodiversity. However, as much as Monkeypox outbreaks grow more frequently and start to attract global attention, due to habitat erosion and decimation at large, climate change and global warming at the worst of all, human affinity with wildlife, and the likes, there has not been much light shone on the ecological implications of the virus (López-Islas et al. 2022). Although researchers have demonstrated their relationship with the monkeypox and how transmission can damage ecosystem stability, a significant gap persists regarding the effect of transmission on keystone species and biodiversity loss (Afzaal et al. 2022).

Recent studies on monkeypox in a country where this deadly disease is endemic, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, broadens our knowledge of wildlife reservoirs and other transmission mechanisms of the violent virus (Erkyihun and Alemayehu 2022). According to this study, the main hosts are rodents and primates, with the general danger of deforestation and climate change leading to increased human contact with wildlife. However, the study also reveals such limitations or gaps, which show that the long-term ecological impact of species diversity and ecosystem services of such massively sustained monkeypox outbreaks, or that the focus area still needs to be studied. Therefore, appropriate conservation strategies and public health measures cannot be developed, leading to disturbances in disease ecology and conservation science (Nuismer et al. 2022).

More multi-faceted research is needed on what drives monkeypox transmission that is unconstrained by human limits (Roychoudhury et al. 2022). This limitation is addressed in this chapter's objective of analyzing the ecological and epidemiological dimensions of monkeypox transmission. The original contribution of this review is its interdisciplinary approach, based on predictive ecological models, recent field studies, and conservation strategies. This type of analysis provides novel perspectives on the effects of monkeypoxes. It is also suitable for wildlife conservation and public health because it synthesizes various advancements in climate change modeling, biodiversity monitoring, and zoonotic disease analysis. This helps address the deficiencies of previous research (Leifels et al. 2022).

ZOONOTIC DISEASES AND GLOBAL BIODIVERSITY: A GENERAL OVERVIEW

The Role of Zoonotic Diseases in Ecological Disruption

Zoonotic diseases, particularly monkeypox, are undoubtedly crucial factors contributing to biodiversity loss in ecologically sensitive areas. While launching massive deforestation and increasing agricultural areas, humans inevitably intensify their interaction with wildlife and, as a result, infect some species with zoonotic pathogens and disturb ecosystem functioning (Leal Filho et al. 2022). The virus primarily circulates within rodent and non-human primate species in Central and West Africa, where the monkeypox is enzootic. In addition, it is worth mentioning that immense area degradation results in closer interaction between wildlife and human populations. Such interspecies exchanges lead to the spillover of the virus from one species (wildlife or human population) to another and pose severe threats to public health (Lawal and Irhue 2021).

Moreover, species dynamics undergo significant changes that negatively affect ecosystem stability. According to field-based ecological research, due to monkeypox outbreaks, vulnerable primate populations diminish, destabilizing food webs and inter-species relationships (Adler et al. 2022). A comparison of monkeypox and other zoonoses, particularly Ebola, showed a similar situation, because species responsible for some vital processes in an ecosystem, such as pteropid fruit bats, are affected by diseases that incapacitate forest regeneration and biodiversity. Field and laboratory modeling studies have been conducted to assess the effects of zoonotic diseases on wildlife populations. On the one hand, field-based studies are valuable due to their credibility and ability to capture real-life situations (Afzaal et al. 2022). However, they have numerous drawbacks that hinder the analysis of some factors and implementation of potentially valuable proposals. At the same time, laboratory models are highly efficient in studying the disease as a chemical mechanism and present several advantages. However, they are not universal and their conclusions often cannot be applied to natural conditions (Tebon et al. 2023).

In the last five–ten years, methodologies for investigating zoonotic diseases, such as monkeypox, have advanced significantly. For example, improvements in genomic techniques allow us to trace the exact way virus mutations occur in the wild and to better understand pathogen transmission dynamics (Roychoudhury et al. 2022). Similarly, ecological modeling has become a central instrument for studying future outbreaks and predicting how habitat loss and human activity can affect these outbreaks. Thus, the first insight obtained from the literature suggests that the roles of ecology, epidemiology, and conservation biology in researching zoonotic diseases are becoming more significant with time. However, there are clashes in how monkeypox and similar diseases affect biodiversity over the long term. On the one hand, some pieces of literature suggest that they will lead to biodiversity collapse and reduce the biological resilience of the ecosystem (Nuismer et al. 2022). However, the opposite idea suggests that possibilities for the last have not yet been grounded, and

ecosystems can evolve with the loss of some species and the establishment of new equilibria. The extent to which anthropogenic factors such as climate change and habitat destruction have triggered the emergence of zoonotic diseases is debatable. The literature suggests that monkeypox is a hazardous disease, but many questions remain asked (Leal Filho et al. 2022).

MONKEYPOX AS A RE-EMERGING ZOONOTIC THREAT

Monkeypox is a disease caused by a zoonotic virus naturally transmitted to humans by animals. Having originated in Central and West Africa, monkeypox is a severe disease that was first diagnosed in humans almost half a century ago in 1970, in the Democratic Republic of the Congo. For more than 20 years, various isolated cases have been reported in this country and in other regions of Central Africa (Adler et al. 2022). Unlike most other infections, the number of occurrences of monkeypox in the 21st century has increased significantly. Understandably, this occurred because people slashed rainforests in which virus-bearing animals lived. Additionally, people have started to catch, sell, and breed exotic pets, which have enhanced human-animal interaction (Leal Filho et al. 2022).

The fact that many viruses jump from animals to humans because of forest fragmentation and the increase in the human population has led to the spread of zoonotic diseases, which have been known for some time. Recent research confirms that this is the case with monkeypox and other viruses that reside in rodents and primates but come into contact with people more frequently due to disturbed habitats. Humans clear forests to make way for agricultural expansion and disrupt ecosystem (Afzaal et al. 2022). Ecological niche modeling involves studying the environment and climatic variables by analyzing data such as the virus near recent dispersal. This aids in predicting new outbreaks, and studies have shown that recently changed lands remain high-risk zones for monkeypox (Devaux et al. 2019).The recent increase in monkeypox transmission has sparked debate regarding its major driving forces. Although there is little doubt that habitat loss is a significant factor, other factors must be considered. For example, the abandonment of smallpox vaccinations in human populations has left them unprotected and made any immunity they might have built up cross-over into monkeypox corrode (Kyaw et al. 2020).

In addition, climate change is known to influence the pattern of wildlife migration, which will likely bring the group of monkeys hosting monkeypox to new areas of their range and potentially increase the probability of zoonotic transmission. As new data accumulates, specialists remain divided over the future trajectory of monkeypox in Africa (Adler et al. 2022). On the one hand, biodiversity depletion stemming from zoonotic diseases reduces the resilience of the ecosystems and exposes them to collapse. On the other hand, however, the ecosystems might be more flexible and form new equilibria when new, less susceptible ones replace older species of hosts that succumb to diseases. The diversity of perspectives speaks to the variety and multifaceted nature of the phenomena behind the re-emerging monkeypox, all of which must be considered and brought together under an integrated, holistic approach

that combines ecological, epidemiological, and social dimensions (Nuismer et al. 2022).

HUMAN-WILDLIFE INTERACTIONS AND THE TRANSMISSION OF MONKEYPOX

Land Use Change and Its Role in Monkeypox Spread

Changes in land use, particularly urbanization, exploitation of agriculture, and deforestation, have emerged as critical drivers of monkeypox transmission in animals, owing to the increased interaction between humans and wildlife. Similarly, forest ecologies have been altered, and wildlife reservoirs of monkeypox, such as rodents and primates, are often closer to human populations following habitat destruction of their habitats (Lawal and Irhue 2021). Therefore, organisms must be in close proximity to ensure that the virus is transmitted efficiently. A prime example of such close contact is in Central and West Africa, where the rate of deforestation is too high to pave the way for agriculture and the construction of urban areas (Costa et al. 2018). Several research methodologies have been used to analyze the transmission chain of monkeypoxes. GIS-based ecological modeling and field studies are two prominent examples. Models developed using Geographic Information Systems (GIS) have helped researchers map land use changes and potentially zoonotic hotspots. For example, areas in West Africa with a high risk of monkeypox transmission have been localized based on satellite image analysis. GIS data allows the identification of high-risk zones where policymakers should consider implementing their interventions (Lawal and Irhue 2021). By contrast, ethnographic field studies have a more qualitative focus, appealing to different aspects of local people's everyday lives. These studies have involved interviews and observations to better understand how people perceive and interact with wildlife. For instance, in a field study conducted in areas near deforested lands, a high frequency of encountering infected animals in local communities was found. Large-scale land conversions, such as deforestation for agriculture, are one of the main correlates of monkeypox occurrence of monkeypox (Sheikh et al. 2024). A study in the Democratic Republic of Congo found that regions in which agricultural development led to extensive changes experienced more frequent disease outbreaks. Prior to these new findings, past research has focused on deforestation only as a part of the land-change effect, and it is now known that both urbanization and agriculture play a role in monkeypox prevalence (Erkyihun and Alemayehu 2022).

However, even as regions saw unprecedented demographic shifts, debate continued among scholars regarding the relative contributions of these and agricultural expansion to the spread of monkeypox. Some posit that monoculture farming physically disrupts local ecosystems, and wildlife migration patterns are now forced into crowded spaces, increasing the likelihood of zoonotic spillover (Erkyihun and Alemayehu 2022). Others claim that urban expansion is riskier because the additional infrastructure and number of people moving through areas allow pathogens to spread even more rapidly. Ultimately, the relationship between land-use change and other

factors with the ability of monkeypox to spread or mutate remains complex, and further study is required before any concrete conclusions can be drawn for future public health initiatives (Sheikh et al. 2024).

Environmental Stressors and Zoonotic Disease Transmission

Carbon dioxide (CO2), nitrogen dioxide (NO2), and particulate matter (PM2.5) are only a few pollutants that are of the order of the day regarding the spread of different pathogens, including monkeypox, as well as environmental conditions. Many studies have reported that pollution suppresses the immune system of wildlife, making them more susceptible to different infections and favoring the transmission of monkeypox and other diseases from animals to humans (Mora et al. 2022). Observational field studies play a crucial role in understanding the impact of particular environmental stressors on disease transmission. Such research has been closely linked to the analysis of wildlife, plants, and environmental conditions in areas of interest. At the same time, it is evident that it would be challenging to control every aspect of the situation and isolate particular variables (Afzaal et al. 2022). In the case of recent environmental pollution levels, the development of air quality models and databases represents a breakthrough in the analysis of the impacts of pollutants. These databases contain spatial representations of variables, factors, and pollution levels. At the same time, extensive ecological and epidemiological data on the spread of these diseases are available. Combined, they allow the relationship to be determined with a certain degree of precision (Kolluru et al. 2023).

According to several recent studies, PM2.5 levels are correlated with the increased daily number of monkeypox cases in regions with deforestation and agricultural expansion. Thus, a study in the Democratic Republic of the Congo has shown that higher amounts of PM2.5 in the given area could dramatically increase the number of reported cases (McCandless et al. 2022). The effects of pollutants seem to worsen habitat loss, as deforestation or intensive agricultural expansion also correspond to decreased immunity in affected wildlife. Thus, infected animals are more likely to transmit the disease to humans because habitat destruction forces local people and wildlife into closer proximity and often leads to competition (Erkyihun and Alemayehu 2022). Among the ongoing debates in the scientific community are those regarding the extent to which stressors in the local environment, such as pollution and the scale of habitat loss, contribute to the spread of monkeypox. Some researchers claim that habitat degradation is essential because of increased human-wildlife interaction (Cho et al. 2022). Simultaneously, pollution exacerbates this issue by weakening wildlife populations. The development of methodologies ranging from direct observation and experimentation to advanced air quality modeling has allowed us to gauge the impact of pollution on the state of ecosystems and the spread of zoonotic diseases (Afzaal et al. 2022). As time passes, it becomes apparent that to reduce the risks of monkeypox and other diseases that affect human beings, a push against local environmental pollutants is essential in addition to simply protecting habitats (Mora et al. 2022).

ECOLOGICAL IMPACTS OF MONKEYPOX ON KEYSTONE SPECIES AND ECOSYSTEM STABILITY

Effects of Monkeypox on Keystone and Endangered Species

Monkeypox is not only a viral zoonotic disease that represents a peril to human health and life but also a significant threat to keystone species. Its adequate spread and ability to progress in great apes can lead to the localization of populations of these animal species. The problem is that the affected gorilla population, for example, functions as dispersed seeds and habitat modifiers, which means that their elimination will result in ecological shifts and restricted biodiversity. One of the earliest studies on this problem revealed that Western gorillas were the great apes most vulnerable to monkeypox outbreaks (Alvarez-Estape et al. 2023). Long-term ecological monitoring and experimental approaches in highly controlled environments are vital for understanding why diseases such as monkeypox pose threats to biodiversity. According to Adler et al. (2022), long-term monitoring programs for the health and population dynamics of these organisms from the Congo Basin, which are great apes, have been beneficial because they reveal disease transmission patterns and the effect of monkeypox on population stability. It was detected that it did not bring stability, increasing other threats such as habitat loss and poaching. This experimental approach allowed us to understand how the infection spreads naturally when carriers can transmit it. It is possible to predict that the proper conditions of these venues will help discover that they are highly contagious (Lawal and Irhue 2021).

Recent studies from the previous five–ten years have established a significant increase in the severity of monkeypox virus infection with respect to species diversity. This has been noted to correspond to the rising incidence rates of the disease, which is usually associated with increased human-wildlife socioeconomic interfaces and the consequent colonization of human habitats, resulting in frequent contact with wildlife (Roychoudhury et al. 2022). For instance, Leifels et al. (2022) found that the viral strains were high and refuted the possibility of their occurrence in their nature, given that there had been record high levels of deforestation have led to crop planting, resulting in human-wildlife contact in human farms.

Monkeypox threatens ecosystem stability by causing population decline and disturbances within the ecosystem. It poses a potential risk of disturbing the entire ecosystem because of its effects on keystone species (Adler et al. 2022). Other researchers have argued that it may only rescue parts of the ecosystem because some populations are resilient to the impact of disease. In summary, the effect of Monkeypox on ecosystem stability exists, but there is still some debate regarding the extent to which it is complete. The necessity of supporting conservation with the help of disease management, habitat protection, and community support was evident at the time. The resilience of keystone species must be considered to support biodiversity stability of biodiversity (Butt et al. 2020).

Ecological Role of Species in Zoonotic Disease Dynamics

Research on wildlife species acting as reservoirs for monkeypox has advanced substantially, particularly regarding the role of rodents and primates in the sustenance of this virus. Historically, captive animal models have relied on exploring disease dynamics. However, modern advances in ecological monitoring within natural habitats have revolutionized our understanding of the extent to which the bouts of species interactions in the wild affect persistence and transmission (Sheikh et al. 2024). Evidence shows that Rodents, particularly African-pouched rats and various squirrel species, are vital reservoirs. These animal species occur extensively where monkeypox cases have been recorded, and actuating with other animals and people has significant implications for the ecology of the virus's ecology (Cheslock and Embers 2019). Recent research conducted in Central Africa has shown that specific rodent species may be more vital in facilitating the persistence of monkeypox than was previously appreciated. For example, Adler et al. (2022)reported that an increase in rodent activity in areas where forests had been cleared or destroyed was directly proportional to the degree of monkeypox transmission.

Primates are another part of the transmission chain, serving as hosts to obtain the virus and transmit it to others. Long-term monitoring of significant ape populations in the Congo Basin indicates that primates can catch monkeypox and spread it among themselves if their habitats are fragmented (Lawal and Irhue 2021). Nevertheless, with new studies, primates have become less prominent in terms of drivers of transmission. While some researchers claim that the focus should be shifted to the rodent population, others claim that primates are critical to the transmission chain, especially because they have become more involved with the human population (Trotter et al. 2022).

Disputes in the literature regarding the role of rodents versus primates have meaningful implications for public health and conservation. Determining the species that are most relevant to the chain of transmission allows for more intuitive surveillance and risk assessment. For example, understanding that rodent species may serve as critical reservoirs would naturally lead to more rigorous control measures in high-risk risk (Sievers et al. 2024). By switching from experimental models to cutting-edge ecological monitoring tools, such as satellite imagery and molecular tracking, we obtained vital new information about the share of monkeypox transmission attributable to each wildlife species. As the field continues to evolve on the now possible robust evidence base, it is critical to resolve the current disputes in the literature to ensure efficient efforts to mitigate zoonotic disease risks (Benites-Zapata et al. 2022).

CONSERVATION STRATEGIES AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN MITIGATING ZOONOTIC DISEASES

Wildlife Conservation and Mitigation Strategies for Monkeypox

Wildlife conservation strategies to prevent monkeypox outbreaks have significantly changed over the past few years. Traditional strategies, such as habitat preservation,

aim to preserve biodiversity by protecting the natural habitats of species that are at risk of disease. They have been supplemented by approaches implemented in recent years, such as vaccination or the One Health concept, which highlights the close connection between human and animal health and the environment (Zinsstag et al. 2023).

One case study in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC) reported the results of vaccination programs conducted in transportation hubs. The DRC population is exposed to monkeypox owing to its endemic properties. In 2021, a case study proved that local vaccination activities related to selected transportation hubs effectively reduced the incidence of monkeypox in certain areas. At the same time, similar to the present study, vaccination programs are characterized by various challenges such as resource constraints, limited capacity, and feasibility, which decrease their scope and long-term effects (Sah et al. 2022). Some methods are older and less effective than the 'One Health' framework for mitigating the spread of the monkeypox virus. Habitat preservation is one such method of preservation. Human encroachment on forests and natural habitats is typically accompanied by habitat destruction. Due to habitat fragmentation and shrinking, wildlife must live near humans, either very close to them or in environments invaded by people. Restoring and preserving natural habitats is undoubtedly important for preventing zoonotic diseases, long-term biodiversity support, and the well-being of different species (Erkyihun and Alemayehu 2022).

However, it did not directly decrease the rate of monkeypox virus transmission. Habitat restoration can take many decades, and the recovery period should span generations of animals. Regardless of the benefits of habitat preservation, it is not sufficient for the rapid spread of the monkeypox virus, as in Nigeria (Adler et al. 2022). Therefore, the 'One Health' Initiative is a superior method that covers multiple variables and stakeholders. For example, as a result of the 'One Health' approach, the Nigerian government, in collaboration with UNICEF, monitors the monkeypox virus through a new system of veterinarians to provide quick responses and contain it in Nigeria. The downside of such measures is the demand for political will and availability of resources (Trotter et al. 2022).

The literature provides controversial findings on which strategy is more effective: vaccination programs or broader conservation strategies. Researchers argue that vaccination reduces immediate health risks, but does not address the environmental forces driving monkeypox transmission in habitats. Simultaneously, it is reasonable to assume that without surviving ecosystems, wildlife will become extinct, making potential gains from vaccination redundant (Shattock et al. 2024). In conclusion, both habitat preservation and vaccination programs are required to address the issue of monkeypoxes. Simultaneously, a broader approach to the problem of disease transmission in line with the One Health perspective is more promising in the future. Such an approach would recognize that conservation strategies consider both environmental and health dimensions to control monkeypox transmission while ensuring the resilience of communities (Hopkins et al. 2022).

The Role of Climate Change and Habitat Preservation in Preventing Future Outbreaks

Climate change and habitat conservation must be accounted for if outbreaks of zoonotic diseases similar to monkeypox are to be avoided in the future. Indeed, shifting global climates disrupt habitats and distributions of wildlife, increasing the likelihood of human-wildlife interactions that can cause zoonotic diseases. There are numerous mechanisms for predicting the outcomes of such changes, such as predictive modeling and ecological monitoring, and some studies have laid bare how climate data can be incorporated into models of zoonotic diseases (Mora et al. 2022). For example, one study focused on climate-based predictive modeling of monkeypox using data to determine how changing temperatures and precipitation patterns affect rodent habitats on which the monkeys of the Congo Basin prey. Expansions are regularly observed in habitats of destabilized reservoirs: in this particular case, it was found that if temperatures increase and forest habitats shrink, increased transmission of monkeypox is likely in such areas (Leal Filho et al. 2022). In contrast, earlier studies focused mainly on deforestation and increasing habitat fragmentation, although these factors are also crucial. However, they must provide a comprehensive view of the impact of climate change owing to the loss of biodiversity. Ecological monitoring has demonstrated that while increasing habitat loss caused by severe deforestation, people drive wildlife to human populations. In other words, such interference can stimulate the monkey's microorganism spillover, quickly transmitting the monkey's pathogens to people. However, different predictions have been made regarding the effects of climate change on monkeypoxes. For instance, according to Adler et al. (2022), there is a definite possibility that climate change exacerbates the monkeypox spread in regions where biodiversity loss is aggravated by people's increasing presence. However, neither of these studies can assess the future prevalence of the disease as climate variability can occur, which can lead to the inability of disease carriers, such as bats, to exist, as was possibly the case with the rock hyraxes that last winter.

One of the main ways to reduce the risk of zoonotic diseases, such as monkeypox, is through targeted conservation. To reduce this risk, it is necessary to protect the most critical habitats for the conservation of particular species and restore habitats that have been degraded. This helps the system become more resilient to various pressures (Nielsen et al. 2023). In addition, climate adaptation strategies should be promoted in the context of conservation planning. In this way, the doubly numbered advantages of conserving wildlife and the human system can be achieved, as they are more resilient to climate change. Both sustainability issues must be addressed to reduce the risk of zoonotic diseases(Hopkins et al. 2022). In addition, using predictive models and ecological monitoring can help researchers and policymakers understand the nature of risks and devise optimal strategies to enhance ecosystem resilience, thus improving public health outcomes (Robles-Fernández et al. 2022) .

CONCLUSION

This chapter examines the significant impact of monkeypox on biodiversity loss and its consequences for ecosystem health and zoonotic disease transmission. Significant findings have indicated that wildlife reservoirs, particularly rodents and monkeys, play a vital role in maintaining viruses within ecosystems. Simultaneously, climate change and habitat destruction intensify the risk of spillover. The progression of research approaches from experimental frameworks to sophisticated ecological monitoring has improved our comprehension of these processes, while contemporary conservation strategies, including vaccination programs and 'One Health' campaigns, present hopeful remedies. These observations highlight the interdependence of human, animal, and environmental health and stress the need for cohesive conservation initiatives. Nonetheless, deficiencies persist, especially regarding the long-term ecological ramifications of monkeypox and the comparative roles of other species in the transmission networks. Additional studies are necessary to examine the influence of climate change on monkeypox transmission and enhance predictive models that incorporate both environmental and epidemiological variables. Future studies should prioritize long-term ecological monitoring, investigate genomic tracking of viral evolution, and evaluate the efficacy of integrated conservation policies in mitigating zoonotic illnesses. The limitations of this chapter include potential biases arising from the selection of studies and their scope, which has predominantly concentrated on research from the past decade. Notwithstanding these limitations, this chapter enhances our understanding of the intricate link between zoonotic illnesses and biodiversity. Going forward, a unified effort to tackle the identified deficiencies will be essential for enhancing the scientific comprehension of monkeypox and formulating appropriate public health measures.

REFERENCES

- Adler H et al., 2022. Clinical features and management of human monkeypox: a retrospective observational study in the UK. The Lancet Infectious Diseases 22: 1153-1162
- Afzaal M et al., 2022. Heavy metals contamination in water, sediments and fish of freshwater ecosystems in Pakistan. Water Practice & Technology 17: 1253-1272
- Alvarez-Estape M et al., 2023. Past connectivity but recent inbreeding in Cross River gorillas determined using whole genomes from single hairs. Genes 14: 743
- Benites-Zapata V A et al., 2022. Clinical features, hospitalisation and deaths associated with monkeypox: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Annals of clinical microbiology and antimicrobials 21: 36
- Butt N et al., 2020. Threats, costs, and probability of success: informing conservation choices. Frontiers in Ecology and Evolution 8: 223
- Cheslock M A and M E Embers 2019. Human bartonellosis: an underappreciated public health problem? Tropical Medicine and Infectious Disease 4: 69

- Cho S et al., 2022. Efficient and cost-effective non-invasive population monitoring as a method to assess the genetic diversity of the last remaining population of Amur leopard (Panthera pardus orientalis) in the Russia Far East. PLoS One 17: e0270217
- Costa G B et al., 2018. Vaccinia virus among domestic dogs and wild coatis, Brazil, 2013–2015. Emerging infectious diseases 24: 2338
- Devaux C A et al., 2019. Infectious disease risk across the growing human-non human primate interface: a review of the evidence. Frontiers in public health 7: 305
- Erkyihun G A and M B Alemayehu 2022. One Health approach for the control of zoonotic diseases. Zoonoses 2: 963
- Hopkins S R et al., 2022. Evidence gaps and diversity among potential win–win solutions for conservation and human infectious disease control. The Lancet Planetary Health 6: e694-e705
- Hopkins S R et al., 2022. Evidence gaps and diversity among potential win–win solutions for conservation and human infectious disease control. 6: e694-e705
- Kolluru S S R et al., 2023. Did unprecedented air pollution levels cause spike in Delhi's COVID cases during second wave? Stochastic Environmental Research and Risk Assessment 37: 795-810
- Kyaw W M et al., 2020. Monitoring healthcare professionals after monkeypox exposure: experience from the first case imported to Asia. Infection Control & Hospital Epidemiology 41: 373-375
- Lawal M O and K Y Irhue 2021. Exploration of The Interplay Between Tourism, Global Warming And Health In Nigeria. Administrative Law and Governance Journal 4: 172-190
- Leal Filho W et al., 2022. Climate change and zoonoses: a review of concepts, definitions, and bibliometrics. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health 19: 893
- Leifels M et al., 2022. The one health perspective to improve environmental surveillance of zoonotic viruses: lessons from COVID-19 and outlook beyond. ISME communications 2: 107
- López-Islas J J et al., 2022. Characterization of Salmonella spp. and E. coli Strains Isolated from Wild Carnivores in Janos Biosphere Reserve, Mexico. Animals 12: 1064
- McCandless L C et al., 2022. Sensitivity analysis for live birth bias in the Ulaanbaatar Gestation and Air Pollution Research study. Environmental Epidemiology 6: e229

- Mora C et al., 2022. Over half of known human pathogenic diseases can be aggravated by climate change. Nature climate change 12: 869-875
- Nielsen E S et al., 2023. Molecular ecology meets systematic conservation planning. Trends in Ecology & Evolution 38: 143-155
- Nuismer S L et al., 2022. Reservoir population ecology, viral evolution and the risk of emerging infectious disease. Proceedings of the Royal Society B 289: 20221080
- Ranjan S et al., 2023. The emergence of mpox: epidemiology and current therapeutic options. Current Pharmacology Reports 9: 144-153
- Robles-Fernández Á L et al., 2022. Wildlife susceptibility to infectious diseases at global scales. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 119: e2122851119
- Roychoudhury P et al., 2022. Genomic analysis of early spread of monkeypox virus in Washington State. MedRxiv 2022.09. 19.22280115
- Sah R et al., 2022. Monkeypox virus containment: the application of ring vaccination and possible challenges. Journal of Travel Medicine 29: taac085
- Shattock A J et al., 2024. Contribution of vaccination to improved survival and health: modelling 50 years of the Expanded Programme on Immunization. The Lancet 403: 2307-2316
- Sheikh A T et al., 2024. Soil fertility in mixed crop-livestock farming systems of Punjab, Pakistan: The role of institutional factors and sustainable land management practices. Agricultural Systems 218: 103964
- Sievers B L et al., 2024. “Smart markets”: harnessing the potential of new technologies for endemic and emerging infectious disease surveillance in traditional food markets. Journal of Virology 98: e01683-23
- Tebon P J et al., 2023. Drug screening at single-organoid resolution via bioprinting and interferometry. Nature Communications 14: 3168
- Trotter P A et al., 2022. How climate policies can translate to tangible change: Evidence from eleven low-and lower-middle income countries. Journal of Cleaner Production 346: 131014
- Zinsstag J et al., 2023. Advancing One human–animal–environment Health for global health security: what does the evidence say? The Lancet 401: 591-604

CHAPTER- 16

THE USE OF AROMATHERAPY IN MEDICAL SCIENCES

Muhammad Saqib[1], Maham Zafar[2*], Muhammad Jamil Khan[3], Muhammad Zubair Ali[4], Sawaira Shahid[5], Maham Ashraf[6], Nyla Ajaz[6], Muhammad Nouman Asghar[7], Hammad Ahmed Hashmi[8] and Palwasha Chandni[9]

[1]Key Laboratory of Biomedical information Engineering of Ministry of Education, School of life Sciences and Technology, Xi'an Jiaotong University, Xi'an 710049, China

[*2]Department NIFSAT, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan,

[3]Department of Chemistry, Abbottabad University of Science and Technology, Abbottabad, KPK, Pakistan

[4]Department of Biotechnology, University of Sargodha, Punjab, Pakistan,

[5]Department of Botany, Lahore College for Women University, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[6]Faculty of Pharmaceutical sciences, The University of Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[7]Faculty of Pharmacy, Gomal University, D.I.KHAN, KPK, Pakistan

[8]Department of Clinical Studies, Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Science, PMAS Arid Agriculture University, Rawalpindi, Punjab, Pakistan

[9]Department of Veterinary Sciences, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533347

ABSTRACT

Aromatherapy, the medicinal use of essential oils, is increasingly being recognized for its efficacy in alleviating pain, anxiety, and many health disorders. This chapter examines the increasing incorporation of aromatherapy in conventional healthcare, emphasizing its biological mechanisms, safety protocols, and ethical implications. The main aim of the study was to deliver an exhaustive analysis of the existing literature on aromatherapy, highlighting its therapeutic potential and deficiencies in the current research. This study consolidates information from multiple studies, emphasizing the impact of essential oils on the neurological and endocrine systems and their function in modulating neurotransmitters and hormones. This chapter underscores the necessity for standardization and regulatory supervision, highlighting how methodological inconsistencies in studies restrict the generalizability of the findings. The ethical ramifications of aromatherapy use, especially with patient consent and evidence-based practice, were also scrutinized. This study presents novel insights into the safe and successful integration of aromatherapy into clinical practice, along with recommendations for further research on standardization, long-term benefits, and multimodal therapeutic use. This chapter enhances the comprehension of aromatherapy in integrative medicine, thus bolstering its legitimacy as a supplemental treatment modality.

Keywords: Aromatherapy, essential oils, clinical applications, safety standards, biological mechanisms, integrative medicine, ethical considerations.

INTRODUCTION

Aromatherapy, the management of diseases with essential oils from plants, has gained considerable interest in other methods of health care, including complementary and alternative medicine. It is used in the management of a variety of clinical issues, including pain relief, stress reduction, better sleep quality, and enhancement of mental well-being (Ukil et al. 2016). The desire for non-drug intervention and treatment options by patients places an escalating need for practitioners to be well versed in and appreciate the evidence, safety, and mechanisms of aromatherapy. Thus, the literature providing progress towards the approval of essential oils in therapeutic use is abundant, yet their use, especially in a clinical context, is poorly understood (Buchbauer and Jirovetz 1994). This chapter reviews the existing body of knowledge on the use of aromatherapy in the practice of medicine, with particular attention to the mechanisms at play, safety, and ethical issues, among others, that influence its use in clinical settings.

Recent analyses suggest that the function of essential oils within the nervous and endocrine systems in gaining hormonal balance and regulating neurotransmitters has also been proven (Lizarraga-Valderrama 2021). For example, studies on lavender oil have been beneficial for alleviating anxiety disturbances and enhancing sleep efficiency, particularly in palliative care practitioners. However, while these studies have contributed significantly to the overall knowledge of aromatherapy, they present an equally essential and distressing picture, and not a single large randomized controlled trial has been conducted and published over the last two decades. This prevents proper rigor and evidence synthesis within the research context to promote further application of massage therapy, especially with evidence-based practices incorporated within healthcare systems (Bowers 2006).

This chapter aims to fill the highlighted research gap by performing a thorough literature evaluation of the application of aromatherapy in clinical healthcare environments. This chapter presents a fresh synthesis of recent results by analyzing the biological mechanisms of essential oils and the safety standards governing their usage, emphasizing ethical implications and regulatory frameworks (Bowers 2006). This chapter offers a comprehensive perspective on how scientific data, ethical practices, and safety laws can influence the future application of aromatherapy in healthcare, in contrast to earlier assessments that predominantly emphasize the therapeutic properties of essential oils (Kirk-Smith 2004). This chapter seeks to offer novel insights that will facilitate safe and effective incorporation of aromatherapy into conventional therapeutic practices.

GENERAL OVERVIEW OF AROMATHERAPY IN MEDICAL SCIENCES

Historical Evolution and Cultural Perspectives

The development of aromatherapy is associated with ancient Egypt, Mesopotamia, and China, where plants are used for their essential oils in various treatment processes. Another vital use of aromatic oils in ancient Egypt was magic and religious, which resulted in therapeutic effects. Myrrh, frankincense, and cedar wood oils, among others, were quite common for their assumed therapeutic and ceremonial purposes (Ayaz et al. 2017). Among other uses, the burning of frankincense was a common practice in religious ceremonies, during which later scientific studies confirmed its mild bacteria-fighting effects. Essential oils are also used as topical medications for wound and skin care and have been further developed into the formulations currently available.

In the Middle East, healing deodorants made of thyme or cedar essential oils have been prescribed and used. Ancient Mesopotamian cultures have unique ways of extracting essences from plants, as evidenced by references to helio-engineering technologies dating back to the year 2000 BCE (Voudouri and Tesseromatis 2015). These cultures use scented oils to provide relief from most physical ailments, focusing on injuries and infections. The use of essential oils for healing, especially in wound infection control procedures, has been a feature of ancient Chinese medicine since its inception. Moreover, their application was mainly targeted at restoring the balance of the body's "Qi" energy and improving both physical and mental conditions (Lim et al. 2023). In particular, sandalwood and camphor were of great importance when sandalwood was effective against all kinds of respiratory infections, whereas camphor was an all-purpose analgesic. Such troubles were thought to be improved with the help of these oils, not simply due to the physical aspects, but also because of the psychic balance (Tang and Tse 2014). This system of medicine is rooted in the concept that body and mind are inseparable. Such a practice still exists today in the form of integrative and complementary medicine with essential oils effectively employed to heal both (Agarwal 2020). The historical appreciation of the wholeness of healthcare, considering both the body and mind, is echoed in the present-day use of aromatherapy as a complementary and integrative therapy (Özfenerci et al. 2022). Lavenders, peppermints, and rosemaries, used to treat anxiety, pain, and relaxation, respectively, have been in practice for centuries and are scientifically supported today. For example, lavender has been reported to alleviate anxiety via the nervous system. Peppermint, on the other hand, is effective in alleviating pain owing to its complex constituents (Wotman et al. 2017).

Moreover, growing attention to the quality and safety of essential oils has highlighted the importance of constructing special norms that control the application of essential oils during medical procedures (Bako et al. 2023). Among the factors determining the therapeutic action of essential oils, extraction technique and composition are of great importance. Presently, looking bodies need certification and standardization to avoid adverse effects and reinforce the quality of essential oils in healthcare (Ahmad et al.

2022). While civilizations of the past have provided the basis for those who now treat aromatherapy as an evidence-based practice rather than witchcraft, their traditional approach still offers these patients a natural and safe treatment for a range of health conditions (Itoh et al. 2022).

2.2 TRANSITION TO MODERN MEDICAL PRACTICES

Aromatherapy, which can be defined as the use of plant-based essential oils for therapeutic benefits, has gone from cultural practice to an acceptable alternative therapy in the modern world. Evidence from ancient times suggests that ancient Egyptians, Mesopotamians, and Chinese historically used essential oils as scents for rituals and as a means of personal cleanliness and treatment as shown in figure 1. For example, both spiritual and scientific backing qualities have also been contained in Cambodian aromatherapy, lavender, and regalia incense, which are rich and thick (Ayaz et al. 2017).

The growing appreciation of the biological and psychological influences of essential oils in the course of their development has also aroused interest in the therapeutic use of essential oils and aromatherapy (Koulivand et al. 2013). Essential oils, such as lavender and peppermint, have been increasingly used in addition to the conventional treatment of illnesses (Özfenerci et al. 2022). Lavender oil reduces anxiety, improves sleep patterns, and decreases the level of perceivable pain with the use of orange-based oils, which are known to relieve depression and boost the mood of the person. Such therapies are commonly used in clinics; for example, after surgery for recovery or during mental therapy focused on stress management (Hardiyanti 2022). In recent years, the introduction and establishment of scientific proof and legislation have paved the way for the introduction of aromatherapy into healthcare systems. Several clinical trials (RCT) on the use of essential oils have shown their efficacy in treating anxiety, pain, and sleep disturbances, thus justifying their use in clinical settings (Itoh et al. 2022). For instance, a study conducted in 2020 focused on Lavender Oil and concluded that it could effectively reduce preoperative anxiety in willing patients, and it is now possible to use it in burn unit settings. These studies have strengthened the position of aromatherapy as an effective adjunctive treatment (Kim et al. 2020).

Apart from clinical trials, there are standards and certifications provided by authorities to help in the safety and quality of essential oils used in professional healthcare. The International Standards Organization has indicated the safety standards for the purity and chemical identification of essential oils that must comply with prior medical procedures that would require such products (Ahmad et al. 2022). Other organizations such as the International Federation of Aroma Therapists also run certification programs for healthcare workers to ensure the safe and effective provision of aromatherapy (Özfenerci et al. 2022). Owing to these scientific and regulatory changes, aromatherapy is no longer regarded as an alternative therapy, but a complementary one, which is currently being practiced in conventional medicine (Boyce and Natschke 2019). Healthcare providers, such as doctors, nurses, and allied healthcare professionals, have come to embrace the use of essential oils together with

the baseline medical care of patients in a bid to enhance patients. This incorporation allows patients to take advantage of the stress-reducing effects and other comfortable feelings that aromatherapy can provide as both a physiological and psychological treatment, thus moving further to a more complete healthcare model (Choi et al. 2018).

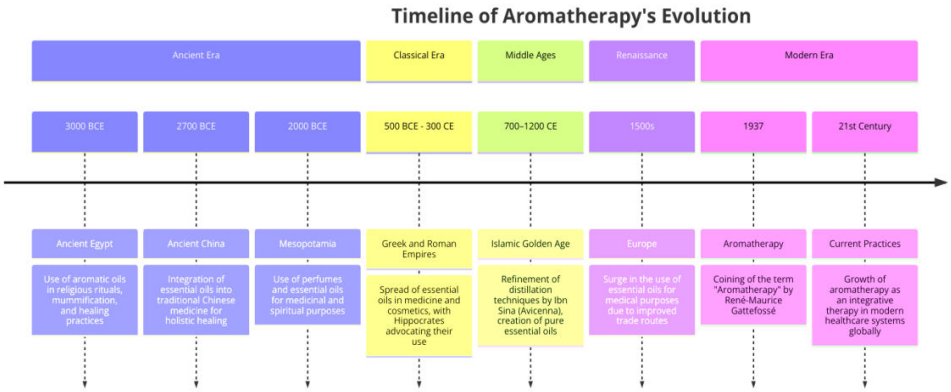


Figure 1: This figure shows that aromatherapy has evolved from the use of fragrant oils in healing and rituals in Ancient Egypt (3000 BCE) to holistic and medical uses in Ancient China (2700 BCE) and Mesopotamia (2000 BCE). Essential oils gained popularity during the 500 BCE–300 CE Greek and Roman Empires when Hippocrates recommended their usage. Ibn Sina improved distillation methods during the Islamic Golden Age (700–1200 CE), producing purer oils. Essential oils gained popularity for medical purposes in Europe by the Renaissance (1500s). The term "aromatherapy," first used in 1937 by René-Maurice Gattefossé, has been used as an integrative therapy in the twenty-first century.

THERAPEUTIC APPLICATIONS OF AROMATHERAPY IN CLINICAL SETTINGS

Aromatherapy in Pain and Anxiety Management

Aromatherapy, or the application of essential plant oils, has been progressively accepted along with traditional medicine for pain and anxiety management. Some recent controlled clinical trials, with or without randomization, have also tested the effectiveness of a number of essential oils, such as lavender, peppermint, and bergamot, in the treatment of medical issues such as postoperative recovery, child care, rehabilitation, and mental health disorders, among others (Choi et al. 2018). Patients who inhaled lavender oil during the recovery period from abdominal surgery experienced a reduction in pain and anxiety, requiring fewer opioids. Topical application of peppermint oil provides soothing relief with lower pain scores and reduced analgesic requirements during recovery in RCT, including cardiac surgery patients (Amodeo et al. 2018).

Akbari et al. (2019) found that when children breathe lavender oil, the levels of distress related to venipuncture procedures decrease, which suggests higher levels of

cooperation and better overall experience. In one study, researchers examined children with cancer-related pain and found that a mixture of essential oils containing peppermint relieved pain and reduced the need for traditional painkillers (Friedrichsdorf and Goubert 2020). In the area of mental health, RCTs have shown the effectiveness of essential oils in anxiety and mood disorder therapy. Patients with generalized anxiety disorder who used inhalation of lavender oil reported a significant decrease in anxiety levels and improvement in sleep, providing a ray of hope (Zimpel et al. 2020). A combination of lavender and bergamot oils has been associated with relief from depression and improvement of mood, as shown in another study on depression, offering a promising avenue for treatment (Soares et al. 2021).

Over the years, as the scope of aromatherapy research has increased, the methods and levels of precision for evaluating its effectiveness have also improved (Cao et al. 2023). More recent RCTs have used double-masked, placebo-controlled designs and incorporated well-validated measures, such as the Hamilton Anxiety Scale and Visual Analogue Scale for pain assessment, among other developments. Such advancements have significantly enhanced the literature supporting the use of aromatherapy, paving the way for the use of essential oils in clinical practice by health professionals at an increased level of assurance. This progress inspires further work to explore the mechanisms of action and enhance treatment approaches for pain and anxiety using essential oils (Özfenerci et al. 2022).

Role of Aromatherapy in Palliative Care and End-of-Life Care

Aromatherapy has proven to be a beacon of hope in palliative care as an adjunctive therapy, especially for the relief of nausea, anxiety, and pain as shown in figure 2 (Khamis et al. 2023). Studies have established the potential for significantly improving the quality of life of terminally ill patients. For instance, a systematic review of 18 studies indicated that the use of lavender oil and peppermint oil within the framework of end-of-life care was associated with reduced levels of anxiety, relief of mild pain, and improvement in patient comfort (Kreye et al. 2022). However, the review also mentioned that the strength of evidence was affected because a number of studies included in the review had several methodological flaws, such as small sample sizes and no consistent control group.

Other studies did not support aromatherapy as an effective treatment for symptomatic relief in palliative care within the emerging studies. This review stated many caveats, including the light body of evidence perhaps supportive of anxiety and quality of life outcomes, but not strong enough to warrant a conclusive endorsement of the intervention (Rodin et al. 2020). Despite these difficulties, it is crucial to remember that aromatherapy is still an option for treating patients' symptoms, particularly when other measures are few or may be aggressive (Khamis et al. 2023). As research evolves, it is becoming increasingly clear that innovations in methodologies such as large blinded placebo-controlled randomized controlled trials are crucial for providing better support for the integration of aromatherapy within the scope of palliative care. Such advancements in study design are not just beneficial, but they are also crucial

for addressing the placebo effect and establishing that the essential oils are utilized based on factual information (Kreye et al. 2022).

When considering aromatherapy for terminally ill patients, it is crucial to exercise caution and prudence. It should be viewed not as a replacement for standard care, but as a supplementary measure. Patients and their families should carefully weigh the potential benefits against risks, and the healthcare system should be mindful of potential drug interactions (Foster et al. 2019). By incorporating aromatherapy into end-of-life treatment, healthcare practitioners can provide patients with additional symptom relief, thereby enhancing their quality of life during the final stages of illness (Armstrong et al. 2019).

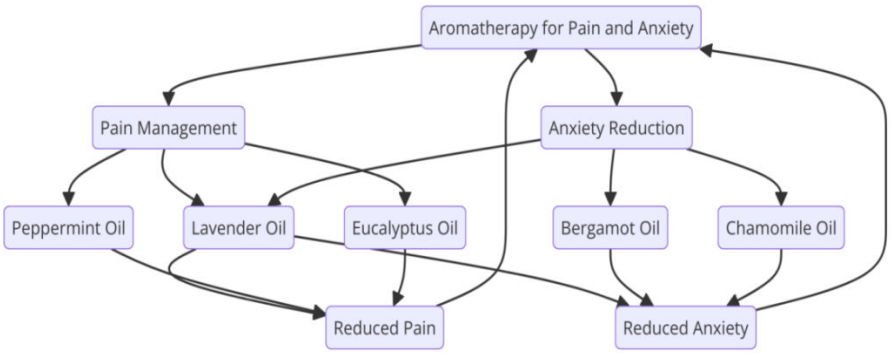


Figure 2: This cycle diagram shows how essential oils are used in aromatherapy to reduce anxiety and manage pain. Lavender, Bergamot, and Chamomile oils are used to reduce anxiety, reduce stress, and improve mental health. Eucalyptus, peppermint, and lavender oils are applied for pain relief, reducing pain perception, and boosting well-being. The cycle illustrates the ongoing application of aromatherapy, where the benefits of decreased anxiety and pain support the modality as an integrative therapy.

MECHANISMS OF ACTION AND BIOLOGICAL IMPLICATIONS

Biological Mechanisms of Essential Oils on the Nervous and Endocrine Systems

Moreover, essential oils act through certain biological pathways in specific physiological systems, including the nervous and endocrine systems. Of all the oils, Lavender oil has received most of the attention for its learnable control over neurotransmitters, including serotonin and dopamine, which help in the control of mood, sleep, and mental activities (Zimpel et al. 2020). Critical ingredients of lavender-cilalool and linalyl acetate have been shown to increase serotonin uptake because they act as serotonin receptor sensitizers(Jung et al. 2023). Researchers observed that inhalation of lavender oil increased serotonin levels by 20% and decreased cortisol levels by 15%, showing promising relief from anxiety and stress (Jung et al. 2023).

A similar explanation is the effect of rosemary oil on the level of acetylcholine, thereby improving memory with the action constituents 1, 8-cineole, and α-pinene

(Harada et al. 2018). Preclinical studies in rodent models have shown that these compounds target cholinergic receptors, leading to enhanced memory and more complex cognitive skills. For example, one study reported a 30% increase in acetylcholine levels in the hippocampus following rosemary oil administration, thus opening up new opportunities in the management of cognitive disorders such as Alzheimer's disease (Al-Tawarah et al. 2023).

Essential oils also have an impact on hormonal regulation, in addition to their pharmacological effects on the body's nervous system. One such example is the modulation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis in clary sage oils as shown in table 2 (Özfenerci et al. 2022). The HPA axis is critical for regulating stress and hormone levels. Clary sage also appears to reduce cortisol, a stress hormone, by 18%, but increases estrogen and progesterone levels, which could prove helpful for coping with abnormal menstruation and other hormonal issues (Koubaa-Ghorbel et al. 2021). There are several mechanisms through which essential oils can target both the nervous and endocrine systems. To prove this potential, clinical trials have become essential tools for further enhancing these memberships and the all-herbal treatment of essential oils (Soares et al. 2021).

Table 2: Biological Mechanisms of Essential Oils in Aromatherapy

Essential Oil	Biological Mechanism	Target System	Clinical Effects
Lavender Oil	Modulates **serotonin receptors**, reducing cortisol levels	**Nervous System**, Endocrine	Reduces anxiety, improves sleep quality
Peppermint Oil	Activates **nociceptors** and **alters neurotransmitter activity**	**Nervous System**	Reduces pain, relieves headaches, boosts focus
Bergamot Oil	Increases **serotonin and dopamine** levels	**Endocrine System**	Improves mood, reduces depressive symptoms
Clary Sage Oil	Modulates the **hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis**, balancing cortisol	**Endocrine System**	Reduces stress, stabilizes emotions
Chamomile Oil	Enhances **GABA receptor activity**, calming the parasympathetic system	**Nervous System**	Promotes relaxation, reduces anxiety, improves sleep
Rosemary Oil	Increases **acetylcholine** activity, improving cognitive function	**Nervous System**	Enhances memory, boosts cognitive performance
Eucalyptus Oil	Anti-inflammatory action by modulating **cytokine release**	**Immune and Nervous Systems**	Reduces inflammation, relieves pain

SYNERGISTIC EFFECTS OF AROMATHERAPY WITH OTHER COMPLEMENTARY THERAPIES

Research has shown that the combination of aromatherapy with related therapies, such as massage and music therapy, offers significant benefits. These strategies are increasingly used in the treatment of patients with pain, anxiety, or sleep disorders (Lakhan et al. 2016). Several studies have highlighted the pharmacological and psychotherapeutic effects of these combined therapies, underscoring their potential for enhancing patient care. Researchers used items with lavender and other materials in 60 patients who had varying levels of music therapy and aromatherapy as interventions to reduce anxiety. This study found that patients who had both modalities had a 30% reduction in anxiety compared to single-modality participants (Kim and Lee 2019). Combining both interventions would promote the enhancement of relaxation and stillness in a way that neither intervention could achieve independently. The results indicated that applying both soothing music and neutral odors would be more beneficial for hypotensive anxiety (Cloutier et al. 2020).

Similarly, aromatherapy combined with massage therapy has proven advantageous, with pronounced benefits for chronic pain and sleep disposition. A study with patients afflicted with chronic pain disorders demonstrated that the combined treatment of aromatherapy and massage improved sleep quality by 25% and decreased sleep quality by 15%. Furthermore, inhalation of essential oils, such as lavender or peppermint, used with massage was also influential in enhancing massage relaxation by influencing several systems of the body (Park and Park 2019). These two types of therapies also help activate the parasympathetic nervous system more deeply, which is responsible for calmness and restoring balance to the body, thereby improving pain and sleep management as shown in figure 3 (Miake-Lye et al. 2019).

First and foremost, in direct opposition to this thought, there is evidence that supports that it is not always true that aromatherapy adds to the success of any treatment, be it of any intervention or a single intervention. A Cochrane review of the evidence regarding the treatment of various anxiety disorders with the help of various techniques involving aromatherapy revealed no significant efficacy of integration compared to the utilization of individual therapies. The effectiveness of these therapies may depend on the specific essential oils used, the duration and frequency of the therapy, and other individual characteristics of the patients. For example, there were cases in which the investigators employed therapies for short periods, because the duration requested for treatment was much shorter than what would be required to reap the full potential of the interventions. This underscores the need to understand the effect of the duration and frequency of interventions when examining the effects of multimodal effects (Yang et al. 2023). Although some studies may not align, it is clear that combining aromatherapy with other complementary therapies can lead to improved treatment outcomes for patients, particularly those with pain, anxiety, and sleep-related disorders. The potential of these combined approaches is significant, and further research and refinement may lead to the development of standard protocols for patient care (Pardos-Gascón et al. 2021). As medical education progresses, the

integration of various complementary modalities into multi-model approaches could offer holistic care that addresses both the physical and psychological aspects of health (Tramonti et al. 2021).

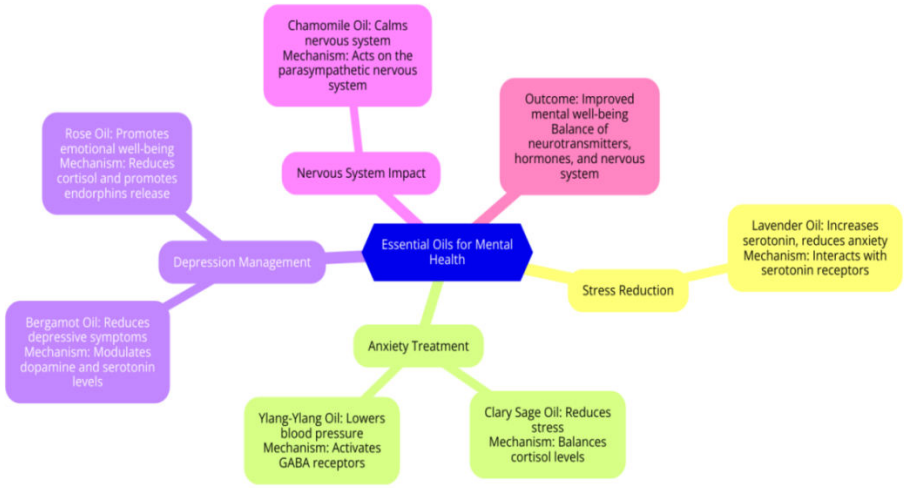


Figure 3: This model of the mind-body connection shows how the neurological system, hormone balance, and neurotransmitter control are the main mechanisms through which essential oils affect mental health. Oils like lavender and bergamot regulate serotonin and dopamine levels, which lower anxiety and depression. Rose oil and clary sage balance cortisol levels to support emotional stability, and ylang-ylang and chamomile relax the neurological system to lessen stress and enhance sleep. When taken as a whole, these interactions promote mental health in general.

REGULATORY STANDARDS, SAFETY, AND ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Essential Oil Purity, Standards, and Safety Concerns

As essential oils are the basis of aromatherapy, their purity and safety are necessary owing to the question of overall efficiency as well as the risk of adverse effects. Quality control procedures related to essential oils begin with the extraction process because the extraction of essential oils determines the ingredients of the oil (Ahmad et al. 2022). Amongst many solvent techniques for extracting essential oils, steam distillation is the most popular and guarantees the retention of aroma in oils and a high yield of a broad range of oil constituents (Lim et al. 2023). However, the use of other practices, such as solvent extraction or cold pressing, can dilute the oils or lead to their weak potency, reducing their healing potential.

This meticulousness in the production process ensures the high quality of essential oils. Every factor, from the material source to the weather, during the growing, harvesting, and distillation methods, is under profound control (Lim et al. 2023). For instance, the harvesting location and growing season of the plant can significantly determine the composition of the oils and, hence, determine the pharmacological

potential of the product as shown in table 2. Standards of practice formulated using the International Organization for Standardization, primarily ISO 9235, have been implemented to one degree or the other to curb malpractice in natural oil production, including analysis for chemicals such as pesticides, adulterants, and microorganisms (Besser et al. 2019). Pharmacopoeia from the European Parliament also provides recommendations for low operational parameters for oils not to be released to the market. Certification processes help ensure that the essential oils produced are of high quality (Giardina et al. 2024). Most essential oils in the market contain active ingredients, which are verified using an instrument known as gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) to ensure that the products do not contain toxic materials (Sadgrove et al. 2022). Careful consideration of such standards is essential because oils that are refined or diluted with another person's- or cheap-grade oils can have side effects. These effects can vary from simple skin rushes to grave problems such as severe medical allergies or dysfunction of the endocrine system. Medical experts, in particular, must exercise great care when applying oils or oil products to children, pregnant women, individuals with chronic illnesses, and, in general, in any sensitive region (Cooke et al. 2018).

Bodies such as the International Standards Organization (ISO) and the European Pharmacopoeia that formulate these guidelines are of utmost importance because they ensure that oils are not harmful in practice. Certification by organizations such as the National Association for Holistic Aromatherapy (NAHA) proves that safety standards for using essential oils in health care have been appropriate. The practice of these safety precautions gives the near practitioners of the blends a guarantee that they will achieve the intended results without risking the patient. The essential olive oils used for preparing essential oil blends for aromatherapy owe their quality to their methods of extraction, standardization, and compliance with laws and regulations (Ahmad et al. 2022). Tripathi et al. (2023) noted that with the increasing demand for natural therapies, the continued production and certification of quality essential oils is most important to ensure that there are efficacious and safe therapeutic results within a clinical environment.

Ethical Considerations in Clinical Aromatherapy Use

Although aromatherapy use in clinical settings offers potential benefits, it also presents specific ethical issues that must be dealt with carefully by practitioners. Standing out of other issues, the patient's consent was the most troubling. Obtaining a patient's informed consent is one of the principles of medicine (Normahani et al. 2020). Thus, patients have the right to determine what procedure is to be carried out, including the use of aromatherapy. A healthcare practitioner has to make patients comprehend how fruitful the aromatherapy treatment is as well as its side effects, if any, and patients should be made aware that they have the option of saying no to the treatment. This is especially crucial because many patients in such situations would usually want only conventional medicine and may need to be more familiar with aromatherapy (Dyer et al. 2014).

The necessity of practicing based on evidence in healthcare is the third ethical issue that must be addressed. Although aromatherapy has been reported to have some positive effects with regard to the management of pain and reduction of anxiety, there is still more work to be done to build up scientific proof of its effectiveness (Slupik et al. 2018). It is ethically and professionally impermissible to propose aromatherapy to patients without sound research-based substantiation to explain the contemporary level of knowledge regarding this therapy (Stea et al. 2014). There is a need to make it clear to the patients in question concerning the irrefutable advantages of aromatherapy as well as the shortcomings needing additional investigations, as much as they are not being falsely persuaded about the unattainable undefeated prospects of the therapy (Tang and Tse 2014).

Healthcare providers must ensure the proper and safe application of aromatherapy. This calls for proper education and competencies in essential oil use and possible food and drug interactions, as well as proper patient response monitoring where treatment is provided (Boyce and Natschke 2019). For example, essential oils are likely to be contraindicated in some medicines or may cause some patients to be hypersensitive to them. Therefore, strict adherence to these procedures must be considered. In order to protect, practitioners of clinical aromatherapy, such as the American Association of Nurse Practitioners, can offer biblically sanctioned counseling seeking a meditation/aesthetic intervention that is not recommended within the stated limits, as there is no unsatisfied medical treatment MP that sanctifies this notion that practitioners should possess therapeutic products (DeKoninck et al. 2016).

Easing transitions in the practice of aromatherapy in the contemporary setting has encouraged the development and adoption of ethical guidelines. For instance, the International Federation of Aromatherapists (IFA) has created ethical guidelines with respect to practitioner qualifications, obtaining patient consent, and the use of essential oils. These criteria intend to protect patients, but at the same time, they permit the safe use of aromatherapy in the adjunct treatment of patients. However, there are still caveats with respect to the practical implementation and monitoring of these policies, especially in areas of practice where aromatherapy is not the mainstay. The application of aromatherapy in practice settings, particularly in the clinical domain, has to be performed with many considerations regarding professionalism and enhancement of ethics. They should respect patients' decisions, use the best available evidence, ensure patient safety, and respond to patients' expectations for more integrated care (Varkey 2021). Suppose that the ethical requirements for using aromatherapy in healthcare continue to be maintained. In this case, this domain will expand further within healthcare systems and enhance the scope of this integrative approach to treatment (Boyce and Natschke 2019).

CONCLUSION

This study emphasizes the increasing incorporation of aromatherapy into clinical environments and its potential as an adjunct therapy to address numerous health issues such as pain, anxiety, and sleep disturbances. Essential oils, including lavender, rosemary, and peppermint, have shown considerable effectiveness in alleviating anxiety and enhancing sleep quality. This review examined the biological mechanisms of essential oils, demonstrating their interaction with the neurological and endocrine systems, and elucidating their medicinal usefulness. Furthermore, the integration of aromatherapy with other complementary therapies such as massage and music therapy has demonstrated improved results in specific clinical trials. Despite these encouraging results, numerous deficiencies have persisted. Methodological errors, such as discrepancies in the dosage and administration of essential oils, hinder generalization of the results. Furthermore, the absence of extensive randomized controlled trials (RCTs) limits the capacity to validate the comprehensive efficacy of aromatherapy among diverse patient populations. The long-term consequences of essential oil utilization and their possible interactions with pharmaceuticals need to be investigated. Future research should focus on executing large-scale, high-quality, randomized controlled trials, standardizing administration techniques, and exploring potential interactions between drugs and essential oils, particularly in at-risk populations. Further investigation is required to determine the impact of essential oils on hormonal regulation and immunological responses. This review highlights the significance of patient consent, evidence-based practice, and safety in clinical aromatherapy while also recognizing the developing ethical principles pertaining to its application in healthcare. Aromatherapy holds promise in integrative medicine; however, additional studies are required to comprehensively comprehend its long-term benefits, guarantee safe administration, and bolster its legitimacy as a treatment modality in the broader healthcare system.

REFERENCES

- Agarwal V 2020. Patient assessment and chronic pain self-management in ethnomedicine: seasonal and ecosystemic embodiment in ayurvedic patient-centered care. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health 17: 2842
- Ahmad I et al., 2022. The combination of ATR-FTIR and chemometrics for rapid analysis of essential oil from Myrtaceae plants–A review. Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science 12: 030-042
- Akbari F et al., 2019. Effect of peppermint essence on the pain and anxiety caused by intravenous catheterization in cardiac patients: a randomized controlled trial. Journal of pain research 2933-2939
- Al-Tawarah N M et al., 2023. Rosmarinus officinalis and Mentha piperita oils supplementation enhances memory in a rat model of scopolamine-induced alzheimer's disease-like condition. Nutrients 15: 1547

- Amodeo G et al., 2018. Immune function after major surgical interventions: the effect of postoperative pain treatment. Journal of pain research 1297-1305
- Armstrong M et al., 2019. Aromatherapy, massage and reflexology: a systematic review and thematic synthesis of the perspectives from people with palliative care needs. Palliative medicine 33: 757-769
- Ayaz M et al., 2017. Neuroprotective and anti-aging potentials of essential oils from aromatic and medicinal plants. Frontiers in aging neuroscience 9: 168
- Bako E et al., 2023. Efficacy of topical essential oils in musculoskeletal disorders: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Pharmaceuticals 16: 144
- Besser C et al., 2019. Generation of engine oils with defined degree of degradation by means of a large scale artificial alteration method. Tribology International 132: 39-49
- Bowers L 2006. To what extent does aromatherapy use in palliative cancer care improve quality of life and reduce levels of psychological distress? A literature review. International Journal of Aromatherapy 16: 27-35
- Boyce V J and M Natschke 2019. Establishing a comprehensive aromatherapy program in patient care settings. Pain Management Nursing 20: 532-540
- Buchbauer G and L Jirovetz 1994. Aromatherapy—use of fragrances and essential oils as medicaments. Flavour and Fragrance journal 9: 217-222
- Cao X et al., 2023. Aromatherapy in anxiety, depression, and insomnia: a bibliometric study and visualization analysis. Heliyon 9:
- Choi J et al., 2018. Aromatherapy for the relief of symptoms in burn patients: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. Burns 44: 1395-1402
- Cloutier A et al., 2020. Effect of background music on attentional control in older and young adults. Frontiers in psychology 11: 557225
- Cooke A et al., 2018. Skin care for healthy babies at term: a systematic review of the evidence. Midwifery 56: 29-43
- DeKoninck B et al., 2016. Spiritual care practices of advanced practice nurses: a multinational study. The Journal for Nurse Practitioners 12: 536-544
- Dyer J et al., 2014. The use of aromasticks at a cancer centre: A retrospective audit. Complementary therapies in clinical practice 20: 203-206
- Foster B C et al., 2019. Cannabis and cannabinoids: kinetics and interactions. The American journal of medicine 132: 1266-1270
- Friedrichsdorf S J and L Goubert 2020. Pediatric pain treatment and prevention for hospitalized children. Pain reports 5: e804

- Giardina A et al., 2024. Air non-thermal plasma, a green approach for the treatment of contaminated water: the case of sulfamethoxazole. Frontiers in Environmental Chemistry 5: 1416702
- Harada H et al., 2018. Linalool odor-induced anxiolytic effects in mice. Frontiers in behavioral neuroscience 12: 414763
- Hardiyanti T 2022. NURSING CARE WITH AROMATHERAPY IMPLEMENTATION FOR ACUTE PAIN IN PATIENTS POST SECTIO CAESAREA. Journal of Vocational Nursing Vol 3: 97-100
- Itoh T et al., 2022. Examination of VOC Concentration of aroma essential oils and their major VOCs diffused in room air. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health 19: 2904
- Jung J-W et al., 2023. Dopamine and serotonin alterations by Hizikia fusiformis extracts under in vitro cortical primary neuronal cell cultures. Nutrition Research and Practice 17: 408-420
- Jung J-W et al., 2023. Dopamine and serotonin alterations by Hizikia fusiformis extracts under in vitro cortical primary neuronal cell cultures. 17: 408-420
- Khamis E A R et al., 2023. Effectiveness of Aromatherapy in Early Palliative Care for Oncology Patients: Blind Controlled Study. Asian Pacific Journal of Cancer Prevention: APJCP 24: 2729
- Kim H-Y and M-N Lee 2019. Effects of non-pharmacological interventions for preoperative anxiety in surgical patient: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Korean Academy of Fundamentals of Nursing 26: 248-259
- Kim K J et al., 2020. The effects of providing lavender inhalation therapy on anxiety and alleviation of pain before burn dressings. Journal of Korean Academy of Fundamentals of Nursing 27: 29-39
- Kirk-Smith M 2004. Clinical evaluation of aromatherapy. International Journal of Aromatherapy 14: 102-109
- Koubaa-Ghorbel F et al., 2021. Salvia officinalis mitigates uterus and liver damages induced by an estrogen deficiency in ovariectomized rats. Journal of Food Biochemistry 45: e13542
- Koulivand P H et al., 2013. Lavender and the nervous system. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine 2013: 681304
- Kreye G et al., 2022. Aromatherapy in Palliative Care: A Single-Institute Retrospective Analysis Evaluating the Effect of Lemon Oil Pads against Nausea and Vomiting in Advanced Cancer Patients. Cancers 14: 2131
- Lakhan S E et al., 2016. The effectiveness of aromatherapy in reducing pain: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Pain research and treatment 2016: 8158693

- Lim X-Y et al., 2023. Stabilization of Essential Oil: Polysaccharide-Based Drug Delivery System with Plant-like Structure Based on Biomimetic Concept. Polymers 15: 3338
- Lizarraga-Valderrama L R 2021. Effects of essential oils on central nervous system: Focus on mental health. Phytotherapy research 35: 657-679
- Miake-Lye I M et al., 2019. Massage for pain: an evidence map. The journal of alternative and complementary medicine 25: 475-502
- Normahani P et al., 2020. Achieving good-quality consent: review of literature, case law and guidance. BJS open 4: 757-763
- Özfenerci M et al., 2022. Aromatherapeutic essential oils and their pharmaceutical combinations: Tools for inhibition of quorum sensing activity and biofilm formation of human pathogens. İstanbul Journal of Pharmacy 52: 54-63
- Pardos-Gascón E M et al., 2021. Effects of mindfulness-based cognitive therapy for chronic pain: a multicenter study. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health 18: 6951
- Park M J and H Park 2019. Is hand massage with the preferred aroma oil better than lavender on stress and sleep for long-term care facility residents? Korean Journal of Adult Nursing 31: 156-164
- Rodin G et al., 2020. Psychological interventions for patients with advanced disease: implications for oncology and palliative care. Journal of Clinical Oncology 38: 885-904
- Sadgrove N J et al., 2022. Fundamental chemistry of essential oils and volatile organic compounds, methods of analysis and authentication. Plants 11: 789
- Slupik C N et al., 2018. Evaluating the Effectiveness of Aromatherapy to Decrease the Amount of Anti-emetic Used in the Treatment of PONV in PACU. Journal of PeriAnesthesia Nursing 33: e9
- Soares G A B e et al., 2021. Exploring pharmacological mechanisms of essential oils on the central nervous system. Plants 11: 21
- Stea S et al., 2014. Essential oils for complementary treatment of surgical patients: state of the art. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine 2014: 726341
- Tang S K and M M Tse 2014. Aromatherapy: does it help to relieve pain, depression, anxiety, and stress in community-dwelling older persons? BioMed research international 2014: 430195
- Tramonti F et al., 2021. Systems thinking and the biopsychosocial approach: A multilevel framework for patient-centred care. Systems Research and Behavioral Science 38: 215-230

- Tripathi L et al., 2023. Clinical applications of essential oils. Essential Oils: Extraction Methods and Applications 933-951
- Ukil S et al., 2016. Physicochemical characterization and antibacterial activity of the leaf oil of Crotalaria pallida Aiton. Journal of Taibah University for Science 10: 490-496
- Varkey B 2021. Principles of clinical ethics and their application to practice. Medical Principles and Practice 30: 17-28
- Voudouri D and C Tesseromatis 2015. Perfumery from myth to antiquity. International Journal of Medicine and Pharmacy 3: 41-55
- Wotman M et al., 2017. The efficacy of lavender aromatherapy in reducing preoperative anxiety in ambulatory surgery patients undergoing procedures in general otolaryngology. Laryngoscope investigative otolaryngology 2: 437-441
- Yang Q et al., 2023. Hospital Readmissions by Variation in Engagement in the Health Care Hotspotting Trial: A Secondary Analysis of a Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Network Open 6: e2332715-e2332715
- Zimpel S A et al., 2020. Complementary and alternative therapies for post-caesarean pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews

CHAPTER- 17

NANOPARTICLES IN THE FIGHT AGAINST INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Sadia Sanaullah[1*], Areeba Muqaddas[2], Areesha Arkan[3], Amber Fatima[3], Esha Binte Iqbal[1], Maryam Rasool[4], Arooj Fatima[1], Safdar Aman[1], Samra Sarwar[5] and Nimra Sarwar[6]

[1]Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

[2]Institute of Soil and Environmental Sciences, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad

[3]Department of Veterinary Surgery, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

[4]Institute of Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore

[5]Department of Zoology, Wildlife and Fisheries, University of Agriculture Faisalabad

[6]Department of Botany, University of Agriculture Faisalabad

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533363

ABSTRACT

The burden of infectious diseases is increasing with time. Microorganisms are developing resistance against already available antimicrobial agents. There is a dire need to develop new therapeutic agents or alternate approaches that help us to combat antimicrobial resistance, so that we become able to fulfill the production requirements of livestock and agriculture farming and to maintain a healthy lifestyle in humans. Nanotechnology is an emerging science that is helping in various fields one of the most interesting is nanoparticles as a fighter against infectious agents. Till now various types of nanoparticles have been formed and evaluated for their action against bacteria, viruses, and fungi. These nanoparticles can be classified based on their size, formulation techniques, structure, origin, and mechanism of action. Most of them act against microorganisms because of their ability to produce reactive oxygen species that put stress on cells and damage different organelles, hence leading to the death of the microorganism. Despite all of these benefits, the nanoparticles can also badly impact human, animal, and plant cells. But they are more hazardous for prokaryotic cells as compared to eukaryotic cells. So, there is a dire need to expand studies further to check in vivo effects.

Keywords: Nanoparticles, Microorganisms, Mode of action, Side Effects, One Health

INTRODUCTION

Background of Infectious Diseases

The burden of infectious diseases is high worldwide. Human infectious illnesses claim 13.7 million lives worldwide, with five (*Staphylococcus aureus*, *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella pneumoniae*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*) major pathogens accounting for 54.9% of fatalities (Zhang et al. 2024). In animals, disease burden is also huge but complete data is not available.

Because surveys are not conducted properly especially in developing countries due to high cost requirements and the prevalence of infectious diseases in high count. These highly infectious animal ailments can have ramifications for commerce, food production, and even human health, we are increasingly aware of them (Gilbert et al. 2024).

The disease burden is rising day by day but the microorganisms are developing resistance to the available drugs. This rising antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is a major global issue now a day which is rising due to the misuse and overuse of drugs. The excessive use of antibiotics to improve crop farming, animal husbandry, and public health makes a way towards the expression of resistance genes and the emergence of 'Silent Pandemics' that may leave other reasons for death behind by 2050. Antimicrobial resistance is badly affecting all living species (humans, livestock, and the public) thus creating difficulties in the treatment of different ailments as pathogens are becoming resistant day by day. So, there is dire need to develop alternative medicine or approaches to combat this resistance, otherwise, it will take no longer that we will run out of available drugs (Ahmed et al. 2024).

Introduction of Nanotechnology

Common definitions of nanoparticles include solid, colloidal specks with sizes ranging from 10 to 1000 nm (McNamara et al. 2017). European and other international bodies however restrict the aforementioned criteria to structures with three dimensions of no more than 100 nm. They comprise beneficial structures such as enhanced surface-to-volume ratio or better magnetic characteristics that bigger particles do not have. Materials with sizes between nanometers and micrometers may have special qualities that are advantageous for a variety of techniques used in animal human, and crop medicine such as tissue engineering, implantology, and stomatology. Nano-medicine also known as the application of nanotechnology to medicine, is the field that facilitates us in providing novel diagnostic and treatment avenues by meticulously manufacturing materials required (Moreno-Vega et al. 2012). Nanoparticles are gaining popularity in research areas due to their potential properties and unique applications. In modern medicine, nanoparticles have various applications some of them include their usage for the purpose of delivery (drug, gene, and protein delivery), anticancer therapy based on radiations, molecular diagnosis, bioimaging, antibacterial agents, antiviral agents, and antifungal agents (Klębowski et al. 2018).

According to numerous studies, gram positive bacteria are highly resilient to the mechanisms of action of NPs compared to gram negative microorganisms. Differentiating cell walls are thought to be the cause of this phenomenon. Gram (-ve) bacteria, such as *E. coli*, have their cells coated with a coating of peptidoglycans (8 nm in diameter), and lipopolysaccharides (1-3 μm in diameter). This configuration might make it easier for ions that have been released from NPs to enter the cell and it makes Gram negative more prone to NPs. In contrast highly thick peptidoglycan layer formed of covalently bonded teichoic and teichuronic acids, comprising a diameter of

80 nm is found in the gram (+ve) bacteria for example *S. aureus* and *Streptococcus spp.* The thick peptidoglycan layer of the cell walls of the Gram-positive bacteria serves as a major protective coating against NPs. Another possible reason for the vulnerability of Gram-negative bacteria to the NPs is the presence of high quantity of negatively charged lipopolysaccharide molecules in their cell wall structure. The majority of NPs release positive ions, these positive ions have a greater affinity for negative charge, hence these can easily be released into bacterial cells and cause the accumulation of more negative charge and absorption of more positive ions which damage intracellular structures of bacteria (Slavin et al. 2017).

Common types of nanoparticles to combat infectious diseases

The following are the few common types of nanoparticles that are used to fight against different bacterial, viral, fungal, and parasitic infections. This classification is based on the material type and composition of Nano-medicines.

1. Metal Based Nanoparticles
2. Macrophage membrane-coated Nanoparticles
3. Magnetic Nanoparticles
4. Carbon-based Nanoparticles
5. Quantum Dots Based Nanoparticles
6. Ceramic Based Nanoparticles
7. Semiconductor Based Nanoparticles
8. Polymeric Nanomaterials

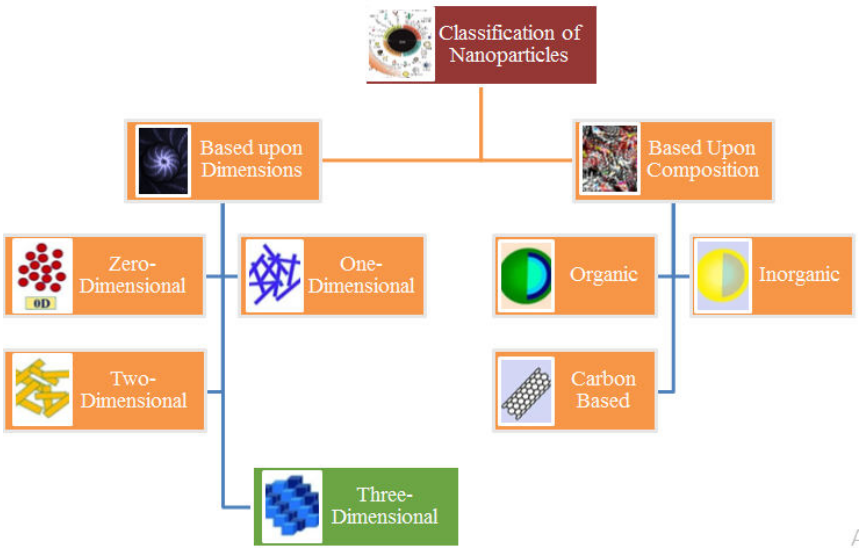


Figure 1: Basic Classification of Nanoparticles

DIFFERENT NANOPARTICLES AND THEIR MECHANISM OF ACTION

Metal Based Nanoparticles (MBNPs)

During the last few decades, a novel concept "metallic nanoparticle (Metal based nanoparticles)" raised in the realm of Nano-medicine has emerged. Precious metals such as gold, copper, silver, and platinum having beneficial therapeutic effects are used to synthesize these nanoparticles (Bhattacharya et al. 2008). Including catalytic properties of metal based nanomaterials, nanoparticles, and nanostructures, these days' researchers are also focusing on other usages like a synthesis of polymers, sensing technology, optoelectronic media labeling, disease investigation, and treatment (Jamkhande et al. 2019). Most commonly used metal NP against microbial infections includes Aluminum (Al), Silver (Ag), Iron (oxides) (Fe, Fe3O4, Fe2O3), Gold (Au), Silica (SiO2), Copper (Cu), Cerium (CeO2), Manganese (Mn), Nickle (Ni), Titanium dioxide (TiO2), and Zinc (Zn) (Schrand et al. 2010; Rana et al. 2011).

Cu-NPs are detrimental to *E. Coli* bacterial cells in a variety of ways, including oxidation of proteins, excessive production of ROS (reactive oxygen species), lipid peroxidation, and DNA damage. The divalent metal ion chelator EDTA significantly decreased DNA degradation in vitro when plasmid pUC19 DNA and Cu-NPs interacted, suggesting a beneficial role for Cu2+ ions in the degradation process. Additionally, it was proposed that the rapid destabilization, or size reduction, of NPs in the presence of EDTA was caused by the emerging Cu ions that were released from the NP surface, which were more reactive than the same amount of CuCl2 in the precursor. These emerging ions were produced by the oxidation of MBNPs when they were near to medium components, microorganisms, or biomolecules, that needed to be destroyed contemporaneously (Chatterjee et al. 2014).

Table 1: Summarizing the Mechanism of Action of Commonly Used Metal Based Nanoparticles

Sr. No	Metal Based Nanoparticle	Mechanism of Action as Antimicrobial Agents
1	Silver Nanoparticles (AgNPs)	Disruption of structure of bacterial cell membrane. Damage to bacterial cell membrane due to the production of free radicals. Production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) (by altering cell function) that destabilize plasma membrane integrity, reduce intracellular ATP, disturb the respiratory chain of cells, denature Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), modify proteins, peroxides lipids, and put oxidation stress on cellular structures. Silver particles cause denaturation of enzymes by reacting with their thiol group. Inhibit signal transduction by affecting the phosphorylation of proteins. All of these mechanisms lead to bacterial cell death.
2	Gold	Inhibit ATPase and F-type ATP synthase leads to a

	Nanoparticles (AuNPs)	decrease in ATP level. Inhibit growth by cessation of tRNA function and prevent attachment of ribosomal subunit with tRNA. Alter the structure of different enzymes causing their function loss and bacterial cell death.
3	Zinc Oxide Nanoparticles (ZnO Nps)	Exerts oxidative stress on bacterial cells by increasing expression of genes causing oxidative stress and by increasing cell membrane permeability. Decrease the activity of genes responsible for virulence in bacteria. Inhibit fungal growth through destruction of conidiophores and cumulation of carbohydrates and nucleic acid inside cells. Destroys hyphae conformation.
4	Copper Nanoparticles (Cu NPs)	Cause bacterial cell death by conduction and pH change inside the cell, cell membrane damage, and enzyme activation. Damage DNA, impair replication and transcription processes. Inactivate protein by reacting with sulfhydryl group and result in growth cessation. Causes fungal death by destroying the structure.

(Oktar et al. 2015; Nisar et al. 2019)

Macrophage membrane-coated nanoparticles (MMNPs)

The macrophage membrane coated nanoparticles (also known as cell membrane-coated nanoparticles) are the biomimetic platform that is made up of a nano-particulate base surrounded by a cell membrane component, such as that of a cancerous cell, platelet, or red blood cell. These particles are recognized by the body as their own cells because the components of translocating surface membranes interact with the surrounding environment giving an impression of self-antigen. The recently acquired properties of the MMNPs can be used for biological interfaces within the microorganism, offering pure remedies for a variety of biomedical problems (Kroll et al. 2017). Though red blood cell membranes were initially used to increase blood circulation time and stability, this technology's versatility has extended to membranes from other cell types, including beta cells, cancer cells, mesenchymal stem cells, white blood cells, and platelets, among others. As a result, the variety of cells and their special qualities, together with the ability to use a variety of nanoparticles and drug dosage forms, have created a new market for the production of nanoparticles with a wide range of possible therapeutic uses (Jiménez-Jiménez et al. 2020).

Magnetic iron oxides NP (Fe3O4 NPs) were coated with macrophage membranes that had been reconfigured into vesicles. In Fe_3O_4-MM NPs the core is composed of Fe_3O_4 and the shell is formed by a macrophage membrane, these nanoparticles show favorable biocompatibility to the host body, immune system penetration, specific cancer cell targeting, and light-to-heat conversion properties. In naked mice for the treatment of breast cancer by using photothermic radiations biomimetic Fe_3O_4@MM NPs have important usage to achieve success (Meng et al. 2018). Cell membrane-coated NPs (CMCNs) carry over an extensive number of source cell-relevant capabilities, such as biological targeting, defense system cross-talk, "self" marker production, and localization to certain areas. They are therefore able to have favorable properties such as increased biological compatibility, low immunogenicity, immune evasion, extended circulation, and tumor targeting. As a result, they are used to accurately administer medication and enhance the benefits of cancer immunotherapy (Zeng et al. 2022).

These mainly act by increasing drug delivery to the cell, increasing penetration in the cell, accumulation into the cell, and targeting specific metastasis (Khatoon et al. 2022).

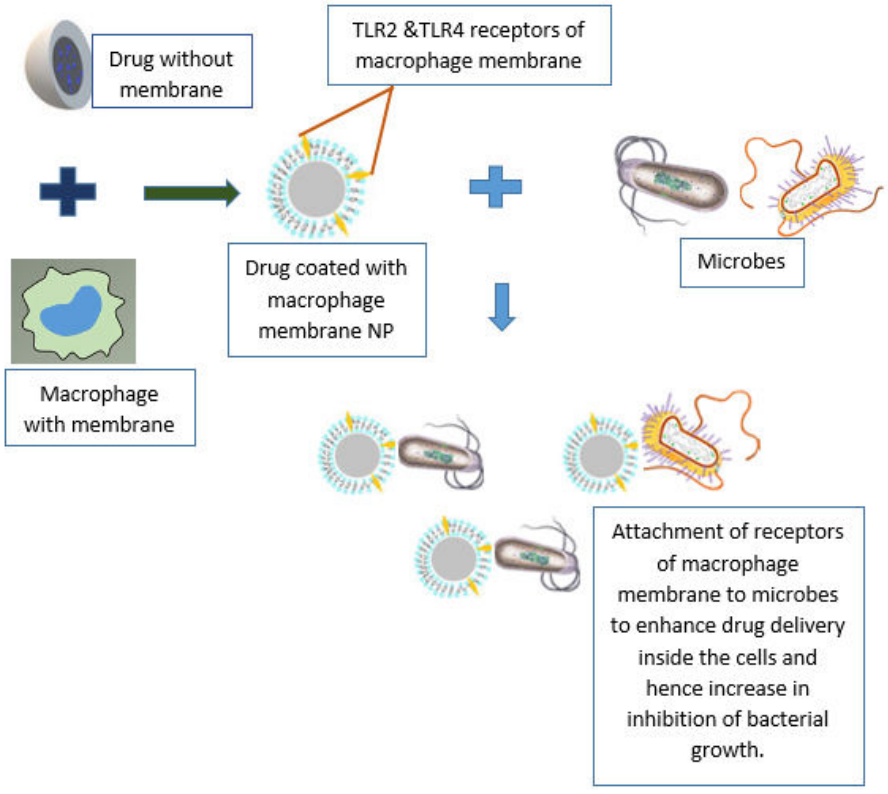


Figure 2: Showing the Mechanism of Action of Macrophage Membrane Based Nanoparticles as an Antimicrobial Agent to Combat Infections

Magnetic Nanoparticles

The ability of engineered magnetic nanoparticles (MNPs) to be both functionalized and steered by a magnetic field makes them an innovative tool in medicine. The application of MNPs has improved tissue engineering, magnetic hyperthermia cancer therapy, controlled medication and gene delivery, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), cell tracking, and bioseparation. With the use of MNP, coalescing treatment and diagnosis procedures (i.e., theragnostic) have been adopted, such as cell substitution treatments guided by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) for cancer-specific gene delivery (McCarthy et al. 2007). Nevertheless, an increasing body of research indicates that specific characteristics of nanoparticles—such as their larger reactive surface, capacity to pass through barriers in tissue and cells, and resistance to biodegradation—increase their potential for cytotoxicity compared to their bulk or molecule counterparts. According to a three-tier model of nanotoxicity, oxidative stress first appears as the production of ROS, then tier II is a pro-inflammatory response, and tier III is DNA destruction that results in cellular apoptosis and mutations. Reticuloendothelial system (RES) macrophages swiftly challenge MNPs given in vivo, firstly there is the possibility of MNP toxicity neutralization and secondly, there are chances of shortening of the circulation time required for MNP activity (Shubayev et al. 2009).

Diamagnetic silver (Ag) nanoparticles have been found to have enhanced antiviral, anticancer, and antibacterial properties at the nanoscale length scale. Furthermore, magnetite is said to be the most magnetic substance among the transition metal oxides. Particularly when combined with silver nanoparticles, it has excellent antibacterial characteristics. The cobalt nanoferrite to silver–magnetite (CoAF) and copper nanoferrite to silver–magnetite (CuAF) has the ability to fight against the Gram (-ve) and Gram (+ve) bacteria the reason is silver has the ability to destroy bacterial cell membrane's DNA. CoAF NP has more ability to fight against Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli, while CuAF shows strong activity against Streptococcus faecalis and Pseudomonas aeruginosa bacteria (El-Bassuony et al. 2023).

Carbon-based Nanoparticles

Strong antibacterial qualities can be found in carbon-based nanomaterials such as fullerenes, graphene oxide (GO) nanoparticles, and carbon nanotubes (CNTs), particularly single-walled carbon nanotubes (SWCNTs). The antibacterial activity of carbon nanoparticles is mainly influenced by their size and the area of their surface, as the size of the nanoparticles decreases their surface area increases, which enhances their connection capacity to the bacteria (Kang et al. 2008). Because of oxidative stress, the carbon nanomaterials damage the bacterial cell membranes and change the cell permeability. Recent researches unveil that the main antibacterial properties of carbon nanomaterials are not due to oxidative stress but rather the physical contact of these nanostructures with bacteria is responsible for death. The bacterial cell and nanoparticles interaction is mainly responsible for the antibacterial mechanism of this type of nanomaterial. There is some evidence present in the literature that indicates

that direct contact between microorganism cells and carbon nanomaterials results in cell death, and it is caused by the aggregation of the cells. For example, in the case of *E. coli* the cellular membrane integrity, metabolic activities, and morphology were all affected by direct cell contact with carbon nanotubes. These NPs disrupt membrane integrity (Dizaj et al. 2015)

Quantum Dots Nanoparticles

One of the most intriguing nanomaterials with great potential for use in nanomedicine is the quantum dot. Biosensing, bioimaging, bioassay, targeted medication delivery, and the discovery of novel therapeutic substances or methodologies are some of these uses. Other aspects of nanoparticles, such as the catalytic and amplification effects associated with the nanoscale dimension, have also been investigated, even though the majority of these applications rely on nanoparticle materials' optical properties, such as surface plasmon resonance, surface enhanced Raman scattering, and strong photoluminescence (Huo et al. 2007). Cadmium-containing semiconductors are a common component of quantum dots, which have special optical properties. Although the toxicity of such quantum dots to humans and living cells has not yet been thoroughly studied, cadmium poses a possible risk. It is therefore of great interest to look for less hazardous materials with comparable targeting and optical capabilities. On the other hand, it's fascinating to explore luminescence nanoparticles as potential light sources for cancer treatment. During the past few decades, the prognosis for people with malignant gliomas has not altered despite advancements in radiotherapy and neurosurgery. To minimize tissue damage during cancer treatment, precise delivery of ionizing radiation is essential (Juzenas et al. 2008). When QDs attach to bacteria, they hinder the antioxidative system's functioning within the cell. This includes downregulating antioxidative genes and decreasing the activity of antioxidative enzymes. CdTe QDs exhibit antibacterial action through a route mediated by reactive oxygen species and QDs−bacteria association. QDs bind with DNA and RNA of bacteria and inhibit cell proliferation (Lu et al. 2008; Rajendiran et al. 2019).

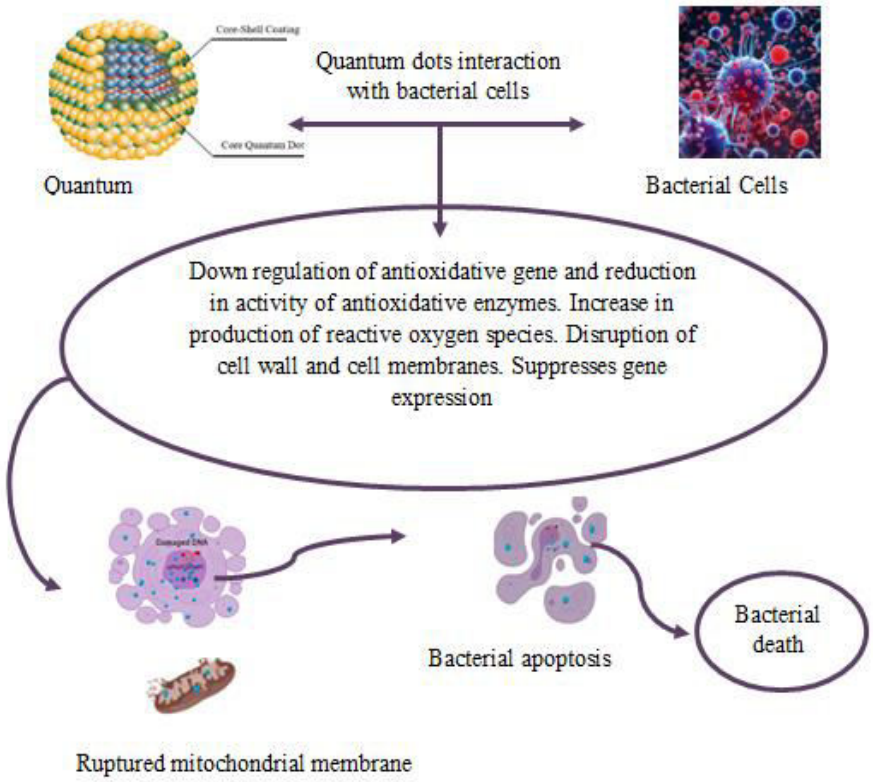


Figure 3: Representing the Antimicrobial Mechanism of Action of Quantum Dots Nps.

Ceramic Based Nanoparticles

The phosphates, metal oxides, carbonates, and carbide consisting of atoms of elements like silicon, calcium, titanium, and other metalloids, form the backbone of ceramic based NPs. These are popular because of their inherent qualities as they are inert to heat and chemicals, which make them powerful, least degradable, and inert towards different cellular environments, it is a major reason for their wide range of applications. The biological industry is the most studied application area for ceramic nanoparticles. In the biomedical, area ceramic based nanoparticles have applications as a transporter of different biomolecules (genes, proteins), medications, and imaging agents. These are efficient drug vehicles, this capability is mainly influenced by their physical characteristics like the presence of space, particle size, surface properties, surface area, and volume. The preparation technique and effective control of process factors are critical to acquiring these favorable features. Ceramic nanoparticles have proven agents for effective drug delivery for a range of illnesses such as glaucoma, bacterial infections, and cancer (C Thomas et al. 2015).

Semiconductor Based Nanoparticles

These NPs are solids in composition with a crystalline structure and at room temperature have a few free electrons in valence shells. They are neither like glass (having good insulation properties) nor like metals (having excellent conduction properties), but they are situated between conductors and insulators and consist of resistivities and energy gaps. They have a higher conductivity than dielectrics, but a lower conductivity than conductors. These possess special characteristics like sensitivity to light, changing resistance, and current that can pass more in one direction, and these have a usage in semiconductor devices. The semiconductor devices are useful for current amplification and switching and for energy conversions. In the periodic table group II-IV semiconductor elements are gaining attention due to their unique properties. Many substances have semiconductor qualities; the most common ones are zinc, titanium, sulfur, silicon, germanium, and gallium compounds (Terna et al. 2021). Unique optical, electrical, thermal, and catalytic capabilities are displayed by the semiconductor nanoparticles. As a result, they have garnered a lot of attention and are being used to create a variety of electrochemical sensors. The field of semiconductor nanoparticle-based development encompasses several applications such as gas sensors, enzyme and protein-based sensors, genosensors, and sensors for other organic and inorganic chemicals. Various assay procedures, such as electrochemical, electrical, and magnetic signal transduction approaches, are provided for biosensor and bioelectronic applications based on semiconductor nanoparticles (Katz et al. 2004).

Semiconductor nanoparticles when combined with polymers or coated on a surface exhibits exhibit antibacterial properties. To prevent the formation of dental plaque, powdered zinc citrate or acetate is now included in a variety of oral foods, including toothpaste. In toothpaste, powdered titanium oxide is also frequently utilized as a whitener. Sulfide nanoparticles' antibacterial, antifungal, and antiviral properties have been well studied in relation to other metals. Several biomedical applications have been considered for the utilization of silver nanoparticles, one of which is the antibacterial component of dental resin composites. Cadmium sulfide (CdS) nanoparticles synthesized/derived using *Klebsiella pneumonia* have strong antibacterial action against *S. aureus* and *Lactobacillus sp.* while cadmium oxide nanoparticle has strong antibacterial action against *E. coli*. Zinc sulfide (ZnS) nanoparticles surrounded by *K. pneumonia* suppress the proliferation of *S. aureus*, *Candida albicans,* and *Streptococcus sp.* as the amount of ZnS increases inside the bacterial colony. Because of differences in cell wall composition, gram (-ve) bacteria displayed a larger inhibitory zone about the mechanism of nanoparticle-mediated antibacterial activity than gram (+ve) bacteria. As described earlier in this chapter that the cell wall of gram positive bacteria consists of a thick layer of membrane made up of linear polysaccharide chains, while gram negative bacteria have a thin coating. The thiol groups of the bacterial cell membrane's proteins react with the ions released by the nanoparticles. These protruding proteins on the cell (bacterial cell) surface enable the passage of nutrients across the microorganism's cell membrane (Malarkodi et al.

2014). The peptidoglycan in the cell wall of gram +ve bacteria is chemically complicated, so it's difficult for nanoparticles to penetrate the cell wall. However, the cell walls of the gram -ve bacteria are simple, multilayered lipid components. As a result, the nanoparticles were able to enter bacterial cells with ease and display an inhibitory zone that is higher than that of gram positive bacteria (Zhang et al. 2009).

Polymers Based Nanoparticles

Particles of sizes ranging from 1 to 1000 nm are recognized as polymer based nanoparticles and they consist of active particles that are comprised of polymeric core either adsorbed on the surface or trapped inside matter (Zielińska et al. 2020). Polymeric materials having inherent antimicrobial capabilities and polymers with antibacterial activity resulting from appropriate modification, such as conjugation with antibiotic medicines, are the two primary categories of antibacterial polymers. Chitosan, a natural polymer has high intentions because of its muco-adhesive, antibacterial, and biocompatible qualities as well as how simple it is to chemically modify. This polysaccharide's antibacterial action can be attributed to its capacity to bind to the bacterial cell walls (because the cell wall has a negative charge), which modifies the permeability, and structures of the cell envelope, as well as prevents DNA replication (Parisi et al. 2017).

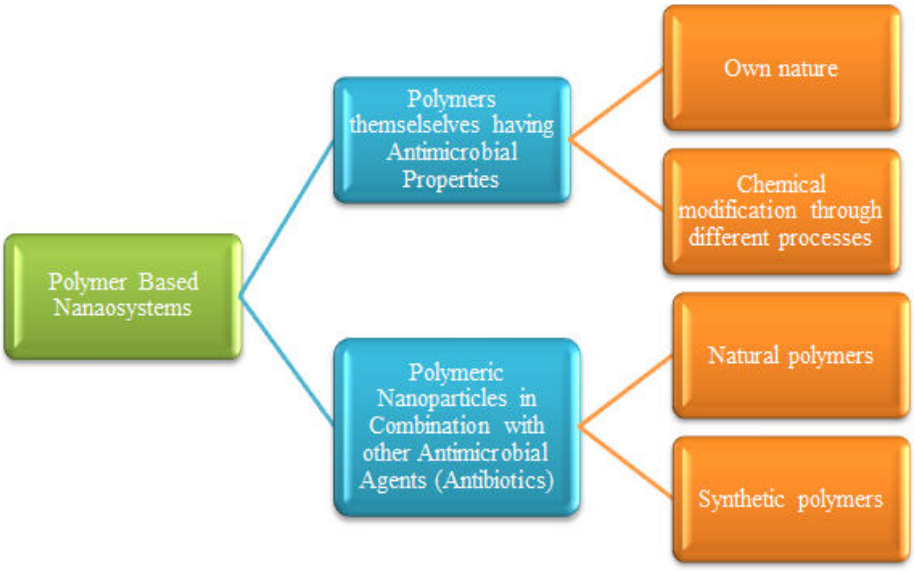


Figure 4: Different Types of Polymeric Nanoparticles Based on Antimicrobial Properties

The povidone-iodine NPs are one examples of polymeric nanoparticles, when incorporated with ink, glue, or dyes show strong antibacterial properties against bacteria for example *S. aureus, E. coli,* and *P. aeruginosa*. These nanoparticles have

antifouling and antibacterial properties when used in various fields. It has also been reported that antiparasitic drugs when encapsulated into single polymeric NPs show enhanced activity against drug resistant blood and fecal parasites (Gao et al. 2017; Durak et al. 2020). Inverse vulcanization-prepared polymers with higher sulfur contents, such polymers have a wide range of documented potential uses; one of these is usage as innovative antibacterial compounds. Because they are hydrophobic, high sulfur content polymers typically have low water solubility and dispersibility, which may restrict the development of their applications. It has been reported that polymeric nanoparticles with higher sulfur concentrations inhibited the growth of significant bacterial pathogens, such as Gram-negative bacterium *P. aeruginosa* and Gram-positive bacterium methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*. The addition of surfactant to the formulation of salt-stable particles does not lessen the polymeric particles' antibacterial activity. Additionally, it has also been discovered that the polymeric nanoparticles show minimal cytotoxicity towards mammalian liver cells and inhibit the formation of *S. aureus* biofilms. The way the polymeric particles react with cysteine, a model thiol, suggests that this interaction might be a possible method of action against bacterial cells (Figure 3).

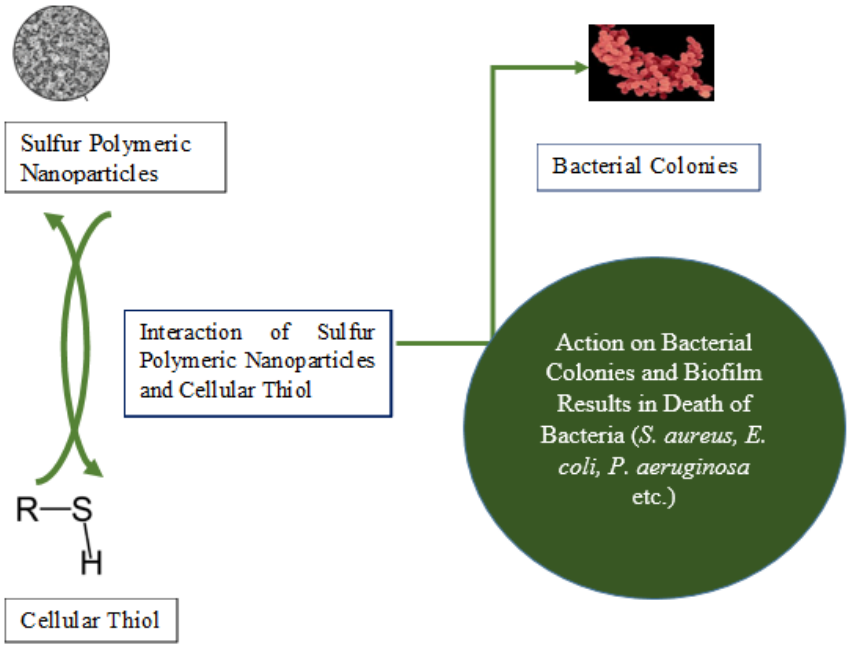


Figure 5: Representing the Mechanism of Action of Antibacterial Activity of Polymeric Nanoparticles

So, the polymeric nanoparticles with high sulfur concentration can be used in different biomedical applications, such as dressing of infectious and other wounds, and catheter coatings. However, the polymeric NPs having water dispersion properties can be used in other domains, for example: to delay bacterial colonization of stagnant water or environmental remediation (Dop et al. 2023).

Challenges while using different nanoparticles and way to combat

To facilitate diagnosis and therapy at the cellular level, functionalized NPs significantly increase the drug payload to the site of action into particular cells with the least amount of side effects. The aforementioned studies' findings unequivocally show how various NP formulations can function as effective antifungal medication delivery methods. However, AmB (Amphotericin B) is the sole anti-fungal agent that is available in the market, and it is an NP-based formulation. This significant discrepancy could be caused by several factors, the most notable of which include issues with the industry, the limitations of NPs, and issues with preclinical research and clinical treatment trials. The majority of the NPs-based research is conducted in academic institutions with little to no assistance from the pharmaceutical business. Two of the biggest barriers to NP manufacturing within the pharmaceutical business are quality control and high production costs. Furthermore, complicated production and assessment procedures are needed for sophisticated nano architectures having coatings on the surface or multiple components, which could greatly raise production costs and make the scaling up process impossible. Due to their inherent limitations, including minimal rigidity, inadequate dosage ability, drug loss during storage, and problems with pharmacokinetics and biodistribution, NPs are not well suited for clinical use. Many NP formulations can obtain high enough drug loading capacities for in vitro experiments; unfortunately, they are unable to reach the clinical concentrations of medicines needed for in vivo assessments. Among the issues NPs encounter in vivo most common are premature drug release during delivery, nanoparticles clumping upon interaction with host body fluids, and precipitation in areas that are not the target sites (Soliman et al. 2017).

When assessing toxicity, it's critical to keep in mind that various creatures have varying sensitivity to nanoparticles (NPs) (De Silva et al. 2017). Among the possible antimicrobial agents are metal nanoparticles (NPs), such as gold, copper, and silver nanoparticles, and metal oxide nanoparticles such as magnesium oxide, copper oxide, ferric oxide, zinc oxide, and titanium oxide NPs. Nevertheless, further study is required to elucidate the mechanisms underlying NP migration into the body of humans and animals. The physical properties like size, structure, solubility, and chemical makeup of NPs determine how they migrate through the human body. Because NPs are small, they can enter through several organ systems and land in the CNS (central nervous system), where they can trigger an immunological response. Because of the resultant charged particles, roughness in structure, and hydrophobic or hydrophilic character, the surface chemistry of NPs also influences their cytotoxic nature and impact on different biological systems. Higher quantities of metal nanoparticles and metal oxide nanoparticles have been demonstrated to be harmful to human fibroblasts, kidneys, liver cells, and macrophages in several investigations (Basavegowda et al. 2021).

Although studies have demonstrated that metal-based nanoparticles are more harmful to bacterial cells compared to the cells of eukaryotes. The widespread distribution and gradual clumping over time suggest that the mechanisms that make them effective

towards bacteria may also be in charge of any unfavorable consequences. The development of oxidative stress and ROS production by nanoparticles have been linked to inflammatory processes that cause a variety of diseases, including liver deterioration and pulmonary illnesses. Metal-based nanoparticles in the lungs contribute to pro-inflammatory cytokine production during severe and mild inflammatory reactions. Depending on the dose and length of exposure, these reactions may be reversible but in certain instances, they have been linked to the development of mild fibrosis, emphysema, and pulmonary bronchitis. Mild inflammation has been observed following the instillation of silver nanowires in the lungs of Sprague-Dawley rats, along with the infiltration of eosinophils, neutrophils, monocytes/macrophages, and some lymphocytes in the bronchial and exudates in the alveolar region. The manifestation of the same outcomes following ZnONP and CuONP treatment, respectively. Short timeexposure to CuONPs through inhalation stimulates lungs inflammation, this inflammation is always related to the dose inhaled and results in lung damage through vacuolization of epithelium, alveolitis, emphysema, and bronchiolitis. When exposure to ZnONPs occurs, the lungs exhibit an extremely powerful inflammatory response (Sánchez-López et al. 2020).

The high concentrations of metal based nanoparticles badly damage liver cells resulting in liver inflammation, increase of liver biomarkers, and provoke pro-inflammatory stimulation of Kupffer cells. Many enzymes controlling the activity of the cytochrome P450, including CYP2D, CYP1A, CYP2E1, CYP2C, and CYP3A, have also been shown to be inhibited concurrently. According to a study ZnONPs can cause oxidative stress in the hepatic tissues, which can lead to Kupffer cells hyperplasia, hepatocyte apoptosis, and liver necrosis (Almansour et al. 2017). Animals injected with CuONPs and ZnONPs have shown increases in blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine respectively, and in the other case, there were indications of epithelial cell necrosis of renal tubules. These findings support the theory that oxidative stress may be the cause of renal failure. AuNPs put stress on kidneys resulting in disturbance in glomerular filtration rates, accumulation of edematous fluids, dilation of renal tubules, renal tissue necrosis, and penetration of inflammatory mediators. These changes are thought to be minimal and insignificant (Ibrahim et al. 2018).

It has been demonstrated that nanoparticles may weaken the BBB to some extent, enabling its entry into the CNS. The buildup of nanoparticles in the brain linked to AgNP and ZnONP toxicity has also been linked to a certain level of neurodegeneration brought on by ROS stimulated nerve injury (Sánchez-López et al. 2020). Consumption of ZnONPs has also been linked to anemia brought on by toxicity to erythrocytes, which led to hemolysis and a reduction in the number of red blood cells. ZnONPs exhibit an extra toxicity mechanism to red blood cells compared to other nanoparticles. As zinc excess makes copper and iron inaccessible. The most often described reason for anemia in rodents in the literature is iron deficiency (Yan et al. 2012).

Gastrointestinal adverse effects have also been recorded often following oral dosing. Gastrointestinal hemorrhaging, vomiting, diarrhea, and nausea are the most often reported gastrointestinal effects. Furthermore, MONPs dissolve more readily into metal ions in severe acidic conditions (pH~2). They enter cells through biological pumps and ion channels, and when their concentration rises above a threshold, harmful consequences arise. It results from an intracellular ROS generation that triggers an inflammatory cell response. These elevated ROS levels harm the cells' DNA and may even cause the cells to die (Sánchez-López et al.2020). Patients suffering from other diseases like diabetes, obesity, increased blood pressure, and cholesterol levels have higher chances to experience side effects as compared to healthy ones. Owing to the lengthy list of negative effects associated with the usage of these nanoparticles, it can be pertinent to look up the patient's medical history (Hwang et al. 2012).

Macrophage membrane coated nanoparticles can be toxic as antimicrobial peptides in high dosages and have the potential to be extremely cytotoxic. Furthermore, the majority of peptide delivery systems exhibit low delivery efficiency due to their lack of particular bacterial targeting performance. Thus, the primary issue is how to administer medications in a safe, effective, and precise manner (Dop et al. 2023). Additionally, only a small percentage of recently created NPs meet the crucial requirements of biological compatibility. Numerous intriguing NP syntheses exhibit varying degrees of immunogenicity and cytotoxicity. Furthermore, it is uncertain how long-term exposure to these may affect the human body. Regulations, non-standard techniques for NP preparation, in vivo characterization, and other factors impede the timely release of NP-based drugs from the laboratory to the marketplace (Soliman et al. 2017).

CONCLUSION

Nanoparticles are an emerging technology. The use of nanoparticles can bring an astonishing miracle in the field of antimicrobial resistance not only due to their antimicrobial properties but also due to their capability to enhance other drugs availability at the target site. The NPs have many useful impacts in the field of biomedical sciences which makes them unique products. Despite all of the benefits, there is a dire need to study their harmful effects on the body of host organisms which till now is an ignored area. There is a need to expand studies on NPs used clinically to check the in vivo effects.

REFERENCES

- Ahmed, S. K., Hussein, S., Qurbani, K., Ibrahim, R. H., Fareeq, A., Mahmood, K. A., & Mohamed, M. G. (2024). Antimicrobial resistance: impacts, challenges, and future prospects. Journal of Medicine, Surgery, and Public Health, 2, 100081.
- Almansour, M. I., Alferah, M. A., Shraideh, Z. A., & Jarrar, B. M. (2017). Zinc oxide nanoparticles hepatotoxicity: histological and histochemical study. Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology, 51, 124-130.

- Basavegowda, N., & Baek, K. H. (2021). Multimetallic nanoparticles as alternative antimicrobial agents: challenges and perspectives. Molecules, 26(4), 912.
- Bhattacharya, R., & Mukherjee, P. (2008). Biological properties of "naked" metal nanoparticles. Advanced drug delivery reviews, 60(11), 1289-1306.
- Thomas, C, S., Kumar Mishra, P., & Talegaonkar, S. (2015). Ceramic nanoparticles: fabrication methods and applications in drug delivery. Current pharmaceutical design, 21(42), 6165-6188.
- Chatterjee, A. K., Chakraborty, R., & Basu, T. (2014). Mechanism of antibacterial activity of copper nanoparticles. Nanotechnology, 25(13), 135101.
- De Silva, G. O., Abeysundara, A. T., & Aponso, M. M. W. (2017). A review on nanocomposite materials for food packaging which comprising antimicrobial activity. International Journal of Chemical Studies, 5(4), 228-230.
- Dizaj, S. M., Mennati, A., Jafari, S., Khezri, K., & Adibkia, K. (2015). Antimicrobial activity of carbon-based nanoparticles. Advanced pharmaceutical bulletin, 5(1), 19.
- Dop, R. A., Neill, D. R., & Hasell, T. (2023). Sulfur-polymer nanoparticles: preparation and antibacterial activity. ACS Applied Materials & Interfaces, 15(17), 20822-20832.
- Durak, S., Arasoglu, T., Ates, S. C., & Derman, S. (2020). Enhanced antibacterial and antiparasitic activity of multifunctional polymeric nanoparticles. Nanotechnology, 31(17), 175705.
- El-Bassuony, A. A., Gamal, W. M., & Abdelsalam, H. K. (2023). Impact of different magnetic materials added to silver–magnetite nanoparticles on the structural, magnetic and antimicrobial properties. The European Physical Journal Special Topics, 232(8), 1339-1351.
- Gao, T., Fan, H., Wang, X., Gao, Y., Liu, W., Chen, W., ... & Wang, Y. J. (2017). Povidone–iodine-based polymeric nanoparticles for antibacterial applications. ACS applied materials & interfaces, 9(31), 25738-25746.
- Gilbert, W., Marsh, T. L., Chaters, G., Jemberu, W. T., Bruce, M., Steeneveld, W., ... & Rushton, J. (2024). Quantifying cost of disease in livestock: a new metric for the Global Burden of Animal Diseases. The Lancet Planetary Health, 8(5), e309-e317.
- Huo, Q. (2007). A perspective on bioconjugated nanoparticles and quantum dots. Colloids and Surfaces B: Biointerfaces, 59(1), 1-10.
- Hwang, J. H., Kim, S. J., Kim, Y. H., Noh, J. R., Gang, G. T., Chung, B. H., ... & Lee, C. H. (2012). Susceptibility to gold nanoparticle-induced hepatotoxicity is

enhanced in a mouse model of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Toxicology, 294(1), 27-35.

- Ibrahim, K. E., Al-Mutary, M. G., Bakhiet, A. O., & Khan, H. A. (2018). Histopathology of the liver, kidney, and spleen of mice exposed to gold nanoparticles. Molecules, 23(8), 1848.
- Jamkhande, P. G., Ghule, N. W., Bamer, A. H., & Kalaskar, M. G. (2019). Metal nanoparticles synthesis: An overview on methods of preparation, advantages and disadvantages, and applications. Journal of drug delivery science and technology, 53, 101174.
- Jiménez-Jiménez, C., Manzano, M., & Vallet-Regí, M. (2020). Nanoparticles coated with cell membranes for biomedical applications. Biology, 9(11), 406.
- Juzenas, P., Chen, W., Sun, Y. P., Coelho, M. A. N., Generalov, R., Generalova, N., & Christensen, I. L. (2008). Quantum dots and nanoparticles for photodynamic and radiation therapies of cancer. Advanced drug delivery reviews, 60(15), 1600-1614.
- Kang, S., Herzberg, M., Rodrigues, D. F., & Elimelech, M. (2008). Antibacterial effects of carbon nanotubes: size does matter!. Langmuir, 24(13), 6409-6413.
- Katz, E., Willner, I., & Wang, J. (2004). Electroanalytical and bioelectroanalytical systems based on metal and semiconductor nanoparticles. Electroanalysis: An International Journal Devoted to Fundamental and Practical Aspects of Electroanalysis, 16(1-2), 19-44.
- Khatoon, N., Zhang, Z., Zhou, C., & Chu, M. (2022). Macrophage membrane coated nanoparticles: a biomimetic approach for enhanced and targeted delivery. Biomaterials science, 10(5), 1193-1208.
- Klębowski, B., Depciuch, J., Parlińska-Wojtan, M., & Baran, J. (2018). Applications of noble metal-based nanoparticles in medicine. International journal of molecular sciences, 19(12), 4031.
- Kroll, A. V., Fang, R. H., & Zhang, L. (2017). Biointerfacing and applications of cell membrane-coated nanoparticles. Bioconjugate chemistry, 28(1), 23-32.
- Lu, Z., Li, C. M., Bao, H., Qiao, Y., Toh, Y., & Yang, X. (2008). Mechanism of antimicrobial activity of CdTe quantum dots. Langmuir, 24(10), 5445-5452.
- Malarkodi, C., Rajeshkumar, S., Paulkumar, K., Vanaja, M., Gnanajobitha, G., & Annadurai, G. (2014). Biosynthesis and antimicrobial activity of semiconductor nanoparticles against oral pathogens. Bioinorganic chemistry and applications, 2014(1), 347167.
- McCarthy, J. R., Kelly, K. A., Sun, E. Y., & Weissleder, R. (2007). Targeted delivery of multifunctional magnetic nanoparticles. Nanomedicine, 2(2), 153-167.

- McNamara, K., & Tofail, S. A. (2017). Nanoparticles in biomedical applications. Advances in Physics: X, 2(1), 54-88.
- Meng, Q. F., Rao, L., Zan, M., Chen, M., Yu, G. T., Wei, X., ... & Liu, W. (2018). Macrophage membrane-coated iron oxide nanoparticles for enhanced photothermal tumor therapy. Nanotechnology, 29(13), 134004.
- Moreno-Vega, A. I., Gomez-Quintero, T., Nunez-Anita, R. E., Acosta-Torres, L. S., & Castaño, V. (2012). Polymeric and ceramic nanoparticles in biomedical applications. Journal of Nanotechnology, 2012(1), 936041.
- Nisar, P., Ali, N., Rahman, L., Ali, M., & Shinwari, Z. K. (2019). Antimicrobial activities of biologically synthesized metal nanoparticles: an insight into the mechanism of action. JBIC Journal of Biological Inorganic Chemistry, 24, 929-941.
- N Oktar, F., Yetmez, M., Ficai, D., Ficai, A., Dumitru, F., & Pica, A. (2015). Molecular mechanism and targets of the antimicrobial activity of metal nanoparticles. Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry, 15(16), 1583-1588.
- Parisi, O. I., Scrivano, L., Sinicropi, M. S., & Puoci, F. (2017). Polymeric nanoparticle constructs as devices for antibacterial therapy. Current Opinion in Pharmacology, 36, 72-77.
- Rana, S., & Kalaichelvan, P. T. (2011). Antibacterial activities of metal nanoparticles. Antibacterial Activities of Metal Nanoparticles, 11(02), 21-23.
- Rajendiran, K., Zhao, Z., Pei, D. S., & Fu, A. (2019). Antimicrobial activity and mechanism of functionalized quantum dots. Polymers, 11(10), 1670.
- Sánchez-López, E., Gomes, D., Esteruelas, G., Bonilla, L., Lopez-Machado, A. L., Galindo, R., ... & Souto, E. B. (2020). Metal-based nanoparticles as antimicrobial agents: an overview. Nanomaterials, 10(2), 292.
- Schrand, A. M., Rahman, M. F., Hussain, S. M., Schlager, J. J., Smith, D. A., & Syed, A. F. (2010). Metal-based nanoparticles and their toxicity assessment. Wiley interdisciplinary reviews: Nanomedicine and Nanobiotechnology, 2(5), 544-568.
- Shubayev, V. I., Pisanic II, T. R., & Jin, S. (2009). Magnetic nanoparticles for theragnostics. Advanced drug delivery reviews, 61(6), 467-477.
- Slavin, Y. N., Asnis, J., Hńfeli, U. O., & Bach, H. (2017). Metal nanoparticles: understanding the mechanisms behind antibacterial activity. Journal of nanobiotechnology, 15, 1-20.
- Soliman, G. M. (2017). Nanoparticles as safe and effective delivery systems of antifungal agents: Achievements and challenges. International journal of pharmaceutics, 523(1), 15-32.

- Terna, A. D., Elemike, E. E., Mbonu, J. I., Osafile, O. E., & Ezeani, R. O. (2021). The future of semiconductors nanoparticles: Synthesis, properties and applications. Materials Science and Engineering: B, 272, 115363.
- Yan, G., Huang, Y., Bu, Q., Lv, L., Deng, P., Zhou, J., ... & Zhao, Y. (2012). Zinc oxide nanoparticles cause nephrotoxicity and kidney metabolism alterations in rats. Journal of Environmental Science and Health, Part A, 47(4), 577-588.
- Zeng, Y., Li, S., Zhang, S., Wang, L., Yuan, H., & Hu, F. (2022). Cell membrane coated-nanoparticles for cancer immunotherapy. Acta Pharmaceutica Sinica B, 12(8), 3233-3254.
- Zhang, C., Fu, X., Liu, Y., Zhao, H., & Wang, G. (2024). Burden of infectious diseases and bacterial antimicrobial resistance in China: a systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study 2019. *The Lancet Regional Health–Western Pacific*, *43*.
- Zhang, H., & Chen, G. (2009). Potent antibacterial activities of Ag/TiO2 nanocomposite powders synthesized by a one-pot sol− gel method. Environmental science & technology, 43(8), 2905-2910.
- Zielińska, A., Carreiró, F., Oliveira, A. M., Neves, A., Pires, B., Venkatesh, D. N., ... & Souto, E. B. (2020). Polymeric nanoparticles: production, characterization, toxicology and ecotoxicology. Molecules, 25(16), 3731.

CHAPTER- 18

MULTIFUNCTIONAL APPLICATIONS OF METAL NANOPARTICLES

Mah Noor[1], Saira Saeed[1], Izna Tariq[1], Ayesha Ghani[1], Ahsan Anjum[2], Munawar Saeed[3], Farah Batool[1], Nimrah Bibi[1], Rabia Asghar[1] and Ahmad Ramzan[3*] Noor

[1]Department of Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, The Women University Multan

[2]Department of Soil Science, Faculty of Agricultural Sciences and Technology BZU Multan

*[3]Department of Human Nutrition and Dietetics MNS University of Agriculture Multan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533386

ABSTRACT

The development of nanotechnology has provoked much attention across all disciplines, especially the biomedical sciences and agriculture. Fundamental to the next generation of nanomaterials is the discovery of functionalized NPs with outstanding prospective in pharmaceutics, oncology, diagnostics, and tissue engineering. In agriculture, the application of nanotechnology in crop production and soil introduces reduce losses that occur during fertilization and optimization of soil nutrients. Newer developments in the functionalization of NPs that are prepared using chemical methods have allowed controlled synthesis of these nanoparticles with respect to their appropriateness to perform particular bio-medical functions. Most of the investigations carried out in the past concerning the above mentioned agents have focused on the understanding of the structure-function relationship, which has drawn commendation for their use in improving therapeutic gain and diagnostic precision. With improvement in knowledge on nanoparticle functionalization, more doors are being opened for its use in biomedical as well as the agricultural sector. The present study focuses on new inventions in the production and utilization of multifunctional NPs for different applications, reporting recent progress in the synthesis of NP and nanobiotechnology. They cover polymers for building multifunctional NPs, and mesoporous, magnetic, catalytic and semiconducting NPs and using forms: NP assemblies, hollow structures and hybrids. It is expected that combinations of these technologies will innovate the two areas considered to be relevant in solving the world's problems of food shortage and management of diseases.

Keywords: Metal Nanoparticles, Biofunctionalization, Diagnosis, Cancer Therapy and Food Industry

INTRODUCTION

A nanoparticle is a particle that is nanometer in size range of 1–100nm. Nanoscale material exhibits new properties, which are different and better from the conventional macroscopic material because of the increase in surface area per unit volume of the material/particle (Peng *et al*.,2024). The most frequently investigated nanoparticle

materials are metal nanoparticles due to the ease of preparation. The biosynthesis of nanoparticles has been performed using various plants and the antibacterial properties of these nanoparticles were analyzed against some pathogenic bacteria (Salayová *et al*., 2021). Moreover, these materials have a wide range of applications: sensors, promoters, coatings, and biocides among them; sensors, promoters, coatings, and biocides among them; sensors, promoters, coatings, and biocides amongst others. Some of the most common metallic nanoparticles investigated are the gold, platinum, silver, and the palladium. Besides, Ag nanoparticle is one of the attractive metals to be investigated particularly in the health and medical sectors. The Ag is effective in bacterial infections and is also a cytotoxic material. Silver has the opportunity to degrade bacterial cell membranes, suppress bacterial cell proliferation and violate essential cell procedures due to the binding between Ag ions and macromolecules in cells inclusive of proteins and deoxyribonucleic acid. The ion Ag that combines with the cell hinders protein synthesis, reduces the membrane permeability even more and results in cell death.

The Ag nanoparticles are chemically more reactive than Ag in its pure state in bulk forms. As a result, the Ag nanoparticles are supposed to exhibit more effective antibacterial activity. Nanotechnology is the understanding, controlling, and using of efficient system at the level of molecule and is the most popular fields in the existing numerous branches of science. In the nanotechnology field work is started as early as from the year 1959 (Srivastava *et al*., 2022). There is a greater number of reported applications of NP in the very last decades appeared because of their resistance to oxidation, easily synthesized, and optical property. Appropriate functionalization of ligands is used for the proper use of NP. NPs of Metal have been studied as efficient carriers for tracers and healing agents and their functionalization is easy.

Moreover, Nanoparticles are non-toxic, and polymeric NPs are capable of performing as active targeting drug delivery nanoparticles. As a summary, nearly all characteristics of properties get size dependent for NPs. In this way, it is likely possible to obtain their property on our purpose, because sizes are being controlled. Consequently, the use of Nanoparticles in the field of medical became precisely and efficiently viable only when certain number of synthetic protocols had been developed that ensure both high size uniformity and productivity of Nanoparticles (Zhao *et al*., 2020). The study interest on the production of mono dispersed Nanoparticles has been slowly decreasing over the last decade as the volume control techniques are relatively advanced. However, as it has been discovered, the method to control size distribution has its own scientific significance in the connection by means of the development processes and nucleation process, which have not been completely explained as yet.

Nanotechnology is easily among the most exciting of the 21st century technologies. In our day, living is easier because to nanoscience advances in nearly every scientific discipline. The current scope of nano attempts to cover all the important topics in this field such as processing, fabrication, and synthesis techniques of nanomaterials as

well as their characterization and applications in different fields which include biology, chemistry, catalysis, energy, and the environment (Barad *et al*., 2021).

Functionalization of the NPs

Functionalization of the Nanoparticles can be described as attaching a substance to the face of the NPs for which surface modification is needed in order to cause self association and arrangement. Nanoparticles have been predominantly surface modified by disulfides, thiols, amines nitriles, phosphines carboxylic acids, and biomolecules (Kim *et al*., 2018). The basic purpose of Nanoparticles functionalization is to produce a molecular layer at the surface of NPs that will have the right chemical activity for the intended use. Overall the cases described above, functionalizing particles leads to a tremendous transformation of the exterior properties of the resultant particle. The overall chemistry of Nanoparticles is already considered in the production of NMs since it is an order defining parameter that can be utilized in the regulation of size and self organization in the formation of NPs (Harish *et al*., 2022). This is obtained by having groups that chelates on the surface for the duration of formation of the complex and this can prevent the formation of large aggregates. Many studies have focused on ways of modifying NPs; hereonly a few examples will discuss of functional NPs as described above cylic acids, phosphines, and biomolecules. The main aim of functionalization of Nanoparticles is to encapsulate the nucleus core with a molecule that has the right chemical moiety essential for applying. In each case, the functionalization of the particles on the surface results in qualitative transformation of the material properties. The surface chemistry of Nanoparticles is already a critical consideration towards their synthesis as this characteristic can be used to regulate size and self assembly in the formation process. This can be attained by associating groups that adsorb on the surface during the forming of the complexes and formation of the complex should not cause coagulation (Shnoudeh *et al*., 2019). Many studies have explored techniques of altering Nanoparticles and its prospective biomedical applications (Fig. 1).

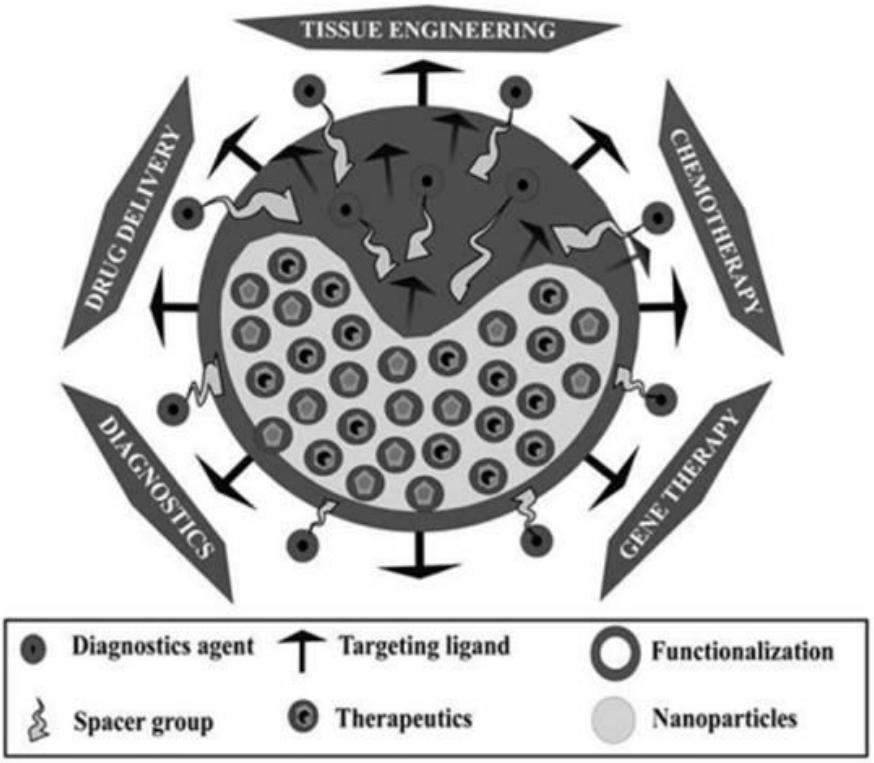


Fig.1:Description of generic FNPs, their parts, and broad usages in the area of medicine science.

ADVANCES IN METAL NANOPARTICLE SYNTHESIS

Chemical Methods

Metal Nanoparticles synthesis methods include sol-gel synthesis, co-precipitation, and chemical vapor deposition where synthesis methods have been improved to produce nanoparticles with high purity and homogeneity.

Polymers and Hybrid Systems

Metal Nanoparticles synthesis methods include sol-gel synthesis, co-precipitation, and chemical vapor deposition where synthesis methods have been improved to produce nanoparticles with high purity and homogeneity.

Mesoporous and Magnetic NPs

Mesoporous NPs have high loading capacity and sustained release kinetics, whereas magnetic NPs enable site-specific drug delivery by influencing the use of external magnetic field.

GENERAL APPLICATION OF METAL NANOPARTICLES

Food Industry

Metallic nanoparticles, or MNPs, have garnered a lot of attention because they can be used to make antimicrobial solutions that have the potential to extend food shelf life by inhibiting bacteria development (Kumar *et al.*, 2022). They have the ability to prevent the formation of biofilms and interact with various microbial cells, ultimately leading to their death. Because proteins and polysaccharides are present on the surface of microorganisms used in their synthesis, MNPs are typically more stable (Jeevanandam *et al.*, 2022).

Gases like oxygen and carbon dioxide are blocked by packaging made of MNPs. It serves as a barrier against ethanol and moisture as well (Kumar *et al.*, 2023). MNPs packaging also has the advantages of intelligent packaging, active packaging, and biodegradable biopolymers (Fahmy *et al.*, 2020). Using MNPs in the food industry makes it possible to preserve, protect, and extend the shelf life of food (Couto and Almeida *et al*., 2022). MNPs have enhanced food packaging properties, including antibacterial activity, mechanical strength, and reduced water vapor permeability (Fahmy *et al.*, 2020).

In food science, MNP-based films, hydrogels, and sensors are becoming more and more useful tools. As an intelligent system for food preservation, food packaging has been demonstrated to apply MNPs in a number of studies. Additionally, food contaminants—particularly microbes—are detected using MNP-based sensors (Dos Santos *et al.*, 2020). Moreover, MNPs can improve a sensor's conductivity (John *et al.*, 2021). The shelf life of canned and preserved goods has been significantly increased by the use of metallic nanoparticles, which effectively limit spoiling. Carbon nanotubes, nano-TiO2, nano-Ce2O4, nano-ZnO, and nano-Ag are NPs with antibacterial qualities that have also been used to improve food quality (Kumar *et al.*, 2023).

The FDA has categorized zinc oxide (ZnO) as a micronutrient that is necessary for both human and animal health and has designated it as GRAS, or generally recognized as safe. ZnO's white color makes it a popular choice for the food industry as an addition and nutritional supplement (Al Jabri *et al.*, 2022). Food packaging films are made with ZnONPs because they are less expensive and have greater UV blocking activity than AgNPs. ZnONP absorption has the potential to greatly increase the mechanical strength, blocking properties, and durability of films. Bactericidal effect has been demonstrated using eco-friendly packaging materials based on ZnONPs (Roy *et al.*, 2022).AgNPs/gelatin-MMT and thymol were combined to create nanobiocomposite films, as reported by (Dairi *et al.,* 2019).

Curcuma longa was used in the biogenically synthesized AgNPs. Antibacterial, antifungal, and antioxidant properties were shown in the film. Fruits can have a longer shelf life thanks to these innovative films (Dairi *et al.*, 2019). AgNPs and grapefruit seed extract were used to create ternary blend agar/alginate/collagen

hydrogel films in a different investigation. Thus produced, a highly transparent hydrogel film demonstrated efficacy against foodborne Gram-positive (*Listeria monocytogenes*) and Gram-negative (*Escherichia coli*) bacteria (Dos Santos *et al.*, 2020). Based on guar gum, a study focused on creating films of silver-copper alloy nanoparticle nanocomposite. Following loading on guar gum, the scientists assessed the impact of Ag-Cu nanoparticles and discovered enhanced mechanical strength as well as UV and oxygen barrier performance. Additionally, *L. monocytogenes* and *S. typhimurium* were shown to be susceptible to the antibacterial properties of the resulting film. Gram-positive bacteria were less susceptible to the Ag-Cu nanoparticles' superior efficacy (Ghosh *et al.*, 2021).

To stop pathogens and food spoiling bacteria from growing, (Sarhadi *et al.*, 2024) created an efficient antimicrobial nano-composite film utilizing fish protein isolate and fish skin gelatin by adding ZnONPs. They also employed effective food packaging. Ag nanoparticles are additionally used in conjunction with other nanoparticles to enhance the properties of packaging films. According to (Jamróz *et al.*, 2019); selenium NPs improve water resistance and antibacterial activity, while silver NPs improve the mechanical properties of furcellaran andgelatin films. This is an example of the synergism between selenium and silver NPs.

Metal oxide nanoparticles are intensively investigated for their role in the food industry to enhance the shelf life of food. One reason behind this novel property is its antimicrobial activity. ZnO nanoparticles and AgO nanoparticles coating on apples and lemons have significantly increased their shelf life. ZnO metal nanoparticles were found best in comparison (Zafar and Iqbal *et al*., 2024). Another study has reported the effect of Manganese doped zinc oxide nanoparticles (Mn–ZnO NPs) on apples. Evaluation of different factors including moisture content, weight loss over time, decay process confirmed Mn-ZnO nanoparticle (Mn–ZnO NPs) as a shelf life enhancer of apples (Iqbal et al., 2024). The use of metal nanoparticles for food safety has been considered efficient and friendly. They not only reduce preservative dose,and their reaction rate with food but also act as antibacterial agents (Hoseinnejad *et al*., 2018).

Titanium dioxide (TiO2), Zinc oxide (ZnO), and Silver nanoparticles are extensively studied for their use in active food packaging (Baran *et al*., 2022). Many metal sulfide nanoparticles have also been used for food packaging. High exposure of copper sulfate nanoparticles (up to 2%) promises cell survival of more than 90% (Nikolic *et al*.,2021). Even Zinc sulfide nanoparticles have been reported as nontoxic for mammalian cell lines for up to 3 days at a concentration of 200µg/mL thus non-harming in the food packaging industry (Roy et al., 2024). Iron oxide magnetic nanoparticles (Fe3O4 MNPs) have been declared as safe nanomaterial by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Its properties like non–toxicity, high biocompatibility, superparamagnetic properties, recyclability, large specific surface area and, large–scale production attract the attention of researchers to investigate its applications in the food industry (Gao *et al*., 2020). Fe3O4 MNPs can maintain the

sensory quality of meat and reduce heat loss. They are used for improving, stabilising and processing of food (Gao *et al*., 2020).

CANCER THERAPY

Cancer still stands out as one of the leading killers in the world. While it is established that more than ten million are newly diagnosed every year, the mortality rate resulting from cancer has slightly decreased in recent years because of new technological systems (Pulumati *et al*., 2023). Over the years, many groups have tried to use, Nanoparticles and other nanomaterials, and all have proposed that the optimal size of particle is greater than 200 nm to enhance the extravasations into tumors. Limitations of targeting approaches include; the poor dissemination of nanoparticles to the target cancer cells which can cause MDR and a situation whereby several possible medicines are effectively rendered useless. To avoid this problem is addition a functional group such that it can bind to the precise cells after the extravasation (Abdullah, S.*et al*., 2024).

Table.1: Representative examples of nanoparticles based therapeutics for Cancer

Drug	Company	Drug	Company
Albumin bound paclitaxel	Abraxis	Albumin bound paclitaxel	American pharm partners
Liposomal daunorubicin	Gilead Sciences	Ligand targeted emulsion containing NPs for Cancer	Keroes
Liposome-PEG doxorubicin	Ortho Biotech	Nanobiodrugs for cancer treatment	Nanobiotix
Liposomal cytarabine	Skyepharma	NPs to target cancer	Introgen therapeutics
Liposomal doxorubicin	Zeneus	Lipid based nanocarrier for targeted delivery	Liplasome pharma
PEG-GCSF	Enzon	Liposome-PEG doxorubicin	Samyang
Polyglutamic paclitaxel	Bio Alliance Pharma	Methoxy-PEG-Poly(D,L-lactide) taxol	Amgen
Liposomal annamycin	Transcave	HPMA copolymer-DACH platinate	Phoenix
Liposomal cisplatin	GP-Pharm	Nanocrystalline paliperidone palmitate	Acusphere
Liposomal fantanyl	Inex, Exon	Liposome-PEG doxorubicin	Schering-plough
Liposomal doxorubicin	OSI Pharm.,	Polycyclodextrin camptothecin	Cell therapeutics
PEG-camptothecin	Supratek Pharma	Pluronic block-copolymer doxorubicin	Insert therapeutics
PEG-L-asparginase	Callisto	Polyglutamate camptothecin	Cell therapeutics
Liposomal vincristine	Access Pharm.,	Poly(iso-hexyl-cyanoacrylate)doxorubicin	Elan entermed

DIAGNOSIS

In ideal cases, tomographic imaging methods developed in the past decades, including CT, MRI, and PET, are important instruments for diagnosing many diseases (Hussain, S., *et al*., 2022). Thus it could turn into the modality of preference for diagnoses in which fast dynamic information is insisted upon. In this respect, organic-inorganic hybrid NPs are used here and expected to show potential in the next generation of nano-carrier probes for biological applications, including MRI, MPI, PET, a hyperthermal inducing agent for cancer treatment, magnetic media for hypersensitive detection of biomolecules and pathological cells, etc. Among all the various types of NPs, the gold NPs are considered the most promising tool in imaging and site specific drug delivery and other bio-active molecules (Sibuyi *et al*., 2021). Functionalized magnetic NPs will enhance tracer response and will make the myocardial perfusion imaging, a capable in vivo new imaging modality, and has the potential to become a clinically accepted imaging method (Wang *et al*., 2023).

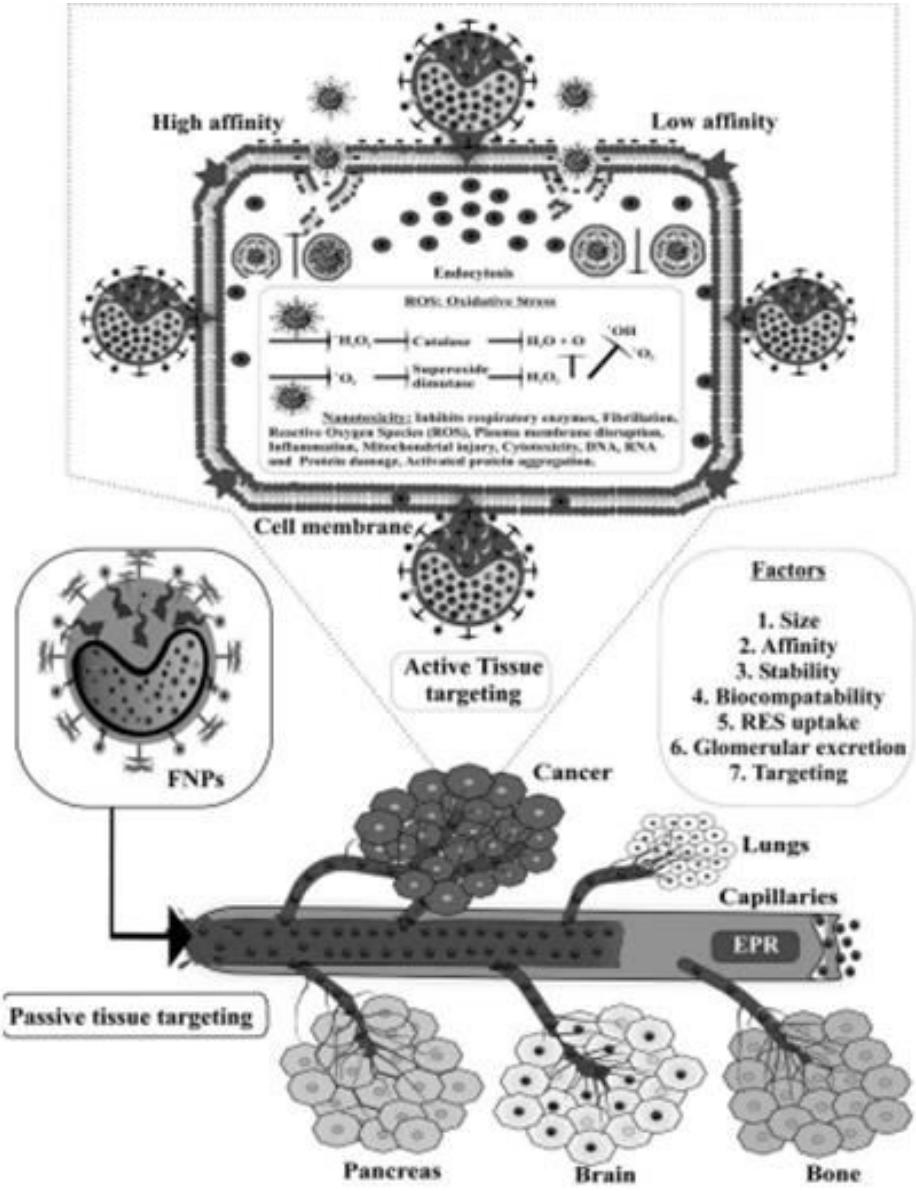


Fig. 2: Sequential origination and programming of functionalized Nanoparticles for selective Tissue targeting by using a targeting ligand. Diagram of cancer cell specific targeting passive targeting (EPR effect) and active tissue targeting which is illustrated in the inset figure. Subsequently, cationically charged FNPs should have a higher affinity to the cell membrane than anionically charged FNPs. The relationship between the proposed application of drug delivery and functionalized Nanoparticles in addition to possible toxicity of functionalized Nanoparticles is also displayed in this concept map along with one of the mechanisms of cell death by ROS.

Agriculture

Technology in one way comes through nanotechnology to enhance production by using nanoparticles to coat the chemical or biological fertilizer without altering the damaging environment as proposed by (Billings *et al*., 2021). However, precision farming can be a tool for enhancing the productivity of agricultural producers through the use of smart Nanosensors, as it provides specific information on weather conditions, type of soil, and other factors that can help farmers make the right decisions. NPs may have positive and negative impacts on plants (Usman *et al*., 2020). While nanomaterials can defend plants from many abiotic stresses and support plant growth, they can also be toxic, indulging oxidative stress, genotoxic and cytotoxic effects. It was discovered that only a few strains of bacteria and fungi have the metabolic capability of synthesizing nanoparticles. For instance, there is a method called bio reduction whereby some kinds of bacteria can reduce metal ions into nanoparticles (Pramanik *et al*., 2020).

Drug loading capacity

In pharmaceuticals, especially in the delivery of the drug, the main critical property of the Nanoparticles is their constancy during the blood flow period (Zahin*et al*., 2020). Medicines to be delivered must be stable when loaded into the NPs so that there is no drug leakage found in the blood flow (Mitchell *et al*., 2021). The mentioned carrier in blood flow may also cause inactivation of complement and opsonization of drug with consequent removal from the blood cavity due to RES recognition (Kaur*et al*., 2022).

Because of the large surface area and large drug-loading ability nanoparticles themselves can entrap and deliver numerous free chemotherapeutic drugs (Liu*et al*., 2020). This is advantageous because more drug concentrations can be delivered directly to the target location to boost the effectiveness of those treatments (Manzari *et al*., 2021).

Environmental Applications

If water or soil needs to be cleaned, it may have to be done with Zero-Valent Iron. To fabricate IONPs with enhanced adsorption capacity and affinity for specified pollutants, research is still ongoing (Kharat *et al*., 2017). IONPs can reduce immense metals and biotic stains existing in water and soil. It has been ascertained that large metals such as Pb, Cu and Cd, it possess high adsorption characteristics (Alidokht 2021).

ENERGY APPLICATIONS

New energy storage and conversion technology may be developed using Titanium Dioxide NPs. For application in batteries and fuel cells, the formation of Titanium Dioxide NPs has not yet been concluded but rather researched (Santos *et al*., 2021).

Catalysis

In many chemical reactions, AuNPs have been utilized as activators. They can be used in the drug production, plastics, and other forms of chemicals or specialty chemicals (Astruc *et al*., 2020).

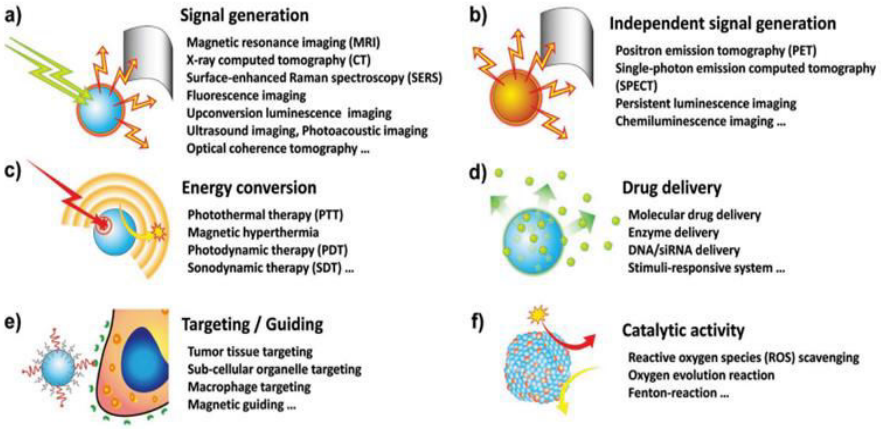


Fig.3: Classification of properties and functions of the NPs used in the biomedical field and sample examples of each class. a) Signal production based on the induction of changes in the electromagnetic or sound waveform of the imaging modality. b) By the occurrence of the independent signal generated by the electromagnetic waves produced by the NP signal itself. c) Transformation into thermal or chemical energy to alter the environment of NPs. It includes drug delivery by loading the therapeutic agent in NPs. f) Enhanced biocompatibility of the NPs by incorporating targeting biomolecules or by a magnetic guide towards the property of the NPs. f) The Catalytic activity changes the chemical milieu of the tissue in which particles are lodged.

LIMITATIONS AND CHALLENGES TO METAL NANOPARTICLES

Multiple applications of metal nanoparticles glorify their importance. This should not overlay the risks posed by metal nanoparticles. Before using metal nanoparticles in the biomedical field, agricultural fields along fertilizers and food industry, their toxic effects, harmful impacts, and degradation methods must be evaluated for human safety (Santos *et al*., 2019). Although Fe3O4 MNPs pose significant and multiple applications in the agriculture and food industry their ability to make aggregates and corrode puts them on 2nd option (Dong *et al*., 2022). Many successful studies are reported to enhance crop growth but some studies also indicate contradictive results. Use of Zinc Oxide, Copper oxide, and Titanium oxide nanoparticles have been correlated with damaged, thickened, folded and undulated cell walla (Soares and Soares. *et al*., 2021). Silver nanoparticles are favored in the food industry for their antimicrobial property and their ability to enhance the shelf life of food. However, their effect on oral and intestinal health is not explored. A recent study has claimed that these nanoparticles negatively affect the health of the gut and intestine (Pena *et al*., 2020)

The Future Perspective

The functionalization of NPs offers a distinct connection from materials to medicine and vice versa and is quickly forming as an only tool in creating new and improved therapeutic vehicles and diagnosing tools (Vodyashkin *et al*., 2022). This approach uses different types of materials and their functionalization and relates molecular processes in physiology with drug targets and other biomedical uses including imaging and tissue engineering. Further, the conjugation of functional groups to NPs enables the designing of multifunctional therapeutic systems for drug delivery, cancer treatment, imaging, and tissue scaffolding (yi, W*et al*., 2022). The 3-in-1 FNPs nanosystem for therapy, targeting, and imaging can be fabricated by preparing the NPs having the desired therapeutic moiety, targeting ligand, and imaging agent.

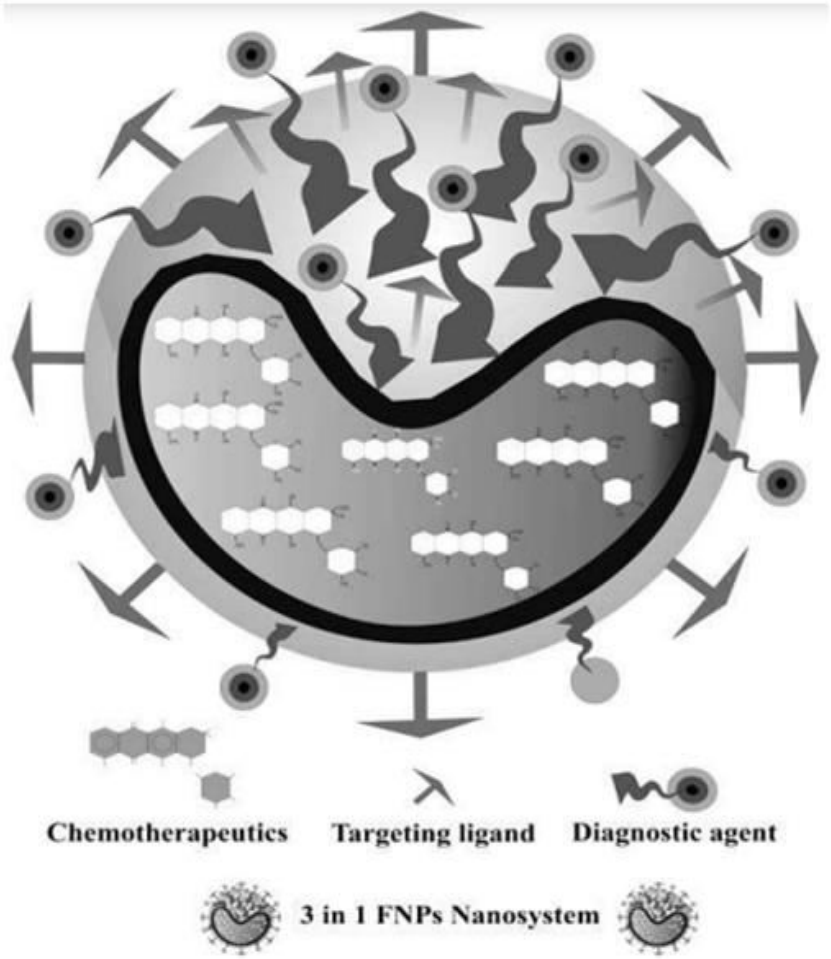


Fig. 4: Three-in-one nanosystem that can be fabricated using metal or polymeric Functionalized Nanoparticles having the ability to encapsulate the drug, targeting ligand and diagnostic agent may be attached through physical adsorption.

CONCLUSION

Nanotechnology is a revolutionary innovation in many branches of science, but it is most popular in the biomedical sciences and agriculture. Early the revelation of functionalized nanoparticles (NPs) are stands from rest areas as distinctive, valuable characteristics have been identified in drug delivery, cancer therapy, diagnosis, and environmental solutions. Surface functionalization and size-dependent properties of the NPs can be effectively controlled by researchers for enhanced performance and stability with better targeting scope in the application. Recent developments in NP synthesis and functionalization strategies have enabled improved design of multifunctional NPs and the integration of therapeutic and diagnostic capabilities with targeting ligands. Applied in medicine, this multimodal approach has enormous potential to improving the existing treatment outcomes and the specificity of therapy approaches.

Furthermore, nanotechnology in agriculture, smart nanosensors, and precision farming proves that nanotechnology reduces productivity and environmental consequences. However, further studies that focus on the adverse effects related to the exposure to NP are still required to guarantee their safety use. In general, nanotechnology in medicine and agriculture can be viewed as a progressive process with functionalized nanoparticles as the basis for applying new ideas that synthesize material science and modern needs in these industries. Further investigation of their potential will be required to enhance and build on what has been established.

REFERENCES

- Abdullah, S. (2024). The prevention of multi-drug resistance in cancers through the application of nanotechnology-based targeted delivery systems for combination therapies involving Traditional Chinese medicine. *Pharmacological Research-Modern Chinese Medicine*, 100386.
- Al Jabri, H., Saleem, M. H., Rizwan, M., Hussain, I., Usman, K. and Alsafran, M. 2022. Zinc oxide nanoparticles and their biosynthesis: overview. Life, 12:594.
- Alidokht, L., Anastopoulos, I., Ntarlagiannis, D., Soupios, P., Tawabini, B., Kalderis, D., & Khataee, A. (2021). Recent advances in the application of nanomaterials for the remediation of arsenic-contaminated water and soil. *Journal of Environmental Chemical Engineering*, *9*(4), 105533.
- Astruc, D. (2020). Introduction: nanoparticles in catalysis. *Chemical reviews*, *120*(2), 461-463.
- Barad, H. N., Kwon, H., Alarcón-Correa, M., & Fischer, P. (2021). Large area patterning of nanoparticles and nanostructures: current status and future prospects. *ACS nano*, *15*(4), 5861-5875.
- Baran, A., Fırat Baran, M., Keskin, C., Hatipoğlu, A., Yavuz, Ö., İrtegün Kandemir, S., ... & Eftekhari, A. (2022). Investigation of antimicrobial and cytotoxic properties and specification of silver nanoparticles (AgNPs) derived

from Cicer arietinum L. green leaf extract. *Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology*, *10*, 855136.

- Billings, C., Langley, M., Warrington, G., Mashali, F., & Johnson, J. A. (2021). Magnetic particle imaging: current and future applications, magnetic nanoparticle synthesis methods and safety measures. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, *22*(14), 7651.
- Blackman, J. (2008). *Metallic nanoparticles*. Elsevier.
- Couto, C. and Almeida, A. 2022. Metallic nanoparticles in the food sector: A mini-review. Foods, 11:402.
- Dairi, N., Ferfera-Harrar, H., Ramos, M. and Garrigós, M. C. 2019. Cellulose acetate/AgNPs-organoclay and/or thymol nano-biocomposite films with combined antimicrobial/antioxidant properties for active food packaging use. International journal of biological macromolecules, 121:508-523.
- de Dios, A. S., & Díaz-García, M. E. (2010). Multifunctional nanoparticles: analytical prospects. *Analytica chimica acta*, *666*(1-2), 1-22.
- Dong, L., Chen, G., Liu, G., Huang, X., Xu, X., Li, L., ... & Abd El-Aty, A. M. (2024). A review on recent advances in the applications of composite Fe3O4 magnetic nanoparticles in the food industry. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 64(4), 1110-1138.
- Dos Santos, C. A., Ingle, A. P. and Rai, M. 2020. The emerging role of metallic nanoparticles in food. Applied microbiology and biotechnology, 104:2373-2383.
- Fahmy, H. M., Eldin, R. E. S., Serea, E. S. A., Gomaa, N. M., AboElmagd, G. M., Salem, S. A., Elsayed, Z. A., Edrees, A., Shams-Eldin, E. and Shalan, A. E. 2020. Advances in nanotechnology and antibacterial properties of biodegradable food packaging materials. RSC advances, 10:20467-20484.
- Fang, C., & Zhang, M. (2009). Multifunctional magnetic nanoparticles for medical imaging applications. *Journal of materials chemistry*, *19*(35), 6258-6266.
- Fedlheim, D. L., & Foss, C. A. (2001). *Metal nanoparticles: synthesis, characterization, and applications*. CRC press.
- Gao, J., Gu, H., & Xu, B. (2009). Multifunctional magnetic nanoparticles: design, synthesis, and biomedical applications. *Accounts of chemical research*, *42*(8), 1097-1107.
- Gao, Y., Xu, D., Ren, D., Zeng, K., & Wu, X. (2020). Green synthesis of zinc oxide nanoparticles using Citrus sinensis peel extract and application to strawberry preservation: A comparison study. Lwt, 126, 109297.

- Ghosh, S., Singh, B. P. and Webster, T. J. 2021. Nanoparticle-impregnated biopolymers as novel antimicrobial nanofilms. Biopolymer-based nano films. Elsevier, pp. 269-309.
- Gindy, M. E., & Prud'homme, R. K. (2009). Multifunctional nanoparticles for imaging, delivery and targeting in cancer therapy. *Expert opinion on drug delivery*, *6*(8), 865-878.
- Gleich, B., & Weizenecker, J. (2005). Tomographic imaging using the nonlinear response of magnetic particles. *Nature*, *435*(7046), 1214-1217.
- Hao, R., Xing, R., Xu, Z., Hou, Y., Gao, S., & Sun, S. (2010). Synthesis, functionalization, and biomedical applications of multifunctional magnetic nanoparticles. *Advanced materials*, *22*(25), 2729-2742.
- Harish, V., Ansari, M. M., Tewari, D., Gaur, M., Yadav, A. B., García-Betancourt, M. L., ... & Barhoum, A. (2022). Nanoparticle and nanostructure synthesis and controlled growth methods. *Nanomaterials*, *12*(18), 3226.
- Harris, T. J., von Maltzahn, G., & Bhatia, S. N. (2006). Multifunctional nanoparticles for cancer therapy. *Nanotechnology for Cancer Therapy*, 59-75.
- Ho, C. L., Yu, Z. Q., & Wong, W. Y. (2016). Multifunctional polymetallaynes: properties, functions and applications. *Chemical Society Reviews*, *45*(19), 5264-5295.
- Hoseinnejad, M., Jafari, S. M., & Katouzian, I. (2018). Inorganic and metal nanoparticles and their antimicrobial activity in food packaging applications. Critical reviews in microbiology, 44(2), 161-181.
- Hussain, S., Mubeen, I., Ullah, N., Shah, S. S. U. D., Khan, B. A., Zahoor, M., ... & Sultan, M. A. (2022). Modern diagnostic imaging technique applications and risk factors in the medical field: a review. *BioMed research international*, *2022*(1), 5164970.
- Hussein, A. K. (2015). Applications of nanotechnology in renewable energies—A comprehensive overview and understanding. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *42*, 460-476.
- Ibrahim, R. K., Hayyan, M., AlSaadi, M. A., Hayyan, A., & Ibrahim, S. (2016). Environmental application of nanotechnology: air, soil, and water. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *23*, 13754-13788.
- Iqbal, T., Afzal, M., Al-Asbahi, B. A., Afsheen, S., Maryam, I., Mushtaq, A., ... & Ashraf, A. (2024). Enhancing apple shelf life: A comparative analysis of photocatalytic activity in pure and manganese-doped ZnO nanoparticles. Materials Science in Semiconductor Processing, 173, 108152

- Jamkhande, P. G., Ghule, N. W., Bamer, A. H., & Kalaskar, M. G. (2019). Metal nanoparticles synthesis: An overview on methods of preparation, advantages and disadvantages, and applications. *Journal of drug delivery science and technology*, *53*, 101174.
- Jamróz, E., Kulawik, P. and Kopel, P. 2019. The effect of nanofillers on the functional properties of biopolymer-based films: A review. Polymers, 11:675.
- Jeevanandam, J., Kiew, S. F., Boakye-Ansah, S., Lau, S. Y., Barhoum, A., Danquah, M. K. and Rodrigues, J. 2022. Green approaches for the synthesis of metal and metal oxide nanoparticles using microbial and plant extracts. Nanoscale, 14:2534-2571.
- John, A., Benny, L., Cherian, A. R., Narahari, S. Y., Varghese, A. and Hegde, G. 2021. Electrochemical sensors using conducting polymer/noble metal nanoparticle nanocomposites for the detection of various analytes: a review. Journal of Nanostructure in Chemistry, 11:1-31.
- Johnston, R. L. (2012). Metal nanoparticles and nanoalloys. In *Frontiers of Nanoscience* (Vol. 3, pp. 1-42). Elsevier.
- Kaur, S., Allan, S. M., & Al-Ahmady, Z. S. (2022). Re-directing nanomedicines to the spleen: A potential technology for peripheral immunomodulation. *Journal of Controlled Release*, *350*, 60-79.
- Kharat, M. G., Murthy, S., & Kamble, S. J. (2017). Environmental applications of nanotechnology: A review. *ADBU Journal of Engineering Technology*, *6*(3).
- Kim, D., Shin, K., Kwon, S. G., & Hyeon, T. (2018). Synthesis and biomedical applications of multifunctional nanoparticles. *Advanced Materials*, *30*(49), 1802309.
- Koo, O. M., Rubinstein, I., & Onyuksel, H. (2005). Role of nanotechnology in targeted drug delivery and imaging: a concise review. *Nanomedicine: nanotechnology, biology and medicine*, *1*(3), 193-212.
- Kumar, A., Kumar, A., Vats, C., Sangwan, P., Kumar, V., Abhineet, Chauhan, P., Chauhan, R. S. and Chaudhary, K. 2022. Recent insights into metallic nanoparticles in shelf-life extension of agrifoods: Properties, green synthesis, and major applications. Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems, 6:1025342.
- Kumar, A., Shah, S. R., Jayeoye, T. J., Kumar, A., Parihar, A., Prajapati, B., Singh, S. and Kapoor, D. U. 2023. Biogenic metallic nanoparticles: Biomedical, analytical, food preservation, and applications in other consumable products. Frontiers in Nanotechnology, 5:1175149.
- Liu, Y., Yang, G., Jin, S., Xu, L., & Zhao, C. X. (2020). Development of high-drug-loading nanoparticles. *ChemPlusChem*, *85*(9), 2143-2157.

- Manzari, M. T., Shamay, Y., Kiguchi, H., Rosen, N., Scaltriti, M., & Heller, D. A. (2021). Targeted drug delivery strategies for precision medicines. *Nature Reviews Materials*, *6*(4), 351-370.
- Mieszawska, A. J., Mulder, W. J., Fayad, Z. A., & Cormode, D. P. (2013). Multifunctional gold nanoparticles for diagnosis and therapy of disease. *Molecular pharmaceutics*, *10*(3), 831-847.
- Mitchell, M. J., Billingsley, M. M., Haley, R. M., Wechsler, M. E., Peppas, N. A., & Langer, R. (2021). Engineering precision nanoparticles for drug delivery. *Nature reviews drug discovery*, *20*(2), 101-124.
- Neouze, M. A., & Schubert, U. (2008). Surface modification and functionalization of metal and metal oxide nanoparticles by organic ligands. *Monatshefte für Chemie-Chemical Monthly*, *139*, 183-195.
- Ngwa, W., Kumar, R., Sridhar, S., Korideck, H., Zygmanski, P., Cormack, R. A., ... & Makrigiorgos, G. M. (2014). Targeted radiotherapy with gold nanoparticles: current status and future perspectives. *Nanomedicine*, *9*(7), 1063-1082.
- Nikolic, M. V., Vasiljevic, Z. Z., Auger, S., & Vidic, J. (2021). Metal oxide nanoparticles for safe active and intelligent food packaging. Trends in Food Science & Technology, 116, 655-668.
- Pellegrino, T., Manna, L., Kudera, S., Liedl, T., Koktysh, D., Rogach, A. L., ... & Parak, W. J. (2004). Hydrophobic nanocrystals coated with an amphiphilic polymer shell: a general route to water soluble nanocrystals. *Nano letters*, *4*(4), 703-707.
- Peña, A. S., Witchel, S. F., Hoeger, K. M., Oberfield, S. E., Vogiatzi, M. G., Misso, M., ... & Teede, H. (2020). Adolescent polycystic ovary syndrome according to the international evidence-based guideline. *BMC medicine*, *18*, 1-16.
- Peng, S., & Li, P. (2024). Fundamental Effects of Nanomaterials. In *Nanomaterials and Nanotechnology: Basic, Preparation and Applications* (pp. 45-73). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.
- Pramanik, P., Krishnan, P., Maity, A., Mridha, N., Mukherjee, A., & Rai, V. (2020). Application of nanotechnology in agriculture. *Environmental Nanotechnology Volume 4*, 317-348.
- Pulumati, A., Pulumati, A., Dwarakanath, B. S., Verma, A., & Papineni, R. V. (2023). Technological advancements in cancer diagnostics: Improvements and limitations. *Cancer Reports*, *6*(2), e1764.
- Rai, M., & Ingle, A. (2012). Role of nanotechnology in agriculture with special reference to management of insect pests. *Applied microbiology and biotechnology*, *94*, 287-293.

- Roy, A., Dharmalingam, K. and Anandalakshmi, R. 2022. Silver and zinc oxide nanoparticles in films and coatings. Biopolymer-Based Food Packaging: Innovations and Technology Applications:368-393.
- Roy, S., Ezati, P., Priyadarshi, R., Biswas, D., & Rhim, J. W. (2024). Recent advances in metal sulfide nanoparticle-added bionanocomposite films for food packaging applications. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 64(14), 4660-4673.
- Salayová, A., Bedlovičová, Z., Daneu, N., Baláž, M., Lukáčová Bujňáková, Z., Balážová, Ľ., & Tkáčiková, Ľ. (2021). Green synthesis of silver nanoparticles with antibacterial activity using various medicinal plant extracts: Morphology and antibacterial efficacy. *Nanomaterials*, *11*(4), 1005.
- Santos, J. S., Araujo, P. D. S., Pissolitto, Y. B., Lopes, P. P., Simon, A. P., Sikora, M. D. S., & Trivinho-Strixino, F. (2021). The use of anodic oxides in practical and sustainable devices for energy conversion and storage. *Materials*, *14*(2), 383.
- Sanvicens, N., & Marco, M. P. (2008). Multifunctional nanoparticles–properties and prospects for their use in human medicine. *Trends in biotechnology*, *26*(8), 425-433.
- Sarhadi, H., Shahdadi, F., Salehi Sardoei, A., Hatami, M. and Ghorbanpour, M. 2024. Investigation of physio-mechanical, antioxidant and antimicrobial properties of starch–zinc oxide nanoparticles active films reinforced with Ferula gummosa Boiss essential oil. Scientific Reports, 14:5789.
- Shnoudeh, A. J., Hamad, I., Abdo, R. W., Qadumii, L., Jaber, A. Y., Surchi, H. S., & Alkelany, S. Z. (2019). Synthesis, characterization, and applications of metal nanoparticles. In *Biomaterials and bionanotechnology* (pp. 527-612). Academic Press.
- Sibuyi, N. R. S., Moabelo, K. L., Fadaka, A. O., Meyer, S., Onani, M. O., Madiehe, A. M., & Meyer, M. (2021). Multifunctional gold nanoparticles for improved diagnostic and therapeutic applications: a review. *Nanoscale Research Letters*, *16*, 1-27.
- Soares, E. V., & Soares, H. M. (2021). Harmful effects of metal (loid) oxide nanoparticles. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 105, 1379-1394.
- Sotiriou, G. A. (2013). Biomedical applications of multifunctional plasmonic nanoparticles. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Nanomedicine and Nanobiotechnology*, *5*(1), 19-30.
- Srivastava, S., Bhargava, A., Srivastava, S., & Bhargava, A. (2022). Green nanotechnology: an overview. *Green nanoparticles: the future of nanobiotechnology*, 1-13.

- Subbiah, R., Veerapandian, M., & S Yun, K. (2010). Nanoparticles: functionalization and multifunctional applications in biomedical sciences. *Current medicinal chemistry*, *17*(36), 4559-4577.
- Usman, M., Farooq, M., Wakeel, A., Nawaz, A., Cheema, S. A., ur Rehman, H., ... & Sanaullah, M. (2020). Nanotechnology in agriculture: Current status, challenges and future opportunities. *Science of the total environment*, *721*, 137778.
- Vodyashkin, A. A., Kezimana, P., Vetcher, A. A., & Stanishevskiy, Y. M. (2022). Biopolymeric nanoparticles–multifunctional materials of the future. *Polymers*, *14*(11), 2287.
- Wang, J., Liu, Y., Liu, Y., Huang, H., Roy, S., Song, Z., & Guo, B. (2023). Recent advances in nanomedicines for imaging and therapy of myocardial ischemia-reperfusion injury. *Journal of Controlled Release*, *353*, 563-590.
- Yi, W., Xiao, P., Liu, X., Zhao, Z., Sun, X., Wang, J., ... & Li, Y. (2022). Recent advances in developing active targeting and multi-functional drug delivery systems via bioorthogonal chemistry. *Signal Transduction and Targeted Therapy*, *7*(1), 386.
- Zafar, M., & Iqbal, T. (2024). Green synthesis of silver and zinc oxide nanoparticles for novel application to enhance shelf life of fruits. Biomass Conversion and Biorefinery, 14(4), 5611-5626.
- Zahin, N., Anwar, R., Tewari, D., Kabir, M. T., Sajid, A., Mathew, B., ... & Abdel-Daim, M. M. (2020). Nanoparticles and its biomedical applications in health and diseases: special focus on drug delivery. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *27*(16), 19151-19168.
- Zhao, X., Bian, F., Sun, L., Cai, L., Li, L., & Zhao, Y. (2020). Microfluidic generation of nanomaterials for biomedical applications. *Small*, *16*(9), 1901943.
- Zorraquín-Peña, I., Cueva, C., Bartolomé, B., & Moreno-Arribas, M. V. (2020). Silver nanoparticles against foodborne bacteria. Effects at intestinal level and health limitations. Microorganisms, 8(1), 132.

CHAPTER- 19

USES OF NANOTECHNOLOGY IN AGRICULTURE AND VETERINARY MEDICINE

Shumaila Ameer[1], Hammad Ahmed Hashmi[2*], Abdul Rehman[3], Aatika Umme Rooman[3], Javaid Hassan[4], Syed Taha Munawar[5], Iqra Zafar Khan[6], Ayesha Ismail[7], Umber Rauf[8] and Hammad Riaz[9]

[1]Animal Science Division Nuclear Institute for Agriculture and Biology, (NIAB-C PIEAS), Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[2*]Department of Clinical Studies, Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Science, PMAS Arid Agriculture University, Rawalpindi, Punjab, Pakistan

[3]Department of Zoology, University of Jhang, Punjab, Pakistan

[4]Department of Soil and Environmental Science, University of Agriculture, Peshawar, KPK, Pakistan

[5]National Institute of Food Science and Technology, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[6]High School of Agronomy, University of Lisbon, Portugal

[7]Plant Breeding and Genetics, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[8]Veterinary Research Institute, Zarar Shaheed Road Lahore Cantt, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[9]Institute of Forest Sciences, Faculty of Agriculture and Environment, The Islamia University of Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533434

ABSTRACT

This chapter examines the crucial impact of nanotechnology on agricultural and veterinary medicine, emphasizing its transformative capacity to improve productivity, sustainability, and animal health. The main aim of this study was to examine the existing literature on the uses and risks of nanotechnology in these domains, offering a thorough synthesis of recent developments and pinpointing areas that need more comprehension. This chapter examines the application of nanocarriers for targeted pesticide delivery, nanosensors in precision agriculture, and nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems in veterinary medicine, highlighting their roles in enhancing the efficiency and minimizing the environmental impact. This study also examined the long-term ecological consequences of nanoparticle utilization, specifically regarding their interactions in soil and aquatic systems, potential bioaccumulation, and toxicity to non-target organisms. Prominent themes encompass the advantages of nanotechnology in fostering sustainable farming methods and enhancing veterinary medicine, along with significant deficiencies in research on the environmental and biological impacts of nanoparticles. The chapter concludes with recommendations for future research, emphasizing the necessity for longitudinal studies on nanoparticle safety and the advancement of biodegradable nanomaterials to alleviate potential

concerns. These insights will assist policymakers and researchers in the responsible advancement of nanotechnology in agricultural and veterinary medicine, guaranteeing its sustainable and safe use.

Keywords**:** *Nanotechnology, Agriculture, Veterinary Medicine, Nanocarriers, Nanosensors, Sustainability, Environmental Impact*

INTRODUCTION

Nanotechnology, in agricultural and veterinary medicine, is an emerging discipline that can transform both fields by improving productivity, sustainability, and disease control(Kumar et al.). The incorporation of nanoscale technologies, including nanoparticles, nanosensors, and nanocarriers, provides innovative answers to persistent issues in agrochemical efficacy, environmental preservation, and animal welfare. This subject is essential for agricultural innovation and veterinary medicine because it has considerable ramifications for global food security, sustainable agricultural practices, and animal welfare. Despite extensive research in these domains, the long-term impacts of nanoparticles on environmental and biological systems still need to be comprehensively understood, especially regarding their behavior in soil and aquatic environments (Kareem et al. 2022). This chapter seeks to consolidate existing research, emphasizing the applications and hazards of nanotechnology in agriculture and veterinary operations.

Recent studies in North America, Europe, and Asia have highlighted the significance of nanotechnology. Advancements in precision agriculture using nanosensors have markedly enhanced agricultural output and resource management, as evidenced by numerous studies (Ali et al. 2021). Likewise, nanoparticle-based drug delivery methods have revolutionized veterinary medicine by improving disease treatment. These investigations highlight a significant deficiency in understanding the long-term ecological effects of nanomaterials, especially concerning their bioaccumulation, possible toxicity, and degradation mechanisms within ecosystems. Rectifying this deficiency is crucial for ethical advancement and the use of nanotechnology in agriculture and veterinary health (Jafary et al. 2023).

This chapter aims to address this knowledge gap through a thorough literature assessment, emphasizing the shortcomings of prior research. This chapter synthesizes the current accomplishments and future problems, addressing existing gaps while offering new insights into the sustainability and safety of nanotechnology applications (Jafary et al. 2023). The results provide significant insights into the future direction of nanotechnology in agriculture and veterinary sciences, informing subsequent research and policy formulation in these domains.

NANOTECHNOLOGY IN AGRICULTURE: A COMPREHENSIVE OVERVIEW

Historical Development of Nanotechnology in Agriculture

Agricultural nanotechnology is rapidly emerging as a multidimensional domain that has moved from mere plans on the drawing board to activities that have tremendous

impacts on production and the environment. In the early years of the concept of nanotechnology in agriculture, it was more of a research experiment based on using nanostructured materials to improve agricultural practices. Such research in the early days mainly focused on studies of nanoparticles that are known to have unique properties, such as more reactivity, more surface area, and higher solubility, and these can be used to enhance agrochemicals and soil management. As these theories have progressed, they have become a source of inspiration for innovative and excellent practical applications in modern agriculture (Manjunatha et al. 2019).

Manufacturing nanocarriers for agrochemical delivery is one of the most advancements that have been made so far. Conventional methods of fertilizers and pesticides usually entail wastage, as there is unnecessary water pollution from runoff and leaching. Nanocarriers can be used to enclose agrochemicals that are later released in a controlled environment in a directed manner (Wani et al. 2020). For instance, Saranya et al. (2019) showed that 30% fewer chemicals were used when using nanocarriers without loss in net efficiency, improving chemical delivery and decreasing runoff, and hence, the impact on the environment. Not only does this increase grain production potential, but it also solves environmental issues by reducing pollution, thus enhancing the sustainability of agriculture. In addition, recent progress has been made in precision farming using nanosensors and nanodevices. These measurements enable the evaluation of soil and plant conditions, and the presence of pests in a single instance (Usman et al. 2020). For instance, crops could increase yield by 20% when moisture level and nutrient deficiency nanosensors are used. Farmers can make decisions based on actual data to use resources more economically and promptly, to achieve better productivity. By adopting such practices, such investments help extend the efficiency of farming processes with less wastage. Sustainability has emerged as a pillar of agricultural nanotechnology. Enhancing the efficiency of resources such as water, fertilizers, and pesticides also helps reduce the adverse effects of conventional farming methods. Because of nanotechnology, inexpensive chemical inputs, as reported by Hazarika et al. (2022) not only lower farming costs but also minimize the adverse effects of chemical agriculture on ecosystems. Such shifts in environmental consciousness are fundamental for meeting the increased need to sustainably feed the world population. In general, the development of agricultural nanotechnology has brought about remarkable changes, especially regarding agrochemical processing, specific administration precision, and environmentally friendly efforts. These technologies have drastically improved farming without degrading the environment, thus making nanotechnology an essential factor for providing food security in the future (Singh et al. 2021).

CONTEMPORARY APPLICATIONS OF NANOTECHNOLOGY IN AGRICULTURE

The field of nanotechnology has contributed enormously to the development of precision agriculture, which mainly includes incorporating nanosensors and GPS-embedded systems for the enhanced monitoring and management of soils. With the

capability of nanosensors to detect any variation in soil status, farmers can receive critical information about the moisture content, nutrients, and even microorganisms in the soil (Mandal et al. 2020). These nanosensors are GPS-enabled for farmers, allowing accurate mapping of individual areas of interest within the farm, thereby enhancing interventions to the correct location. These advanced monitoring methods improve the sustainability of crop production systems by enhancing the efficiency of water, fertilizer, and pesticides (Shah and Wu 2019). Abdel-Aziz and Heikal (2021) presented another case in which water usage in crops was decreased by 20% through nanosensors for moisture monitoring without compromising the hydration levels essential for plant growth. The effect of real-time information on soil nutrients, whose levels had been established accurately, was studied by Samreen et al. (2022), and applying fertilizers increased crop yields by 15% while controlling runoff and soil erosion.

Soil health is determined using nanosensors to determine microbial activity as they help farmers determine other practices, such as crop rotation and cover cropping, to maximize soil diversity. This enhances the capability of soils to sustain agriculture over the long term and helps ecosystem (Mandal et al. 2020). For example, practices supported by microbial data related to crop management help farmers use less toxic materials and build more productive soils than if nothing is done. More generally, these developments in precision agriculture technologies help the decision-making process, decrease the input of resources, and encourage the implementation of more ecological approaches (Yeshe et al. 2023). As a result, it enhances and preserves the productivity of the right resources through efficient agricultural practices, which will eventually support sustainable food production and environmental safety (Yadav et al. 2023).

There is consensus in the literature on the efficiency of nanosensors in precision agriculture. This is further corroborated by studies that show that these devices effectively manage crop production and resource utilization. Because nanosensors allow for continuous assessment of soil parameters, nutrient contents, or plant conditions, farmers can increase the efficiency of farming activities through sound reasoning aided by available scientific information. For instance, a study by Yeshe et al. (2023) indicated that out of the total water generally used for irrigation purposes, 20% would be achieved when nanosensors were used to monitor soil moisture with optimal growth conditions in place. Similarly, Mandal et al. (2020) illustrated that nanosensors used for precise nutrient monitoring could lead to a 15% reduction in fertilizer usage while increasing crop residue and minimizing fertilizer runoff. The precision of these technologies is seen as part of the solution to the global food insecurity dilemma because they seek to increase food production in acres without denuding them.

Despite these changes, several questions remain regarding the behavior of many nanoparticles over a long period in soil and water environments. Some scholars, however, see the potential of these engineered nanoparticles to break down or be

taken in by plants without causing any adverse effects. For instance, Iqbal et al. (2020) observed the behavior of some nanoparticles in soil systems, which were found to degrade without disrupting nutrient cycles. In this contrasting position, other studies have highlighted the dangers posed by nanoparticles in the environment regarding their degradation and toxicity. On the other hand, Iqbal et al. (2019) highlighted possible adverse effects on the microbial population in soils, ultimately leading to nutrient cycling anomalies and reduced soil productivity. Gade et al. (2023) reported that the transport and leaching of phosphorous and nanoparticle pollutants could harm ecosystem characteristics and functionality, including aquatic biodiversity and water quality. This is because the argument advocates further consideration of the benefits and risks of introducing nanotechnology to the agricultural sector.

INNOVATIONS IN NANOTECHNOLOGY-ENABLED AGROCHEMICALS

Nanopesticides and Nanofertilizers: Enhancing Efficiency and Reducing Environmental Impact

With the use of nano pesticides and nano fertilizers, significant innovations have been made in the production of agrochemicals. These include controlled-release and targeted delivery systems, which cannot be achieved using previous methods. Nanoparticle-based products release their active substances rather slowly and accurately, which has lowered the amount used and minimized the effects on non-target organisms, a problem of traditional powders and sprays. However, these innovations (Padhi and Behera 2021). The targeted delivery of nutrients and pest control agents enhances their efficacy, resulting in high crop yields. For instance, Bratovcic et al. (2021)found that moving to nanopesticides reduced chemical use by 30% and increased pest control efficiency by 20%. Nano fertilizers have been found to increase the number of nutrients absorbed by plants, making them less frequently applied and reducing the amount of nutrients absorbed into the surrounding ecosystem by leaching. This further prevents the release of chemical water and toxins to various water bodies, protects aquatic life, and helps prevent soil pollution (Rehmanullah et al. 2020).

Fundamental innovations, such as nanoscale-controlled release auxiliary material formulations, have positively contributed to the increasing effectiveness of agrochemicals over time. For instance, nanocarriers enclosing polymeric matrices containing fertilizers can release nutrients in response to specific environmental factors, such as the humidity content of the soil and the requirements (Konappa et al. 2021). Moreover, new formulations of nanoparticles have emerged, which are more ecologically advancing the practice of agrochemicals, as they do not leave any toxic residues in the soil because they respire away biodegradably. These innovations have enhanced productivity and sustained agriculture. Nanopesticides and nano fertilizers minimize the use of and ease the application of pesticide practices striving to address global sustainable agriculture practices. These technologies are game changers in the agricultural sector that increase crop production with little or no harm to the

environment, creating a window for safe and effective farming technologies (Sarkar et al. 2021).

Using nanoparticles in agricultural products, such as nano pesticides and nano fertilizers, involves ethical concerns and regulatory measures. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and European Food Safety Authority (EFSA), along with other variations in regulatory settings, need to be more capable of incorporating factors related to the characteristics of nanoparticle suspensions (Arora et al. 2022). Specific evaluations of chemicals by these regulatory institutions fail to adequately consider the risks presented by nanoparticles, especially those that pertain to bioaccumulation in the ecosystem or soil and water for an extended period. Concerns are growing regarding the unknown effects of such nanoparticles on the environment and food health, considering their long-term exposure. Methods such as the fragmentation of bacteria with the use of nanoparticles may also unintentionally affect organisms that are not intended to be targeted, such as valuable insects or soil bacteria, which are necessary for the well-being of the ecosystem. Arora et al. (2022) reported this situation by explaining the possible exposure to nanoparticles through consumable crops due to contamination. Furthermore, the deficiencies identified regarding the innovative testing and authorization processes of nanoparticles and treatment also dampened consumer confidence, as many consumers needed to learn that it entailed any risk (Singh et al. 2021). One of the sociolegal scantinesses is the inability to develop risk assessment guidelines for nanoparticles of these regulations. Such guidelines recognize the available bulk chemicals and ignore specific nanoscale behaviors. In addition, variations in the definition of nanomaterials across agencies hamper the formulation of consistent policies. Policymakers should make it necessary for regulatory agencies to outline the risks of nanoparticles, including their inherent reactivity, solubility, and environmental persistence (Sarkar et al. 2021). Fostering greater public participation and engagement in the regulatory process and conducting more cross-disciplinary research on nanoparticle effects will also be necessary to allow the irresponsible exploitation of nanotechnology in agriculture. At the same time, such risks are expected to be managed safely and ethically by the agricultural sector through effective regulations on nanomaterials as well as increased engagement in governance and evidence-based decision-making (Raj et al. 2021).

Environmental and Ecological Impacts of Nanoparticles in Agriculture

The increasing presence of nanoparticles in various environmental compartments, for example, in soils and waters, is becoming a cause of growing concern, especially in the agricultural sector that utilizes such materials in agrochemical formulations. It has been observed that nanoparticles hurt soil organisms and their companions, such as microorganisms, plants, and invertebrates, which are essential for supporting soil ecosystems. For instance, da Silva Júnior et al. (2022) showed that the oligotrophic growth of standalone microorganisms disrupts the bacterial community composition and functional response to the nutrient cycle through the dispersion and influx of nutrients punctuated by nanoparticles. Such disruptions threaten soil health by losing efficiency in measures such as nitrogen fixation and the decomposition of organic

compounds. However, there is a significant risk associated with the toxicity of nanoparticles to the entire population of living organisms (Mishra et al. 2021). Exposure of sensitive species to long periods of this pollutant can cause a drastic decline or local elimination, as shown in Bandeppa et al. (2019), where nanoparticle exposure considerably reduced the number of soil invertebrate animals. These alterations in the diversity of organisms may have a sequential impact on the processes and services offered by ecological systems that support agricultural production and the soil seedbed (Elhawat et al. 2018).

In recent years, several approaches have been adopted to examine such risks. Bioassays, which assess toxicity based on the behavior of soil organisms exposed to nanoparticles, have become a routine approach for assessing toxicity. For example, McKee and Filser (2016) performed bioassays, proving that nanoparticles decrease the number of earthworms, interfering with aeration and organic matter turnover in soils. Molecular methods, such as metagenomic approaches, are gaining ground in studying the microbial community's composition and functioning to reveal how nanoparticles interfere with microbial dynamics and processes. As with other assessments, some ecotoxicological assessments, which look at the potential risks of dissolvable nanoparticles against essential ecosystem functions of the soil, have also shown that such nanoparticles tend to interfere with the decomposition of organic matter, lowering the nutrient load to plants (Adhikari and Dharmarajan 2022).

Agricultural nanoparticles have an enormous lacuna in terms of their long-term consequences. Uncontrolled accumulation of nanoparticles in the soil may ultimately yield poor cultivation of crops and negatively impact other ecosystem services, including water purification and carbon storage (Elhawat et al. 2018). It has also been shown that, for instance, in Adhikari and Dharmarajan (2022), the food web can also lead to an increase in the amount of nanoparticles in organisms that can negatively affect animals and people. There is still a great deal of uncertainty in our knowledge regarding the exposure of soil and water bodies to nanoparticles over extended periods and the fate, degradation, or even toxicity of nanoparticles toward the organisms within the systems. These gaps can be filled by continuous studies, which are essential for formulating exciting farming methods that are environmentally safe for the application of nanoparticles (Khanna et al. 2021).

The evaluation of the threats posed by nanoparticles in agriculture follows the application of different techniques, each with advantages and disadvantages while contributing to tackling the problem in scope. Usually, the first stage of ascertaining the threats posed by nanoparticles revolves around broader toxicity tests conducted in laboratories. These experiments permit an examination of the effect of such nanoparticles on a particular organism under highly restricted circumstances, and a judicious determination of a toxicity threshold and an operational safe dose (Adhikari and Dharmarajan 2022). However, one drawback of laboratory tests is that they need to reflect how such particles behave in real life, which raises concerns regarding their ecological validity. Field studies seek to eliminate this limitation by assessing how

nanoparticles behave and their effects in situ. Such studies will help reveal the dynamics of nanoparticles in the presence of both living and non-living organisms over time. For instance, Xin et al. (2020) conducted a field study on the impact of ZnO nanomaterials on plant-soil systems. They noted that a high concentration for an extended period may limit microbial activity and nutrient availability. Although field studies are essential for understanding long-term ramifications, they often require several resources, and uncontrollable factors such as weather can further make analyzing data complex and inconsistent (da Silva Júnior et al. 2022).

Computational modeling approaches have emerged as powerful tools for predicting the behavior of nanoparticles in various environmental scenarios. Using existing data, models can simulate nanoparticle transport, bioavailability, and accumulation under different conditions. These models are particularly useful for estimating risks without the need for extensive physical testing, thus making them cost-effective (Mishra et al. 2021). However, their accuracy is highly dependent on the quality of the input data, and assumptions made during modeling can lead to oversimplified conclusions. Over time, the evolution of these methodologies has led to a growing recognition of the need for an integrated approach (Shakya and Ahmad 2021). Combining laboratory tests, field studies, and computational models offers a more comprehensive understanding of the environmental impacts of nanomaterials. Advances in technology, such as high-throughput toxicity testing and sophisticated modeling software, have made it easier to merge data from multiple sources, enabling researchers to assess both immediate and long-term risks more effectively (Silva et al. 2022). By integrating these methodologies, researchers can overcome the limitations of any single approach, providing a holistic view of how nanoparticles behave in agricultural ecosystems.

NANOTECHNOLOGY IN VETERINARY SCIENCES: ENHANCING ANIMAL HEALTH

Nanoparticle-Based Drug Delivery in Veterinary Medicine

The field of veterinary medicine has been revolutionized by formulations that use nanoparticles as a driving force behind advanced drug delivery systems with controlled release capabilities. These systems entrap active pharmaceutical agents within nanoparticles, which directs the active toward the intended tissues and avoids exposure to the whole body, reducing side effects. This approach is most advantageous because it ensures that more medicine is deposited in the diseased area than in healthy tissues. A lower dosing frequency is required because drug levels above the therapeutic minimum may span extended periods without additional doses (Fawzy et al. 2021). This is particularly important for chronic diseases and calls for sustained action of the medication. Disease-specific outcomes can be further improved using nanoparticle-based therapeutics for diseases, such as parasitosis and neoplastic disorders. Effective targeted delivery of these agents to the infection site increases their efficacy and minimizes the chance of resistance development (Youssef et al. 2019). In particular, the use of nanoparticles improves the tumor selectivity of

chemotherapeutic agents at sufficient concentrations, leading to treatment effectiveness with minimal toxicity to healthy tissues. All these modifications are significant steps in the field of pharmacotherapy for animals and increase therapy efficiency along with animal welfare (Chariou et al. 2020).

The incorporation of nanoparticle-based drugs into veterinary practice raises a variety of ethical and regulatory challenges. First, there are safety concerns with this treatment modality because nanoparticles may exhibit unusual behavior when applied in biological systems; current safety concerns center on toxicity, such as bioaccumulation, and unknown long-term effects. Legal provisions on veterinary nanomedicine are still developing and are usually behind those adopted in human medicine. However, in several cases, there are fewer restrictions on the testing of veterinary products, which results in potential deficiencies in the assurance of safety (Kumar et al.). On the other hand, the prescription and procedure of human medicine are well regulated, as federal agencies, such as the FDA, require extensive preclinical and clinical studies to evaluate sensitization. In veterinary practice, the absence of prevention and control recommendations has brought about the use of animal tests, which raises ethical issues regarding the humane treatment of animals used for experimentation. These procedures may be adopted abroad, but such drastic measures must be justified, as analysis of the available information shows that there is no pressing need to risk animal health by the widespread application of these treatments (Jafary et al. 2023). Moreover, ethical issues must also consider the risk-benefit ratio of innovation in treatment. Ethical regulations on animal experiments in nanomedicine must evolve alongside novel emerging therapies to ensure animal protection while continuing to deliver effective therapies(Kumar et al.).

NANOBIOSENSORS FOR DISEASE DETECTION AND HEALTH MONITORING IN LIVESTOCK

Nanobiosensor technology is critical for real-time health care and early diagnosis of animal diseases, thus improving animal welfare and biosecurity. This technology is instrumental in managing livestock herds, where nano biosensors allow farmers to constantly monitor livestock and identify signs of animal disease before an outbreak occurs(Dar et al. 2020). Nanobiosensors, For example, allow the detection of pathogens or markers of inflammation in body fluids for the rapid treatment of infections. This strategy enhances the health of particular animals and prevents the spread of disease within a herd, resulting in losses to farmers and jeopardizing their business. Some such sensors can also capture the surrounding temperature and humidity levels, which are necessary for the animal's well-being and general reduction of stress levels (Neethirajan 2020). Recently, the development of nano biosensors has witnessed rapid changes with the manufacture of cheap portable systems that can analyze data in real time. Nanomaterials have made it easier to attain greater sensitivity and specificity, and fascinating devices have been machined for compelling and sophisticated health examinations. These technologies are improving over time and they continue to bring a turn of events in animal management, healthier

animals, and food security through proper disease control measures (Huang et al. 2022).

Nanobiosensor technologies in veterinary science have shown high efficiency in identifying livestock diseases through the rapid and sensitive identification of biomarkers. These sensors are integrated nanomaterials, which enhance the detection processes, making it possible to continually monitor an animal's health status. Technologies supported by biosensors are applicable in other areas, such as agriculture, where plant health can be gauged and pests or diseases can be diagnosed very early(Jain et al. 2021). Similarly, mildly invasive biosensor approaches could enable the detection of specific plant pathogens or stress markers within plant tissues. For example, an infection-detecting biosensor designed to work on livestock can be reengineered to detect similar plant infections. Some of these benefits can be realized by applying nano biosensor technologies to animal health and agriculture. Within shorter time frames, active diseases in livestock and crops can be controlled to minimize the negative impact on food security(Ghaffar et al. 2020). For the reasons mentioned above, even animal and plant health are simultaneously evaluated and observed, which helps to better manage resources concerning the health of ecosystems. For these reasons, the last one is significant because constraints are expected. Accordingly, changes appear in the sensor's functionalization, and new dominant multi-functional sensor devices have emerged, which target different problems related to agriculture and contribute to sustainable farming methods (Mathivanan 2021).

METHODOLOGICAL COMPARISONS AND RESEARCH TRENDS

Methodological Advances in Nanoparticle Risk Assessment

Techniques such as laboratory-based toxicity tests, field studies, and computational modeling are used to assess risks regarding the safety of nanomaterials in veterinary and agricultural applications. Thus, laboratory toxicity tests include both in vitro and in vivo studies that evaluate the biological activity of nanoparticles by considering parameters such as dose metrics and organ or cellular personal contact activity (Nasirzadeh et al. 2023). Field studies complement these laboratory assessments by providing essential knowledge of how nanomaterials behave and impact agricultural systems over the long term, whereby chronic exposure and environmental factors can be investigated (Pandey et al. 2023). In addition, recent developments in nanoparticle risk assessment incorporate high-throughput screening devices and the omics level of molecular biology. These methodologies eliminate fundamental challenges created by poor physicochemical stability and non-linear biological effects and interactions of nanoparticles while making them viable for clinical and agricultural applications (Ma et al. 2023).

Analysts more or less concur about the need for standard parameters to be included in nanoparticle screening methods. This is mainly observed in toxicity testing, where there is a need to restate and compare the findings of various studies. Many believe that some nanoparticles are less toxic than others depending on their surface coating

and shaping, affecting their behavior in the environment (Tirumala et al. 2021). Nonetheless, there is considerable variation in the application of particular methods, such as in vitro versus in vivo and animal models for human-related health outcomes. Contrary to expectations, conflicting toxicity studies arise because of different factors, some of which, apart from particle size and shape, include the purpose and conditions of exposure. Such methodological differences determine how future studies would need to be conducted, as they indicate that there has to be an agreement on specific aspects of the test (Burden et al. 2021). As scientists feel the need for a more refined approach towards vascular biology and medicine, there is a demand for cross-disciplinary work to investigate nanoparticle-biosystem-environment relations, which enhances the development of guidelines and safety monitoring systems (Gupta et al. 2019).

TRENDS IN RECENT RESEARCH: FOCUS ON SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

There is strong evidence in the current literature that sustainability ideals over topicality have recently become the focus of sustainable nanotechnology studies in agriculture and veterinary medicine. This transformation is reflected in the creation of non-toxic biodegradable nanoparticles and nanoparticles to reduce environmental retention and toxicity (Valle-García et al. 2023). More recently, fertilizers and pesticides in the form of nanoparticles are more effective in absorbing nutrients and pest management and ameliorating chemical runoff, thus ensuring better soil and biological diversity enhancement. Furthermore, the efficacy of veterinary vaccines has been demonstrated using nanocarriers that require lower doses and hence reduce waste and environmental risks (Madanayake et al. 2021). There has also been an increase in the application of nanotechnology in precision agriculture, in which inputs are used sparingly to reduce environmental damage. Classic studies have focused on developing plant-based nanoparticles because they reduce the abuse of synthetic materials and strengthen agricultural activities. In conclusion, emphasis on managing ecological hazards and the application of revolutionary nanotechnologies that promote productivity while preserving the environment is increasingly becoming the norm (Kalia and Sharma 2019). New directions for researchers in applying nanotechnology to agriculture and veterinary sciences seem promising. New approaches, such as biodegradable nanoparticles, are proving useful and environmentally safe for the targeted application of pesticides and nutrients, thus reducing chemical leaching and increasing crop productivity (Singh et al. 2021). Furthermore, creating nanosensors for assessing soil and plant conditions may facilitate the emergence of precision farming, improve efficiency, and cut unnecessary inputs. Risk management policies and regulations are also essential, as they will help ensure the realization of the benefits of nanotechnology. These policies will help to assess the duration of the effects of nanomaterials on the environment and animal health. Sustainable practices will be observed whenever these developments take effect, including minimizing farming methods, decreasing pollutants, and treating animals humanely.

If only the respective technologies were developed and used in agriculture and veterinary practices, existing problems could be solved, thus improving the future (Hazarika et al. 2022).

CONCLUSION

This chapter examined the transformative impact of nanotechnology in agricultural and veterinary medicine, emphasizing notable advancements and applications. Significant findings include the creation of nanocarriers for precise agrochemical distribution, which improves efficiency and sustainability by minimizing chemical consumption and environmental contamination. In veterinary medicine, nanoparticle-based drug delivery technologies have transformed therapies by providing tailored therapies with fewer adverse effects. Nanosensors have significantly enhanced precision agriculture and animal monitoring, facilitating more efficient resource utilization and disease identification. The broader ramifications of these findings indicate that nanotechnology will continue to promote more sustainable and efficient agricultural and veterinary practices. These developments aim to improve food security and animal welfare while addressing environmental issues, including pollution mitigation and resource conservation. Despite these advantages, deficiencies persist in understanding the long-term ecological effects of nanoparticles, especially their interactions in soil and aquatic environments, and their possible toxicity to non-target organisms. Future research must concentrate on extensive environmental studies, the creation of biodegradable nanomaterials, and the enhancement of risk assessment frameworks for nanotechnology applications. Additionally, increased interdisciplinary research is essential to address the knowledge deficiencies in nanoparticle-environment interactions. This review recognizes its constraints, especially regarding the breadth of the chosen literature and the preliminary nature of certain study domains. The discoveries herein provide vital insights into the possibilities of nanotechnology, facilitating more sustainable agricultural and veterinary medical practices. The future of nanotechnology in many domains is auspicious and contingent upon further innovation and prudent regulation.

REFERENCES

- Abdel-Aziz H M and Y M Heikal 2021. Nanosensors for the detection of fertilizers and other agricultural applications. Nanosensors for Environment, Food and Agriculture Vol. 1 157-168
- Adhikari T and R Dharmarajan 2022. Nanocontaminants in soil: emerging concerns and risks. International Journal of Environmental Science and Technology 19: 9129-9148
- Ali A et al., 2021. Role of nanotechnology in animal production and veterinary medicine. Tropical Animal Health and Production 53: 1-14
- Arora S et al., 2022. A comprehensive overview of nanotechnology in sustainable agriculture. Journal of Biotechnology 355: 21-41

- Bandeppa et al., 2019. Soil ecological pros and cons of nanomaterials: impact on microorganisms and soil health. Nanotechnology for agriculture: advances for sustainable agriculture 145-159
- Bratovcic A et al., 2021. Nanopesticides and nanofertilizers and agricultural development: Scopes, advances and applications. Open Journal of Ecology 11: 301-316
- Burden N et al., 2021. Opportunities and challenges for integrating new in vitro methodologies in hazard testing and risk assessment. Small 17: 2006298
- Chariou P L et al., 2020. Nanocarriers for the delivery of medical, veterinary, and agricultural active ingredients. Acs Nano 14: 2678-2701
- da Silva Júnior A H et al., 2022. Impacts of metallic nanoparticles application on the agricultural soils microbiota. Journal of Hazardous Materials Advances 7: 100103
- Dar F A et al., 2020. Nano-biosensors: NextGen diagnostic tools in agriculture. Nanobiotechnology in Agriculture: An Approach Towards Sustainability 129-144
- Elhawat N et al., 2018. Nanoparticle-associated phytotoxicity and abiotic stress under agroecosystems. Phytotoxicity of nanoparticles 241-268
- Fawzy M et al., 2021. Nanoparticles as a novel and promising antiviral platform in veterinary medicine. Archives of virology 166: 2673-2682
- Gade A et al., 2023. Nanofertilizers: the next generation of agrochemicals for long-term impact on sustainability in farming systems. Agrochemicals 2: 257-278
- Ghaffar N et al., 2020. Applications of nanobiosensors in agriculture. Nanoagronomy 179-196
- Gupta A et al., 2019. Challenges for assessing toxicity of nanomaterials. Biochemical toxicology-heavy metals and nanomaterials
- Hazarika A et al., 2022. An overview of the role of nanoparticles in sustainable agriculture. Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology 43: 102399
- Huang Y et al., 2022. Multi-analyte sensing strategies towards wearable and intelligent devices. Chemical Science 13: 12309-12325
- Iqbal M et al., 2019. Nano-fertilization to enhance nutrient use efficiency and productivity of crop plants. Nanomaterials and plant potential 473-505
- Iqbal S et al., 2020. Unraveling consequences of soil micro-and nano-plastic pollution on soil-plant system: Implications for nitrogen (N) cycling and soil microbial activity. Chemosphere 260: 127578
- Jafary F et al., 2023. Veterinary nanomedicine: Pros and cons. Veterinary Medicine and Science 9: 494-506

- Jain U et al., 2021. Nano-Biosensing Devices Detecting Biomarkers of Communicable and Non-communicable Diseases of Animals. Biosensors in Agriculture: Recent Trends and Future Perspectives 415-434
- Kalia A and S P Sharma 2019. Nanomaterials and vegetable crops: realizing the concept of sustainable production. Nanoscience for sustainable agriculture 323-353
- Kareem E H et al., 2022. Application of nanoparticle in the veterinary medicine. Magna Scientia Advanced Research and Reviews 4: 027-038
- Khanna K et al., 2021. Enthralling the impact of engineered nanoparticles on soil microbiome: A concentric approach towards environmental risks and cogitation. Ecotoxicology and environmental safety 222: 112459
- Konappa N et al., 2021. Nanofertilizers and nanopesticides: Recent trends, future prospects in agriculture. Advances in nano-fertilizers and nano-pesticides in agriculture 281-330
- Kumar P et al., Nanotechnology for Animal Sciences-New Insights and Pitfalls: A Review.
- Ma N L et al., 2023. Use, exposure and omics characterisation of potential hazard in nanomaterials. Materials Today Advances 17: 100341
- Madanayake N H et al., 2021. Nanobiotechnology for agricultural sustainability, and food and environmental safety. Quality Assurance and Safety of Crops & Foods 13: 20-36
- Mandal N et al., 2020. Nanobiosensors: recent developments in soil health assessment. Soil analysis: recent trends and applications 285-304
- Manjunatha R et al., 2019. Nanotechnology application in agriculture: A review. Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry 8: 1073-1083
- Mathivanan S 2021. Perspectives of nano-materials and nanobiosensors in food safety and agriculture. Novel nanomaterials 197:
- McKee M S and J Filser 2016. Impacts of metal-based engineered nanomaterials on soil communities. Environmental Science: Nano 3: 506-533
- Mishra D et al., 2021. Engineered Nanoparticles in Agro-ecosystems: Implications on the Soil Health. Plant-Microbes-Engineered Nano-particles (PM-ENPs) nexus in agro-ecosystems: Understanding the interaction of plant, microbes and engineered nano-particles (ENPS) 103-118
- Nasirzadeh N et al., 2023. Laboratory activities involving nanomaterials: risk assessment and investigating researchers symptoms. Nanoscale 15: 2674-2689

- Neethirajan S 2020. Transforming the adaptation physiology of farm animals through sensors. Animals 10: 1512
- Padhi S and A Behera 2021. Nano-enabled approaches for the suitable delivery of fertilizer and pesticide for plant growth. Plant Growth-Promoting Microbes for Sustainable Biotic and Abiotic Stress Management 355-394
- Pandey R P et al., 2023. Experimental methods for the biological evaluation of nanoparticle-based drug delivery risks. Pharmaceutics 15: 612
- Raj S N et al., 2021. A comprehensive review on regulatory invention of nano pesticides in Agricultural nano formulation and food system. Journal of Molecular Structure 1239: 130517
- Rehmanullah et al., 2020. Application of nanoparticles in agriculture as fertilizers and pesticides: challenges and opportunities. New frontiers in stress management for durable agriculture 281-293
- Samreen T et al., 2022. Role of Nanotechnology in Precision Agriculture. Environmental Sciences Proceedings 23: 17
- Saranya S et al., 2019. Nanotechnology in agriculture. Nanotechnology for agriculture: advances for sustainable agriculture 1-17
- Sarkar N et al., 2021. Nano-fertilizers and Nano-pesticides as Promoters of Plant Growth in Agriculture. Plant-Microbes-Engineered Nano-particles (PM-ENPs) nexus in agro-ecosystems: Understanding the interaction of plant, microbes and engineered nano-particles (ENPS) 153-163
- Shah F and W Wu 2019. Soil and crop management strategies to ensure higher crop productivity within sustainable environments. Sustainability 11: 1485
- Shakya A and F Ahmad 2021. Threats of Nano-material Contamination in Agroecosystem: What We Know and What We Need to Know. Sustainable Agriculture Reviews 50: Emerging Contaminants in Agriculture 311-339
- Silva S et al., 2022. Titanium and zinc based nanomaterials in agriculture: A promising approach to deal with (a) biotic stresses? Toxics 10: 172
- Singh H et al., 2021. Recent advances in the applications of nano-agrochemicals for sustainable agricultural development. Environmental Science: Processes & Impacts 23: 213-239
- Singh R P et al., 2021. Nanoparticles in sustainable agriculture: An emerging opportunity. Journal of controlled release 329: 1234-1248
- Tirumala M G et al., 2021. Novel methods and approaches for safety evaluation of nanoparticle formulations: A focus towards in vitro models and adverse outcome pathways. Frontiers in pharmacology 12: 612659

- Usman M et al., 2020. Nanotechnology in agriculture: Current status, challenges and future opportunities. Science of the total environment 721: 137778
- Valle-García J D et al., 2023. Integration of eco-friendly biological and nanotechnological strategies for better agriculture: a sustainable approach. Agricultural and Environmental Nanotechnology: Novel Technologies and Their Ecological Impact 647-674
- Wani T A et al., 2020. Embodiment of nanobiotechnology in agriculture: An overview. Nanobiotechnology in Agriculture: An Approach Towards Sustainability 113-128
- Xin X et al., 2020. Comparative assessment of polymeric and other nanoparticles impacts on soil microbial and biochemical properties. Geoderma 367: 114278
- Yadav A et al., 2023. Emerging frontiers in nanotechnology for precision agriculture: advancements, hurdles and prospects. Agrochemicals 2: 220-256
- Yeshe A et al., 2023. Application of wireless nano sensors network and nanotechnology in precision agriculture. International Journal of Advances in Agricultural Science and Technology 10: 36-65
- Youssef F S et al., 2019. Application of some nanoparticles in the field of veterinary medicine. International journal of veterinary science and medicine 7: 78-93

CHAPTER- 20

USE OF NANO-PARTICLES FOR TREATING VARIOUS DISEASES

Umber Rauf[1], Sundas Mariyam[2], Mubashra Ashraf[3], Aqsa Arif[4*], Mr Hafiz Misbah ud din[5], Syed Haroon Haidar[6], Mahroz Ul Hassan[7], Shahzada Khurram Adrian Shah[8], Sehar Rafique[9] and Muhammad Zubair Ali[10]

[1]Veterinary Research Institute, Zarar Shaheed Road Lahore Cantt, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[2]Department of Pharmaceutical Chemistry, The Islamia University of Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

[3]Department of Pharmacy Practice, The Islamia of University Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

[*4]Department of Plant Pathology, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

[5]Department of Pharmaceutics, Faculty of Pharmacy, The Islamia of University Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

[6]Department of Zoology, University of Education Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[7]University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Sub campus CVAS Jhang, Punjab, Pakistan

[8]Department of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, The University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Swat, KPK, Pakistan

[9]Department of Zoology, University of Education, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[10]Department of Biotechnology, University of Sargodha, Punjab, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533502

ABSTRACT

Nanoparticles are becoming a revolutionary medical instrument, especially in personalized medicines, diagnostics, and gene-editing technologies like CRISPR-Cas9. This chapter extensively analyses recent progress in nanoparticle-based delivery methods, emphasizing their applicability in genetic disorders, malignancies, and viral infections. It examines recent advancements in theranostic nanoparticles that concurrently diagnose and cure diseases, emphasizing the transformative impact of precise drug delivery on healthcare. The chapter also discusses the difficulties of expanding nanoparticle production for clinical applications, analyzing how technical innovations fulfill the requirements for scalable, safe, and effective therapies. The chapter outlines significant areas for improvement in current research, especially regarding nanoparticle utilization's long-term safety and environmental impact, and suggests future research directions. This synthesis presents novel insights into the regulatory and manufacturing challenges related to nanoparticles, including recommendations for future advancements in the sector. This chapter's findings are highly significant for researchers, policymakers, and practitioners involved in the safe and effective implementation of nanomedicine.

Keywords: Nanoparticles, CRISPR-Cas9, Personalized Medicine, Theranostics, Drug Delivery, Toxicity, Nanomedicine Scalability

INTRODUCTION

The application of nanoparticles in the medical field is a much-debated concern in the biotechnological and medical field due to its consequences on developing individualized treatment methods, diagnostics and gene editing systems. Nanoparticles have altered and revolutionized the approaches to designing and diagnosing complex disorder systems by facilitating targeted treatment and increased therapeutic outcomes (Shepherd et al. 2021). However, despite the large cluster of collected data, poorly characterized areas still exist, especially regarding how nanoparticle-based systems can be scaled up and whether they are safe for prolonged use (Cheng et al. 2023). This chapter intends to provide the literature to clarify the relevance and the role of nanoparticles in medicine, focusing on such directions as individual treatment approaches, delivery of CRISPR-Cas9, theranostics, and minimization of toxicity.

Recent research has indicated an increased interest in nanoparticles in the treatment of hereditary diseases, cancers, and viral infections, mainly in CRISPR-Cas9 gene-editing delivery systems. For instance, lipid nanoparticles have been effective in gene therapy of hereditary diseases, while gold nanoparticles are emerging in cancer therapy (Piperno et al. 2021). Nevertheless, while such studies have contributed to a better characterization of nanoparticle-mediated therapies, they also highlight a significant deficiency in the aspects related to the production volume of nanoparticles and the harmful effects that nanoparticle sickness and waste will cumulatively pose to the environment and health (Kumah et al. 2023). These knowledge gaps need to be addressed to promote the clinical application of nanotechnology in medicine.

Despite this wealth of information on applications of nanoparticles, one significant concern still exists regarding how safe or scalable these systems are (Accomasso et al. 2018). This chapter further elaborates on these gaps through a systematic review, focusing on the gaps caused by the deficit of studies dealing with the regulatory and production barriers. In addition to tackling the limitations above, this review will convey more information regarding the future strategies in the field of nanomedicine with an emphasis on theranostics and reduction of nanotoxicity.

GENERAL OVERVIEW OF NANOPARTICLES IN BIOMEDICAL APPLICATIONS

Evolution of Nanoparticle Use in Medicine

The journey of nanoparticles toward noble cause as an application in the biomedical field is quite exciting and fast emerging. A nanoparticle is a particle in the range of 1 – 100 nanometers, and nanomedicine is presently being hailed as the most profound value-adding sector revolutionizing diagnostics and therapeutics (Wang et al. 2022). Early in this field, there were severe problems in minimizing the particle into the nanoparticle, especially the nanoparticle size, shape, and surface property

composition. This is important for cellular uptake, biodistribution, and minimizing toxicity (Mitchell et al. 2021).These earlier investigations mainly made development more difficult for others as it was necessary to conduct extensive research to comprehend the multifaceted relationships between the nanoparticles and biological organisms .

Nevertheless, several critical advances in the design and engineering of nanoparticles provided a platform for their acceptance in drug delivery and medical imaging (Chandrakala et al. 2022). The issue revolved around one of the early notable steps known as lipid structures that are filmed into drug delivery vesicles, for example, liposomes, wherein the lipid layer can enclose a preloaded drug. This resulted in enhanced targeting of the cells or tissues that needed the treatment, thereby increasing the efficacy of the treatment with fewer adverse effects (Fernandez-Fernandez et al. 2023). The first successful application of drug delivery using liposomes was a structure composed of two lipid layers and involving the work of Alec Bangham during the late 1960s and after, the targeting of drug carriers and any other forms of stimuli has further advanced the use of liposomes in the treatment of cancer and even in the administration of vaccines (Filipczak et al. 2020). Combining the advancement of cancer therapy with the improved formulation of drugs further progressed around the nineteen seventies and eighties. Some earlier mini emulsion applicants like Peter Speiser or Richard Langer applied to improve drug formulations and delivery systems with the help of these nanoparticles (Mitchell et al. 2021). This became important in the creation of treatment of several diseases, including cancers and advanced automated diseases, as well as in vaccines (Mitchell et al. 2021). Similarly, polymeric nanoparticles have progressed and found application in gene therapy, where they are currently used to transfer genes effectively (Piperno et al. 2021). Nanoparticles, however, have not only focused on improving drug delivery but also on the diagnosis. Quantum dots are particularly interesting as they possess specific optical properties that help visualize biological tissues at the molecular level. This success raised the level and effectiveness of diagnosis at earlier and more acute stages of diseases such as cancer, increasing the effectiveness of patient treatment (Bai et al. 2020). Considering stability and the fact that the surfaces could be easily modified, gold nanoparticles have found numerous applications in imaging and biosensing, allowing visualization of the progress of various diseases (Dadabaev et al. 2023). Nanoparticle studies have become more advanced thanks to improvements in synthesis techniques and apparatus for analysis like electron microscopy and dynamic light scattering (Kim et al. 2018) . Such developments have assisted scientists in gaining more knowledge of the nanoparticle's attributes, thus facilitating a reasonable advancement of more efficient drugs (Mitchell et al. 2021). Electron microscopy has helped resolve the structure of the nanoparticles and dynamic light scattering in ascertaining the size distribution of the particles, which is paramount to how they would be used in vivo. In conclusion, it is clear that the initial studies performed on nanoparticles as drug carriers gave a tremendous lift to the field of nanomedicine. By solving the first problems of synthesis and characterization of the nanoparticles, the researchers have

created the 'platform' for forming the active markets for therapeutics and diagnostics based on nanoparticles that the medicine of the future continues to possess (Bubnov et al. 2023).

TYPES OF NANOPARTICLES IN MEDICAL TREATMENT

Nanoparticles have become a growing area of interest for several medical uses, especially drug delivery and therapy. There are four main categories of nanoparticles, including liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, metallic nanoparticles, and magnetic nanoparticles as shown in Figure 1 (Le et al. 2022). Among other advanced drug carriers, liposomes are self-formed bilayer phospholipid structures that can incorporate polar and nonpolar drugs, eliminating their instability while enhancing their pharmacokinetics. Their related parameters, such as size, surface charge, and lipid composition, can be engineered to enhance circulation half-life, cell uptake, and targeting (Drescher and van Hoogevest 2020). One of the standard methods for modifying the surface of liposomes is PEGylation, which aims to increase the blood circulation of the liposomes and prevents immune clearance by attaching PEG chains (van der Koog et al. 2022). Many studies have been conducted on using liposomes to carry chemotherapeutic drugs, immunopharmaceuticals, and antiinflammatory drugs such as Doxil, a liposomal doxorubicin formulation developed for cancer therapy (Thi et al. 2021).

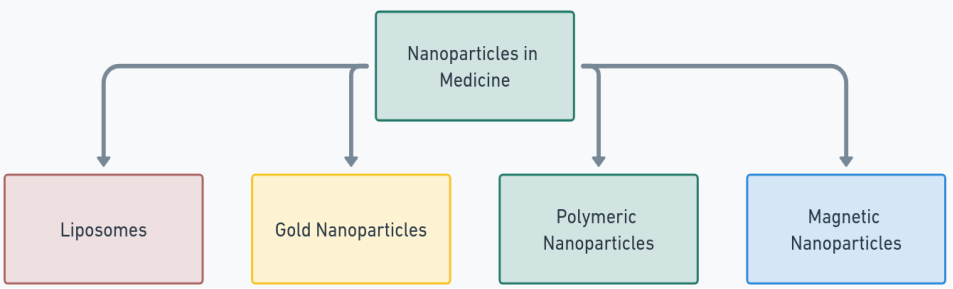


Figure 1: This diagram illustrates many categories of nanoparticles, including Liposomes, Gold Nanoparticles, Polymeric Nanoparticles, and Magnetic Nanoparticles, alongside their medical applications.

These nanoparticles serve various functions, including medication delivery in oncology, targeted therapy for viral infections, imaging contrast agents (MRI, X-ray), photothermal therapy, controlled drug release, gene therapy, and hyperthermia therapy. Polymeric nanoparticles, made of biocompatible, biodegradable polymers like PLGA or chitosan, are regarded as agents that can modify drug release profiles, solubility, and cellular uptake. Such nanoparticles can incorporate ligands to enable targeted delivery and increase tissue-specific interaction (Ding and Zhu 2018). Folate receptors are modifications that can help precisely deliver drugs to cancer cells. Polymeric nanoparticles find wide applications in gene therapy, cancer therapy, and tissue engineering (Meylina et al. 2023). Richard Langer's studies are one of the evidence they obtained the polymeric nanoparticles' advantages in therapeutic

delivery of DNA's and siRNAs in genetic disorders, thus being strategically important for gene therapy (Swetha et al. 2023).

Metallic nanoparticles like gold, silver, and iron oxide have distinct properties that depend on size, surface area, and optical properties. Metal gold nanoparticles are essential in Photothermal therapy, which involves using light to warm up the structures around the tumor, destroying the tumor cells without affecting the surrounding tissues. Libraries feature laser light at the target and bomb underlying tissue (Sun et al. 2022). Only cell pores are in the Surface-functional inscribing a ligand leads to highly precise targeting of corners (Bubnov et al. 2023). Magnetic iron oxide nanoparticles can be directed to places of interest by applying magnetic fields, thus applicable for drug delivery and as an MRI contrast medium. Such studies have shown that iron oxide nanoparticles are compatible with dextran or such biocompatible coatings, which help make the particle more biocompatible and retort the agglomeration (Woodard et al. 2018).

Tissue scaffolds composed of iron oxide-based materials, implemented in the superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles, may be used to control the delivery of bioactive molecules to specific tissues (Tavares et al. 2023). Superparamagnetic MRI contrast agents are innovative biodegradable materials that can be given locally in response to a stimulus or to enhance a drug's action (Wang et al. 2021). SPIONs are magnetic nanoparticles that can be controlled from a distance using a magnetic field. These nanoparticles can be functionalized by targeting ligands/imaging agents/drugs to furnish nanocarriers that allow for combinational therapy, diagnosis, and evaluation of therapeutic effects through imaging (Wang et al. 2021). Investigations of targeted delivery systems using SPIONs in treating disorders are being undertaken at present, and the potential of their regenerative properties for the repair of issues and regeneration of bone is being explored (Vangijzegem et al. 2023). The rising need to eliminate shortcomings such as excessive systemic toxicity, poor solubility, and low bioavailability of conventional drug delivery methods stimulates the advancement of these various nanoparticle systems. Through surface functionalization, targeted ligands, and advanced drug release control, these nanoparticles have become crucial in personalized and precision medicine and its safe and effective drug delivery (Hong et al. 2023).

NANOPARTICLES IN DISEASE-SPECIFIC THERAPEUTIC APPROACHES

Nanoparticles in Cancer Therapy

Nanoparticles' influence in targeting drugs to the disease and diagnosis has changed the dynamics of cancer therapeutics. Nanoparticles are structures that can range in size from about 1 nm to about 100nm in diameter. These particles have unique physical and chemical properties that will improve the success of any cancer treatment (Fernandez-Fernandez et al. 2023). The creation of nanosystems has the advantage of enabling a localized treatment of a disease, which promises the delivery of cytotoxic drugs only to the cancerous tumor tissues, hence improving response to treatment while detracting the adverse effects (Joo et al. 2020). Therapeutic

nanoparticles can also be constructed about the drugs to improve the shelf-life and be released only in the area of the tumor to retain the effects at the intended target. This technology is made possible by the enhanced permeability and retention effect (EPR), which seeks to exploit the abnormal blood vessels and the poor lymphatics of solid tumors (Baldassari et al. 2018). The EPR effect allows the retention of the drug inside the tumor and protects the normal tissues from the adverse effects of the drugs to a great extent as shown in Figure 2. This leads to better treatment outcomes than if one used conventional chemotherapy (Subhan et al. 2021).

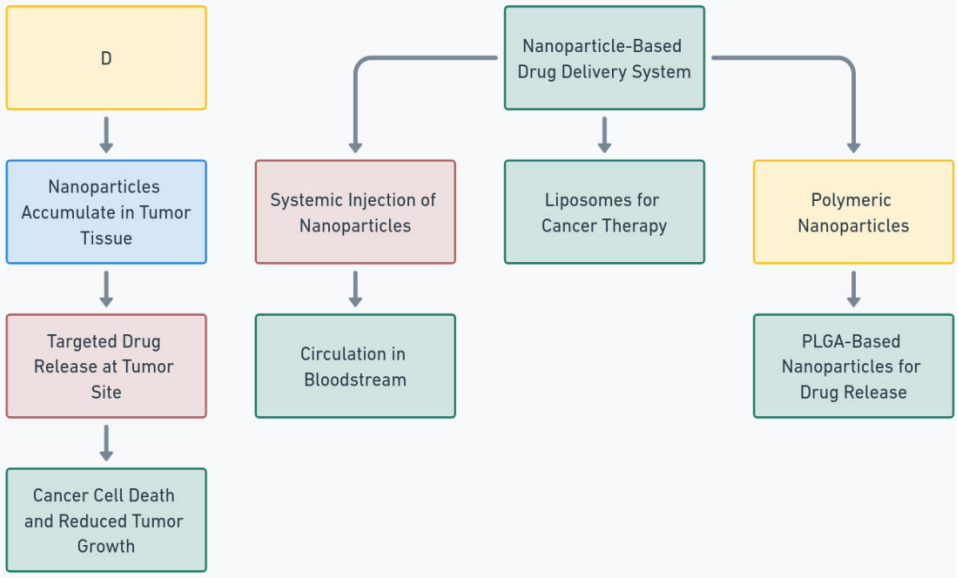


Figure 2: This diagram elucidates the mechanism by which nanoparticles enable targeted drug delivery to malignant cells via the Enhanced Permeability and Retention (EPR) Effect labeled as D, facilitating the accumulation of nanoparticles within tumor tissues. It emphasises the application of liposomes (e.g., Doxorubicin-encapsulated liposomes) and polymeric nanoparticles (e.g., PLGA-derived nanoparticles) in oncological therapy, resulting in targeted drug delivery and apoptosis of cancer cells.

However, the clear disadvantage of classical chemotherapy is the lack of material selective and focal action on only cancer cells and not on the neoplasm and surrounding healthy tissues. Such non-specificity about treatment modalities is coupled with several undesirable side effects, which include nausea, weakness, and suppression of the immune system (Fernandez-Fernandez et al. 2023). More therapeutic response has been obtained from Doxil, a PEGylated formulation of doxorubicin, in light of its ability to target the tumor and the consequential decrease in the undesirable effects of the drug. The cardiotoxic effects of Doxil are also much reduced compared to the course regimen of injections with doxorubicin and other conventional forms of treatment (Cheng et al. 2014).

Also, the return of cancer after treatment and diagnosis with the use of nanoparticles for imaging has revolutionized the management of cancer. The nanoparticles can also possess magnetic contrast reagents (MR imaging or PET imaging agents) to monitor tumor progress with a combination of specific imaging modalities (Bubnov et al. 2023). For instance, gold nanoparticles are incorporated during CT scan imaging owing to their heavy atomic number, facilitating high retention of small tumors within the imaging equipment. Such imaging techniques based on the use of nanoparticles retrieve tumor information in much more detail in every aspect possible, including the dimensionality of cysts, the location, and the level of tissue change (Tay et al. 2021). To summarize, nanomedicine has improved the specificity of targeted drug delivery techniques and diagnostic approaches. This is mainly attributed to the exceptional characteristics of the nanoparticles, which enable researchers and doctors to achieve specific delivery of anticancer medications, lower toxins, and improve the detection and tracking of cancers. This is a great improvement compared to conventional chemotherapy methods, which still have challenges like non-targeted delivery and issues of systemic toxicity (Yan et al. 2020).

Recent Innovations in Cancer Treatment

For the last few years, much research and development has gone in the direction of theranostic nanoparticles, allowing specialized cancer treatment. These magnetic nanoparticles that can treat and diagnose have brought a new dawn in the cancer treatment sector by positioning drugs and giving feedback on progress. Such nanoparticles have a good scope and are helpful for cancer drugs by enhancing the therapeutic index by increasing the level of a drug at the tumor site and reducing the exposure of normal tissues to the drug (Yan et al. 2020). In the past 5 to 10 years, theranostic nanoparticles have been demonstrated to enhance the efficacy of cancer therapies in some studies. For example, the use of gold nanoparticles for drug delivery has gained popularity, especially for targeting tumor cells, while the same nanoparticles are also used for CT scans (Singh et al. 2018). A Recent study by Huang et al. (2023) showed that gold nanoparticles, which are functionalized with targeting groups, could be used to deliver chemotherapy drugs into cells and allow imaging of tumors while treatment is ongoing. In a similar vein, polymeric nanoparticles such as the ones used in Doxil PEGylated liposomes have the properties of both drug delivery and imaging diagnosis, greatly enhancing the treatment waste in the clinical aspect (Kim et al. 2018).

Recent advancements also include the creation of stimuli-activated nano-scaled drugs. In other words, these nanoparticles are engineered to trigger drug release in response to specific environmental stimuli such as pH levels, redox potential, and the activity of specific enzymes in tumor tissues (Bubnov et al. 2023). A few authors Li et al. (2022)have worked on these pH-sensitive nanoparticles for cancer therapy, and it was found that while targeting the tumors, pH-sensitive drugs loaded within the nanoparticles can be released only at the acidic tumor site without affecting the respective healthy tissues. These nanoparticles are embedded with the drug in such a way that it remits the drug only in the localized area of disease (Verkhovskii et al.

2023). Besides the new drugs, the new strategies facilitating multimodal imaging have become the basic dosage form of theranostic nanoparticles. It has also been demonstrated that such nanoparticles may combine imaging agents of various imaging modalities, including MRI, PET, and fluorescent imaging, within a single particle or even an entire nanoparticle platform. Using this multimodal imaging, it becomes possible to simultaneously evaluate the tumor volume, its anatomical localization, and changes in the pathology, which can become a basis for selecting the most effective therapy for a patient (Pratiwi et al. 2020). For example, in a study by Li et al. (2022), the possibility of using iron oxide nanoparticles for drug delivery and MRI was presented, suggesting improvement in treatment assessment and therapy modification in the process.

Although notable strides have been made concerning theranostic nanoparticles, the system still has issues. Issues such as tissue-specific targeting, blood stability, and biological and pharmacological properties need further improvement (Pratiwi et al. 2020). Nevertheless, some attempts to overcome these barriers can be noted. Surface modifications, being a focus of current studies, aim to increase the time nanoparticles remain in circulation and ensure minimum immune system clearance, as in the case of PEGylated nanoparticles studied by Kim et al. (2019), which aim to enhance tissue targeting and off-target effect minimization. Cumulatively, these findings testify that the application of theranostic nanoparticles in the management of cancer patients significantly improves drug delivery and diagnosis in patients receiving such therapy (Chavda et al. 2023). There have been considerable changes within the last 5 to 10 years in the advancement of this area, where studies have shown that only improvement in treatment targeting and monitoring was achieved with offending. Limitations posed by unrevolutionized barriers give an impression that theranostic nanoparticles will be used in the future of cancer treatment with increasing efficiency (Fernandez-Fernandez et al. 2023).

APPLICATIONS OF NANOPARTICLES IN CARDIOVASCULAR AND INFECTIOUS DISEASE MANAGEMENT

Nanoparticle Applications in Cardiovascular Disease: Diagnostics and Treatment

Nanoparticles have gained popularity as a new, innovative means of diagnosing and treating cardiovascular diseases, particularly through advantages in specific or localized drug delivery, stent design, and imaging techniques (Chavda et al. 2023). Unlike conventional methods of treating patients with standard drug-eluting stents or using other imaging methods, treatments based on nanoparticles are more accurate, effective, and safe. Even at that, nanoparticles have improved the diagnosis of cardiovascular diseases by earlier detection of the hardening of arteries (Cherian et al. 2020). This chapter also includes contrast agents for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and positron emission tomography (PET) based on nanosized gold particles or liposomes. These technologies enable the diagnosis of atherosclerotic plaques at earlier time points suitable for preventive interventions.

For instance, recent studies have shown that nanoparticles conjugated with targeting ligands encapsulated within liposomes can target atherosclerotic plaques, unlike other imaging modalities (Li et al. 2023).

Active drug-loaded nanoparticles have been engineered to be highly site-specific to atherosclerotic lesions within treatment plans. Owing to enhanced drug retention in the target site, these nanoparticles lessen the off-target effect, a problem usually experienced in traditional cardiovascular interventions (Hossaini Nasr and Huang 2021). Nanopolymeric buildups have recently been published as being loaded with anti-inflammatory or anti-proliferative drugs to transport them to the site of atherosclerosis, where they will increase the probability of curing the ailments (Perera et al. 2023). In addition to the above, the stent fabrication has been done using coatings with nanoparticles, allowing the release of these agents, preventing restenosis, and enhancing vascular healing far better than drug-eluting stents using bare metal (Wu et al. 2024).

- Nanoparticles also have an emerging application of aiding in tissue engineering and regeneration. Nanoparticles have also been employed as an artificial vascular matrix to facilitate the regeneration of damaged cardiovascular tissues (Nazarnezhad et al. 2020). Furthermore, studies have demonstrated the benefits of growth factor-loaded mesoporous silica nanoparticles in promoting progenitor cell proliferation and the self-repair of cardiac tissues following injury (Jang et al. 2019). In summary, cardiovascular treatment, stressing methods like nanoparticle application, is undoubtedly beneficial and has more advantages than traditional approaches. The opportunity of selective site action, increasing diagnostics, and the delivery of therapy make them a true revolution in the field of cardiovascular diseases (Perera et al. 2023).

Nanoparticles in Infectious Disease Management: Vaccines and Antimicrobial Applications

Nanoparticles are used with increasing frequency to treat infectious diseases, enabling new strategies for vaccines, antiviral drugs, and bactericides. In the case of the COVID-19 pandemic, the development of vaccine technologies based on nanoparticles has made transformations, providing several advantages over the traditional vaccine approaches regarding their stability, delivery, and immune response (Guimaraes et al. 2024). There is more efficient antigen presentation with nanoparticle-based vaccines than conventional inactivated or live-attenuated vaccinations. Such vaccines encapsulating viral antigens in nanoparticles assist in achieving targeting of the immune system, thus improving immunogenicity and decreasing the dose within the limits of cylindrical (Nel and Miller 2021). For example, nanoparticle vaccines such as the COVID-19 vaccine by Novavax have been proven to be more stable and durable than conventional vaccines, making them easy to store and distribute. Another difference with conventional vaccines is that due to the nature of the platforms, it is possible to include several antigens that would be effective against rapidly changing viruses (Niu et al. 2023). The same principles and

strategies applied in the construction of the antimicrobial nanoparticles were equally successful in developing other methods for treating bacterial and viral infections, for instance, combating antibiotic resistance and the evolution of viruses. The bacteria-targeting silver and copper-based nanoparticles have been found to disrupt microbial membranes and interfere with viral replication. For example, silver nanoparticles have demonstrated effective antibacterial activity against many bacteria, including antibiotic-resistant strains (Niu et al. 2023). Likewise, copper nanoparticles have shown considerable antiviral activity against SARS-CoV-2, suggesting the capability to replace traditional antiviral agents (Kubo et al. 2022). Recently, the development of multifunctional nanoparticle platforms has enabled vaccines, antivirals, and antibiotics to be combined into a system on a single platform. These innovations significantly improve conventional monofunctional systems since the abovementioned platforms can incorporate and distribute medical therapies and simultaneously diagnose in real-time. That integration allows effective treatment against both antivirus and antibacterial agents, especially when viral mutations or bacterial strains are resistant to antibiotics and other treatments (Kumar et al. 2022).

Nanoparticle-based technologies have been comparably more reliable than traditional vaccines and antimicrobial drugs. Nanoparticles can be modified with conjugating ligands or surface modifications to enhance drug-targeting specificity and tissue penetration. This ensures that treatment efficacy is increased while reducing unwanted effects that are usually observed in cases of treatment with conventional antimicrobials (Junyaprasert and Thummarati 2023). The COVID-19 crisis has accelerated research endeavors for nanoparticle-based vaccines and antimicrobial nanoparticles, categorizing these technologies as new and modern approaches to curbing infectious diseases (Mahmud et al. 2022). Recent improvements have shown that they can surpass the drawbacks posed by conventional therapies, thus providing answers to the rising threats of infectious diseases with better options that are more efficient, adaptable, and cost-effective (Mencacci et al. 2023).

TOXICITY AND SAFETY CONCERNS IN NANOPARTICLE APPLICATIONS

Toxicological Studies, Health Effects, and Toxicity Reduction Strategies in Nanoparticle Applications

Recently, toxicological studies have investigated the health risks associated with various nanoparticles used for medical applications, particularly their genotoxicity, cytotoxicity, and bioavailability. Silver and gold nanoparticles are common metallic nanoparticles, which are associated with cytotoxicity, cell and tissue destruction, and surface site reactivity, which is capable of inflicting cellular death and damaging DNA. However, polymeric nanoparticles, which are of lesser toxicity, pose risks of retention in body fluids, implying possible risks to health with prolonged use. Nanoparticle toxicity is regularly correlated with their size, surface properties, and the concentration of nanoparticles in clouds, dendrites, or cells (Sukhanova et al. 2018). Toxicity level of high surface area to volume ratio nanoparticles, like quantum dots,

as in the case of nanoparticles, is usually very high. For example, quantum dots are photostable particles, but their introduction is often leveled with genotoxic effects, mainly owing to their active interaction with cell nuclei. Moreover, the amount of nanoparticles in human tissues is also dictated by their biological availability in those tissues (Sadr et al. 2023). In order to reduce toxicity, researchers have exploited several approaches, including surface alterations and biocompatible coatings. A typical surface modification to nanoparticles, polyethylene glycol incorporation, increases the stability of the nanoparticles and decreases their detection by the immune system in the host, therefore ameliorating the side effects (Kumar and Lim 2021). For instance, gold nanoparticles coated with PEG have shown reduced toxicity and increased blood circulation time. Another biocompatible alternative is chitosan coatings that increase the biological compatibility of the nanoparticles without losing any therapeutic purpose (Kim et al. 2018).

Nevertheless, despite these advances, the goal of fulfilling effectiveness with safety is still a significant concern. Surface scientific modifications such as PEGylation help minimize nanoparticle toxicity; their therapeutic potential may be compromised in the process. Where specific bodily regions of nanoparticle accumulation are generally avoided through clearance mechanisms, the impact of such deposition should still be evaluated (Xue et al. 2018). To sum up, while notable strides have been made towards reducing the toxicity associated with nanoparticles, more work is still needed to advance strategies aimed at combating toxicity in order to appreciate the potential benefits of medical therapies involving these types of nanoparticles, which other studies on gold, silver, and quantum dot nanoparticles have backed (Xiong et al. 2022).

ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT, REGULATORY CHALLENGES, AND PUBLIC PERCEPTION OF NANOPARTICLE PRODUCTION AND USE IN MEDICINE

Recent toxicological studies have illustrated the effect of producing nanoparticles for medical purposes on the environment, specifically the risks of production-related and disposal-related contaminations. Air, water, and soil contamination could be caused by unnecessary nanoparticle waste, which harms the environment and man. These factors encouraged researchers to seek waste minimization methods and recycle nanomaterials to extract and utilize some valuable materials. These processes include some waste reduction practices that are being used in the recycling of electronics, which can potentially reduce nanoparticle waste generated but still need to be well-developed as far as remolding of the health care industry is concerned (Sahoo et al. 2024). It is essential to reduce injury to the environment, and countries differ in the laws governing nanoparticle-based therapies. In Europe, however, stricter and more detailed guidelines instruct that harmful nanoparticles should go through more tests and monitoring before coming into the market due to publicity pressure. On the other hand, the United States is more liberal in this regard; there is no compulsory preliminary testing for such products, but rather, agencies evaluate the products and the ways of administering each individualized therapy. These variations can be

attributed to the influence of public opinion on regulatory action. In Europe, rising public concern about the possible long-term effects of nanoparticles has resulted in stricter regulation, whereas, in the US, more rapid approval is sometimes reported depending on provider perception of circumstances rather than formal analysis of risk (Kad et al. 2020).

Society's awareness of nanotechnology is vital in making regulatory choices. Acceptance of particles has not been widespread in some regions because there is a fear of the potential adverse impact of these particles over long-term use (Saleem and Zaidi 2020). Several studies have shown that the fear of using nanomedicine among the general population, particularly in countries such as Germany and France, has led regulatory bodies to issue stricter regulations. Thereupon, researchers tried to restore the situation by improving transparency and mainly conducting evidence-based studies on the outcomes of potential nanoparticle therapies De Jong et al. (2022). Lastly, addressing the ecological challenge posed by the manufacture of nanomaterials while ensuring that policy regulations are made considering the societal viewpoint is essential in fostering the advancement of nanomedicine. Waste reduction methods and policy measures appropriate to specific territories will be crucial in addressing the risks associated with these new technologies versus their advantages (Kad et al. 2020).

FUTURE PROSPECTS AND INNOVATIONS IN NANOPARTICLE TECHNOLOGY

Personalized Nanomedicine, CRISPR-Cas9 Delivery, and Methodological Innovation in Scalability

Nanoparticles have found their position as an important component of personalized medicine, mainly for delivering gene-editing technologies, CRISPR-Cas9, to treat genetic disorders, cancers, and viral infections as shown in figure 3. For dots, the latest developments in nanoparticle-mediated delivery systems have shown the potential to extend the boundaries associated with traditional drug delivery methods, improving the accuracy of CRISPR-Cas9 methods and minimizing off-target activities (Sinclair et al. 2023). For instance, the use of lipid nanoparticles has also been envisaged for the delivery of CRISPR-Cas9 gene editing therapeutics for treating inherited disorders like Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Also, unlike the adverse side effects of the native system, gold nanoparticles are employed to promote the delivery of gene editing systems against cancers, enhancing tumor targeting and reducing damage to the surrounding tissue (Pena et al. 2020). With the example of a viral infection such as HIV, encapsulation of CRISPR packaged components within the nanoparticles has enhanced gene editing capabilities by shielding the materials from destruction and promoting a more accessible entrance of the cells (Li et al. 2023).

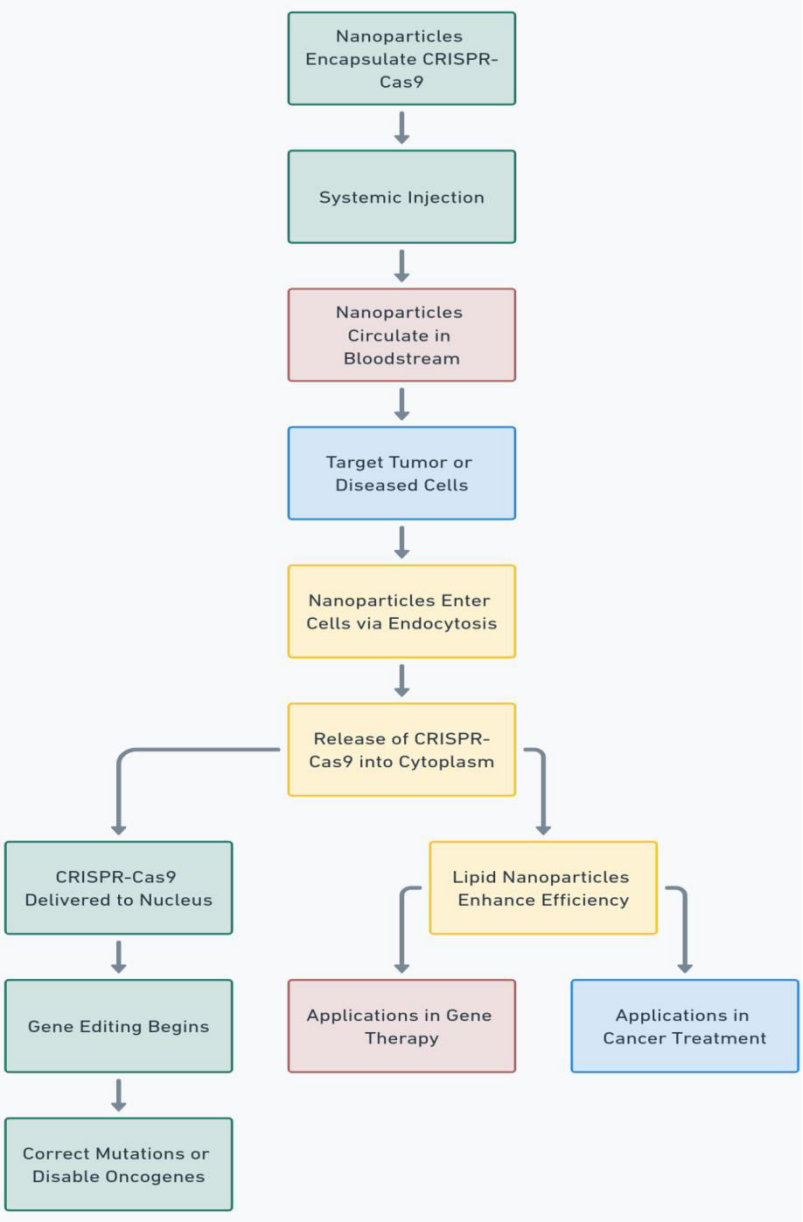


Figure 3: This figure comprehensively depicts the encapsulation and transportation of CRISPR-Cas9 tools by nanoparticles to target cells for gene editing. This encompasses the function of Lipid Nanoparticles in improving the efficacy of CRISPR-Cas9 delivery, with implications for Gene Therapy and Cancer Treatment. The procedure entails the systemic injection of nanoparticles, which circulate in the circulation, target tumour or sick cells, and release CRISPR-Cas9 into the cytoplasm to initiate gene editing within the nucleus.

However, it has its challenges, mainly in designing relatively simple shells and directing nanoparticle synthesis at an appropriate scale. Such innovative approaches include continuous flow synthesis and microfluidic techniques that many researchers seek to limit nanoparticle uniformity and scalability challenges. Such strategies increase productivity, as these are reported to increase the production of anneal nanomaterials and the clinical applicability of targeting their delivery (Agha et al. 2023). For example, lipid nanoparticles in the mRNA COVID-19 vaccines have shown an excellent prospect for mass production of nanoparticles without any concern about safety and effectiveness for broader population use (Lozano et al. 2023). In addition to all this, addressing clinical needs implies improving the nanoparticles, particularly with respect to the controllability of release, compatibility with biological systems, and minimization of toxicity. New approaches to advanced computational modeling and high-throughput screening facilitate nanoparticle development to impart rapid clinically relevant outcomes (Mitchell et al. 2021).

INNOVATIONS IN NANOPARTICLE RESEARCH, SCALABILITY, AND REGULATORY CHALLENGES

Nanoparticles are rapidly evolving as a potent multidimensional vector for applications in personalized medicine, especially in applications targeting gene-editing technologies like CRISPR-Cas9 (Sinclair et al. 2023). Recent developments in nanoparticle research have emphasized theranostic use, where these small particles act as a drug-carrying vessel and a means of diagnosis. Compared to earlier nanoparticle designs, the emergence of multifunctional nanoparticles has dramatically improved their efficacy in therapy and diagnosis (Chavda et al. 2023). Scientists have spent much of the last ten years creating nanoparticles that can safely carry and protect gene-editing payloads that would otherwise be too risky to deliver. Such injectables can also be customized for therapeutic effects due to specific disease conditions, such as controlled release duration and optimal compatibility with the body. As such, many of these implant-associated nanoparticles are intended for use in patients with imaging agents, allowing treatment response and disease progression assessments in real time (Silva et al. 2019). In the last five to ten years, examples have demonstrated how this new class of theranostic nanoparticles can change how we treat hereditary diseases, cancers, and viral infections with targeted, personalized therapies (Mitchell et al. 2021).

Nonetheless, nanomaterial production for routine health care presents entirely different challenges. Quality control of a patient-nanoparticle-derived treatment protocol in terms of safety and efficiency entails the introduction of new manufacturing technologies as well as regulatory control. These advances include continuous flow synthesis, microfluidic platforms, and other methods (Đorđević et al. 2022). Ancillary factors, such as less inflexibility in the regulations, will also need to be surmounted to facilitate the dissemination of these multifunctional nanoparticle therapies in a clinical setting. Such developments are necessary to make any significant breakthrough in nanomedicine in the conception of personalized treatment whereby the patients will always be healthy through technology (Campos et al. 2020).

On the other hand, some of the latest advances in nanoparticle-based systems for drug delivery have made it possible to circumvent many limitations associated with conventional dosage forms (Mitchell et al. 2021). For example, nanoparticles have been designed to efficiently encapsulate and protect gene editing tools or cassettes so they can be seamlessly delivered to desired cells. This focus on the therapeutic agent may help increase the effectiveness of these individualized therapies aimed at fewer involuntary side effects and a better therapeutic outcome (Sgro and Blancafort 2020).

CONCLUSION

This chapter has discussed the achievements made in developing nanoparticles, particularly in the medical field in areas like custom-made medicine, theranostics, and gene editing like CRISPR-Cas9. Key findings include the ability of nanoparticles to transgress almost every drug delivery challenge that has existed, the improvement of gene therapy precision, and the potential of nanoparticles in multi-combinational theranostic approaches. In addition, the design and scalability of nanoparticles have advanced the field as they present solutions for the broad application of clinical practice. The implications of these findings imply that there is a new way of future treatment medicine, where tailored medicines using nanoparticles would be introduced to manage medical-related maladies like genetic disorders, cancers, and infectious diseases more easily. These factors present a basis for the development of subsequent clinical perspectives and regulatory systems and, in principle, change the way health delivery systems work. Nonetheless, there are still some uncertainties regarding the bio distribution, long-term toxicity, and environmental perturbation of nanoparticles. More investigation is warranted into their toxicity, bioaccumulation, biodegradation, and biocompatibility, especially in clinical practice. The research will be equally crucial in optimizing the size and scale of the nanoparticles produced, improving aspects of regulation, and conducting more nanoparticle-enhanced environmental studies. Such areas are essential to guarantee the more secure and environmentally friendly application of nanoparticles in medicine. Restraints pertaining to the scope of the already performed studies and possibly the existing inclinations of the chosen literature have also been noted. However, this study supplies a quantitative evidence base that addresses existing gaps in the research. In conclusion, the inclusion of nanoparticles within the healthcare system represents a significant step into a new paradigm in treatment and diagnosis with huge prospects, yet requires more work to realize the fully-drawn benefits of this new tool.

REFERENCES

- Accomasso L et al., 2018. Risk assessment and risk minimization in nanomedicine: a need for predictive, alternative, and 3Rs strategies. Frontiers in pharmacology 9: 228
- Agha A et al., 2023. A review on microfluidic-assisted nanoparticle synthesis, and their applications using multiscale simulation methods. Discover Nano 18: 18
- Bai Y et al., 2020. Design of photoacoustic microscope system based on LabVIEW platform. Journal 309: 04016

- Baldassari S et al., 2018. Development of an injectable slow-release metformin formulation and evaluation of its potential antitumor effects. Scientific Reports 8: 3929
- Bubnov A A et al., 2023. Laser-Ablative Synthesis of Silicon–Iron Composite Nanoparticles for Theranostic Applications. Nanomaterials 13: 2256
- Campos E V et al., 2020. How can nanotechnology help to combat COVID-19? Opportunities and urgent need. Journal of Nanobiotechnology 18: 1-23
- Chandrakala V et al., 2022. Review on metal nanoparticles as nanocarriers: Current challenges and perspectives in drug delivery systems. Emergent Materials 5: 1593-1615
- Chavda V P et al., 2023. Current status of Cancer Nanotheranostics: Emerging strategies for cancer management. Nanotheranostics 7: 368
- Cheng L et al., 2014. GE11-modified liposomes for non-small cell lung cancer targeting: preparation, ex vitro and in vivo evaluation. International Journal of Nanomedicine 921-935
- Cheng X et al., 2023. Advances in nanomaterial-based targeted drug delivery systems. Frontiers in bioengineering and biotechnology 11: 1177151
- Cherian A M et al., 2020. Successful reduction of neointimal hyperplasia on stainless steel coronary stents by titania nanotexturing. ACS omega 5: 17582-17591
- Dadabaev A et al., 2023. A New View on the Application of Gold Nanoparticles in Cancer Therapy. arXiv preprint arXiv:2308.00569
- De Jong W H et al., 2022. Regulatory safety evaluation of nanomedical products: key issues to refine. Drug delivery and translational research 12: 2042-2047
- Ding D and Q Zhu 2018. Recent advances of PLGA micro/nanoparticles for the delivery of biomacromolecular therapeutics. Materials Science and Engineering: C 92: 1041-1060
- Đorđević S et al., 2022. Current hurdles to the translation of nanomedicines from bench to the clinic. Drug delivery and translational research 1-26
- Drescher S and P van Hoogevest 2020. The phospholipid research center: current research in phospholipids and their use in drug delivery. Pharmaceutics 12: 1235
- Fernandez-Fernandez A et al., 2023. Lipid-engineered nanotherapeutics for cancer management. Frontiers in pharmacology 14: 1125093
- Filipczak N et al., 2020. Recent advancements in liposome technology. Advanced drug delivery reviews 156: 4-22

- Guimaraes L C et al., 2024. Nanoparticle-based DNA vaccine protects against SARS-CoV-2 variants in female preclinical models. Nature Communications 15: 590
- Hong L et al., 2023. Nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems targeting cancer cell surfaces. RSC advances 13: 21365-21382
- Hossaini Nasr S and X Huang 2021. Nanotechnology for targeted therapy of atherosclerosis. Frontiers in pharmacology 12: 755569
- Huang H et al., 2023. Gold nanoparticles: construction for drug delivery and application in cancer immunotherapy. Pharmaceutics 15: 1868
- Jang T-S et al., 2019. Ta ion implanted nanoridge-platform for enhanced vascular responses. Biomaterials 223: 119461
- Joo J I et al., 2020. Realizing cancer precision medicine by integrating systems biology and nanomaterial engineering. Advanced Materials 32: 1906783
- Junyaprasert V B and P Thummarati 2023. Innovative design of targeted nanoparticles: polymer–drug conjugates for enhanced cancer therapy. Pharmaceutics 15: 2216
- Kad A et al., 2020. An elucidative review to analytically sieve the viability of nanomedicine market. Journal of Pharmaceutical Innovation 1-17
- Kim C H et al., 2018. Sterically stabilized RIPL peptide-conjugated nanostructured lipid carriers: characterization, cellular uptake, cytotoxicity, and biodistribution. Pharmaceutics 10: 199
- Kim D et al., 2018. Recent development of inorganic nanoparticles for biomedical imaging. ACS central science 4: 324-336
- Kim K-T et al., 2019. Recent progress in the development of poly (lactic-co-glycolic acid)-based nanostructures for cancer imaging and therapy. Pharmaceutics 11: 280
- Kubo A-L et al., 2022. Antibacterial and antiviral effects of Ag, Cu and Zn metals, respective nanoparticles and filter materials thereof against coronavirus SARS-CoV-2 and influenza A virus. Pharmaceutics 14: 2549
- Kumah E A et al., 2023. Human and environmental impacts of nanoparticles: a scoping review of the current literature. BMC Public Health 23: 1059
- Kumar P P P and D-K Lim 2021. Gold-polymer nanocomposites for future therapeutic and tissue engineering applications. Pharmaceutics 14: 70
- Kumar S et al., 2022. Prospects of biosensors based on functionalized and nanostructured solitary materials: Detection of viral infections and other risks. ACS omega 7: 22073-22088

- Le A D et al., 2022. Streamlining physiologically-based pharmacokinetic model design for intravenous delivery of nanoparticle drugs. CPT: Pharmacometrics & Systems Pharmacology 11: 409-424
- Li C et al., 2022. Stimuli-responsive gold nanocages for cancer diagnosis and treatment. Pharmaceutics 14: 1321
- Li J et al., 2023. Intravascular imaging of atherosclerosis by using engineered nanoparticles. Biosensors 13: 319
- Li T et al., 2023. CRISPR/Cas9 therapeutics: progress and prospects. Signal Transduction and Targeted Therapy 8: 36
- Mahmud N et al., 2022. Advances in nanomaterial-based platforms to combat COVID-19: Diagnostics, preventions, therapeutics, and vaccine developments. ACS Applied Bio Materials 5: 2431-2460
- Mencacci A et al., 2023. Laboratory automation, informatics, and artificial intelligence: current and future perspectives in clinical microbiology. Frontiers in Cellular and Infection Microbiology 13: 1188684
- Meylina L et al., 2023. Hyaluronic acid-coated chitosan nanoparticles as an active targeted carrier of alpha mangostin for breast cancer cells. Polymers 15: 1025
- Mitchell M J et al., 2021. Engineering precision nanoparticles for drug delivery. Nature reviews drug discovery 20: 101-124
- Nazarnezhad S et al., 2020. Electrospun nanofibers for improved angiogenesis: promises for tissue engineering applications. Nanomaterials 10: 1609
- Nel A E and J F Miller 2021. Nano-enabled COVID-19 vaccines: meeting the challenges of durable antibody plus cellular immunity and immune escape. Acs Nano 15: 5793-5818
- Niu D et al., 2023. Circular RNA vaccine in disease prevention and treatment. Signal Transduction and Targeted Therapy 8: 341
- Pena S A et al., 2020. Gene therapy for neurological disorders: challenges and recent advancements. Journal of drug targeting 28: 111-128
- Perera B et al., 2023. Advances in drug delivery to atherosclerosis: Investigating the efficiency of different nanomaterials employed for different type of drugs. Materials Today Bio 100767
- Piperno A et al., 2021. Recent advances and challenges in gene delivery mediated by polyester-based nanoparticles. International Journal of Nanomedicine 5981-6002
- Pratiwi F W et al., 2020. Evaluation of nanoparticle penetration in the tumor spheroid using two-photon microscopy. Biomedicines 9: 10

- Sadr S et al., 2023. Nanotechnology innovations for increasing the productivity of poultry and the prospective of nanobiosensors. Veterinary Medicine and Science 9: 2118-2131
- Sahoo S et al., 2024. Biomedical waste plastic: bacteria, disinfection and recycling technologies—a comprehensive review. International Journal of Environmental Science and Technology 21: 1141-1158
- Saleem H and S J Zaidi 2020. Developments in the application of nanomaterials for water treatment and their impact on the environment. Nanomaterials 10: 1764
- Sgro A and P Blancafort 2020. Epigenome engineering: new technologies for precision medicine. Nucleic acids research 48: 12453-12482
- Shepherd S J et al., 2021. Microfluidic formulation of nanoparticles for biomedical applications. Biomaterials 274: 120826
- Silva C O et al., 2019. Current trends in cancer nanotheranostics: metallic, polymeric, and lipid-based systems. Pharmaceutics 11: 22
- Sinclair F et al., 2023. Recent advances in the delivery and applications of nonviral CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing. Drug delivery and translational research 13: 1500-1519
- Singh P et al., 2018. Gold nanoparticles in diagnostics and therapeutics for human cancer. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 19: 1979
- Subhan M A et al., 2021. Recent advances in tumor targeting via EPR effect for cancer treatment. Journal of personalized medicine 11: 571
- Sukhanova A et al., 2018. Dependence of nanoparticle toxicity on their physical and chemical properties. Nanoscale Research Letters 13: 1-21
- Sun C-K et al., 2022. Fabrication of an Au-doped Cu/Fe oxide-polymer core–shell nanoreactor with chemodynamic and photodynamic dual effects as potential cancer therapeutic agents. Scientific Reports 12: 18729
- Swetha K et al., 2023. Recent advances in the lipid nanoparticle-mediated delivery of mRNA vaccines. Vaccines 11: 658
- Tavares F J et al., 2023. Preparation and in vitro characterization of magnetic CS/PVA/HA/pSPIONs scaffolds for magnetic hyperthermia and bone regeneration. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 24: 1128
- Tay Z W et al., 2021. Magnetic particle imaging: An emerging modality with prospects in diagnosis, targeting and therapy of cancer. Cancers 13: 5285
- Thi T T H et al., 2021. Lipid-based nanoparticles in the clinic and clinical trials: from cancer nanomedicine to COVID-19 vaccines. Vaccines 9: 359

- van der Koog L et al., 2022. Liposomes and extracellular vesicles as drug delivery systems: A comparison of composition, pharmacokinetics, and functionalization. Advanced healthcare materials 11: 2100639
- Vangijzegem T et al., 2023. Superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles (SPION): from fundamentals to state-of-the-art innovative applications for cancer therapy. Pharmaceutics 15: 236
- Verkhovskii R A et al., 2023. Current principles, challenges, and new metrics in pH-responsive drug delivery systems for systemic cancer therapy. Pharmaceutics 15: 1566
- Wang K et al., 2022. Nanomaterials in animal husbandry: research and prospects. Frontiers in Genetics 13: 915911
- Wang X et al., 2021. Rational Constructed Ultra-Small Iron Oxide Nanoprobes Manifesting High Performance for T 1-Weighted Magnetic Resonance Imaging of Glioblastoma. Nanomaterials 11: 2601
- Woodard L E et al., 2018. Nanoparticle architecture preserves magnetic properties during coating to enable robust multi-modal functionality. Scientific Reports 8: 12706
- Wu H et al., 2024. A drug-free cardiovascular stent functionalized with tailored collagen supports in-situ healing of vascular tissues. Nature Communications 15: 735
- Xiong P et al., 2022. Cytotoxicity of metal-based nanoparticles: from mechanisms and methods of evaluation to pathological manifestations. Advanced Science 9: 2106049
- Xue X et al., 2018. Trojan Horse nanotheranostics with dual transformability and multifunctionality for highly effective cancer treatment. Nature Communications 9: 3653
- Yan L et al., 2020. Nanoparticle-based drug delivery system: a patient-friendly chemotherapy for oncology. Dose-Response 18: 1559325820936161

CHAPTER- 21

APPLICATION OF NANOPARTICLES AGAINST SALMONELLOSIS

Muhammad Ali[1*], Anam Zohra[2], Wardah Dawar[3], Muhammad Fawad[4], Syed Usman Ali Shah[5], Muhammad Ali Assad[6], Drakhshaan[7], Hafiz Muhammad Talha Rahim[3], Muhammad Suleman[1] and Hizqeel Ahmed Muzaffar[3]

[1]Faculty of Veterinary Science, University of Agriculture Faisalabad, Pakistan,
[2]Nanotechnology and Fish Nutrition Lab, Department of zoology, Faculty of Chemistry and Life Sciences, Government College University, Lahore, Pakistan,
[3]KBCMA College of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Narowal, Sub-Campus UVAS, Lahore, Pakistan
[4]Department of Zoology, Islamia College University, Peshawar, Pakistan,
[5]Department of Zoology, Abdul Wali Khan University, Mardan, Pakistan
[6]Section of Epidemiology and Public Health, Department of Clinical Sciences, Faculty of Veterinary Sciences, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Pakistan
[7]Institute of Pharmacuetical Sciences, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533584

ABSTRACT

Salmonellosis is an important food-borne zoonotic pathogen, affecting different animals and humans worldwide. Humans are mainly affected by food and water contamination. No region of the world is safe from salmonellosis. The best treatment for salmonellosis was antibiotics, but now Salmonella is becoming resistant to these antibiotics, hence called multi-drug resistant bacteria. So, alternative options have to be considered for the prevention, control, and treatment of salmonellosis. The use of nanoparticles is one of them. These nanoparticles being smaller in size easily penetrate the cell membrane of Salmonella, leading to the cell death of Salmonella by inducing oxidative damage and changing the permeability and respiratory process of the cell membrane. Moreover, these nanoparticles are safer to use because they are non-toxic for the host cell, and can be used in packaging and preserving different meat products to prevent the development of salmonellosis there. Zinc oxide, silver, and gold nanoparticles have been applied against different serotypes of Salmonella. This chapter describes the application of these nanoparticles against lethal serotypes of Salmonella.

Keywords: Salmonella, Salmonellosis, nanoparticles, cell

INTRODUCTION

Members from the genus *Salmonella* are well known for pathogenicity in a wide range of hosts (Griffith et al. 2019). They are gram-negative rods in morphology (Sykes and McDonough 2021). Salmonellosis is prevalent worldwide. Food

contamination is its major route of transmission (Kumar et al. 2025). It is an important food-borne disease of the animals and humans. There are reported outbreaks of salmonellosis in different countries (Khalafalla et al. 2019). In the past few years, epidemiological features of salmonellosis infections have been changed. It may be due to an increased population migration, and widespread increase of private property (Saidkasimova and Mirtazaev 2020). These are primarily intestinal parasites that affect humans and a wide range of other animals, such as rodents, chickens, wild birds, and household pets.

Additionally, sewage, rivers, lakes, and soil all contain them. Two species make up the genus *Salmonella*: *Salmonella bongori*, which was once subspecies V, and *Salmonella enterica*, which has six subspecies (I, II, IIIa, IIIb, IV, and VI). Based on somatic O and H antigens, members of the seven *Salmonella* species can be classified into at least 2500 serotypes (Kombade and Kaur 2021). Innate immune receptors recognize microbial compounds, which trigger host inflammatory reactions that control microbial infections. Tissues exposed to microbial compounds, including the intestinal epithelium, are subjected to regulate processes to prevent inappropriate activation through innate immune receptors, as inflammation can also result in disease. Effector proteins are used by the enteric pathogen *Salmonella*, which needs intestinal inflammation to continue replicating in the digestive tract (Galán 2021). When *Salmonella* enters the body through water or food, it tends to penetrate the host intestinal epithelial lining. *Salmonella* induces phagocytosis to gain access to the host cells. When *Salmonella* enters the host cell, it becomes enclosed in a membrane-covered compartment known as a vacuole, which is made of the membrane of the host cell. In a typical situation, the presence of the bacterial foreign body would trigger the immunological response of the host cell, fusing the lysosomes and secreting digesting enzymes to break down the intracellular bacteria.

Nevertheless, *Salmonella* modifies the compartment organization by injecting additional effector proteins into a vacuole through the type III release system. The remodeled vacuole allows the bacteria to survive and replicate intracellularly within the host tissues by preventing the lysosomes from fusing. As a result, it gains access to the host's reticuloendothelial system (Eng et al. 2015). Vomiting, diarrhea, fever, lethargy, anorexia, and neurological, reproductive, and respiratory signs are commonly associated with salmonellosis (Sykes and McDonough 2021). Approximately 93 million gastroenteritis cases and 155,000 mortalities are caused by *Salmonella* each year worldwide.

The first line of treatment for this microbial disease is antimicrobial therapy; however, due to antibiotic abuse in both human and animal medicine, antimicrobial resistance has emerged as an issue (Castro-Vargas et al. 2020). The application of antibiotics in livestock feed to encourage the development of food animals and in veterinary care to treat bacterial illnesses in those animals is the primary cause of the formation of *Salmonella* with resistance to antibiotics. Because of the potential for the spread of multi-drug resistant *Salmonella* strains from animals to people by direct

contact, ingestion of contaminated food or water, or ingestion of diseased food animals, there is a significant danger of zoonotic illness (Eng et al. 2015). *Salmonella* is resistant to chloramphenicol, potentiated sulphonamides, ampicillin, fluoroquinolones, and third-generation cephalosporins (Tack et al. 2020). So, different non-antibiotic control methods have to be employed for salmonellosis (Ruvalcaba-Gómez et al. 2022). Nanoparticles can also be used against salmonellosis (de Emery et al. 2023). This chapter focuses on the application of different types of nanoparticles against different serotypes of *Salmonella*.

APPLICATION OF NANOPARTICLES AGAINST SALMONELLOSIS

Introduction to nanoparticles against salmonellosis

Nanoparticles generate reactive oxygen species. They can easily cross the cell membranes of an infectious agent as a result of which a great reactivity occurs, leading to the death of an infectious agent (Muzaffar et al. 2024). Because these nanoparticles may disintegrate, absorb, and enclose a drug in a polymer matrix, they are useful nanocarriers for the controlled and sustained release of pharmaceuticals (Bhatia et al. 2016). To reduce drug toxicity, drug dosage has to be minimized but it also leads to a decrease in the efficacy of a drug. On the other hand, it is not required in the case of nanoparticles (Carvalho et al. 2020). Nanoparticles also enhance the host's immune response against an infectious agent (Zhao et al. 2014). Nanoparticle-based delivery techniques effectively target immune system cells in vivo.

When utilized in vaccinations, nanoparticles offer several special benefits over traditional delivery techniques due to their small size of particles and wide biodistribution properties (Zupančič et al. 2017). ZnO nanoparticles are well known for their excellent antimicrobial properties. They are not being employed against different serotypes of salmonellosis. The exact mechanism of action of ZnO nanoparticles was unknown but now it is considered that it generates reactive oxygen species against microbial agents (Espitia et al. 2012).

Similarly, silver nanoparticles also play a great role in the controlling salmonellosis (Seeong and Lee 2017). It has a lethal effect against bacterial agents. Silver nanoparticles can release many bioactive silver ions at lower concentrations, and they can be exposed to microbes more successfully. These characteristics enable a wide range of applications, including creating antimicrobial and self-cleaning surfaces for the prevention and treatment of pathogenic infections. The effective antibacterial action of silver nanoparticles is demonstrated against bacteria (Kim et al. 2009). It is widely acknowledged that free silver ions can bind to cell membrane structures when they are present or released from nanomaterials, which can destabilize the membrane potential and result in proton leakage (Maillard and Hartemann, 2013).

Similarly, gold nanoparticles also provide a promising approach to the control of salmonellosis. Gold nanoparticles cause rapid cell death by necrosis. Cationic gold nanoparticles have great applications towards infectious agents as compared to anionic ones because of their attraction towards negatively charged cell membranes

(Wang et al. 2011). Gold and silver nanoparticles when used in adequate amounts don't have any toxic effects for the host's cells. Gold nanoparticles can eliminate 90-95% of a bacterial colony within just 90 minutes (Lima et al. 2013). Another promising application of nanoparticles against salmonellosis is present in the form of polymeric nanoparticles. Polymeric nanoparticles being smaller in size, can easily cross the mucosal membrane of the gastrointestinal tract. They are also used as adjuvants. They enhance the immune response by enhancing both the humoral and cellular immunity. They are also responsible for the controlled release of antigens. They protect vaccines from the harmful effects of the acidic pH of the gastrointestinal tract. these characteristics of polymeric nanoparticles attract the researchers to use them against salmonellosis (Acevedo-Villanueva et al. 2021). Further role of different nanoparticles against salmonellosis is described below. The application of nanoparticles against salmonellosis has been summarized in Table 1.

Type of nanoparticles	Mechanism of action	References
ZnO nanoparticles	Generation of reactive oxygen species	Espitia et al. 2012
Silver nanoparticles	Can release a large number of bioactive silver ions at lower concentrations, and they can be exposed to microbes more successfully	Kim et al. 2009
	Free silver ions can bind to cell membrane structures when they are present or released from nanomaterials, which can destabilize the membrane potential and result in proton leakage	Maillard and Hartemann, 2013
Gold nanoparticles	Nanoparticles cause rapid cell death by necrosis. Cationic gold nanoparticles have great applications towards infectious agents as compared to anionic ones because of their attraction towards negatively charged cell membranes	Wang et al. 2011
	Can eliminate 90-95% of a bacterial colony within just 90 minutes	Lima et al. 2013
Polymeric nanoparticles	Being smaller in size, can easily cross the mucosal membrane of the	Acevedo-Villanueva et al. 2021

	gastrointestinal tract. They are also used as adjuvants. They enhance the immune response by enhancing both the humoral and cellular immunity. They are also responsible for the controlled release of antigens. They protect vaccines from the harmful effects of the acidic pH of the gastrointestinal tract.	
Nanoparticles-based vaccines	Offer several special benefits over traditional delivery techniques due to their small size of particles and wide biodistribution properties	Zupančič et al. 2017

APPLICATION OF NANOPARTICLES AGAINST *SALMONELLA TYPHIMURIUM*

Salmonella typhimurium (*S. typhimurium*) is an important food-borne microbial agent worldwide. It is a threat for both the developing and developed countries. The public health threat is mainly related to its antimicrobial resistance (Sun et al. 2020). ZnO nanoparticles have been developed against *S. typhimurium* (Tayel et al. 2011; Akbar et al. 2019; Premanathan et al. 2011; Duffy et al. 2018; Souza et al. 2019; Krishnamoorth et al. 2022; Vosoughian et al. 2023; Abdelghany et al. 2023; Akbar et al. 2019; Akbar and Anal 2014). Similarly, gold nanoparticles are also available (Wang et al. 2011; Zawrah et al. 2011; Behbahan et al. 2017; Behbahan et al. 2017; Wang et al. 2010; Afonso et al. 2013; Wu et al. 2014; Zhang et al. 2015; Duan et al. 2016; Yeom et al. 2016; Ma et al. 2017; Oh et al. 2017; Yi et al. 2019; Silva et al. 2019; Wang et al. 2020; Du et al. 2020; Ortega-Valencia et al. 2022; Min et al. 2022; Gong et al. 2023; Anzevino et al. 2024). Furthermore, silver nanoparticles are available to be used against *S. typhimurium* (Omara et al. 2017; Huq 2020; Saygi and Usta, 2021; Abou Elez et al. 2021; Estevez et al. 2021; Majumder et al. 2022; Takcı, et al. 2023).

APPLICATION OF NANOPARTICLES AGAINST *SALMONELLA TYPHI*

Typhoid is a severe enteric disease causing high morbidities and mortalities caused by *Salmonella typhi* (*S. typhi*) (Halder et al. 2023). It is a threatening concern for the developing and developed countries, a severe public health problem (Mogasale et al. 2014). It mainly affects regions with poor hygiene, poor sanitary conditions, and congested areas (Xie et al. 2022). The only available treatment method is antibiotics, but because of the problem of antimicrobial resistance, this disease is becoming difficult to control (Crump et al. 2015). It is host-specific and infects only humans (Jahan et al. 2022). Nanoparticles can be used in combination with antibiotics to reduce the presence of antimicrobial resistance. Silver nanoparticles alone and combined with an antibiotic cefixime give promising results against *S. typhi* (Kapadia

et al. 2021). Silver nanoparticles against *S. typhi* have good efficacy (Kumara Swamy et al. 2015; Balakrishnan et al. 2020; Feroze et al. 2020; Alfahad et al. 2022; Salman et al. 2023). *S. typhi* can also be treated by ZnO nanoparticles (Joel and Badhusha 2016; Soren et al. 2018). Similarly, gold nanoparticles can also be employed (Dhas et al. 2020; Aljabali et al. 2018; Alomari et al. 2020; Agarwal et al. 2020; Arshad et al. 2021).

APPLICATION OF NANOPARTICLES AGAINST *SALMONELLA ENTERITIDES* :

Silver nanoparticles have good results against *Salmonella enteritides* (*S. enteritides*) (Losasso et al. 2014; Berton et al. 2015; Farouk et al. 2020; Huq MA and Akter S 2021; Shaheen et al. 2021; Abdelsattar et al. 2021; de São José et al. 2021; Estevez et al. 2021; Torky et al. 2022; Saadh 2023; Abou Elez et al. 2021; de Emery et al. 2023). Diamond nanoparticles have excellent results against *S. enteritides* (Sawosz et al. 2011). Gold and platinum nanoparticles have also been developed against *S. enteritides* (Sawosz et al. 2010). ZnO nanoparticles can also be used against *S. enteritides* (Jin et al. 2009; He et al. 2022). Similarly, magnetic nanoparticles have promising results against *S. enteritides* (Houhoula et al. 2017). Furthermore, nanoparticle-based vaccines are being employed for the treatment of *S. enteritides* (Ochoa et al. 2007; Han et al. 2020; Ochoa-Repáraz et al. 2021; Acevedo-Villanueva et al. 2022; Dolatyabi et al. 2024).

CONCLUSION

Application of nanoparticles against salmonellosis has been concluded in Table 2.

***Salmonella* species**	**Available nanoparticles**	**References**
Salmonella typhimurium	ZnO nanoparticles	Tayel et al. 2011; Premanathan et al. 2011; Akbar and Anal 2014; Duffy et al. 2018; Akbar et al. 2019; Souza et al. 2019; Krishnamoorth et al. 2022; Abdelghany et al. 2023; Vosoughian et al. 2023
	Gold nanoparticles	Wang et al. 2010; Wang et al. 2011; Zawrah et al. 2011; Afonso et al. 2013; Wu et al. 2014; Zhang et al. 2015; Duan et al. 2016; Yeom et al. 2016; Behbahan et al. 2017; Ma et al. 2017; Oh et al. 2017; Silva et al. 2019; Yi et al. 2019; Wang et al. 2020; Du et al. 2020; Ortega-Valencia et al. 2022; Min et al. 2022; Gong et al. 2023; Anzevino et al. 2024
	Silver nanoparticles	Omara et al. 2017; Huq 2020; Saygi and Usta, 2021; Abou Elez et al. 2021; Estevez et al. 2021; Majumder et al. 2022; Takcı, et al. 2023
Salmonella typhi	Silver nanoparticles	Kumara Swamy et al. 2015; Balakrishnan et al. 2020; Feroze et al. 2020; Kapadia et al. 2021;

		Alfahad et al. 2022; Salman et al. 2023
	ZnO nanoparticles	Joel and Badhusha 2016; Soren et al. 2018
	Gold nanoparticles	Aljabali et al. 2018; Dhas et al. 2020; Alomari et al. 2020; Agarwal et al. 2020; Arshad et al. 2021
Salmonella enteritides	Silver nanoparticles	Losasso et al. 2014; Berton et al. 2015; Farouk et al. 2020; Huq MA and Akter S 2021; Shaheen et al. 2021; Abdelsattar et al. 2021; de São José et al. 2021; Estevez et al. 2021; Abou Elez et al. 2021; Torky et al. 2022; Saadh 2023; de Emery et al. 2023
	Diamond nanoparticles	Sawosz et al. 2011
	Platinum nanoparticles	Sawosz et al. 2010
	Gold nanoparticles	Sawosz et al. 2010
	ZnO nanoparticles	Jin et al. 2009; He et al. 2022
	Magnetic nanoparticles	Houhoula et al. 2017
	Nanoparticles based vaccines	Ochoa et al. 2007; Han et al. 2020; Ochoa-Repáraz et al. 2021; Acevedo-Villanueva et al. 2022; Dolatyabi et al. 2024

REFERENCES

- Abdelghany TM et al., 2023. Phytofabrication of zinc oxide nanoparticles with advanced characterization and its antioxidant, anticancer, and antimicrobial activity against pathogenic microorganisms. Biomass Conversion and Biorefinery 13: 417-430.
- Abdelsattar AS et al., 2021. The synergistic effect of biosynthesized silver nanoparticles and phage zcse2 as a novel approach to combat multidrug-resistant salmonella enterica. Antibiotics 10: 678.
- Abou Elez RM et al., 2021. Antimicrobial resistance of Salmonella enteritidis and Salmonella typhimurium isolated from laying hens, table eggs, and humans with respect to antimicrobial activity of biosynthesized silver nanoparticles. Animals 11: 3554.
- Acevedo-Villanueva K et al., 2022. Immunization of broiler chickens with a killed chitosan nanoparticle Salmonella vaccine decreases Salmonella enterica serovar enteritidis load. Frontiers in Physiology 13: 920777.

- Acevedo-Villanueva KY et al., 2021. A Novel approach against Salmonella: A review of polymeric nanoparticle vaccines for broilers and layers. Vaccines 9: 1041.
- Afonso AS et al., 2013. Electrochemical detection of Salmonella using gold nanoparticles. Biosensors and Bioelectronics 40: 121-126.
- Agarwal M et al., 2020. Synthesis and antimicrobial activities of gold nanoparticles against Salmonella ser. typhi. Plant Archives 20: 1994-2000.
- Akbar A et al. 2019. Synthesis and antimicrobial activity of zinc oxide nanoparticles against foodborne pathogens Salmonella typhimurium and Staphylococcus aureus. Biocatalysis and agricultural biotechnology 17:36-42.
- Akbar and Anal AK 2014. Zinc oxide nanoparticles loaded active packaging, a challenge study against Salmonella typhimurium and Staphylococcus aureus in ready-to-eat poultry meat. Food control 38: 88-95.
- Alfahad MA et al., 2022. Antibacterial Activity of Biologically Synthesized Silver Nanoparticles Using Seeds Extract of Coated On Nigella sativa Antibiotics against Antibiotic-resistant Salmonella typhi. Indian Journal of Ecology 49: 396-402.
- Aljabali AA et al., 2018. Synthesis of gold nanoparticles using leaf extract of Ziziphus zizyphus and their antimicrobial activity. Nanomaterials 8: 174.
- Alomari G et al., 2020. Gold nanoparticles attenuate albuminuria by inhibiting podocyte injury in a rat model of diabetic nephropathy. Drug delivery and translational research, 10: 216-226.
- Anzevino M et al., 2024. Antibody-Functionalized Gold Nanoparticles as a Highly Sensitive Two-Step Colorimetric Biosensor for Detecting Salmonella Typhimurium in Food. ACS Applied Nano Materials 7: 17.
- Arshad R et al., 2021. A review of the nanomaterials use for the diagnosis and therapy of salmonella typhi. Journal of Molecular Structure 1230: 129928.
- Balakrishnan S et al., 2020. Antiquorum sensing and antibiofilm potential of biosynthesized silver nanoparticles of Myristica fragrans seed extract against MDR Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi isolates from asymptomatic typhoid carriers and typhoid patients. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 27: 2844-2856.
- Behbahan FG et al., 2017. Antimicrobial activities of Gold nanoparticles against Salmonella typhimurium. Future Natural Products 3: 26-30.
- Berton V et al., 2015. Study of the interaction between silver nanoparticles and Salmonella as revealed by transmission electron microscopy. J. Prob. Health 3: 10-4172.

- Bhatia D 2016. Antimicrobial activity of PVP coated silver nanoparticles synthesized by Lysinibacillus varians. 3 Biotech 6: 1-8.
- Carvalho SG et al., 2020. Advances and challenges in nanocarriers and nanomedicines for veterinary application. International Journal of Pharmaceutics 580: 119214.
- Castro-Vargas RE et al., 2020. Antibiotic resistance in Salmonella spp. isolated from poultry: A global overview. Veterinary world 13: 2070.
- Crump JA et al., 2015. Epidemiology, clinical presentation, laboratory diagnosis, antimicrobial resistance, and antimicrobial management of invasive Salmonella infections. Clinical microbiology reviews 28: 901-937.
- Das CA et al., 2020. Antibacterial activity of silver nanoparticles (biosynthesis): A short review on recent advances. Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology 27: 101593.
- de Emery BD et al., 2023. Antimicrobial and antibiofilm activity of silver nanoparticles against Salmonella Enteritidis. Brazilian Journal of Microbiology 54: 285.
- de São José JFB et al., 2021. Inactivation of Salmonella Enteritidis on cherry tomatoes by ultrasound, lactic acid, detergent, and silver nanoparticles. Canadian Journal of Microbiology 67: 259-270.
- Dhas TS et al., 2020. Antimicrobial effect of Sargassum plagiophyllum mediated gold nanoparticles on Escherichia coli and Salmonella typhi. Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology 26: 101627.
- Dolatyabi S et al., 2024. Chitosan-nanoparticle-based oral Salmonella enteritidis subunit vaccine elicits cross-protection against Salmonella typhimurium in broilers. Poultry Science 103: 103569.
- Du J et al., 2020. A gold nanoparticles-assisted multiplex PCR assay for simultaneous detection of Salmonella typhimurium, Listeria monocytogenes and Escherichia coli O157: H7. Analytical Methods 12: 212-217.
- Duan N et al., 2016. Magnetic nanoparticles-based aptasensor using gold nanoparticles as colorimetric probes for the detection of Salmonella typhimurium. Analytical Sciences 32: 431-436.
- Duffy LL et al., 2018. Investigation into the antibacterial activity of silver, zinc oxide and copper oxide nanoparticles against poultry-relevant isolates of Salmonella and Campylobacter. Food control, 92: 293-300.
- Eng SK et al., 2015. Salmonella: a review on pathogenesis, epidemiology and antibiotic resistance. Frontiers in Life Science 8: 284-293.

- Espitia PJP et al., 2012. Zinc oxide nanoparticles: synthesis, antimicrobial activity and food packaging applications. Food and bioprocess technology; 5:1447-1464.
- Estevez MB et al., 2021. Biogenic silver nanoparticles as a strategy in the fight against multi-resistant salmonella enterica isolated from dairy calves. Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology 9: 644014.
- Estevez MB et al., 2021. Biogenic silver nanoparticles as a strategy in the fight against multi-resistant salmonella enterica isolated from dairy calves. Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology 9: 644014.
- Farouk MM et al., 2020. The role of silver nanoparticles in a treatment approach for multidrug-resistant Salmonella species isolates. International Journal of Nanomedicine: 6993-7011.
- Feroze N et al., 2020. Fungal mediated synthesis of silver nanoparticles and evaluation of antibacterial activity. Microscopy Research and Technique 83: 72-80.
- Ferrari RG et al., 2019. Worldwide epidemiology of Salmonella serovars in animal-based foods: a meta-analysis. Applied and environmental microbiology 85: 00591-19.
- Galán JE 2021. Salmonella Typhimurium and inflammation: a pathogen-centric affair. Nature Reviews Microbiology 19: 716-725.
- Gong L et al., 2023. Enhanced sensitivity and accuracy via gold nanoparticles based multi-line lateral flow immunoassay strip for Salmonella typhimurium detection in milk and orange juice. Talanta 265: 124929.
- Griffith RW et al., 2019. Salmonellosis. Diseases of swine, pp: 912-925.
- Halder P et al., 2023. Bacterial ghost cell based bivalent candidate vaccine against Salmonella Typhi and Salmonella Paratyphi A: A prophylactic study in BALB/c mice. Vaccine 41: 5994-6007.
- Han Y et al., 2020. Immune response to Salmonella enteritidis infection in broilers immunized orally with chitosan-based Salmonella subunit nanoparticle vaccine. Frontiers in Immunology 11: 935.
- He Y et al., 2022. Antimicrobial effect of zinc oxide nanoparticles on Campylobacter jejuni and Salmonella enterica serovar Enteritidis. Journal of Food Safety 42: 12979.
- Houhoula D et al., 2017. Magnetic nanoparticle-enhanced PCR for the detection and identification of Staphylococcus aureus and Salmonella enteritidis. The New Microbiologica 40: 165-169.
- Huq MA 2020. Biogenic silver nanoparticles synthesized by Lysinibacillus xylanilyticus MAHUQ-40 to control antibiotic-resistant human pathogens Vibrio

parahaemolyticus and Salmonella Typhimurium. Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology 8: 597502.

- Huq MA and Akter S, 2021. Biosynthesis, characterization and antibacterial application of novel silver nanoparticles against drug resistant pathogenic Klebsiella pneumoniae and Salmonella enteritidis. Molecules 26: 5996.
- Jahan F et al., 2022. The complex mechanism of the Salmonella typhi biofilm formation that facilitates pathogenicity: a review. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 23: 6462.
- Jin T et al., 2009. Antimicrobial efficacy of zinc oxide quantum dots against Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enteritidis, and Escherichia coli O157: H7. Journal of food science 74: 46-52.
- Joel C and Badhusha MSM 2016. Green synthesis of ZnO Nanoparticles using Phyllanthus embilica Stem extract and their Antibacterial activity. Der Pharmacia Lettre 8: 6.
- Kapadia C et al., 2021. Nanoparticles combined with cefixime as an effective synergistic strategy against Salmonella enterica typhi. Saudi Journal of Biological Sciences 28: 4164-4172.
- Khalafalla AI et al., 2021. Salmonellosis. Infectious Diseases of Dromedary Camels: A Concise Guide, pp: 187-190.
- Kim KJ et al., 2009. Antifungal activity and mode of action of silver nano-particles on Candida albicans. Biometals 22: 235-242.
- Kombade S and Kaur N 2021. Pathogenicity island in Salmonella. In: Salmonella spp.-A Global Challenge. IntechOpen; pp:1.
- Krishnamoorthy R et al., 2022. Antibacterial mechanisms of zinc oxide nanoparticle against bacterial food pathogens resistant to beta-lactam antibiotics. Molecules 27: 2489.
- Kumar A et al., 2025. Salmonellosis. Elements of Reproduction and Reproductive Diseases of Goats, pp: 563-569.
- Kumara Swamy M et al., 2015. The green synthesis, characterization, and evaluation of the biological activities of silver nanoparticles synthesized from Leptadenia reticulata leaf extract. Applied nanoscience 5: 73-81.
- Lima E et al., 2013. Gold nanoparticles as efficient antimicrobial agents for Escherichia coli and Salmonella typhi. Chemistry Central Journal 7: 1-7.
- Losasso C et al., 2014. Antibacterial activity of silver nanoparticles: sensitivity of different Salmonella serovars. Frontiers in microbiology 5: 227.

- Ma X et al., 2017. A novel aptasensor for the colorimetric detection of S. typhimurium based on gold nanoparticles. International journal of food microbiology 245: 1-5.
- Maillard and Hartemann P 2013. Silver as an antimicrobial: facts and gaps in knowledge. Critical reviews in microbiology 39: 373-383.
- Majumder S et al., 2022. Silver nanoparticles grafted onto tannic acid-modified halloysite clay eliminated multidrug-resistant Salmonella Typhimurium in a Caenorhabditis elegans model of intestinal infection. Applied Clay Science 228: 106569.
- Min HJ et al., 2022. Detection of salmonella typhimurium with gold nanoparticles using quartz crystal microbalance biosensor. Sensors 22: 8928.
- Mogasale V et al., 2014. Burden of typhoid fever in low-income and middle-income countries: a systematic, literature-based update with risk-factor adjustment. The Lancet Global Health 2 : 570-580.
- Muzaffar HA et al., 2024. Application of nanoparticles against Haemonchus contortus. In: Complementary and Alternative Medicine: Nanotechnology-I. Unique Scientific Publishers; pp: 189-194.
- Nazari Moghadam M et al., 2023. Prevalence of Salmonella Typhimurium and Salmonella Enteritidis isolated from poultry meat: virulence and antimicrobial-resistant genes. BMC microbiology 23: 168.
- Ochoa J et al., 2007. Protective immunity of biodegradable nanoparticle-based vaccine against an experimental challenge with Salmonella Enteritidis in mice. Vaccine 25: 4410-4419.
- Ochoa-Repáraz J et al., 2021. Protection conferred by drinking water administration of a nanoparticle-based vaccine against salmonella enteritidis in hens. Vaccines 9: 216.
- Oh SY et al., 2017. Development of gold nanoparticle-aptamer-based LSPR sensing chips for the rapid detection of Salmonella typhimurium in pork meat. Scientific reports 7: 10130.
- Omara ST et al., 2017. Minimum bactericidal concentration of chemically synthesized silver nanoparticles against pathogenic Salmonella and Shigella strains isolated from layer poultry farms. Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science 7: 214-221.
- Ortega-Valencia JE et al., 2022. Development of a QCM immunosensor with functionalized gold nanoparticles for the detection of Salmonella typhimurium. Materials Letters 314: 131885.

- Premanathan et al., 2011. Selective toxicity of ZnO nanoparticles toward Gram-positive bacteria and cancer cells by apoptosis through lipid peroxidation. Nanomedicine: Nanotechnology, Biology and Medicine 7: 184-192.
- Rabsch W et al., 2002. Salmonella enterica serotype Typhimurium and its host-adapted variants. Infection and immunity 70: 2249-2255.
- Ruvalcaba-Gómez JM et al., 2022. Non-antibiotics strategies to control Salmonella infection in poultry. Animals 12: 102.
- Saadh MJ 2023. Green synthesis of silver nanoparticles using Piper betle exhibit high antimicrobial activity against Salmonella enteritidis and E. coli. Iraqi Journal of Veterinary Sciences 37: 759-763.
- Saidkasimova and Mirtazaev OM 2020. Epidemic Process of Salmonellosis in Tashkent. Indian Journal of Forensic Medicine & Toxicology 14: 4.
- Salman RA et al., 2023. Study of antimicrobial activity of silver nanoparticles against salmonella typhi infections in vitro. Journal of Medicinal and Clincial Sciences 6: 733-745.
- Sánchez-López E et al., 2020. Metal-based nanoparticles as antimicrobial agents: an overview. Nanomaterials 10: 292.
- Sawosz E et al., 2010. Visualization of gold and platinum nanoparticles interacting with Salmonella enteritidis and Listeria monocytogenes. International journal of nanomedicine: 631-637.
- Sawosz E et al., 2011. Visualisation of morphological interaction of diamond and silver nanoparticles with Salmonella enteritidis and Listeria monocytogenes. Journal of nanoscience and nanotechnology 11: 7635-7641.
- Saygi and Usta C 2021. Rosa canina waste seed extract-mediated synthesis of silver nanoparticles and the evaluation of its antimutagenic action in Salmonella typhimurium. Materials Chemistry and Physics 266: 124537.
- Seong M and Lee DG 2017. Silver nanoparticles against Salmonella enterica serotype typhimurium: role of inner membrane dysfunction. Current microbiology 74: 661-670.
- Shaheen U et al., 2021. Antimicrobial activity of silver nanoparticles against Salmonella enteritidis. Pak-Euro Journal of Medical and Life Sciences 4: 70-76.
- Silva NF et al., 2019. In situ formation of gold nanoparticles in polymer inclusion membrane: Application as platform in a label-free potentiometric immunosensor for Salmonella typhimurium detection. Talanta 194: 134-142.
- Soren S et al., 2018. Evaluation of antibacterial and antioxidant potential of the zinc oxide nanoparticles synthesized by aqueous and polyol method. Microbial pathogenesis 119: 145-151.

- Souza RCD et al., 2019. Antibacterial activity of zinc oxide nanoparticles synthesized by solochemical process. Brazilian Journal of Chemical Engineering, 36: 885-893.
- Sun H et al., 2020. The epidemiology of monophasic Salmonella Typhimurium. Foodborne Pathogens and Disease 17: 87-97.
- Sykes JE and McDonough, 2021. Salmonellosis. In: Greene's Infectious Diseases of the Dog and Cat. WB Saunders; pp: 750-758.
- Tack B et al., 2020. Invasive non-typhoidal Salmonella infections in sub-Saharan Africa: a systematic review on antimicrobial resistance and treatment. BMC medicine 18: 1-22.
- Takcı DK et al., 2023. Green synthesis of silver nanoparticles with an antibacterial activity using Salvia officinalis aqueous extract. Journal of Crystal Growth 614: 127239.
- Tayel AA et al., 2011. Antibacterial action of zinc oxide nanoparticles against foodborne pathogens. Journal of Food Safety 31: 211-218.
- Torky HA et al., 2022. Silver nanoparticle effect on Salmonella enterica isolated from Northern West Egypt food, poultry, and calves. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology 106: 5701-5713.
- Vosoughian N et al., 2023. Green synthesis of zinc oxide nanoparticles using novel bacterium strain (Bacillus subtilis NH1-8) and their in vitro antibacterial and antibiofilm activities against Salmonella typhimurium. Microbial Pathogenesis 185: 106457.
- Wang Q et al., 2020. A novel DNA quantum dots/aptamer-modified gold nanoparticles probe for detection of Salmonella typhimurium by fluorescent immunoassay. Materials Today Communications 25: 101428.
- Wang S et al., 2010. Rapid colorimetric identification and targeted photothermal lysis of Salmonella bacteria by using bioconjugated oval-shaped gold nanoparticles. Chemistry–A European Journal 16: 5600-5606.
- Wang S et al., 2011. Toxic effects of gold nanoparticles on Salmonella typhimurium bacteria. Toxicology and industrial health 27: 547-554.
- Wu W et al., 2014. Gold nanoparticle-based enzyme-linked antibody-aptamer sandwich assay for detection of Salmonella Typhimurium. ACS applied materials & interfaces 6: 16974-16981.
- Xie L et al., 2022. Paratyphoid fever A: Infection and prevention. Frontiers in Microbiology 13: 945235.

- Yeom JH et al., 2016. Gold nanoparticle-DNA aptamer conjugate-assisted delivery of antimicrobial peptide effectively eliminates intracellular Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium. Biomaterials 104: 43-51.
- Yi J et al., 2019. A composite prepared from carboxymethyl chitosan and aptamer-modified gold nanoparticles for the colorimetric determination of Salmonella typhimurium. Microchimica Acta 186: 1-8.
- Zawrah MF et al., 2011. Antimicrobial activities of gold nanoparticles against major foodborne pathogens. Life Sciences, 8: 37-44.
- Zhang H et al., 2015. Gold nanoparticles enhanced SERS aptasensor for the simultaneous detection of Salmonella typhimurium and Staphylococcus aureus. Biosensors and Bioelectronics 74: 872-877.
- Zhao L et al., 2014. Nanoparticle vaccines. Vaccine 32: 327-337.
- Zupančič E et al., 2017. Rational design of nanoparticles towards targeting antigen-presenting cells and improved T cell priming. Journal of Controlled Release 258: 182-195.

CHAPTER- 22

EFFECT OF VACCINES ON HEALTH STATUS OF BROILERS

Umber Rauf[1], Muhammad Usman[2], Umer Hayat Khan[3], Saqib Saleem Abdullah[4*], Haseeb Asif[5], Saboor Ahmed Sahar[6], Said Jamil[7], Shahzada Khurram Adrian Shah[8], Muhammad Asad Raza[9] and Shumaila Ameer[10]

[1]Veterinary Research Institute, Zarar Shaheed Road Lahore Cantt, Punjab Pakistan,
[2]Department of Poultry Science, University of Agriculture, Faisalabad, Sub-Campus Toba Tek Singh, Punjab, Pakistan
[3]Department of Clinical Medicine, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan
[4*]Department of Veterinary Basic Sciences, University of Poonch, Rawalakot, Azad Jammu and Kashmir, Pakistan
[5]Department of Pathobiology, Section of Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Sub-Campus Jhang, Punjab, Pakistan
[6]Department of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Sindh Agriculture University, Tandojam, Sindh, Pakistan
[7]Faculty of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Sciences, College of Veterinary Sciences, The University of Agriculture Peshawar, KPK, Pakistan
[8]Department of Veterinary Sciences, The University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, KPK, Pakistan
[9]Department of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Gomal University, Dera Ismail khan, KPK, Pakistan
[10]Animal Science Division Nuclear Institute for Agriculture and Biology, (NIAB-C PIEAS), Faisalabad, Punjab, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533619

ABSTRACT

This chapter examines the essential functions of vaccines in broiler production, emphasizing their impact on growth performance, health outcomes, and economic viability. Vaccination is crucial in chicken farming for illness prevention, mortality reduction, and improvement of productivity metrics, such as weight gain, feed conversion ratio (FCR), and average daily gain (ADG). The main aim of this review is to examine the current research on the effects of different vaccines, encompassing conventional live and inactivated vaccines, alongside novel technologies such as recombinant and in-ovo vaccines. This review evaluates the efficacy of these vaccinations in enhancing broiler health and productivity while also analyzing their safety and cost-effectiveness across various production systems. This chapter synthesizes current studies to emphasize significant trends, including the benefits of novel vaccine technologies in diminishing antibiotic needs and enhancing the overall flock performance. Additionally, it highlights areas for improvement in the existing literature, especially regarding the long-term effectiveness of innovative vaccinations and their incorporation into broiler production settings. This study highlights the necessity of implementing optimal vaccination measures to guarantee economic

sustainability and animal welfare in broiler farming. Future research should prioritize extensive longitudinal investigations that target the stated deficiencies and propose solutions to existing issues. This chapter provides significant insights into the advancing domain of chicken vaccine development and highlights the need for ongoing research and innovation to satisfy the requirements of contemporary broiler production.

Keywords: *broiler vaccination, growth performance, recombinant vaccines, in ovo vaccination, economic sustainability, feed conversion ratio, poultry health*.

INTRODUCTION

The concept of vaccines and their impact on the health of broiler poultry are of great concern in poultry production, with far-reaching effects on animal health, food safety, food production, and the economy. Vaccination is crucial for disease control, lowering mortality rates, and improving the growth performance of animals in terms of weight gain, feed conversion ratio (FCR), and average daily gain (ADG). However, many factors associated with the understanding of vaccination practices still need to be clarified. These factors include the effectiveness of certain new vaccine practices and their potential effects on the long-term production of broilers (Chung et al. 2021). This review seeks to collate existing literature that would help elucidate the rationale and scope of vaccination in broiler production in relation to the growth performance, safety of biological and novel immunization technologies, and economic effects of vaccination programs (Pessoa et al. 2021).

The last couple of decades has markedly increased the dependence on vaccines in poultry sciences, especially in intensive production systems where outbreaks of avian diseases have led to high mortality rates (Shrestha et al. 2022). Several studies have revealed that vaccinations, such as Newcastle disease and infectious bursal disease vaccination of chickens, can significantly improve the productivity of broiler poultry and reduce the use of antibiotics (Sharif and Ahmad 2018). El-Shall et al. (2022) found that broiler vaccination resulted in a 15% increase in weight gain compared with non-vaccinated broilers. In contrast, while these studies and others help to find a better understanding of the relationship between vaccination and growth performance, they also expose the leadership of these studies in the area that addresses the cost and sustained efficacy of new vaccine products and their technologies, namely recombinant and in ovo vaccines, in various production settings (de Miguel et al. 2021). Bridging this gap is critical for ensuring that broiler production sustainability is enhanced through improved vaccine strategies.

This review aims to address this lacuna by consolidating all recent findings related to vaccine effectiveness, safety, and economic aspects of vaccination in broiler production. Although traditional vaccines have been the focus of much research, much still needs to be understood in terms of the relative merits of newer vaccine technologies (Health et al. 2023). This review highlights the gaps in existing studies by evaluating their coverage and design and focusing on short-term impacts. This

review goes a step further in filling the gap by providing a new synthesis incorporating the analysis of various vaccine types in various production systems. This study presents new ways of enhancing the productivity and economic viability of broiler production systems through optimized vaccine approaches (Acevedo-Villanueva et al. 2021).

VACCINE EFFICACY AND BROILER HEALTH

Impact of Vaccination on Growth Performance

Vaccination plays a crucial role in enhancing growth performance of meat-type broilers. It significantly impacts key variables, such as weight gain, feed conversion efficiency (FCE), and average daily gain (ADG). Numerous studies have shown that vaccinated broilers exhibit significantly better weight gain than their unvaccinated counterparts do. For instance, broilers vaccinated against prevalent diseases such as Newcastle disease and infectious bursal disease typically experience–5-15% higher weight gain over the production period. This is attributed to the improved health of vaccinated birds, which suffer less from disease, experience reduced stress, and utilize feed more efficiently (El-Shall et al. 2022). It can be noted that the feed conversion ratio or the FCR, the most critical parameter for feed utilization efficiency, is also positively affected by vaccination. Broilers previously vaccinated against pathogens usually have a low feed conversion when compared to non-vaccinated birds (Chung et al. 2021). Several studies have indicated an FCR improvement of proportions–10-20% more in vaccinated broilers, which has turned out to be very profitable for poultry producers. The net benefit acquired from vaccine administration will increase feed efficiency because there is little competition for nutrients and energy because of the lower disease levels in the immunized population (Sharif and Ahmad 2018). Gaining weight over a long period may not translate to improved performance rates in broilers, and thus, some other parameters, such as average daily gain (ADG), may be more relevant. Broilers that have been vaccinated generally have higher ADGs, usually by 10 to 25%, which leads to the faster reaching of the marketing age and, therefore, better profits for producers (Siagian and Nugraheni 2021).

The specific type of vaccine used, either live or inactivated, also affects these conditions. It is known that if a live vaccine is administered, it usually produces a proper immune response, which, in turn, could improve health parameters and growth performance (Hudson et al. 2020). For instance, it has been shown that broiler chickens immunized with live non-pathogenic vaccines against respiratory diseases perform better in terms of body weight gain than those administered with inactive vaccines. This is probably because live vaccines also tend to elicit a broader immune response that allows for better protection from infection and fewer adverse effects of subclinical infections on growth (Garrido et al. 2022). In contrast, inactivated vaccines are usually safe and can be injected into older birds; however, these vaccines do not induce the required response, which would improve growth performance. Current research has also focused on the correlation between vaccination and broiler

productivity, particularly on the importance of a well-planned vaccination schedule tailored to specific production conditions. For instance, a study has shown that following appropriate vaccination protocols can significantly improve the growth performance of different broiler strains under various production protocols. Vaccination regime, including timing, frequency, and targeted pathogens, has also been found to influence growth performance (Le et al. 2021).

Vaccination of broiler chickens still affects growth performance in more than one way in broiler chickens, notably in weight gain, feed conversion efficiency, and average daily weight gain (Legnardi et al. 2021). It has also been reported that vaccinated broilers perform better than non-vaccinated broilers, with live vaccines generally providing better performance than inactivated vaccines (Weimer et al. 2020). The role of vaccination strategies in broiler production systems is not only in the improvement of performance parameters but also in the overall health and welfare of the flocks. This emphasizes the importance of vaccination in modern husbandry of birds, as well as being a necessary aspect of poultry production that impinges and cuts across many areas pertaining to food due to imperatives of the poultry industry. With the development of the poultry sector, studies on vaccine effectiveness and the influence of poultry vaccines on growth performance are necessary to increase production and obtain food supplies in the future.

IMMUNOLOGICAL RESPONSES POST-VACCINATION

Veterinary medicine and poultry management are primarily dependent on immunological responses in broiler chickens after vaccination. Initially, these immune responses were represented by the production of antibodies, primarily IgY and IgA, as well as perceived cellular immunity. These responses significantly differed according to the class of handled vaccination, such as live, recombinant, or inactivated, as well as the means of dosages, such as ocular or in ovo administration (Bartsch et al. 2022). The humoral immune response is supported by an essential aspect of the response called antibody production. The dominant class of antibodies in avian species is IgY, which is produced mainly after a bird is vaccinated, and helps eliminate pathogens (Rautenschlein et al. 2020). IgA is smaller in amount, but is critical for immunity associated with mucosal surfaces and prevents humanitarian viruses from entering the body. It has also been reported that live vaccines tend to be more immunogenic than inactivated vaccines, as they induce a rapid antibody production response towards the virus in question. This is attributed to the ability of these vaccines to titer within a host, thereby overwhelming the immune response and stimulating antigens (Le et al. 2021).

Adequate Cellular/immunological T-lymphocyte responses are critical in immunology. Avian vaccines, both live and recombinant, have been proven to generate vigorous cellular responses, including CD4+ and CD8+ T cell activation (Rautenschlein et al. 2020). However, inactivated vaccines are likely to induce weaker cellular responses because of their non-replicating nature, which limits the extent and duration of T cell activation (Garrido et al. 2022). Analyzing and

assimilating information from older studies and more contemporary studies, it is reasonable to conclude that the route of vaccine administration influences not only efficacy but also duration. Traditional ocular vaccination is known to induce local immunity in the respiratory tract but does not confer systemic immunity as efficiently as Ovo vaccination (Beltrán et al. 2019). It has recently been demonstrated that, in Ovo, vaccination is more efficient than the humoral standpoint because both active and passive immunity might be well established before the arrival of pathogens rather than within a lengthy postnatal recovery period. This leads to improved vaccine retention, as shown by higher antibody concentrations and more robust immune responses after exposure to pathogens (Pieren et al. 2022). The increasing efficiency of immunization strategies against poultry diseases has also been aided by significant improvements in the vaccine composition and methods of vaccine deposition (Rautenschlein et al. 2020). Previous studies have shown that vaccines delivered in ovo elicit longer immune responses than regular recombinant vaccines administered post-hatch after a certain time lapse. This is because these factors, which are usually underdeveloped in standard vaccines, are targeted by recombinant vaccines, underscoring their significance in poultry health (Gan et al. 2019). It should be emphasized that the immunological responses of broilers against vaccination are a complex and multifaceted process that cannot be simplified into a single concept. They are affected by different parameters such as the vaccine and route of administration. Efforts are not relenting in researching and combining these techniques to further improve the strength and duration of immune responses in poultry systems, thus underlining the need for continuous research in this field.

EMERGING VACCINE TECHNOLOGIES IN BROILER PRODUCTION

Recombinant Vaccines and In Ovo Delivery

The development of new types of recombinant vaccines and the administration of vaccines into eggs (in ovo) have improved the management of poultry health, particularly in the production of broilers (Chung et al. 2021). These recombinant vaccines, such as HVT-vectored and FPV-LT vaccines, are not only proficient, but also cost-effective, instilling confidence in the financial decisions of poultry producers. Recombinant vaccines are vaccines that protect against antigens after humidification of genetically engineered vectors, where relevant pathogen antigens are inserted into a virus. For instance, vaccines that are HVT-vectored can incorporate genes that encode antigens for several pathogens simultaneously, and the vaccine needs to be administered only once (Brisse et al. 2020). This is different from most conventional vaccines, which are likely to be administered in several doses over a period of time and still fail to guarantee long-term immunity. The use of HVT-vectored vaccine strategies has also been shown to enhance protective immune responses against Marek's disease and infectious bursal disease viruses in chickens, resulting in improved survival and faster growth rates in broilers (Shrestha et al. 2018).

The FPV-LT vaccines further illustrate the benefits of recombinant technology. The Fowl pox virus delivers appropriate antigens from many pathogens, minimizing the number of vaccinations (Yehia et al. 2023). However, it has been reported that FPV-LT-vaccinated broilers have enhanced immunological responses and general health compared to their counterparts vaccinated using standard approaches. This not only helps animal welfare, but also increases productivity, which eventually translates into the benefits of poultry growers' purses (Adams et al. 2023). The practicality of oocyte vaccination, which involves vaccinating hatching embryos, has made it a popular application of advanced technologies. This method effectively prevented the 'cold chick' phenomenon, ensuring that the hatched chicks were equipped with antibodies to fend off intruders (Gosden and Gosden 2012). Studies have demonstrated the potential of in ovo vaccination in reducing the incidence of Newcastle disease and avian influenza. For instance, a recent study showed that broilers vaccinated in Ovo with a recombinant vaccine experienced lower mortality and improved weight gain compared to controls, highlighting the efficiency and cost-effectiveness of this approach (Dimitrov et al. 2021). Furthermore, ovo vaccination offers significant benefits to commercial broiler chickens. By vaccinating chicken embryos, producers can efficiently carry out the vaccination process, thereby reducing labor-intensive vaccination that typically follows after hatching. This not only saves time, but also reduces stress for birds, ultimately improving their welfare and productivity. The cost savings from reduced labor expenses further underscores the value of in ovo vaccination for broiler enterprises (Sokale et al. 2021).

Comparative Efficacy of Vaccination Methods

Vaccination is a crucial aspect of poultry husbandry, particularly in the broiler industry, where disease prevention has a tangible effect on growth and feed efficiency, as well as the economic viability of the farmer as shown in figure 1. Various routes have been employed in the vaccination process, including the ocular route, drinking water, and aerosol spray, each having different effects on antibody levels and bird survivorship (Sokale et al. 2017). Ocular vaccination involves the injection of the vaccine into the eyes of birds. This method is preferred more often because of its ability to provoke an excellent local immune reaction. Other researchers have suggested that this method is superior because it stimulates better responses than other methods, particularly in young chicks. However, this practice involves a lot of work, and it may not be feasible for large-scale farms because of the time the vaccinator will take to handle individual birds. However, smaller or medium poultry enterprises are likely to be positive since the practitioner has a better handling of the ocular vaccination procedure (Leigh et al. 2018). Water vaccination is a well-known technique because of its simplicity and the fact that a significant number of birds can be vaccinated quickly.

These findings support the proposition that this methodology can trigger antibody responses; however, the titers may vary according to different factors such as water quality and the presence of other non-indicating factors that prevent vaccine uptake. In such large-scale undertakings, the merit of such an approach often outweighs the

potential variations in immunologic responses, making it preferable to adopt this strategy (Graff Zivin et al. 2023). However, in smaller flocks, where the health status of the individual birds is interactive in that it may affect the overall outcome, this method may be more successful. Spray vaccination is another viable option, particularly for respiratory disease-causing agents. This makes it easy to vaccinate a large number of birds, and in some cases, is helpful in ensuring that all birds are adequately vaccinated (Leigh et al. 2018). In the available literature, it was shown that spray vaccination can produce adequate antibody titers; however, there are variations depending on the conditions and the application technique used. Although it seems to be a practical and economical option, particularly for large-scale producers, this method can prove to be effective only when properly applied. Otherwise, they are likely to endanger health (Stuart et al. 2023). It is clear that there are some pluses and minuses concerning these strategies when examined. Although this procedure is time-consuming, ocular vaccination may be able to achieve high antibody titers, making it applicable to small and medium enterprises (Basu and Rustagi 2022). When comparing the two methods, it can be seen that drinking water and vaccine delivery through a sprayer enables large-scale administration at a cost, although the immune response may vary (Basu and Rustagi 2022). The affordability of these options varies with the scale of the operation; ocular vaccinations tend to increase treatment-related costs; however, when it comes to large-scale administration, the use of oral suspension and spray techniques may lead to decreased overall treatment costs (Wallace et al. 2020). The selection of vaccination strategies should be based on these parameters and possible interventions. It is possible to apply an approach toward broiler health status, which, while combining the benefits of all suggested methods, will suit the particular conditions of the farm when adequate revaccination programs are developed (Pessoa et al. 2021).

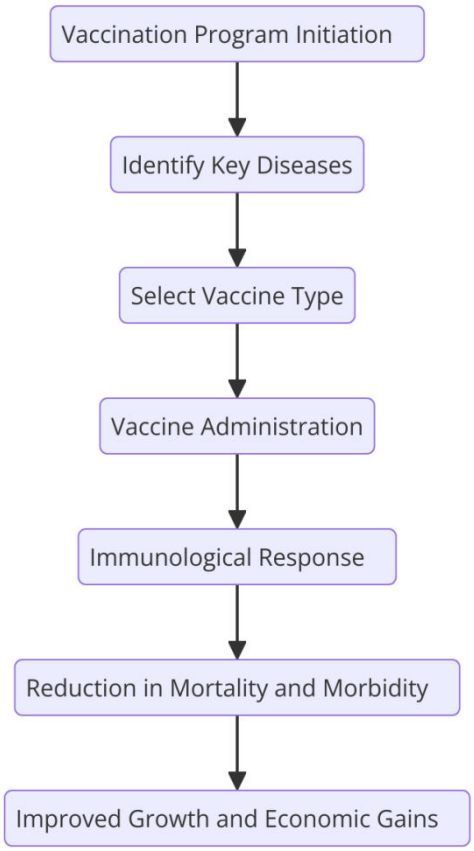


Figure 1: This flowchart outlines the steps in a **Broiler Vaccination Program** and its impact on key performance metrics. It begins with the initiation of the vaccination program, followed by identifying critical diseases and selecting the appropriate vaccine type. The chart shows how vaccine administration affects the immune response, which leads to reduced mortality and morbidity, ultimately improving growth performance and economic gains for broiler production.

ECONOMIC IMPACT AND COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF VACCINATION

Cost-Benefit Analysis of Vaccination Programs

Broiler production requires vaccination to improve the health of birds, decrease death rates, and maximize profitability. A cost-effectiveness analysis pertaining to the measures mentioned above showed many differences in the costs and benefits associated with different vaccination strategies (Gul et al. 2022). For instance, the costs incurred when using live vaccines are, in most cases, lower than those for inactivated vaccines owing to lower production costs and the ability to elicit a robust immune response. However, the use of live attenuated vaccines may also pose challenges, such as the possibility of reverting virulence, and they require appropriate usage and delivery, hence making the operational cost higher than expected (Brisse et

al. 2020). On the other hand, while inactive vaccines are believed to be safe and stable, more resources are generally needed, and fully immunizing the patient with environmental stress may also be prolonged. As for the given administration techniques, ovo vaccination has an easy advantage in labor conservation and reduces the mortality age by inducing early active immunity, which may translate into positive improvements in growth performance (Huang et al. 2022). Research has shown that ovo vaccination can enhance health status, which positively affects feed conversion efficiency, and ultimately, body weight gain (Tainika and Bayraktar 2021).

This method, although initially more expensive because of the need for specialized equipment, is expected to be more cost-effective (higher ROI) in the long run, especially because of reduced mortality and improved production efficiency. NURIYASA and SITI (2018) also mentioned that conventional injection methods are less capital-focused but can result in high labor costs, wastage, and even human error, which may lead to variations in the effectiveness of vaccinations. Recent studies have shown positive economic effects of vaccination schemes. For example, it has been shown that impressive vaccination delivery can reduce the rate of mortality by more than twenty per cent, which will have a positive impact on the production efficiency and profitability of the farm (Celis-Giraldo et al. 2021). It has been reported that the internal rates of return (IRR) for agricultural enterprises with complete vaccination programs are higher than 30%, showing a high return from investment in vaccination. Furthermore, the reduction in disease incidence not only reduces direct veterinary costs but also enhances the demand and confidence among consumers for poultry products. Thus, although the short-run economic costs of vaccination differ according to the techniques employed, the long-term economic benefits in terms of decreased mortality, better modes of growth, and increased returns from the farms make vaccination programs an essential component of the efficient rearing of meat-type chickens, underlining the urgency of implementing vaccination programs as shown in figure 2 (Annapragada et al. 2019). Finally, a carefully crafted immunization plan based on the characteristics and needs of a particular farm can also reap significant economic gains, which further justifies why vaccination is essential in today's poultry production. This emphasis on tailored plans empowers poultry farmers, agricultural economists, and veterinary professionals to make informed decisions, which can lead to economic gains (Chauhan et al. 2021).

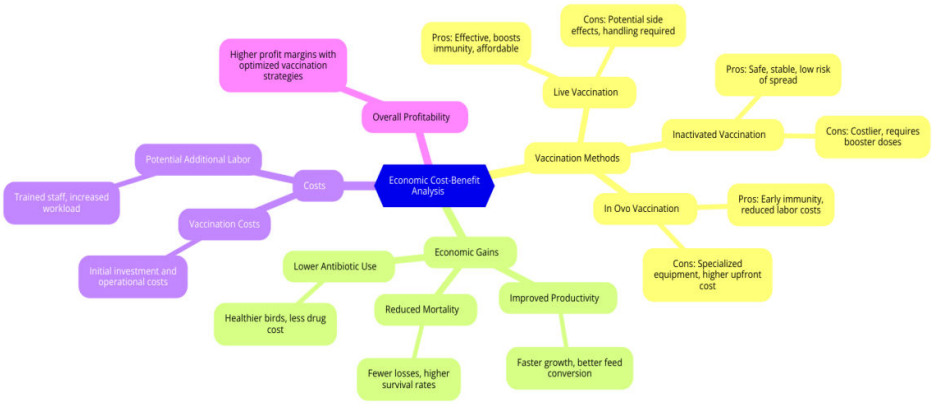


Figure 2: This mind map delineates the economic cost-benefit analysis of Vaccination Programs in Broilers. This analysis evaluates three vaccine techniques: live vaccine, Inactivated Vaccine, and ovo Vaccine, emphasizing their advantages and disadvantages. Economic benefits are associated with decreased mortality, enhanced production, and diminished dependence on antibiotics, but costs encompass vaccination expenditures and possible labor demands. The picture closes with the overall profitability of optimum vaccination techniques, demonstrating how efficient vaccination enhances profit margins by balancing costs and benefits.

VACCINE AS A TOOL FOR REDUCING ANTIBIOTIC USAGE

Within the context of broiler meat production, vaccination has emerged as a significant substitute for antibiotics, thereby addressing animal and public health issues. With the inappropriate and excessive use of antibiotics in the livestock sector, animal diseases known as antimicrobial resistance (AMR) have arisen and pose a dangerous threat to both animals and humans (Okaiyeto et al. 2024). Vaccination is used as a proactive measure against disease, offering two benefits: decreasing the mortality of birds and reducing the need for the use of antibiotics (Gul et al. 2022). Vaccination not only enables poultry farmers to enhance the immune systems of broilers against specific infections that usually cause disease in these chickens but also significantly improves animal welfare. Neat vaccination programs can prevent diseases such as Newcastle Disease, Infectious Bronchitis Disease and Avian Flu by immunizing birds against their endemic diseases, thereby saving lives on the farm (Sharif and Ahmad 2018). Most recent studies have shown that farms that treat diseases using all available vaccines managed to reduce mortality by over 30% compared with farms that used antibiotics only. This decline is paramount, as reduced mortality not only augments animal welfare, but also improves non-revenue factors, productivity, and farm profitability. Finally, the specific objective of improving farming practices incorporated into poultry production has led to a decrease in antibiotic use (Makała 2021). Research shows that in cases where strict vaccination schedules are applied, there is a 40% decline in the use of antibiotics. This is more critical in disease-prone regions, where the risk of infection is high. To avoid disease through vaccination, these users are able to significantly reduce the need for using

therapeutic antibiotics and consequently reduce the pressure for the selection of AMR (Miteu et al. 2023). A high-profile study in the US showed that broiler farms using effective vaccination programs not only reported fewer diseases, but also found fewer antibiotic residues in meat and broiler farm environments. Such observation is essential for food safety and public health because it highlights the need for vaccination as a means to promote the judicious use of antibiotics and ensure the safety of poultry products (Bokhtiar et al. 2023).

Furthermore, vaccination programs can help improve the uniformity and performance of flocks, thereby resulting in healthier birds that require less medical management. For instance, the 'Healthy Flock Initiative' in the UK and the 'Vaccinate for Success' program in the US have demonstrated significant improvements in bird health and reduced antibiotic use. This holistic concept is not only good for animals, but also sways the market demand for meat production from the use of antibiotics to that of meat produced without the use of antibiotics (Huber et al. 2021). The establishment of vaccination programs on broiler farms is, in most instances, a central intervention to prevent deaths and reduce antibiotic use. Vaccination helps prevent diseases and improve animal well-being. This, in turn, helps to increase farm productivity, contributes to the prevalence of antimicrobials, and thus promotes long-term improvements in agriculture (Emes et al. 2023).

VACCINE SAFETY AND ADVERSE EFFECTS

Safety Profile of Broiler Vaccines

The measures taken and general characterization of the frequent use of broiler vaccines are critical to the health and productivity of poultry populations. All vaccines fall within these broad classes: live attenuated, recombinant, and inactivated, with each having a distinct degree of safety and side effects. Pathogenic organisms are used to produce live attenuated commercial vaccines, which usually elicit a robust immune response. However, few side effects may be witnessed during the course of immunization, such as minor respiratory infections or soft stools. There is also a likelihood of regaining virulence; therefore, outbreaks of the disease can be experienced, especially when the virulence is overactive (Saad-Roy et al. 2020). For instance, Newcastle disease vaccination, where live attenuated viruses are used, has been linked to low-virulence strains that require careful control. Viruses or viruses that have been genetically modified to produce epitopes have been incorporated into recombinant vaccines. Such vaccines have been shown to be safe in practice. These vaccines are used in non-living organisms and are not expected to cause such diseases. However, side effects are present, although minimal in incidence, and may appear as redness or swelling of tissues near the injection site, or flu-like symptoms (Lu et al. 2020).

Studies have found that recombinant vaccines can effectively enhance immunity as opposed to their live viral counterparts without the dangers that come with them, making them suitable for use in high-density farming. These vaccines use killed microorganisms; therefore, they are usually considered safe, particularly because

there is no risk of infection (Jang et al. 2018). However, in practice, many doses may be required for optimal immunity, resulting in stress and increased bird handling. Negative responses, in most cases, are mild, such as sore muscles and swelling over the injection area or, very rarely, itchy rash. The route of administration also has a considerable effect on vaccine safety and immunization safety. Ocular vaccination is an effective way to reduce animal stress and handling; however, irritation or conjunctivitis may occur (Recuenco et al. 2017). Another method currently gaining popularity is in ovo vaccination, which involves giving antigens to embryos before hatching to stimulate early protective response immunization. However, if this technique is not performed correctly, there will be fatality in embryos or abnormalities in their development (Huang et al. 2022). Studies have shown that the health and performance of broilers can be significantly altered by vaccination. For example, improvements in growth and feed conversion estimates have been noted in the companions of vaccinated poultry compared to non-vaccinated ones against respiratory ailments (De Herdt et al. 2016).

However, it is important to note that certain vaccines have been criticized for their potential to cause health problems or undesirable outcomes if not administered correctly or appropriately for a selected category. In conclusion, although each vaccine type and delivery system has safety aspects, live attenuated vaccines pose more risks than recombinant and inactivated vaccines. Therefore, ongoing experiments and observations are crucial for fully harnessing the benefits of vaccination, mitigating its adverse effects, and maintaining the health and performance of broiler chickens (Sharif and Ahmad 2018).

Addressing Adverse Reactions and Side Effects

Broiler vaccines are essential for the prevention and management of diseases in birds. However, these vaccines may also trigger negative responses or effects that affect the health and growth of these birds. The documented side effects include immune stress, lymphocyte death, and stunted growth. Immune stress occurs when a body's defensive mechanism responsible for fighting disease is overworked, leading to a decrease in the effectiveness of defense against possible infections. This is a growing concern in these chickens because of their rapid growth period; they require many immune responses. Another adverse effect of vaccination, which is often overlooked, is lymphocyte apoptosis, which is the programmed death of lymphocytes. Some of these studies showed that some vaccines provoke a cell death mechanism called apoptosis in T and B cells, which are vital cells that postulate a healthy immune response. Such situations can result in an immunosuppressed state, making broiler chickens prone to infections, which negatively affects productivity (Sharif and Ahmad 2018). Growth retardation is also a significant issue in vaccinated broilers because it can lead to losses on dairy farms. It has been shown that vaccination creates immunological stress, which leads to inverse growth, that is, weight gain and feed utilization efficiency become poor (Hudson et al. 2020).

This example could be better in commercial settings, where kipping-up with accelerated growth is critical to commercial survival. These negative consequences have led to the consideration of several ways to deal with such strategic measures. Commercial farmer biosecurity practices are vital for reducing the overall disease burden, which is needed for vaccination (Tasie et al. 2020). Improvement of biosecurity measures can aid in general flock health maintenance and relieve the burden on the immune system. Another critical area is the optimization of the vaccine dosage (Fathelrahman et al. 2020). Studies have shown that vaccine dose adjustment may help reduce immune stress and lymphocyte apoptosis, while still achieving adequate protection from infection. Varying vaccination schedules for broilers enhances the immune response without negatively affecting the growth of birds. The synergistic effects of adjuvant technologies for adverse effect mitigation, however, still exist. Undesired immune responses can be reduced, and the net advantages gained from new adjuvants will increase the number of vaccines produced. For instance, the balanced use of safe and effective adjuvants can control the immune response, thereby decreasing intracellular and immune stress damage, which subsequently leads to lymphocyte apoptosis (Zhao et al. 2023). Overall, although broiler chicken vaccines are essential for controlling various diseases, their use has side effects, such as immune stress, lymphocyte apoptosis, and stunted growth. Current efforts have focused on biosecurity improvements, vaccine dose selection, and innovative adjuvant technologies to reduce these effects, allowing broilers to be healthy and productive in a commercial environment (Fancher et al. 2020).

CONCLUSION

This chapter highlights the importance of vaccination in broiler production, specifically in augmenting growth performance, increasing immunological responses, and promoting economic sustainability. Vaccination has been consistently associated with enhanced weight growth, feed conversion ratio (FCR), and average daily gain (ADG), while also markedly decreasing death rates and antibiotic use. Innovative technologies, including recombinant and in ovo vaccines, have demonstrated significant potential as superior alternatives to conventional approaches, providing enhanced efficacy and cost-effectiveness. Despite these advancements, significant deficiencies persist in the literature. Research on the long-term impact of diverse vaccination techniques in various broiler production systems is limited, and there is inadequate evidence regarding the application of new vaccines in underdeveloped countries, where accessibility and cost may pose significant challenges. Moreover, the interaction between vaccination and other agricultural management methods, including biosecurity and nutrition, requires further investigation. Addressing these deficiencies necessitates future research encompassing extensive longitudinal investigations to assess the sustainability and efficacy of both the conventional and novel vaccination technologies. Research must also focus on comprehending the economic and logistical obstacles associated with the implementation of enhanced immunization programs in resource-limited environments. Moreover, comprehensive research examining the synergistic effects of vaccination and other management

approaches is crucial to enhance broiler health and production. This review offers a thorough analysis; nonetheless, it is essential to recognize limitations, including selection bias and emphasis on commercial broiler production, which may not adequately reflect the issues encountered by smaller or developing farms. In summary, vaccination is an essential instrument in contemporary broiler production; however, continuous study and collaboration among researchers, policymakers, and industry stakeholders is imperative to maximize its potential for enhancing poultry health and sustainability.

REFERENCES

- Acevedo-Villanueva K Y et al., 2021. A Novel approach against Salmonella: A review of polymeric nanoparticle vaccines for broilers and layers. Vaccines 9: 1041
- Adams J R et al., 2023. Preventing bacterial disease in poultry in the post-antibiotic era: a case for innate immunity modulation as an alternative to antibiotic use. Frontiers in Immunology 14: 1205869
- Annapragada A et al., 2019. Modeling the impact of newcastle disease virus vaccinations on chicken production systems in northeastern madagascar. Frontiers in veterinary science 6: 305
- Bartsch Y C et al., 2022. SARS-CoV-2 mRNA vaccination elicits robust antibody responses in children. Science translational medicine 14: eabn9237
- Basu S and R Rustagi 2022. Multi-dose vials versus single-dose vials for vaccination: perspectives from lower-middle income countries. Human Vaccines & Immunotherapeutics 18: 2059310
- Beltrán G et al., 2019. Immune responses in the eye-associated lymphoid tissues of chickens after ocular inoculation with vaccine and virulent strains of the respiratory infectious laryngotracheitis virus (ILTV). Viruses 11: 635
- Bokhtiar S M et al., 2023. Assessment of heavy metals contamination and antimicrobial drugs residue in broiler edible tissues in Bangladesh. Antibiotics 12: 662
- Brisse M et al., 2020. Emerging concepts and technologies in vaccine development. Frontiers in Immunology 11: 583077
- Celis-Giraldo C T et al., 2021. Nanovaccines against animal pathogens: The latest findings. Vaccines 9: 988
- Chauhan R et al., 2021. Dynamics of Marek's disease in poultry industry. Pharma Innov 10: 80-83
- Chung E et al., 2021. Do different vaccination regimes affect the growth performance, immune status, carcase characteristics and meat quality of broilers? British poultry science 62: 32-37

- De Herdt P et al., 2016. Improved performance of broilers and broiler breeders associated with an amended vaccination program against reovirosis. Avian diseases 60: 841-845
- de Miguel R et al., 2021. Growth performance and clinicopathological analyses in lambs repetitively inoculated with aluminum-hydroxide containing vaccines or aluminum-hydroxide only. Animals 11: 146
- Dimitrov K M et al., 2021. Novel recombinant Newcastle disease virus-based in ovo vaccines bypass maternal immunity to provide full protection from early virulent challenge. Vaccines 9: 1189
- El-Shall N A et al., 2022. Epidemiology, pathology, prevention, and control strategies of inclusion body hepatitis and hepatitis-hydropericardium syndrome in poultry: A comprehensive review. Frontiers in veterinary science 9: 963199
- Emes E et al., 2023. Drivers of antibiotic use in semi-intensive poultry farms: evidence from a survey in Senegal. Antibiotics 12: 460
- Fancher C A et al., 2020. Avian pathogenic Escherichia coli and Clostridium perfringens: Challenges in no antibiotics ever broiler production and potential solutions. Microorganisms 8: 1533
- Fathelrahman E M et al., 2020. Biosecurity preparedness analysis for poultry large and small farms in the United Arab Emirates. Agriculture 10: 426
- Gan L et al., 2019. Enhancing immunogenicity and protective efficacy of inactivated avian influenza H9N2vaccine with recombinant chicken IFN-α in chicken. Veterinary microbiology 234: 77-82
- Garrido C et al., 2022. Primers design for the detection and genotyping of the Canine Distemper Virus. World Journal of Biology Pharmacy and Health Sciences 12: 200-203
- Gosden R G and L L V Gosden 2012. Eggs come in from the cold. Trends in Endocrinology & Metabolism 23: 498-500
- Graff Zivin J et al., 2023. When externalities collide: Influenza and pollution. American Economic Journal: Applied Economics 15: 320-351
- Gul H et al., 2022. Genetic resilience in chickens against bacterial, viral and protozoal pathogens. Frontiers in veterinary science 9: 1032983
- Health E P o A et al., 2023. Vaccination of poultry against highly pathogenic avian influenza–part 1. Available vaccines and vaccination strategies. EFSA Journal 21: e08271
- Huang K-J et al., 2022. Electromagnetic Force-Driven Needle-Free in Ovo Injection Device. Veterinary Sciences 9: 147
- Huber L et al., 2021. Reduction in antimicrobial use and resistance to Salmonella, Campylobacter, and Escherichia coli in broiler chickens, Canada, 2013–2019. Emerging infectious diseases 27: 2434

- Hudson R E et al., 2020. Immune responses and performance are influenced by respiratory vaccine antigen type and stress in beef calves. Animals 10: 1119
- Jang H et al., 2018. Efficacy and synergy of live-attenuated and inactivated influenza vaccines in young chickens. PLoS One 13: e0195285
- Le C T T et al., 2021. Functional NK cell activation by ovalbumin immunization with a monophosphoryl lipid A and poly I: C combination adjuvant promoted dendritic cell maturation. Vaccines 9: 1061
- Legnardi M et al., 2021. Infectious bronchitis hatchery vaccination: comparison between traditional spray administration and a newly developed gel delivery system in field conditions. Veterinary Sciences 8: 145
- Leigh S A et al., 2018. The impact of vaccination route on Mycoplasma gallisepticum vaccine efficacy. Poultry Science 97: 3072-3075
- Lu M et al., 2020. Effects of Eimeria maxima and Clostridium perfringens infections on cecal microbial composition and the possible correlation with body weight gain in broiler chickens. Research in Veterinary Science 132: 142-149
- Makała H 2021. Impact of selected feed additives in broiler nutrition on breeding and the meat quality features. Advanced Studies in the 21st Century Animal Nutrition 1:
- Miteu G D et al., 2023. Closing potential drivers of antimicrobial resistance: last-resort antimicrobials with the potential of being misused, the way forward–a short communication. Annals of Medicine and Surgery 85: 3226-3231
- NURIYASA I and N SITI 2018. Pengaruh Penggantian Tepung Ikan dengan Limbah Wine Anggur Terfermentasi terhadap Performans Broiler. Majalah Ilmiah Peternakan 21: 29-31
- Okaiyeto S A et al., 2024. Antibiotic resistant bacteria in food systems: Current status, resistance mechanisms, and mitigation strategies. Agriculture Communications 100027
- Pessoa J et al., 2021. Assessment of the effectiveness of pre-harvest meat safety interventions to control foodborne pathogens in broilers: A systematic review. Current Clinical Microbiology Reports 8: 21-30
- Pieren D K et al., 2022. The adaptive immune system in early life: The shift makes it count. Frontiers in Immunology 13: 1031924
- Rautenschlein S et al., 2020. Host factors for disease resistance. Diseases of Poultry 79-108
- Recuenco S et al., 2017. A single center, open label study of intradermal administration of an inactivated purified chick embryo cell culture rabies virus vaccine in adults. Vaccine 35: 4315-4320
- Saad-Roy C M et al., 2020. Immune life history, vaccination, and the dynamics of SARS-CoV-2 over the next 5 years. Science 370: 811-818

- Sharif A and T Ahmad 2018. Preventing vaccine failure in poultry flocks. Immun-Vaccine Adjuv Deliv Syst Strateg 10: 80-94
- Shrestha A et al., 2022. Haemagglutinin antigen selectively targeted to chicken CD83 overcomes interference from maternally derived antibodies in chickens. npj Vaccines 7: 33
- Shrestha A et al., 2018. Enhancing protective efficacy of poultry vaccines through targeted delivery of antigens to antigen-presenting cells. Vaccines 6: 75
- Siagian T B and N K Nugraheni 2021. Broiler Breeder Performance in The Final Phase of Grower. Age (Week) 18: 20th
- Sokale A et al., 2021. Effects of administration of an in ovo coccidiosis vaccine at different embryonic ages on vaccine cycling and performance of broiler chickens. Poultry Science 100: 100914
- Sokale A et al., 2017. Effects of coccidiosis vaccination administered by in ovo injection on the hatchability and hatching chick quality of broilers. Poultry Science 96: 541-547
- Stuart A M et al., 2023. Agriculture without paraquat is feasible without loss of productivity—lessons learned from phasing out a highly hazardous herbicide. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 30: 16984-17008
- Tainika B and Ö H Bayraktar 2021. In ovo feeding technology: embryonic development, hatchability and hatching quality ofbroiler chicks. Turkish Journal of Veterinary & Animal Sciences 45: 781-795
- Tasie C et al., 2020. Adoption of biosecurity for disease prevention and control by poultry farmers in Imo state, Nigeria. Journal of Agriculture and Food Sciences 18: 85-97
- Wallace R M et al., 2020. Role of oral rabies vaccines in the elimination of dog-mediated human rabies deaths. Emerging infectious diseases 26:
- Weimer S et al., 2020. Differences in performance, body conformation, and welfare of conventional and slow-growing broiler chickens raised at 2 stocking densities. Poultry Science 99: 4398-4407
- Yehia N et al., 2023. Current situation and genomic characterization of fowlpox virus in lower Egypt during 2022. Poultry Science 102: 102769
- Zhao T et al., 2023. Vaccine adjuvants: mechanisms and platforms. Signal Transduction and Targeted Therapy 8: 283

CHAPTER- 23

THE MICROBIOME OF DAIRY PRODUCTS: FROM FARM TO FORK

[1]Mariam Anjum, [1]Tajwar Mustafa, [3]Hafiz Muhammad Tariq, [4]Hafsa Noreen [4]Urwah Ishaque, [6]Arooj Fatima, [5]Zeeshan Arif, [6]Areeba Shafiq, [6]Muhammad Ahsan and [6]Hafsa Munir

[1]Department of Food Science, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[2]Department of Biochemistry, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[3]Division of Science and Technology, University of Education Lahore

[4]Department of Zoology, The Government Sadiq College Women University, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[5]Faculty of veterinary Sciences, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

[6]Department of Microbiology, Cholistan University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Bahawalpur, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533652

ABSTRACT

The microbiome of dairy products has been discussed in this chapter, from its beginnings on the farm to its effects on human health at the fork. The intricate population of microbes known as the dairy microbiome is a key factor in influencing the nutritional content, safety, and quality of dairy products. At the farm level, nutrition, milking practices, and udder health, impact the microbiome's initial composition. Particular microbial cultures are introduced during processing and fermentation to help form and grow the microbiome, which adds to the distinctive tastes, textures, and nutritional qualities. Probiotics and prebiotics from dairy products can improve immunity and have a major positive impact on health. This chapter highlights the importance of microbiomes and factors that affect them and their journey from farm to fork. Future studies want to learn more about and utilize the dairy microbiome's potential for individualized nutrition, enhanced.

Keywords: *Dairy microbiome, Food safety, Pathogenic bacteria, Dairy products*

INTRODUCTION

A wide range of foods made from or containing the milk of dairy-producing mammals are known as dairy products. Global milk production from cows, buffalo, goats, sheep, and camels reached about 906 million tons in 2020, up 2.0% from the previous year (FAO, 2021). Dairy products considered healthy because they are high in easily absorbed fat and protein. They also include vitamins, bioactive peptides, and omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), which have particular health effects (Wittwer, Lee & Ranadheera, 2023).

Numerous diets frequently include dairy & dairy-derived items, which impact physiological processes. A higher-quality diet is often linked to the consumption of dairy products, which include cheese, yogurt & milk. These foods are generally recognized as maximally nutrient-dense since they contain proteins, calcium & other compounds like magnesium, potassium, phosphorus, zinc & B vitamins. Several studies have examined the relationship between the consumption of dairy products and some diseases like CVD, T2DM, obesity, as well as osteoporosis, while showing that the academia is interested in the health benefits of dairy products.

1-7–18 Dairy products are however inconclusive or even questionable regarding their association with health outcomes such as fractures, and some research even claimed that dairy foods are detrimental to health (Aslam et al, 2020). More recently there has been a dramatic development in identifying the Comprehensive microbial characterization in milk and related dairy products. This is due to high-throughput sequencing technology, which has facilitated examinations of microbial communities' composition and function on a scale several orders of magnitude beyond what was feasible in earlier years. In metagenomics and metatranscriptomics, it has become easier to utilize single bacteria and a huge population of bacteria in their habitats for biological products. Further, it has been revealed that the various types of microorganisms within the specific fermented milk products benefit the consumers. It is vital to examine the range of microbial communities, or microbiomes, present in milk and dairy products, as well as their interactions and potential health benefits (Macori & Cotter, 2018).

Decades of research have concentrated on pinpointing the microbes responsible for these changes in cheese and other fermented food quality, but little is known about how different microbial populations are in the manufacturing setting. High throughput sequencing has made it possible to investigate microbial variability at the community level, which has made it possible to conduct preliminary research into these difficult but important issues (Johnson, Curtin & Waite-Cusic, 2021). The discovery of farm-level variability in the milk microbiome lends credence to the idea that dairy producers can preserve site-specific microbial populations.

Nevertheless, there can be significant temporal fluctuation in the milk microbiome, with changes occurring seasonally and during the milk processing production day (Kable at al, 2016). From farm to table, dairy products' microbiota greatly influences their flavor, safety, and quality. Other factors which have an impact on this very delicate symbiosis between molds, yeasts, and bacteria across the milk supply system are as follows. The composition of the milk microbiota is dependent on feed supply, environment, and health status of the dairy cow on the farm. Decreasing the pathogenic germ establishment and maintaining a wholesome microbial community requires good hygiene and milking methods. During the fermentation, pasteurization and finally storage in the dairy processing facility the microbiota in milk undergoes further changes. Thus, two useful bacteria Lactobacillus and Streptococcus are included in the process of making the yogurt and cheese tender.

THE MICROBIOME OF DAIRY COWS

Examples of contamination sources include outer udder skin, milking equipment and accessories, air, water, animal feed, grass, and soil some of which yield extremely diverse bacterial, yeast, and fungal species that can form extremely complex Microbial ecology in milk. While some of these bacteria are vital to the dairy business, particularly in fermented foods, others can lead to milk product decaying or jeopardizing its safety. Microbial populations are essential to the conversion of milk into fermented foods like cheese because they multiply and metabolize the milk. Mammalian cultures rely upon these collective genomes to generate an array of dairy products that are popular and well-known across the world.

The microbiota of raw or pasteurized milk from various dairy species, including cattle, ewes, livestock, water buffaloes, yaks, and camels, has been studied. The milk microbiota is complicated and extremely variable, with most studies having minimal sampling effort and descriptive techniques. Nonetheless, several large-scale, purposeful, or quasi-experimental studies address issues including the health of cows, diet, husbandry, breed, season, and the location of dairy products' source, as well as issues like contamination during production as well as distribution and storage temperature. A core microbiome can be identified or broad patterns can be found by using meta-analyses.

The udder and the teat surface are the first places where bacteria can be found in raw milk. The microbiota's most prevalent members were *Clostridiales* (17–41%), while the subdominant microbiota also contained *Actinobacteria (Corynebacterium, Brevibacterium*), *Bacteroidetes (Bacteroides and Alistipes*), and *Proteobacteria (Pseudomonas and Acinetobacter*).

Specifically, it has been demonstrated that the microbiota composition of individual milk samples is highly reliant on the sampling technique employed; hence, sampling techniques need to be meticulously documented to facilitate the interpretation of findings from various investigations. Several studies support the following conclusions:

- The microbiota in milk from healthy cows is incredibly diverse and fluctuates.
- Mastitis and some other diseases have a substantial influence on the microbiota's diversity and makeup.
- A wide range of additional variables greatly influence the makeup of the milk microbiota, such as breeding, parity, farming methods, bedding, food, season, and milking days.

FACTORS INFLUENCING THE MILK MICROBIOME

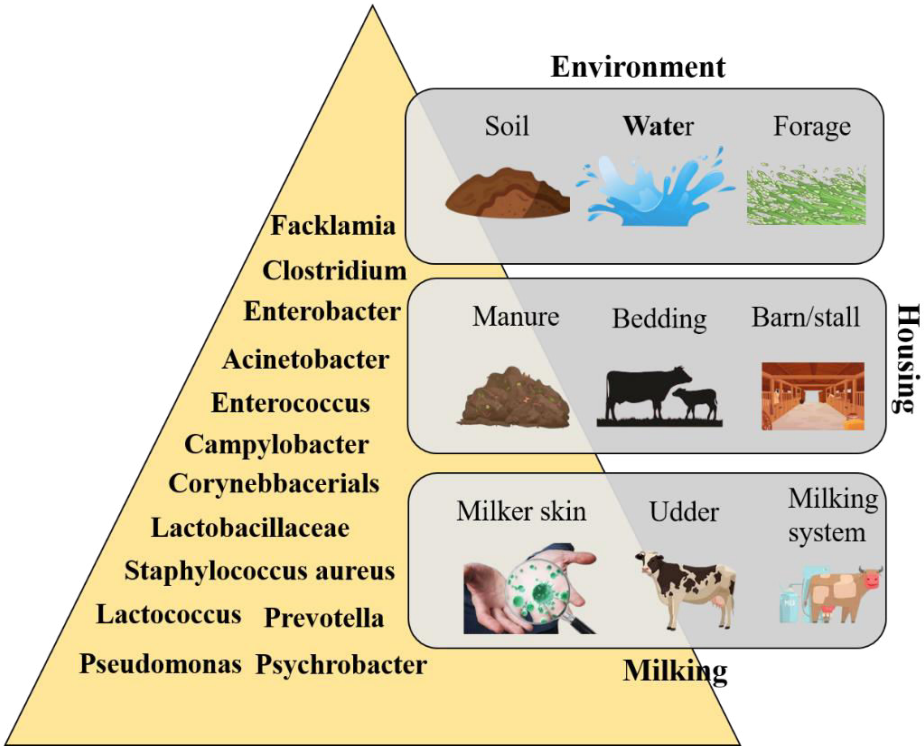


Figure 5 Origins of the microbiota in raw milk on dairy farms. The distribution of microbes among the three primary sources—the environment, housing, and milking

Feeding

Silage's microbial ecology has been thoroughly investigated, despite being an essential part of dairy cow nutrition. Forage plants can become infected by soil spores that survive in silage. When a cow is being milked, these spores can enter both the milk and its digestive system. Forages ensiled, especially corn silage, and may contain a significant amount of bacterial spores. Studies show spore numbers in raw milk are found in dairy farms fed high-quality silage (Muck et al, 2018). Silage microbiology research focuses on developing new additives to improve aerobic stability and animal performance.

Bedding

Dairy cow bedding materials contain varying microbial communities, with numerous anaerobic spores found in straw bedding. Used bedding samples have greater amounts of Bacillus spp., coliforms, Klebsiella spp., streptococci, & streptococci-like organisms. While conventional bedding materials can be replaced with environmentally friendly recycled manure solids (RMS), hardly any research has been done on the microbial communities that inhabit RMS (Ouamba et al, 2022). There have been contradictory findings published about how RMS affects the

microbiota in raw milk. In contrast to cows bedding on sawdust and sand, a cross-sectional investigation revealed that although there were higher bacterial counts in RMS, there was no correspondingly higher bacterial burden in related milk. However, coliform counts and streptococci and streptococci-like organism counts were greater on farms using RMS compared to new sand or organic non-manure bedding. The scant literature that is now accessible describes various RMS creation processes, variations in study experimental designs and sampling methodologies, and additional aspects about agricultural activities (Evanowski et al, 2020).

Milking

Milking environments are ideal for bacterial growth due to their multiple microbiological niches. Maintaining cleanliness is essential for limiting environmental infections and lowering the incidence of contaminated milk. Contamination of raw milk is positively connected with dirt residing on the udder and teat. Hand hygiene and gloves are recommended for maintaining the microbiological quality of raw milk. Using a particular laundry method and teaching employees to clean teat ends are two interventions that can lower the mesophilic & thermophilic content of bulk tank raw milk (Palii et al, 2020). However, teat preparation before milking does not significantly affect milk microbiota. Using gloves, drying teats, forest ripping, pre- and post-dipping, and other milking techniques can minimize the amount of anaerobic spore-forming bacteria that contaminate milk.

TRANSMISSION OF MICROORGANISMS FROM COW TO MILK

There are several ways in which microorganisms from cows might enter milk supplies. The cow's udder is one popular route. These pathogens can contaminate milk directly if the udder is afflicted with mastitis, a bacterial infection. Furthermore, soiled hands or equipment, including milking machines, can introduce bacteria into the milking process (Derakhshani et al, 2018). Microbial contamination of milk can also result from improper handling and storage.

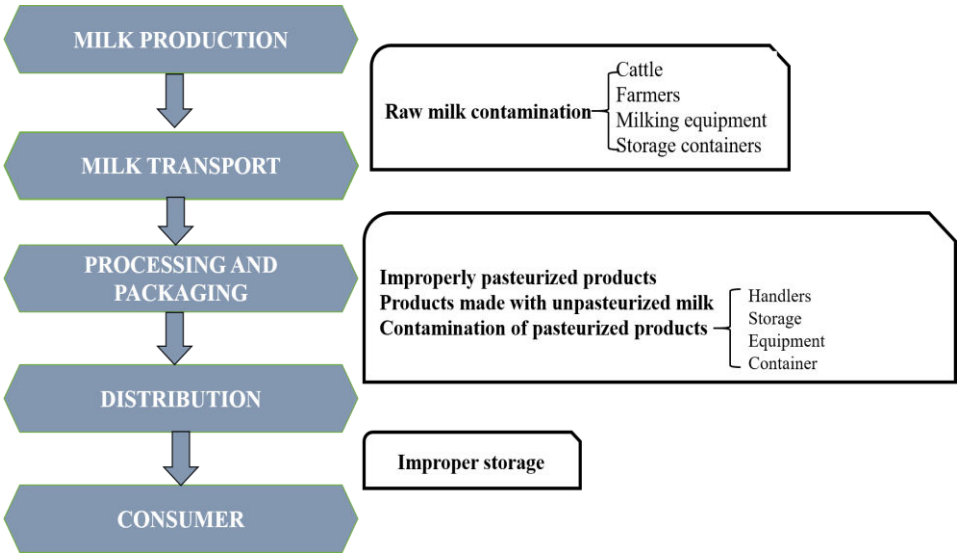


Figure 6 Flowchart showing the several dairy supply chain sites that are prone to microbiological contamination

Naturally, the udder and the teat surface are the first places where germs can be found in raw milk. One of the most important sources of microorganisms for specific milk samples is the inside and surface of the teat, and these bacteria have the potential to survive milk transformation and transportation. The bulk tank milk is transferred from the dairy farm to the processing facility (Younan & Abdurahman, 2004). Further storage & processing methods may drastically alter the composition of the milk microbiota due to contamination and expansion.

THE FARM-TO-FORK CONTINUUM: A MICROBIAL JOURNEY

The "farm to fork" continuum in the dairy industry involves a fascinating microbial journey, as microbes play critical roles throughout the production process**.**

Rumen as a microbial reservoir

The rumen, or the reticulo-rumen, is a huge chamber (mature cow can hold 50–100 people) where bacteria break down nutrition initially. Because of the favorable conditions that allow microorganisms to survive and grow, the rumen is an ideal microbial habitat. The temperature is rather steady between 36 and 40°. The sole exocrine secretion that the rumen gets is saliva, which, along with the animal's drinking water, provides the wet environment required for microbial development. Food contains energy along with the essential nutrients for microbial activity or development.

Peristalsis and antiperistalsis, two normal reticulo-ruminal motility processes, aid in blending the contents and acquainting bacteria with fresh substrate. Through eructation (gases) or absorption (acids) into the circulation, fermentation products are eliminated. Ruminal pH is regulated by absorption with salivary secretions' buffering action (Nagaraja, 2016). Milk can become contaminated by organisms excreted in the

feces of infected animals or asymptomatic carriers. Water, bugs, soil, excrement, animals, and tainted feed are other sources of environmental pollution (Fusco et al., 2020). Pests, soil, excrement, animals, and tainted feed are additional causes of environmental pollution. Infected farmers who do not wash their hands could potentially contaminate milk. Milk can be further contaminated by the machinery used for milking, collecting, and transporting, or it may be subjected to time-temperature abuse, which can foster the growth of microorganisms.

Thus, the first step in ensuring the safety of milk and dairy products is to maintain animal health, high-quality feed, and a clean environment, including excellent animal husbandry on the farm. However, r to eradicate any remaining microorganisms and bring the risk of disease down to an acceptable level, milk must be pasteurized. It is safe to produce and eat milk and dairy products as long as appropriate hygiene precautions are implemented to avoid post-process contamination. This chapter examines the manufacturing chain's hazards and control mechanisms (Campbell & Marshall, 2016).

Milk as a microbial reservoir

Milk is an extremely nutrient-dense food from cows, goats, sheep, buffalo, and humans, among other animals. On the other hand, these milk's'' high nutritious content includes vitamins, minerals, proteins, lipids, and vital amino acids. All of this, with the pH being almost neutral and the high water activity, makes the environment perfect for the growth of various microorganisms. While some of these nutrients are available to all microbes immediately, others are given to certain populations only after their major components have been metabolized, releasing components and metabolites consumed by other species (Doyle, Diez-Gonzalez, & Hill, 2020).

It is commonly known that the bulk of the bacteria in milk from dairy animals, goats, sheep, and buffalo are lactic acid bacteria (LAB), a type of bacterium that breaks down lactose into lactate before it is pasteurized. The most common LAB genera in milk are Lactococcus, lactic acid bacteria, Leuconostoc, Streptococcus, and Enterococcus. Pseudomonas & Acinetobacter species are often present in psychotrophic populations, which make them essential for cold storage.

Other yeasts and molds, as well as isolates belonging to non-LAB genera, are also found in milk (Quigley et al., 2011)

Lactate, which microorganisms produce, is what causes milk fermentation and affects the sensory, taste, texture, or organoleptic characteristics of the final products in different ways (Wouters, Ayad, Hugenholtz, & Smit, 2002).

Table 1. *CFU/ml of bacteria in cow's milk(Raats, Offek, Minz, & Halpern, 2011)*

	Bacteria	**CFU/ml**
1	Lactococcus	8.2×10^1–1.4×10^4
2	Lactobacillus	1.0×10^2–3.2×10^4
3	Streptococcus	1.41×10^1–1.5×10^4
4	Leuconostoc	9.8×10^1–2.5×10^3
5	Enterococcus spp	2.57×10^1–1.58×10^3

The milk from buffalos, sheep, goats, camels, yaks, donkeys, and, to a lesser degree, and in only a few countries, mares are among the other animals whose milk is consumed by people worldwide. Camel milk is a staple diet for pastoralists and is commonly consumed in Arab and African nations. Similar to other milks, camel milk's microbial community can influence later fermentations, health benefits, and milk spoiling.*Leuconostoc, lactobacilli (Lactobacillus helveticus, Lactococci (Lactis ssp. Lactis), Streptococci (S. salivarius),* and *Lactococci*

(Khedid, Faid, Mokhtari, Soulaymani, & Zinedine, 2009). Similar to other milk, camel milk may contain human diseases such as *E. Coli, Listeria*, and *Salmonella*, the frequency of which varies depending on the region (Abeer, Gouda, Dardir, & Ibrahim, 2012). The yak is another animal that is often associated with harsh weather conditions. China is home to approximately 92% of the world's yaks, and yak milk is a valuable commodity in some parts of the country(Zhang, Zhao, Jiang, Dong, & Ren, 2008).

As starter cultures in the cheese business, the strains Lactococcus lactis ssp. lactis, or *Lactococcus lactis ssp. cremoris* are most commonly used. Making compounds that improve flavor is another well-known trait of Lactococcus lactis, ssp. lactis biovar diacetylactis (Hugenholtz & Starrenburg, 1992).

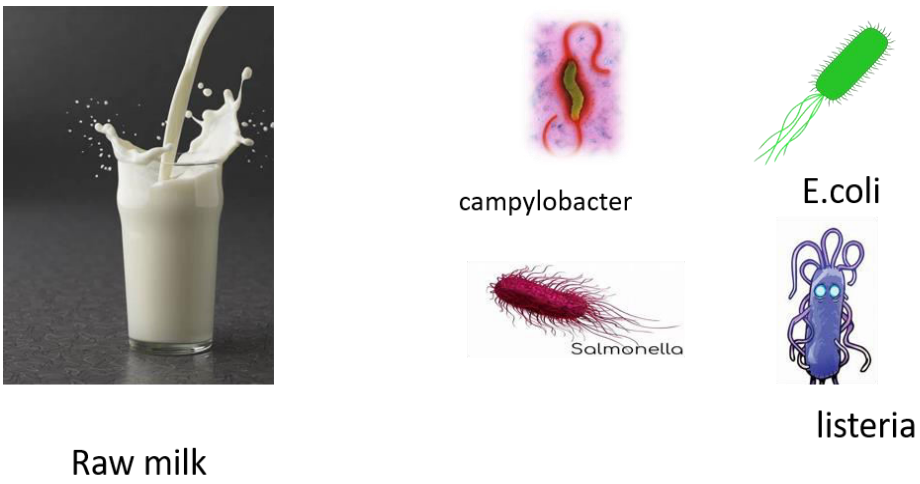


Figure 7 Pathogenic bacteria in raw milk

Processing plant as a microbial reservoir

The dairy business has embraced several traditional and innovative process methods, yet microbial deterioration of milk and its derivatives still results in large losses for the sector. Moreover, milk & dairy goods have been connected several foodborne disease outbreaks worldwide. The most often implicated organisms in outbreaks of dairy-borne illnesses are enteric pathogens, such as Salmonella strains, Campylobacter spp., Shiga toxin-producing E. coli, Listeria monocytogenes or enterotoxin-producing Staphylococcus aureus (Datta, N., & Tomasula,2015).

Any reform plan must be proactive or risk-based to manage food hygiene in the dairy business. Because informal value chains dominate the dairy business, this method is still challenging in developing countries. Regardless of the scale of its production (large or small) or sector (formal or informal), the dairy industry should adopt good hygiene and manufacturing practices, along with the detection or management of potential sources of contamination, to reduce the issues related to quality and safety (Ntuli et al., 2023). A processing plant's microbial diversity is influenced by numerous factors, such as raw materials, personnel, infrastructure, products, and cleaning practices.

The microbial diversity of space will be higher in raw milk handling, storage, and reception areas than in pasteurized or dry milk product handling areas. Unsafe food can be generated if pathogens are found in the environment and are not appropriately controlled, resulting in outbreaks, recalls, and diseases. Just a small number of dangerous microorganisms linked to milk and dairy products typically come from the production setting. Pathogens such as *Listeria monocytogenes* , *Salmonella spp.* (subspecies), and, more recently, *Cronobacter sakazakii* can often enter a plant through human traffic or raw materials (Khan et al., 2016). Once inside, they can remain in processing plant niches for years or even decades, provided controls are not implemented. One of the most deadly foodborne bacteria is Listeria monocytogenes, which causes 20% to 30% of cases of listeriosis to be fatal.

L. monocytogenes is prevalent in cold, damp regions of dairy processing factories where pasteurized goods are handled and kept because it flourishes at refrigeration temperatures that can tolerate greater salt levels than other bacteria (Akinsemolu & Onyeaka,2024). Add saline spaces, such as equipment, and rooms where brine and salted cheese drippings may collect. L. monocytogenes may create robust biofilms to shield itself from sanitizers and cleaners in the lack of adequate sanitation. Environmental infections include C. sakazakii and Salmonella, especially in dry dairy powder production plants. When dry dairy powder is used in products meant for baby nourishment or immunocompromised individuals, C. sakazakii poses a particular risk since it can result in sepsis (blood infection), meningitis, and in rare circumstances, even death. These diseases favor the same development niches and have the same ecology. For a long time, it has been known that they can live in dry settings found in dairy powder plants.

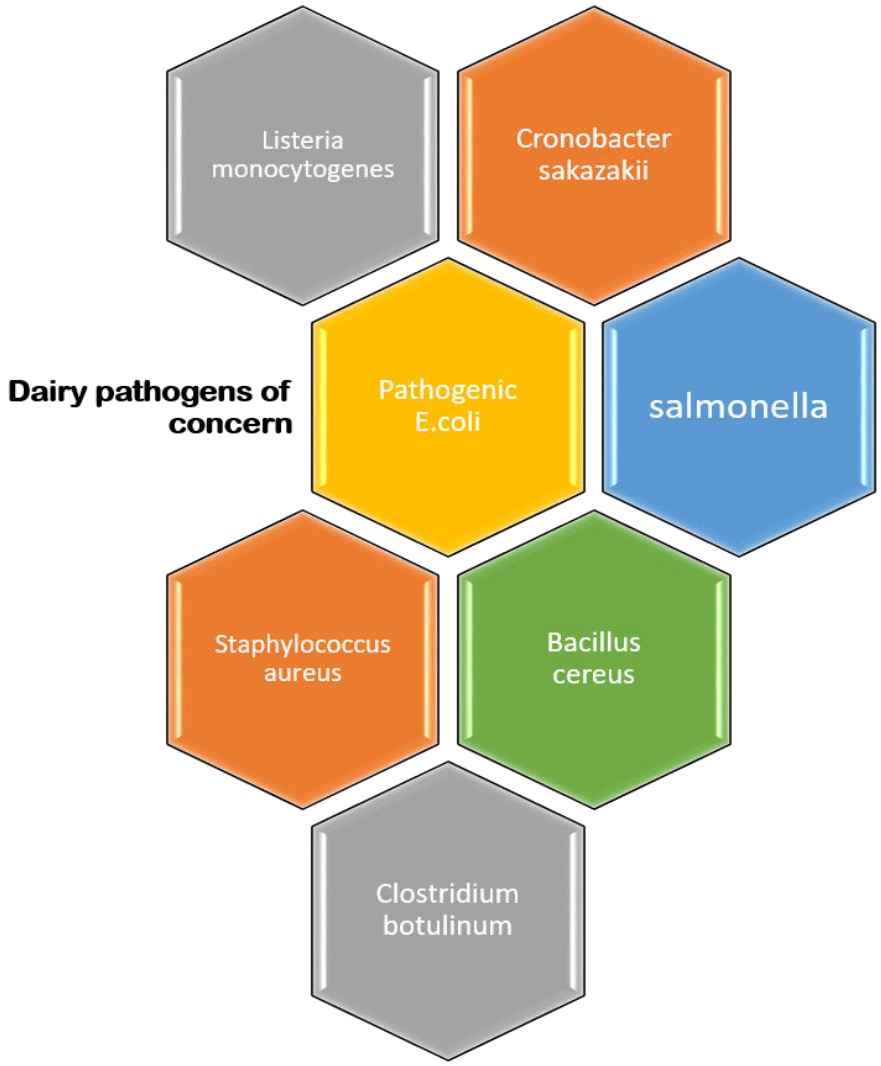


Figure 8 microbiome of dairy products

The Processing Plant: A Microbial Bottleneck

Any stage of a food supply line, including pre- or post-harvesting, processing, packaging, transportation, and distribution, is susceptible to microbial food contamination. In the food business, and especially in the manufacturing environment, unintentional introduction of microorganisms like viruses, bacteria, or other microbes is the main source of microbial contamination (Akineden et al., 2008). These microorganisms concern the food business because of their negative impact on food and the public. Biofilm development is the most common form of microbial contamination in food processing environments.

Because moisture, a key component of biofilm development, is unavoidable in the food processing environment, biofilm formation poses a challenge to the food business. Controlling and avoiding microbiological contamination begins with identifying the sources of contamination (Pak et al., 2002). Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP) and the HACCP approach are commonly used to prevent microbiological contamination in food production. With a pH of 6.8, milk's composition is about 87.2% water, 3.7% lipids, 3.5% proteins, 4.9% lactose, and 0.7% ash. Because of these important nutritional components, it is typically regarded as a full meal. Preventing cross-contamination of raw milk and its derivatives is the most crucial step in the production of dairy products of superior quality (Oliver et al., 2005). In addition to chemical or physical hazards emanating from many sources, milk has become contaminated with undesirable or harmful microorganisms resulting in inadequate sanitation practices.

The milking environment, cows, staff, milking equipment, milk transport, or water are frequent risk factors for milk contamination via bacteria. The demand for dairy products made locally is growing, and many nations' agricultural policies encourage the development of small-scale farm dairy ventures (Jorgensen et al., 2005). Farm dairies often utilize their wells for water, use raw milk to manufacture cheese, and house their milk-producing animals close to the dairy facilities. These circumstances might increase the likelihood that dangerous microbes would contaminate dairy products (De Buyser et al., 2001). Staphylococcal enterotoxin is one of the hazards linked to outbreaks in farm dairy operations. Many types of Staphylococcus aureus commonly contaminate raw milk or raw milk products. In bulk milk samples of Norwegian farms, the bacteria was found in 75% of the cow and 96% of the caprine samples (Jorgensen et al., 2005). Comparably, S. aureus was discovered in 61% of raw milk cheeses produced in Italy (Cremonesi et al., 2007), 38% of raw milk goat cheeses created on-farm in Sweden (Tham et al., 1990), and 100% of raw milk cheeses made in Brazil. In addition to water, milking equipment, human contact, and the environment, dairy animals are probably the main source of S. aureus infection. Staphylococcus aureus is a common infection that can cause disorders in humans and animals, including mastitis, toxic shock syndrome (TSS), and staphylococcal food poisoning (SFP) (Le Loir et al., 2003).

Milk is almost solely used to make cheese, and it is often processed in small dairies with insufficient technological and scientific understanding for large-scale controlled manufacturing. Listeria monocytogenes is a foodborne organism that can cause serious disease, with fatality rates ranging from 20-30% or even higher, 44% and 67% mortality rates, respectively. L. monocytogenes is typically discovered in food processing facilities of various types and some strains. Reclaimed processing wastewater is being repurposed for cleaning in food processing facilities due to the increased demand for water resources. Large amounts of wastewater from the milk business can be used, following appropriate treatment, to clean equipment. Raw milk is microbially contaminated making reclamation of wastewater unsafe since it comprises very high bacteria levels.

THE BENEFITS OF A HEALTHY DAIRY MICROBIOME

Nutritional Value

The boosts in the proportion of good bacteria found in dairy greatly influence the nutritional value of food, especially in products such as cheese, kefir, and yogurt. Secondary products are included in these foods and are important for fortifying of the nutritional value of the meal lactic acid bacteria and bifidobacteria (Farag et al., 2020). Modulating the nutraceutical potential of dairy products is perhaps the most significant interaction between dairy microbiota and nutritional value. This food product, consisting of proteins, peptides, and other metabolites, has been proven to possess anti-inflammatory and antioxidant effects, as well as other benefits. Since the dairy microbiota influences nutrient bioavailability, it influences the nutritional value of meals too. Sodas that results from the fermentation of milk contain some nutrients that enable the body to boost mineral's bioavailability such as calcium. Two other minerals produced by bacteria through fermentation that could be affected by the dairy microbiome are Vitamin K and Biotin (Dubey & Patel, 2018).

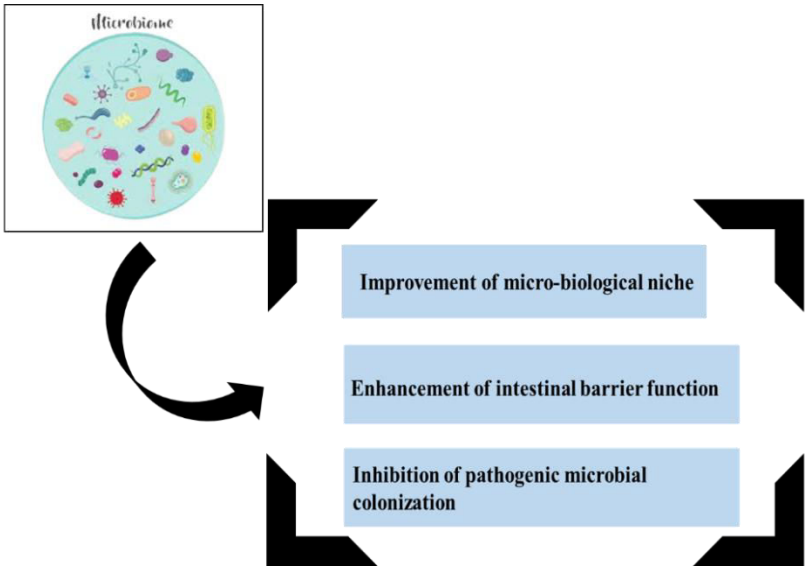


Figure 9 Impact of bovine milk microbiota on gut health

In addition, the dairy microbiome could affect the nutritional value of food through alteration of the gut microbiome. Beneath probiotics from fermented dairy products may well guide the growth of beneficial bacteria hence altering the way certain nutrients are ingested and absorbed by the stomach. This could result in several health enhancements such as enhanced digestion, reduced inflammation, and a better immune system. Dairy microbiota could impact the Gut microbiome in manners such as colonisation, alteration of gut epithelium, and short-chain fatty acid manufacture (Sanders, 2011). However, the two probiotics commonly found in fermented dairy products like yogurt, for instance, Lactobacillus acidophilus and Bifidobacterium bifidum can make the gut segregated with more amounts of good bacteria.

In addition, it is postulated that the genes related to the gut epithelium might be controlled in a dissimilar manner by the dairy microbiota, possibly leading to changes in the operation of the gut barrier or the immune system response. In addition, the dairy microbiota commensals may release short-chain fatty acids such as butyrate, propionate, and acetate which are essential for a symbiosis with intestinal cells and supply energy to the brush border membrane. In general, the emergence of dairy microbiota directs health-relevant characteristics of the food, especially when it includes fermented the dairy products. By controlling bioactive compounds production, nutrition bioaccessibility, and gut microbiota, dairy microbiome influences the immunologic and digestive system, reduces inflammation and the rate of chronic diseases, and modulates the gut microbiome (Markowiak-Kopeć & Śliżewska, 2020). Acids like butyrate, propionate, and acetate, support a healthy gut environment and provide the gut epithelium with energy.

The dairy microbiota plays a major role in determining the healthfulness of food, particularly when it comes to fermented dairy products. By regulating the production of bioactive compounds, nutrition bioavailability, and gut microbiota, the dairy microbiome can improve immunological and digestive function, reduce inflammation and the risk of chronic disease, and change the gut microbiome (Markowiak-Kopeć & Śliżewska, 2020).

CONCLUSION

The dairy microbiota which consists of a variety of small microorganisms plays a critical role in defining the safety, quality, and nutritional profile of dairy products. Starting from the farm to the processing firm Milk and milk products are closely monitored and controlled and therefore other factors such the as feeding of the cows, the milking process, and the state of the udder determine its initial composition. A few are added during processing and fermentation and these endow the final products with certain unique characteristics such as tastes, textures, or even nutrients. Dairy microbiota also affects human health since beneficial bacteria or probiotics enhance the body's responses and enhance the body's immunities, digestive system, and welfare when from fermented products. Certain foods contain olive prebiotics, which refer to the feed that nurtures the absorption of balanced intestinal bacteria. Some dairy products may contain it. With further development of dairy microbiology, scientists may succeed in discovering new specific microbial cultures, develop individualized approaches to designing healthy diets based on the dairy products, and improve the sanitariness of food production which will lead to a decrease in the number of people infected with the pathogenic microorganisms.

REFRENCES

- Abeer, A., Gouda, A., Dardir, H., & Ibrahim, A. (2012). Prevalence of some milk borne bacterial pathogens threatening camel milk consumers in Egypt. *Global Vet, 8*(1), 76-82.

- Akineden, Ö., Hassan, A. A., Schneider, E., & Usleber, E. (2008). Enterotoxigenic properties of Staphylococcus aureus isolated from goats' milk cheese. *International journal of food microbiology*, *124*(2), 211-216.
- Akinsemolu, A. A., & Onyeaka, H. N. (2024). Microorganisms Associated with Food Spoilage and Foodborne Diseases. In *Food Safety and Quality in the Global South* (pp. 489-531). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.
- Aslam, H., Marx, W., Rocks, T., Loughman, A., Chandrasekaran, V., Ruusunen, A., & Jacka, F. N. (2020). The effects of dairy and dairy derivatives on the gut microbiota: A systematic literature review. *Gut microbes*, *12*(1), 1799533.
- Campbell, J. R., & Marshall, R. T. (2016). *Dairy production and processing: The science of milk and milk products*: Waveland Press.
- Cremonesi, P., Perez, G., Pisoni, G., Moroni, P., Morandi, S., Luzzana, M., ... & Castiglioni, B. (2007). Detection of enterotoxigenic Staphylococcus aureus isolates in raw milk cheese. *Letters in applied microbiology*, *45*(6), 586-591.
- Datta, N., & Tomasula, P. M. (2015). *Emerging dairy processing technologies: Opportunities for the dairy industry*. John Wiley & Sons.
- Derakhshani, H., Fehr, K. B., Sepehri, S., Francoz, D., De Buck, J., Barkema, H. W., ... & Khafipour, E. (2018). Invited review: Microbiota of the bovine udder: Contributing factors and potential implications for udder health and mastitis susceptibility. *Journal of dairy science*, *101*(12), 10605-10625.
- Doyle, M. P., Diez-Gonzalez, F., & Hill, C. (2020). *Food microbiology: fundamentals and frontiers*: John Wiley & Sons.
- Dubey, M. R., & Patel, V. P. (2018). Probiotics: A promising tool for calcium absorption. *The open nutrition journal*, *12*(1).
- Espie, C. A., Broomfield, N. M., MacMahon, K. M., Macphee, L. M., & Taylor, L. M. (2006). The attention–intention–effort pathway in the development of psychophysiologic insomnia: a theoretical review. *Sleep medicine reviews*, *10*(4), 215-245.
- Evanowski, R. L., Kent, D. J., Wiedmann, M., & Martin, N. H. (2020). Milking time hygiene interventions on dairy farms reduce spore counts in raw milk. *Journal of dairy science*, *103*(5), 4088-4099.
- Farag, M. A., Jomaa, S. A., Abd El-Wahed, A., & R. El-Seedi, H. (2020). The many faces of kefir fermented dairy products: Quality characteristics, flavour chemistry, nutritional value, health benefits, and safety. *Nutrients*, *12*(2), 346.
- Fusco, V., Chieffi, D., Fanelli, F., Logrieco, A. F., Cho, G. S., Kabisch, J., . . . Franz, C. M. (2020). Microbial quality and safety of milk and milk products in the

21st century. *Comprehensive Reviews in Food Science and Food Safety, 19*(4), 2013-2049.

- Hugenholtz, J., & Starrenburg, M. J. (1992). Diacetyl production by different strains of Lactococcus lactis subsp. lactis var. diacetylactis and Leuconostoc spp. *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology, 38*, 17-22.
- Johnson, J., Curtin, C., & Waite-Cusic, J. (2021). The cheese production facility microbiome exhibits temporal and spatial variability. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, *12*, 644828.
- Jørgensen, H. J., Mørk, T., & Rørvik, L. M. (2005). The occurrence of Staphylococcus aureus on a farm with small-scale production of raw milk cheese. *Journal of Dairy Science*, *88*(11), 3810-3817.
- Kable, M. E., Srisengfa, Y., Laird, M., Zaragoza, J., McLeod, J., Heidenreich, J., & Marco, M. L. (2016). The core and seasonal microbiota of raw bovine milk in tanker trucks and the impact of transfer to a milk processing facility. *MBio*, *7*(4), 10-1128.Macori, G., & Cotter, P. D. (2018).
- Khan, I., Miskeen, S., Khalil, A. T., Phull, A. R., Kim, S. J., & Oh, D. H. (2016). Foodborne pathogens: Staphylococcus aureus and Listeria monocytogenes an unsolved problem of the food industry. *Pakistan Journal of Nutrition*, *15*(6), 505-514.
- Khedid, K., Faid, M., Mokhtari, A., Soulaymani, A., & Zinedine, A. (2009). Characterization of lactic acid bacteria isolated from the one humped camel milk produced in Morocco. *Microbiological research, 164*(1), 81-91.
- Le Loir, Y., Baron, F., & Gautier, M. (2003). [i] Staphylococcus aureus [/i] and food poisoning. *Genetics and molecular research: GMR*, *2*(1), 63-76.
- Markowiak-Kopeć, P., & Śliżewska, K. (2020). The effect of probiotics on the production of short-chain fatty acids by human intestinal microbiome. *Nutrients*, *12*(4), 1107.
- Muck, R. E., Nadeau, E. M. G., McAllister, T. A., Contreras-Govea, F. E., Santos, M. C., & Kung Jr, L. (2018). Silage review: Recent advances and future uses of silage additives. *Journal of dairy science*, *101*(5), 3980-4000.
- Nagaraja, T. (2016). Microbiology of the rumen. *Rumenology*, 39-61.
- Ntuli, V., Sibanda, T., Elegbeleye, J. A., Mugadza, D. T., Seifu, E., & Buys, E. M. (2023). Dairy production: microbial safety of raw milk and processed milk products. In *Present knowledge in food safety* (pp. 439-454): Elsevier.
- Oliver, M. I., Pearson, N., Coe, N., & Gunnell, D. (2005). Help-seeking behaviour in men and women with common mental health problems: cross-sectional study. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, *186*(4), 297-301.

- Ouamba, A. J., Gagnon, M., LaPointe, G., Chouinard, P. Y., & Roy, D. (2022). Graduate Student Literature Review: Farm management practices: Potential microbial sources that determine the microbiota of raw bovine milk. *Journal of Dairy Science*, *105*(9), 7276-7287.
- Quigley, L., O'Sullivan, O., Beresford, T. P., Ross, R. P., Fitzgerald, G. F., & Cotter, P. D. (2011). Molecular approaches to analysing the microbial composition of raw milk and raw milk cheese. *International journal of food microbiology, 150*(2-3), 81-94.
- Palii, A. P., Mihalchenko, S. A., Chechui, H. F., Reshetnichenko, A. P., Rozum, Y. E., Bredykhin, V. V., ... & Paliy, A. P. (2020). Milking and udder health assessment in industrial farming. *Ukrainian journal of Ecology*, *10*(2), 375-381.
- Raats, D., Offek, M., Minz, D., & Halpern, M. (2011). Molecular analysis of bacterial communities in raw cow milk and the impact of refrigeration on its structure and dynamics. *Food microbiology, 28*(3), 465-471.
- Sanders, M. E. (2011). Impact of probiotics on colonizing microbiota of the gut. *Journal of clinical gastroenterology*, *45*, S115-S119.
- Wittwer, A. E., Lee, S. G., & Ranadheera, C. S. (2023). Potential associations between organic dairy products, gut microbiome, and gut health: A review. *Food Research International*, 113195.
- Wouters, J. T., Ayad, E. H., Hugenholtz, J., & Smit, G. (2002). Microbes from raw milk for fermented dairy products. *International Dairy Journal, 12*(2-3), 91-109.
- Ye, D. Z., & Field, J. (2012). PAK signaling in cancer. *Cellular logistics*, *2*(2), 105-116.
- Younan, M., & Abdurahman, O. (2004). Milk hygiene and udder health. *Milk and meat from the camel. Handbook on products and processing*, 67-76.
- Zhang, X.-Y., Zhao, L., Jiang, L., Dong, M.-L., & Ren, F.-Z. (2008). The antimicrobial activity of donkey milk and its microflora changes during storage. *Food Control, 19*(12), 1191-1195.

CHAPTER- 24

EMERGING NANOPARTICLE TECHNOLOGIES FOR TARGETED DISEASE THERAPY

Usama Anjum[1*], Hafiz Misbah-UD-Din[2], Aneesa Ejaz[3], Zain Ayub[4], Saira Zulfiqar[5], Sidra Batool[6], Umber Rauf[7], Areej Khan[8], Faisal Sattar[9] and Syed Haroon Haidar[10]

[*1]Department of Veterinary sciences, Bahauddin Zakariya University, Multan, Punjab, Pakistan

[2]Department of Pharmaceutics, Faculty of Pharmacy, The Islamia Univeristy, Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

[3]Department of Pharmacy, The Islamia Univeristy, Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan,

[4]Department of Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[5]Institute of Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[6]Shahida Islam Medical Complex, Lodhran, Punjab, Pakistan

[7]Veterinary Research Institute, Zarar Shaheed Road Lahore Cantt, Punjab, Pakistan,

[8]Department of Applied Microbiology, University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

[9]Department of Pharmaceutics, Faculty of Pharmacy, The Islamia Univeristy, Bahawalpur, Punjab, Pakistan

[10]Department of Zoology, University of Education, Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.15533663

ABSTRACT

This chapter examines the promising applications of nanotechnology in medicine, particularly in drug delivery and therapeutic interventions. Nanoparticle-based drug delivery holds promise to enhance medical treatments. It can overcome biological barriers, improve absorption of poorly soluble drugs, and target specific disease sites, particularly in cancer. Nanoparticles can be engineered to optimize drug delivery and improve therapeutic outcomes. Polymeric nanoparticles can encapsulate hydrophobic drugs like paclitaxel, improving drug delivery to tumor sites and reducing drug toxicity. The chapter discusses the use of nanoparticles in gene therapy and vaccine development, where they act as carriers for genetic material to ensure safe and effective delivery to target cells. The chapter acknowledges the challenges and limitations of nanoparticle-based therapies, such as potential immune system interactions, biocompatibility issues, and regulatory hurdles. Ongoing research and development is necessary to ensure the safety and efficacy of these innovative technologies. Nanotechnology promises to revolutionize medicine by enabling more effective and personalized treatments. Nanotechnology holds great potential to transform healthcare and enhance patient outcomes.

NANO-TECHNOLOGY IN MEDICINE

The term Nano-Technology and Nano- Science usually refers to research and evaluation at nano scale. Whereas nanometer refer to as "one billionth on the matric scale". Similarly, the biological machineries intrinsically composed of basic building blocks of life such as DNA & RNA. The biological width of DNA Molecule is 2.5 nm approximately (Bahru & Ajebe, 2019). Biological system is composed of proteins of specified nano dimensions 1.0 to 15.0 or 20.0 nm (Bizeau & Mertz, 2021). Therefore, the significant application of nanotechnology is the development of certain pharmaceuticals in future. These pharmaceuticals which are of significant concerned are controlled release, those with significantly low bioavailability and targeted drug molecules, these pharmaceuticals will be preferred target of Nanotechnology (Cai et al., 2018). For instance there is a category of Nanoparticles, which are termed Nano Scale base Polymer Capsules which are developed with outcomes of releasing drug molecules at specified range-controlled rates in the acidic milieu to enhance the uptake of drug molecules in the tumor tissues in comparison to the normal tissues (Rizwan et al., 2017). These polymeric based nano capsules are synthesized from the liposomes and albumin. The potential problems with the conventional dosage system are the drug bioavailability and drug absorption. In this regard biodegradable polymers posses' significant advantage, the lipophobic drugs such as paclitaxel or 5-fluorouracil can be encapsulated with nano scale-based liposomes having nano cavities leading to significant improvement in the absorption and bioavailability of these drugs (Taguchi, Okamoto, Matsumoto, Otagiri, & Chuang, 2021). An uprising problem in the DNA based biotechnology and gene therapy is the in advertent transmission of infectious diseases while using certain viruses as vectors. These risks have led the investigators to use certain nano particles-based DNA polymers and liposomal complexes to ensure the effective delivery of genes in gene therapy (Qadir, Bhatti, & John, 2015). The researchers are investigating the certain components of viral proteins for their potential nano therapy; in this regard the tat peptides from HIV (Humanimmuno deficiency virus) are currently under investigation to be attached with cellular DNA and Proteins to enhance the cellular uptakes. These nanoparticles based fusion proteins mimic the action of actual viral fusion proteins to reduce the risk of viral associated infections (L. Singh, Kruger, Maguire, Govender, & Parboosing, 2017).

Nanoparticles are broadly classified into two main categories, nano-Structured and nano-crystalline. Nano-Structured are further categorized as plymeric based, non-polymeric based and lipid based. Polymeric Based are further classified into dendrimers, micelles, nanogels and drug conjugates. While Non- Polymeric are further classified as Nano diamonds, metallic nano particles, quantum dots and Silica based nanoparticles. For clinical and therapeutic uses majority of lipid-based liposomes and Polymeric based nanoparticles are approved (R. Singh et al., 2021).

LIPID BASED NANOPARTICLES

The term Liposomes is alternatively used for the lipid-based nanoparticles. They range from wide variety of composition, size, flexibility, structure and nature of lipid

molecules. Due to similarity with the lipid bilayer nature of cellular membranes they have advantage of their affinity to fuse with the biological cellular membranes and release the contents into the cytoplasm to ensure effective target-based delivery of the drug molecules. The basic composition of liposomes involves the lipid bilayer membrane surrounding the central hollow core having the diameter of 50–1000 nm (Kumar, 2019).

The active drug molecules having the therapeutic activity are loaded into the central hollow core for their delivery into the target tissues. According to the number of lipid bilayer membranes they are classified as: unilamellar, multilamellar and large unilamellar. Unilamellar consist of single lipid bilayer outer membrane surrounding the central aqueous core while multilamellar consist of multiple lipid bilayers having aqueous spaces in between the layers and central core (X. Zhang, Xing, Zhao, & Ma, 2018). Additionally, two drug molecules can be loaded simultaneously into aqueous and lipid layer along with multiple drug molecules can be loaded into the multiple lipid bilayers in case of multilamellar liposomes which allows the sequential release of different drug molecules during the dissociation of these lipid bilayers (Zhao Li et al., 2023).

Polymer based nanoparticles

Based on nature of polymers, such nanoparticles are categorized as natural, synthetic and semi synthetic. They have therapeutic advantage of being biocompatible, nontoxic, non-immunogenic and biodegradable. In order to overcome the issue of immunogenicity and toxicity of polymers, the synthetic polymers like polycaprolactone (PCL), polylactic acid (PLA) and other esters-based polymers are preferred. The naturally derived polymers are preferred like albumin, gelatin and alginate to overcome the problems of toxicity and therapeutic efficiency. Physiochemically these nanoparticles are examples of the matrix system thus categorized as nanospheres and nano capsules (Idrees et al., 2020). The drug molecules are encapsulated within the capsule composed of polymers within which drug molecules are uniformly dispersed. In case of nanospheres the drug molecules are uniformly dispersed within the matrix of the sphere. (15) Moreover, these polymers-based nanoparticles have advantage of their surface characteristics which can be modified with the certain chemical ligands compatible with the specific cell surface receptors to ensure the effective target-based delivery of the drug molecules with the high specificity and least toxicity(Lengyel, Kállai-Szabó, Antal, Laki, & Antal, 2019).

Metal Based Nanoparticles

Metal based nanoparticles are being used for therapeutic application in field of medicine are range in size from 1-100 nm in size. They are chemically composed of nickel, cobalt, iron and gold and their oxides for instance magnetite, maghemite, cobalt ferrite, and chromium dioxide. Such nanoparticles can be further chemically modified with the various chemical groups to allow the binding of drug molecules like DNA and proteins to ensure the biocompatibility and physiochemical stability

additionally these metallic elements have advantage of being associated with the certain magnetic properties (Klębowski, Depciuch, Parlińska-Wojtan, & Baran, 2018). These magnetic properties can be used as therapeutic advantage to further enhance the target specific delivery of the therapeutic molecules via applying the external magnetic field. Term Magnetic Susceptibility is used for this purpose which means the extent of magnetization of certain substance due to the application of the external magnetic field. For Instance, super-paramagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles (SPIONs) are widely used in the field of the magnetic resonance imaging due the high value of their magnetic susceptibility. Superparamagnetic nanoparticles ensure the highly specific and stable drug delivery at the cellular site and effective accumulation of the therapeutic/diagnostic molecules (Bi et al., 2016). Gold nanoparticles find wide application in radiology especially in oncology for the diagnostic purposes. The chemical nature of gold element is inert which overcomes the significant cytotoxicity when used for therapeutic and diagnostic procedures. Also gold possess the unique optical and localized surface plasmon resonance (LSPR) properties respectively. Due to the phenomenon of localized surface plasmon resonance (LSPR) by the gold metal when light of certain wavelength is directed at its surface it spontaneously converts the light signals of specific wavelength into the thermal signals which aids in eradicating the tumor cells over the affected areas of the body (Gerosa et al., 2020). Similarly, the gold nanoparticles can be used to trigger the drug release over affected tumor cells when expose to the external stimuli of the light for the therapeutic purpose. Therefore, the gold nanoparticles find wide applications in imaging and pythothermal detections (Riley & Day, 2017).

Quantam Dots

Quantum Dots are composed of nano sized crystals which are semiconductors in nature physiochemically having diameter ranging from 2-10 nm. These nanoparticles comprise the core of semiconductor based inorganic metals such as CdSe and an aqueous organic coated shell such as ZnS. These Quantam dots posses the unique physical property of fluorescence due to the high surface to the volume ratio. This fluorescence phenomenon imparts the colors to them. Quantam Dots consist outer coat of aqueous solution and inner core of fluorescence metals (Jeevanandam et al., 2021). Thus, the outer coat can be conjugated with biological molecules such as DNA and Proteins while inner core serves the purpose of emitting the colors. QDS exhibits the phenomenon of fluorescence over narrow range of colors and light emission which enhances their photostability due to which they find their application to track the therapeutic drug molecules within the affected cells and tissues (Pandey & Bodas, 2020).

Carbon Based Nanoparticles:

Carbon based nanoparticles are also termed as Carbon nanotubes which usually ranges in size from 1 nm in diameter and 1–100 nm in length these are nanoparticles based tubular structures. Such nanotubes-based Structures are synthesized by encapsulating the single layer of Carbon (graphite) into seamless cylinder. The structural configuration of these nanotubes comprises single-walled nanotubes

(SWNTs), multi-walled nanotubes (MWNTs) and C60 fullerenes. Thus, such nanotubes possess structurally highly stable configuration due to Carbon (graphite) making them effective carrier for the therapeutic agent's delivery over the affected sites (Tabassum et al., 2019). Particularly the single-walled nanotubes (SWNTs) have internal diameter of 1-2 nm which is approximately equivalent to the half of the diameter of DNA double helical structure. Single-walled nanotubes (SWNTs) and multi-walled nanotubes (MWNTs) can enter the cells via mechanism of endocytosis and via insertion through the pores of cell membranes. C60 fullerenes differs in their chemical configuration within the graphite structure to the presence of high numbers of double bonds in their inner core. Experimentally it has been concluded that C60 fullerenes finds their best application for the delivery of the antibiotics, antivirals and anti-cancer drug molecules (Zixian Li, de Barros, Soares, Moss, & Alisaraie, 2017). The studies have shown that these nanotubes can effectively repairs the damaged mitochondrion via generating the free radical scavengers. Exhibition of such features can lead to the development of mitochondrion selective drug delivery nanotubular particles to ensure the target specific delivery over the affected areas (Milane, Trivedi, Singh, Talekar, & Amiji, 2015).

Dendrimers

Dendrimers are multiple hyperbranched and highly compartmentalized structures having diameter ranging from 1-5 nm. They are fabricated as to ensure very small diameter and size during their formulation. Spherical Dendrimers are thus fabricated to ensure the formation of cavities within the dendrimer molecule. The drug entrapment efficiency of such nanoparticles is determined by the number of surface groups on the dendrimer molecules higher the number of surface groups on the dendrimer molecules more will be the entrapment efficiency of the dendrimers (Arfin & Mohammad, 2015). Chemically the dendrimers consist of such functional groups on their surface having the free ends, such free ends chemical groups can be easily modified so that the biocompatible and highly permeable molecules can be conjugated with these ends which ultimately reduce the cytotoxicity and enhance the drug permeation across the biological membranes. These dendrimers can be modified at the surface ends to conjugate the specific agents having affinity for the specific cellular receptors which will ensure the drug specific delivery to the affected tissues only (Zhu, Liu, & Pang, 2019). These dendrimers can be modified further to incorporate the encapsulation and complexation to them for the concomitant delivery of the bioactive molecules like vaccines, drugs and genes over the target areas. Presently mono- or copolymers, such as polyethyleneimine, polyamidoamine, poly (propylene mine), chitin, etc. finds the therapeutic applications in the form of dendrimers (Martinez-Robinson, 2020).

MECHANISMS OF TARGETING AND DELIVERY

Nanoparticles have distinct advantage over the other conventional drug delivery systems in term of toxicity, permeability and specificity. The affected tumor cells can be specifically targeted by using nano technology approach in such cases various strategies are usually in cooperated. Additionally, the nanoparticles consist of such

colloidal delivery systems which are nanosized which ensures the deeper penetration into the rapidly growing tumor bulk of drug molecules, after penetration into the tumor mass drug molecules are concentrated within the affected tissues which than act as depot thus ensuring the release of drug molecules in the controlled and sustained manner over the extended period (Kanamala, Wilson, Yang, Palmer, & Wu, 2016). Due to their nano-size, nanoparticles can be formulated as intra-venous and intra muscular formulations in order to reduce the incidence of irritation and pain at the site of injection. The nano-size of the particles also ensures the interaction of the drug molecules with cellular surface receptors 0r biomolecules in such a manner that it does not significantly alter the biochemical behavior of these molecules. Thus, ensuring the efficient bio targeting of the tumor and affected tissues/cells (Wong & Choi, 2015).

Different target approaches and mechanisms currently utilized are shown in following schematic diagram:

Passive Targeting via Enhanced Permeability and Retention (EPR)

Passive targeting via Enhanced Permeability and Retention is a drug delivery strategy that exploits the distinctive characteristics of tumor blood vessels. In their growth, tumors develop leaky blood vessels with larger gaps and poor lymphatic drainage compared to healthy tissues. This "leakiness" allows larger molecules, like nanoparticles to escape the bloodstream and accumulate within the tumor, while impaired drainage retains them. This passive accumulation, facilitated by the unique characteristics of tumor blood vessels, enhances drug delivery to the tumor and reducing systemic exposure and side effects (Onzi, Guterres, Pohlmann, & Frank, 2021).

Active Targeting Using Ligand-Receptor Interactions

Active targeting using ligand-receptor interactions is a method in drug delivery where therapeutic agents are guided to specific cells or tissue by utilizing the natural binding affinity between ligands and receptors on the target cell. This technique enhances the accuracy and effectiveness of treatments by ensuring the drug reaches the target site, thereby reducing side effects and improving efficacy. The ligand-receptor binding facilitates the drug's entry into the target cells for treatment, where abnormal cells can be selectively targeted (M. Li et al., 2016).

Stimuli-Responsive Nanoparticles

Stimuli-responsive nanoparticles are tiny, specially designed-particles that respond to specific changes in their environment. These nanoparticles can be designed to respond to various environmental changes, such as fluctuations in temperature, exposure to light, shifts in pH levels, or the presence of specific chemicals. The key feature of these nanoparticles is that they remain inactive until they detect one of these triggers (X. Liu, Yang, & Urban, 2017).

In cancer treatment, these particles can be loaded with a drug and sent to the tumor. As they travel through the body, the particles remain inactive to avoid healthy tissues.When they reach the tumor site, which has a different environment (like being more acidic), the nanoparticles sense the change and release the drug at that site. This targeted approach makes cancer treatment much more accurate, helping to kill cancer cells and reduce side effects suffered by patients (Du, Lane, & Nie, 2015). Stimuli-responsive nanoparticles have a wide range of uses. They can be designed to respond to different types of signals, making them useful for the diagnosis and treatment of different diseases. Stimuli-responsive nanoparticles are a breakthrough in modern medicine, enabling targeted and safer disease treatment by responding to the body's signals or external triggers to deliver drugs at the targeted site (G. Liu, Lovell, Zhang, & Zhang, 2020)

Multi-Stage Delivery Systems

Nanotechnology has created significant interest in the research setting because of the superior properties materials exhibit when manufactured at the nanoscale. Current pharmaceuticals often perform suboptimally due to physical and chemicals limitations in areas such as drug delivery, biodistribution and pharmacokinetics. Nano-based pharmaceuticals, or “nanomedicines”, are engineered to either function as a drug or carry a drug while addressing these scientific challenges due to their nano-size. Nano-based pharmaceuticals, known as "nanomedicines", are designed to function as drugs or carry drugs, addressing scientific challenges due to their small size. Nanoparticles are synthesized from a variety of common macroscale materials, including gold, lipids, carbon, silica, silicon, and iron (J. Wang et al., 2021). Nanoparticles made from these raw materials showed properties not seen at the macroscale. Researchers then began exploring these new properties for various applications. Nanoparticles can perform various tasks, such as protecting drugs like siRNA carriers, and heating up in the presence of alternating magnetic fields. This review summarizes the development of multifunctional nanocarriers, discusses existing nanocarriers, and outlines limitations in producing these advanced technologies.

Functional nanocomponents

Nanocomponents play a key role in biomedical applications due to their ability to interact with biological systems precisely at the molecular level. Nanomaterials exhibit unique physical, chemical, and biological properties that make them suitable for various medical applications, including diagnostic tools. Nanoscale materials are used for targeted drug delivery, allowing treatments to reach only diseased cells while minimizing harm to healthy tissues. They also enhance medical imaging techniques by acting as contrast agents in MRI or CT scans, providing clearer diagnostic images. Nanocomponents are used in biosensors to detect biomarkers for early disease diagnosis. They are also used in tissue engineering to create scaffolds that support cell growth for tissue repair and regeneration (He & Hwang, 2016). Nanocomponents with antimicrobial properties, such as silver nanoparticles, are used to prevent or treat infections. Nanocomponents are used in gene therapy, where they deliver genetic material into cells and correct genetic disorders. For various diseases, these

biomedical innovations provide more precise, efficient, and less invasive treatments, improving patient care (Cheng, Li, Thomas, Kotov, & Haag, 2017).

Obstacles in nanomedicine

The various challenges researchers face when utilizing nanoparticles for medical applications, which can significantly impact their effectiveness and safety, are known as "obstacles in nanomedicine". These challenges include the need for advanced synthesis and characterization methods, as well as a systematic approach to understanding the effects of nanoparticle properties on their performance. Key challenges include overcoming biological barriers like the skin, mucosal membranes, and blood-brain barrier to reach target sites. Additionally, the immune system may identify nanoparticles as foreign, leading to their rapid removal from the bloodstream (H. Li, Jin, Wan, Wu, & Wei, 2018). Nanoparticles may pose toxicity risks, requiring thorough biocompatibility assessments. Precisely targeting nanoparticles to specific cells remains difficult, as targeting mechanisms can affect healthy cells and cause side effects. The physicochemical properties of nanoparticles like size, shape, surface charge, and chemical composition, affect their interactions with biological systems. Addressing the regulatory challenges key to unlocking the therapeutic benefits of nanomedicine (P. Zhang et al., 2023).

APPLICATIONS

Nanoparticles in Cancer Therapy

Nanotechnology improves cancer treatment by facilitating more precise and targeted therapies. Nanoparticles can deliver drugs directly to cancer cells, reducing damage to healthy tissue. This targeted approach improves the effectiveness of chemotherapy and reduces side effects. Nanoparticles can also improve imaging and diagnostics, helping to detect tumors earlier. Certain nanomaterials can generate heat to destroy cancer cells when activated by external energy sources like lasers or magnetic fields, enabling hyperthermia therapy (Gavas, Quazi, & Karpiński, 2021).

Nanoparticles in Cardiovascular Disease

Nanotechnology shows promise for improving cardiovascular disease treatment. Nanoparticles can directly deliver drugs to affected cardiovascular tissues, improving treatment and reducing side effects compared to traditional therapies. This targeted approach improves treatment for conditions like atherosclerosis and heart failure. Nanoparticles can improve imaging and diagnostic accuracy, enabling early disease detection and monitoring. (Nanoparticle-Mediated Drug Delivery for the Treatment of Cardiovascular Diseases, 2020) Nanotechnology may also improve coronary artery bypass graft materials, promoting cellular growth and remodeling for better results (Katsuki, Matoba, Koga, Nakano, & Egashira, 2017).

Antiviral and Antibacterial

The rise of drug-resistant bacteria and the need for novel antiviral treatments have spurred research into alternative antimicrobial approaches. Nanoparticles can interact with microbes in unique ways due to their small size and large surface area,

disrupting their cellular processes and inhibiting their growth. Nanoparticles can be designed to directly deliver drugs to infected cells, improving effectiveness and reducing side effects. Their unique properties make them promising for developing new antiviral agents (Kaczmarek, 2020).

Targeting Neurodegenerative Disorders

Targeting neurodegenerative disorders aims to deliver treatments precisely to affected brain regions, enhancing therapeutic efficacy and minimizing side effects on healthy tissues. Nanomedicine has emerged as a promising approach to address the challenges associated with conventional drug delivery to the central nervous system, offering unique opportunities for improved targeted therapy. (Nowacek et al., 2009) Nanoparticles and other targeted delivery systems can bypass the blood-brain barrier, which is a major challenge in treating neurological conditions. These nanoplatforms can effectively encapsulate and transport therapeutic agents, such as small molecules, biologics, and imaging probes, to specific sites of pathology, enabling precise diagnosis and personalized treatment. This targeted approach holds promise for improving treatment outcomes in challenging diseases like Alzheimer's and Parkinson's, potentially slowing or halting disease progression with fewer side effects (Maiese, 2016).

Nanoparticle Design Considerations

Designing nanoparticles for targeted drug delivery, especially to the brain, requires careful consideration of various factors. Size is crucial, as nanoparticles need to be small enough, typically under 100 nanometers, to navigate biological barriers like the blood-brain barrier. Nanoparticle shape and surface charge are important factors. Spherical shapes are often preferred for biocompatibility. Positively charged nanoparticles can interact negatively with cell membranes, potentially causing toxicity. The nanoparticle's surface can be modified with targeting agents, like antibodies or peptides, to ensure precise delivery to specific brain cell types. Ensuring the nanoparticles are biocompatible and biodegradable is crucial to prevent harmful immune responses and allow safe breakdown after delivering their therapeutic payload. The choice of nanoparticle material depends on factors like drug loading, release rate, and biological stability (Stylianopoulos & Jain, 2015).

Pharmacokinetics and Biodistribution

Pharmacokinetics and biodistribution are key factors in nanoparticle-based drug delivery, as they determine the fate and effectiveness of these nanoscale therapeutic carriers. Targeted delivery of nanoparticles to specific disease sites, such as solid tumors, can be achieved through passive or active targeting strategies. Nanoparticle properties like size, shape, surface charge, and material composition significantly influence their pharmacokinetic behavior. Biodistribution examines where nanoparticles travel and accumulate in the body (Park, Park, Pei, Xu, & Yeo, 2016). Optimizing nanoparticle biodistribution is critical for targeted delivery to the intended site, like a tumor or brain region, while reducing off-target effects and toxicity. Researchers aim to enhance drug delivery efficiency and therapeutic outcomes by

carefully engineering nanoparticle properties to optimize their pharmacokinetic and biodistribution profiles (England et al., 2017).

CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS IN NANOPARTICLE-BASED THERAPIES

Nanoparticle-based therapies face significant challenges and limitations. A key challenge is the potential for unintended immune system interactions. Nanoparticles can elicit immune reactions, causing them to be rapidly cleared from the bloodstream or triggering unintended inflammation. Achieving precise targeting to the intended site of action, particularly in complex organs like the brain, continues to be a significant challenge. The blood-brain barrier hinders the passage of many nanoparticles. The long-term fate and potential toxicity of nanoparticles within the body are still under investigation and require further study (S. Wang et al., 2022). Ensuring nanoparticles are biodegradable and do not accumulate in organs are crucial considerations for their safe and effective clinical use. Overcoming these challenges requires continued research and development of new nanoparticle designs and delivery methods (S. Wang et al., 2022).

Future Directions and Emerging Technologies

Nanoparticle based therapies hold promise to revolutionize the diagnosis, treatment, and management of a wide range of diseases in modern medicine. These nanoscale drug delivery systems, with their unique physicochemical properties and ability to cross biological barriers, offer immense promise to enhance therapeutic efficacy, minimize side effects, and improve patient outcomes. This comprehensive exploration delves into the intricate design of nanoparticles, their applications in targeted disease therapy, the challenges and limitations they present, and the exciting future directions shaping this rapidly evolving field (Vallabani, Singh, & Karakoti, 2019). Nanoparticles, with their minuscule size and distinctive properties stemming from the convergence of physics, chemistry, and biology, present a promising solution to the limitations of conventional drug delivery methods. Their design requires a delicate balancing act, considering factors such as size and shape for optimal biodistribution, surface charge for cell interactions, surface modifications for stability and reduced immune recognition, targeting ligands for precise delivery, and material selection for biocompatibility and drug release kinetics. These carefully engineered nanoscale carriers hold the potential to revolutionize disease treatment by encapsulating therapeutic agents, protecting them from degradation, and directing them to the intended site of action, ultimately enhancing efficacy and minimizing side effects (Swain, Kumar Sahu, Beg, & Manohar Babu, 2016).

CONCLUSION

The chapter examines how nanotechnology can transform drug delivery and treatment effectiveness. Nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems have the potential to overcome biological barriers, deliver hydrophobic drugs and biologics, and preferentially target disease sites. The unique properties of nanoparticles, such as their size, surface area, and ability to be functionalized, offer new opportunities for

targeted and controlled drug delivery. Nanotechnology can improve the bioavailability of poorly soluble drugs in medicine. Traditional drug formulations frequently struggle with solubility and absorption issues, resulting in suboptimal therapeutic results. Nanoparticles can encapsulate drugs, enabling controlled drug release and improved absorption in target tissues. This approach has been explored for a variety of drugs, such as paclitaxel, cyclosporine, and amphotericin B.

Specific drug delivery at tumor sites is vital in oncology, as it increase the treatment efficacy and reduce side effects. Nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems have shown potential in improving the pharmacokinetics of drugs, and allow more accumulation of drug at tumors site. The chapter discusses how nanoparticles, such as quantum dots, carbon nanotubes, and dendrimers, can improve drug delivery systems. Quantum dots, with their exclusive fluorescence, enable monitoring of drug that are distributed in the body and provide therapeutic dynamics. Carbon nanotubes, with their structural capacity and stability to penetrate cell membranes, help as effective carriers for a variety of agents, including antibiotics and anticancer drugs. Additionally, nanoparticle platforms can be designed to release drugs in a controlled and stimuli-responsive manner, for example, in response to the acidic tumor microenvironment.

Branched structure of dendrimers' enables the e attachment of multiple drug molecules and enhances the drug concentration at targeted site. The concept of passive and active targeting is to enhance permeability and retention effect that permits nanoparticles to accumulate in tumor tissues. Active targeting strategies, which attach ligands to nanoparticles, help ensure drugs are delivered specifically to diseased cells, reducing off-target effects and improving patient outcomes. In addition to drug delivery, the chapter also explores the potential of nanotechnology in gene therapy and vaccine development. Nanoparticles can serve as carriers for genetic material, facilitating the safe and effective delivery of therapeutic genes to target cells.

The chapter also discusses the challenges of applying nanotechnology-based therapies in clinical settings. These factors, such as biocompatibility, toxicity, and regulatory hurdles, must be carefully addressed to ensure the safe clinical application of these innovative technologies. Nanotechnology represents a paradigm shift in medicine, affecting how we approach drug delivery and therapeutic interventions. Manipulating materials at the nanoscale enhances the efficacy and safety of treatments, particularly for complex diseases like cancer. Nanotechnology holds immense potential to revolutionize medicine, paving the way for more effective, targeted, and personalized therapeutic strategies. Nanotechnology holds great promise for the future of medicine, offering the potential for improved patient outcomes and a deeper understanding of disease mechanisms, leading to healthcare innovation.

REFERENCES

- Arfin, Tanvir, & Mohammad, Faruq. (2015). Dendrimer and its role for the advancement of nanotechnology and bioengineering. *Advances in materials science research, 21*, 157-174.
- Bahru, Tassew Belete, & Ajebe, Eyasu Gebrie. (2019). A review on nanotechnology: analytical techniques use and applications. *International Research Journal of Pure and Applied Chemistry, 19*(4), 1-10.
- Bi, Ye, Hao, Fei, Yan, Guodong, Teng, Lesheng, J Lee, Robert, & Xie, Jing. (2016). Actively targeted nanoparticles for drug delivery to tumor. *Current drug metabolism, 17*(8), 763-782.
- Bizeau, Joëlle, & Mertz, Damien. (2021). Design and applications of protein delivery systems in nanomedicine and tissue engineering. *Advances in Colloid and Interface Science, 287*, 102334.
- Cai, Zhengqing, Dwivedi, Amarendra Dhar, Lee, Wan-Ning, Zhao, Xiao, Liu, Wen, Sillanpää, Mika, . . . Fu, Jie. (2018). Application of nanotechnologies for removing pharmaceutically active compounds from water: development and future trends. *Environmental Science: Nano, 5*(1), 27-47.
- Cheng, Chong, Li, Shuang, Thomas, Arne, Kotov, Nicholas A, & Haag, Rainer. (2017). Functional graphene nanomaterials based architectures: biointeractions, fabrications, and emerging biological applications. *Chemical reviews, 117*(3), 1826-1914.
- Du, Jinzhi, Lane, Lucas A, & Nie, Shuming. (2015). Stimuli-responsive nanoparticles for targeting the tumor microenvironment. *Journal of Controlled Release, 219*, 205-214.
- England, Christopher G, Ehlerding, Emily B, Hernandez, Reinier, Rekoske, Brian T, Graves, Stephen A, Sun, Haiyan, . . . Cai, Weibo. (2017). Preclinical pharmacokinetics and biodistribution studies of 89Zr-labeled pembrolizumab. *Journal of Nuclear Medicine, 58*(1), 162-168.
- Gavas, Shreelaxmi, Quazi, Sameer, & Karpiński, Tomasz M. (2021). Nanoparticles for cancer therapy: current progress and challenges. *Nanoscale research letters, 16*(1), 173.
- Gerosa, Clara, Crisponi, Guido, Nurchi, Valeria Marina, Saba, Luca, Cappai, Rosita, Cau, Flaviana, . . . Floris, Giuseppe. (2020). Gold nanoparticles: a new golden era in oncology? *Pharmaceuticals, 13*(8), 192.
- He, Xiaojia, & Hwang, Huey-Min. (2016). Nanotechnology in food science: Functionality, applicability, and safety assessment. *Journal of food and drug analysis, 24*(4), 671-681.

- Idrees, Humaira, Zaidi, Syed Zohaib Javaid, Sabir, Aneela, Khan, Rafi Ullah, Zhang, Xunli, & Hassan, Sammer-ul. (2020). A review of biodegradable natural polymer-based nanoparticles for drug delivery applications. *Nanomaterials, 10*(10), 1970.
- Jeevanandam, Jaison, Balu, Satheesh Kumar, Andra, Swetha, Danquah, Michael K, Vidyavathi, Manisha, & Muthalagu, Murugesan. (2021). Quantum dots synthesis and application. *Contemporary nanomaterials in material engineering applications*, 229-265.
- Kaczmarek, Beata. (2020). Tannic acid with antiviral and antibacterial activity as a promising component of biomaterials—A minireview. *Materials, 13*(14), 3224.
- Kanamala, Manju, Wilson, William R, Yang, Mimi, Palmer, Brian D, & Wu, Zimei. (2016). Mechanisms and biomaterials in pH-responsive tumour targeted drug delivery: a review. *Biomaterials, 85*, 152-167.
- Katsuki, Shunsuke, Matoba, Tetsuya, Koga, Jun-ichiro, Nakano, Kaku, & Egashira, Kensuke. (2017). Anti-inflammatory nanomedicine for cardiovascular disease. *Frontiers in cardiovascular medicine, 4*, 87.
- Klębowski, Bartosz, Depciuch, Joanna, Parlińska-Wojtan, Magdalena, & Baran, Jarek. (2018). Applications of noble metal-based nanoparticles in medicine. *International journal of molecular sciences, 19*(12), 4031.
- Kumar, Raj. (2019). Lipid-based nanoparticles for drug-delivery systems. In *Nanocarriers for drug delivery* (pp. 249-284): Elsevier.
- Lengyel, Miléna, Kállai-Szabó, Nikolett, Antal, Vince, Laki, András József, & Antal, István. (2019). Microparticles, microspheres, and microcapsules for advanced drug delivery. *Scientia Pharmaceutica, 87*(3), 20.
- Li, Huafei, Jin, Hai, Wan, Wei, Wu, Cong, & Wei, Lixin. (2018). Cancer nanomedicine: mechanisms, obstacles and strategies. *Nanomedicine, 13*(13), 1639-1656.
- Li, Min, Zhang, Weiyue, Wang, Birong, Gao, Yang, Song, Zifang, & Zheng, Qi Chang. (2016). Ligand-based targeted therapy: a novel strategy for hepatocellular carcinoma. *International Journal of Nanomedicine*, 5645-5669.
- Li, Zhao, Xu, Ke, Qin, Linlin, Zhao, Decai, Yang, Nailiang, Wang, Dan, & Yang, Yang. (2023). Hollow Nanomaterials in Advanced Drug Delivery Systems: From Single-to Multiple Shells. *Advanced Materials, 35*(12), 2203890.
- Li, Zixian, de Barros, Andre Luis Branco, Soares, Daniel Cristian Ferreira, Moss, Sara Nicole, & Alisaraie, Laleh. (2017). Functionalized single-walled carbon nanotubes: cellular uptake, biodistribution and applications in drug delivery. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics, 524*(1-2), 41-54.

- Liu, Gengqi, Lovell, Jonathan F, Zhang, Lei, & Zhang, Yumiao. (2020). Stimulus-responsive nanomedicines for disease diagnosis and treatment. *International journal of molecular sciences, 21*(17), 6380.
- Liu, Xiaolin, Yang, Ying, & Urban, Marek W. (2017). Stimuli-responsive polymeric nanoparticles. *Macromolecular rapid communications, 38*(13), 1700030.
- Maiese, Kenneth. (2016). Targeting molecules to medicine with mTOR, autophagy and neurodegenerative disorders. *British journal of clinical pharmacology, 82*(5), 1245-1266.
- Martinez-Robinson, Karla G. (2020). Polymer conjugates in biomedical applications. In *Tailor-Made Polysaccharides in Biomedical Applications* (pp. 175-196): Elsevier.
- Milane, Lara, Trivedi, Malav, Singh, Amit, Talekar, Meghna, & Amiji, Mansoor. (2015). Mitochondrial biology, targets, and drug delivery. *Journal of Controlled Release, 207*, 40-58.
- Onzi, Giovana, Guterres, Silvia S, Pohlmann, Adriana R, & Frank, Luiza Abrahão. (2021). Passive targeting and the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect. *the ADME encyclopedia: a comprehensive guide on biopharmacy and pharmacokinetics*, 1-13.
- Pandey, Sulaxna, & Bodas, Dhananjay. (2020). High-quality quantum dots for multiplexed bioimaging: A critical review. *Advances in Colloid and Interface Science, 278*, 102137.
- Park, Jinho, Park, Joonyoung, Pei, Yihua, Xu, Jun, & Yeo, Yoon. (2016). Pharmacokinetics and biodistribution of recently-developed siRNA nanomedicines. *Advanced drug delivery reviews, 104*, 93-109.
- Qadir, Mirza Muhammad Fahd, Bhatti, Attya, & John, Peter. (2015). The Adverse Impact of Modern Biotechnology on the Environment. *The Role of Biotechnology in Improvement of Livestock: Animal Health and Biotechnology*, 91-110.
- Riley, Rachel S, & Day, Emily S. (2017). Gold nanoparticle-mediated photothermal therapy: applications and opportunities for multimodal cancer treatment. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Nanomedicine and Nanobiotechnology, 9*(4), e1449.
- Rizwan, Muhammad, Yahya, Rosiyah, Hassan, Aziz, Yar, Muhammad, Azzahari, Ahmad Danial, Selvanathan, Vidhya, . . . Abouloula, Cheyma Naceur. (2017). pH sensitive hydrogels in drug delivery: Brief history, properties, swelling, and release mechanism, material selection and applications. *Polymers, 9*(4), 137.

- Singh, Lavanya, Kruger, Hendrik G, Maguire, Glenn EM, Govender, Thavendran, & Parboosing, Raveen. (2017). The role of nanotechnology in the treatment of viral infections. *Therapeutic advances in infectious disease, 4*(4), 105-131.
- Singh, Raj, Sharma, Indu, Sharma, Pooja, Gupta, Mahiti, Singhal, Paavan, Goyal, Soniya, . . . Upadhyay, Sushil Kumar. (2021). Nanoparticles and Nanotechnology: From Source, Properties, Types, Synthesis to Multifaceted Functional Potential in Agriculture.
- Stylianopoulos, Triantafyllos, & Jain, Rakesh K. (2015). Design considerations for nanotherapeutics in oncology. *Nanomedicine: Nanotechnology, Biology and Medicine, 11*(8), 1893-1907.
- Swain, Suryakanta, Kumar Sahu, Prafulla, Beg, Sarwar, & Manohar Babu, Sitty. (2016). Nanoparticles for cancer targeting: current and future directions. *Current drug delivery, 13*(8), 1290-1302.
- Tabassum, Hassina, Mahmood, Asif, Zhu, Bingjun, Liang, Zibin, Zhong, Ruiqin, Guo, Shaojun, & Zou, Ruqiang. (2019). Recent advances in confining metal-based nanoparticles into carbon nanotubes for electrochemical energy conversion and storage devices. *Energy & Environmental Science, 12*(10), 2924-2956.
- Taguchi, Kazuaki, Okamoto, Yuko, Matsumoto, Kazuaki, Otagiri, Masaki, & Chuang, Victor Tuan Giam. (2021). When albumin meets liposomes: a feasible drug carrier for biomedical applications. *Pharmaceuticals, 14*(4), 296.
- Vallabani, Naga VS, Singh, Sanjay, & Karakoti, Ajay S. (2019). Magnetic nanoparticles: current trends and future aspects in diagnostics and nanomedicine. *Current drug metabolism, 20*(6), 457-472.
- Wang, Jinjin, Ni, Qiankun, Wang, Yufei, Zhang, Yuxuan, He, Hongyu, Gao, Dawei, . . . Liang, Xing-Jie. (2021). Nanoscale drug delivery systems for controllable drug behaviors by multi-stage barrier penetration. *Journal of Controlled Release, 331*, 282-295.
- Wang, Shuhang, Cheng, Keman, Chen, Kun, Xu, Chen, Ma, Peiwen, Dang, Guohui, . . . Yu, Yue. (2022). Nanoparticle-based medicines in clinical cancer therapy. *Nano Today, 45*, 101512.
- Wong, Pamela T, & Choi, Seok Ki. (2015). Mechanisms of drug release in nanotherapeutic delivery systems. *Chemical reviews, 115*(9), 3388-3432.
- Zhang, Pengfei, Xiao, Yufen, Sun, Xue, Lin, Xiaoning, Koo, Seyoung, Yaremenko, Alexey V, . . . Tao, Wei. (2023). Cancer nanomedicine toward clinical translation: Obstacles, opportunities, and future prospects. *Med, 4*(3), 147-167.

- Zhang, Xingwang, Xing, Huijie, Zhao, Yue, & Ma, Zhiguo. (2018). Pharmaceutical dispersion techniques for dissolution and bioavailability enhancement of poorly water-soluble drugs. *Pharmaceutics, 10*(3), 74.
- Zhu, Yuefei, Liu, Chunying, & Pang, Zhiqing. (2019). Dendrimer-based drug delivery systems for brain targeting. *Biomolecules, 9*(12), 790.

ABOUT THE EDITORS

Asim Shamim
Department of Pathobiology,
Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences,
University of Poonch Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan

Malik Amonov
Faculty of Medicine,
Sultan Zain Al Abideen University, Malaysia

Syed Muhammad Ali Shah
Faculty of Veterinary and Animal Sciences,
University of Poonch Rawalakot, Azad Kashmir, Pakistan

Fiza Tariq
Department of Veterinary Medicine,
University of Veterinary and Animal Sciences Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan

EMPYREAL PUBLISHING HOUSE

ISBN 978-93-49359-40-6

India | UAE | Nigeria | Uzbekistan | Montenegro | Iraq | Egypt | Thailand | Uganda | Philippines | Indonesia

Empyreal Publishing House || www.empyrealpublishinghouse.com || info@empyrealpublishinghouse.com